

# Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes\*

Johannes Braams  
Kersengarde 33  
2723 BP Zoetermeer  
The Netherlands  
babel@braams.xs4all.nl

Printed April 1, 2008

## Abstract

The standard distribution of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X contains a number of document classes that are meant to be used, but also serve as examples for other users to create their own document classes. These document classes have become very popular among L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X users. But it should be kept in mind that they were designed for American tastes and typography. At one time they contained a number of hard-wired texts. This report describes `babel`, a package that makes use of the new capabilities of T<sub>E</sub>X version 3 to provide an environment in which documents can be typeset in a non-American language, or in more than one language.

## Contents

	<b>8</b>	<b>Compatibility with <code>ngerman.sty</code></b>	<b>12</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>The user interface</b>	
1.1	5	Languages supported by Babel . . . . .	
1.2	6	Workarounds . . . . .	
<b>2</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Changes for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub></b>	
<b>3</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Changes in Babel version 3.7</b>	
<b>4</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Changes in Babel version 3.6</b>	
<b>5</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Changes in Babel version 3.5</b>	
<b>6</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>The interface between the core of babel and the language definition files</b>	
6.1	10	Support for active characters . . . . .	
6.2	11	Support for saving macro definitions . . . . .	
6.3	11	Support for extending macros . . . . .	
6.4	11	Macros common to a number of languages . . . . .	
<b>7</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>Compatibility with <code>german.sty</code></b>	
	<b>12</b>	<b>Compatibility with the french package</b>	
	<b>12</b>	<b>Identification</b>	
	<b>13</b>	<b>The Package File</b>	
	13	11.1 Language options . . . . .	
	<b>16</b>	<b>The Kernel of Babel</b>	
	17	12.1 Encoding issues (part 1) . . . . .	
	18	12.2 Multiple languages . . . . .	
	30	12.3 Support for active characters . . . . .	
	31	12.4 Shorthands . . . . .	
	40	12.5 Language attributes . . . . .	
	42	12.6 Support for saving macro definitions . . . . .	
	43	12.7 Support for extending macros . . . . .	
	43	12.8 Macros common to a number of languages . . . . .	
	44	12.9 Making glyphs available . . . . .	
	44	12.10 Quotation marks . . . . .	
	45	12.11 Letters . . . . .	

\*During the development ideas from Nico Poppelier, Piet van Oostrum and many others have been used. Bernd Raichle has provided many helpful suggestions.

12.12	Shorthands for quotation marks . . . . .	46	29.5	File frenchb.cfg . . . . .	108
12.13	Umlauts and trema's . . . . .	47	<b>30</b>	<b>TeXnical details</b>	<b>109</b>
12.14	The redefinition of the style commands . . . . .	48	30.1	Initial setup . . . . .	109
12.14.1	Redefinition of macros . . . . .	49	30.2	Punctuation . . . . .	110
12.15	Cross referencing macros . . . . .	53	30.3	French quotation marks . . . . .	112
12.16	marks . . . . .	56	30.4	Date in French . . . . .	113
12.17	Encoding issues (part 2) . . . . .	57	30.5	Extra utilities . . . . .	113
12.18	Preventing clashes with other packages . . . . .	57	30.6	Formatting numbers . . . . .	115
12.18.1	ifthen . . . . .	57	30.7	Caption names . . . . .	116
12.18.2	varioref . . . . .	58	30.8	French lists . . . . .	118
12.18.3	hhline . . . . .	59	30.9	French indentation of sections . . . . .	120
12.18.4	hyperref . . . . .	59	30.10	Formatting footnotes . . . . .	120
12.18.5	General . . . . .	59	30.11	Global layout . . . . .	121
<b>13</b>	<b>Local Language Configuration</b>	<b>60</b>	30.12	Dots... . . . .	122
<b>14</b>	<b>Driver files for the documented source code</b>	<b>61</b>	30.13	Setup options: keyval stuff	123
<b>15</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>	<b>65</b>	30.14	Clean up and exit . . . . .	129
<b>16</b>	<b>Acknowledgements</b>	<b>65</b>	<b>31</b>	<b>The Italian language</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>17</b>	<b>References</b>	<b>65</b>	31.1	Support for etymological hyphenation . . . . .	132
<b>18</b>	<b>The Esperanto language</b>	<b>66</b>	31.2	Facilities required by the ISO 31/XI regulations . . . . .	134
<b>19</b>	<b>The Interlingua language</b>	<b>69</b>	31.3	Accents . . . . .	135
<b>20</b>	<b>The Dutch language</b>	<b>71</b>	31.4	<i>Caporali</i> or French double quotes . . . . .	135
<b>21</b>	<b>The English language</b>	<b>75</b>	31.5	Finishing commands . . . . .	138
<b>22</b>	<b>The German language</b>	<b>79</b>	31.6	References . . . . .	138
<b>23</b>	<b>The German language – new orthography</b>	<b>84</b>	<b>32</b>	<b>The Latin language</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>24</b>	<b>The Breton language</b>	<b>87</b>	<b>33</b>	<b>Latin shortcuts</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>25</b>	<b>The Welsh language</b>	<b>90</b>	<b>34</b>	<b>Etymological hyphenation</b>	<b>144</b>
<b>26</b>	<b>The Irish language</b>	<b>92</b>	<b>35</b>	<b>The Portuguese language</b>	<b>146</b>
<b>27</b>	<b>The Scottish language</b>	<b>94</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>The Spanish language</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>28</b>	<b>The Greek language</b>	<b>96</b>	36.1	The Code . . . . .	154
28.1	Typing conventions . . . . .	96	<b>37</b>	<b>The Catalan language</b>	<b>170</b>
28.2	Greek numbering . . . . .	96	<b>38</b>	<b>This file</b>	<b>177</b>
<b>29</b>	<b>The French language</b>	<b>104</b>	<b>39</b>	<b>The Galcian language</b>	<b>177</b>
29.1	Basic interface . . . . .	104	39.1	The Code . . . . .	179
29.2	Customisation . . . . .	105	<b>40</b>	<b>The Basque language</b>	<b>196</b>
29.3	Hyphenation checks . . . . .	107	<b>41</b>	<b>The Romanian language</b>	<b>199</b>
29.4	Changes . . . . .	108	<b>42</b>	<b>The Danish language</b>	<b>201</b>

<b>43 The Icelandic language</b>	<b>204</b>		
43.1 Overview	204		
43.2 References	204		
43.3 T <sub>E</sub> Xnical details	205		
43.4 Captionnames and date	206		
43.5 Icelandic quotation marks	207		
43.6 Old Icelandic	207		
43.7 Formatting numbers	208		
43.8 Extra utilities	210		
<b>44 The Norwegian language</b>	<b>212</b>		
<b>45 The Swedish language</b>	<b>216</b>		
<b>46 The North Sami language</b>	<b>220</b>		
46.1 The code of <code>samin.dtx</code>	220		
<b>47 The Finnish language</b>	<b>222</b>		
<b>48 The Hungarian language</b>	<b>225</b>		
<b>49 The Estonian language</b>	<b>240</b>		
49.1 Implementation	240		
<b>50 The Albanian language</b>	<b>244</b>		
<b>51 The Croatian language</b>	<b>247</b>		
<b>52 The Czech language</b>	<b>249</b>		
<b>53 The Polish language</b>	<b>251</b>		
<b>54 The Serbocroatian language</b>	<b>256</b>		
<b>55 The Slovak language</b>	<b>259</b>		
<b>56 The Slovenian language</b>	<b>263</b>		
<b>57 The Russian language</b>	<b>265</b>		
<b>58 The Bulgarian language</b>	<b>277</b>		
<b>59 The Ukrainian language</b>	<b>288</b>		
<b>60 The Lower Sorbian language</b>	<b>300</b>		
<b>61 The Upper Sorbian language</b>	<b>302</b>		
<b>62 The Turkish language</b>	<b>305</b>		
<b>63 The Hebrew language</b>	<b>308</b>		
63.1 Acknowledgement	308		
63.2 The DOCSTRIP modules	308		
63.3 Hebrew language definitions	309		
63.3.1 Hebrew numerals	312		
63.4 Right to left support	318		
63.4.1 Switching from LR to RL mode and back	318		
63.4.2 Counters	321		
63.4.3 Preserving logos	322		
63.4.4 List environments	322		
63.4.5 Tables of moving stuff	323		
63.4.6 Two-column mode	327		
63.4.7 Footnotes	328		
63.4.8 Headings and two-side support	328		
63.4.9 Postscript Problems	331		
63.4.10 Miscellaneous internal L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X macros	332		
63.4.11 Bibliography and citations	333		
63.4.12 Additional bidirectional commands	335		
<b>63.5 Hebrew calendar</b>	<b>336</b>		
63.5.1 Introduction	337		
63.5.2 Registers, Commands, Formatting Macros	337		
63.5.3 Auxiliary Macros	339		
63.5.4 Gregorian Part	340		
63.5.5 Hebrew Part	341		
<b>64 Hebrew input encodings</b>	<b>345</b>		
64.1 Default definitions for characters	346		
64.2 The SI-960 encoding	347		
64.3 The ISO 8859-8 encoding and the MS Windows cp1255 encoding	347		
64.4 The IBM code page 862	349		
<b>65 Hebrew font encodings</b>	<b>351</b>		
65.1 THIS SECTION IS OUT OF DATE. UPDATE DOCS TO MATCH HE8 ENCODING	351		
65.2 The DOCSTRIP modules	352		
65.3 The LHEencoding definition file	352		
65.4 The font definition files (in LHE encoding)	354		
65.4.1 Hebrew default font	354		
65.4.2 Hebrew sans-serif font	354		
65.4.3 Hebrew type-writer font	355		
65.4.4 Hebrew classic font	355		
65.4.5 Hebrew shalom fonts	356		
65.4.6 Hebrew frank-ruehl font	356		
65.4.7 Hebrew carmel font	357		

65.4.8 Hebrew redis font . . . . .	357	65.6.11 8Bit MiriamMono font . . . . .	363
65.5 The HE8encoding definition file . . . . .	358	65.6.12 8Bit Nachlieli font . . . . .	363
65.5.1 CHECK HERE FOR HE8 UPDATES . . . . .	358	65.6.13 Hebrew font switching commands . . . . .	363
65.6 The font definition files (in HE8 encoding) . . . . .	360	<b>66 Hebrew in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 compatibility mode . . . . .</b>	<b>366</b>
65.6.1 Hebrew default font . . . . .	360	66.1 The DOCSTRIP modules . . . . .	366
65.6.2 Hebrew sans-serif font . . . . .	360	66.2 Obsolete style files . . . . .	366
65.6.3 Hebrew typewriter font . . . . .	361	<b>67 The Bahasa Indonesian language . . . . .</b>	<b>368</b>
65.6.4 8Bit OmegaHebrew font . . . . .	361	<b>68 The Bahasa Malaysia language . . . . .</b>	<b>370</b>
65.6.5 8Bit Aharoni font . . . . .	361	<b>69 Not renaming hyphen.tex . . . . .</b>	<b>372</b>
65.6.6 8Bit David font . . . . .	362	<b>70 Support for formats based on PLAIN<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> . . . . .</b>	<b>373</b>
65.6.7 8Bit Drugulin font . . . . .	362		
65.6.8 8Bit Ellinia font . . . . .	362		
65.6.9 8Bit FrankRuehl font . . . . .	362		
65.6.10 8Bit KtavYad font . . . . .	363		

## 1 The user interface

The user interface of this package is quite simple. It consists of a set of commands that switch from one language to another, and a set of commands that deal with shorthands. It is also possible to find out what the current language is.

<code>\selectlanguage</code>	When a user wants to switch from one language to another he can do so using the macro <code>\selectlanguage</code> . This macro takes the language, defined previously by a language definition file, as its argument. It calls several macros that should be defined in the language definition files to activate the special definitions for the language chosen.
<code>otherlanguage</code>	The environment <code>otherlanguage</code> does basically the same as <code>\selectlanguage</code> , except the language change is local to the environment. This environment is required for intermixing left-to-right typesetting with right-to-left typesetting. The language to switch to is specified as an argument to <code>\begin{otherlanguage}</code> .
<code>\foreignlanguage</code>	The command <code>\foreignlanguage</code> takes two arguments; the second argument is a phrase to be typeset according to the rules of the language named in its first argument. This command only switches the extra definitions and the hyphenation rules for the language, <i>not</i> the names and dates.
<code>otherlanguage*</code>	In the environment <code>otherlanguage*</code> only the typesetting is done according to the rules of the other language, but the text-strings such as ‘figure’, ‘table’, etc. are left as they were set outside this environment.
<code>hyphenrules</code>	The environment <code>hyphenrules</code> can be used to select <i>only</i> the hyphenation rules to be used. This can for instance be used to select ‘nohyphenation’, provided that in <code>language.dat</code> the ‘language’ nohyphenation is defined by loading <code>serohyph.tex</code> .
<code>\language</code>	The control sequence <code>\language</code> contains the name of the current language.
<code>\iflanguage</code>	If more than one language is used, it might be necessary to know which language is active at a specific time. This can be checked by a call to <code>\iflanguage</code> . This macro takes three arguments. The first argument is the name of a language; the second and third arguments are the actions to take if the result of the test is <code>true</code> or <code>false</code> respectively.
<code>\useshorthands</code>	The command <code>\useshorthands</code> initiates the definition of user-defined short-

hand sequences. It has one argument, the character that starts these personal shorthands.

`\defineshorthand` The command `\defineshorthand` takes two arguments: the first is a one- or two-character shorthand sequence, and the second is the code the shorthand should expand to.

`\aliasshorthand` The command `\aliasshorthand` can be used to let another character perform the same functions as the default shorthand character. If one prefers for example to use the character / over " in typing polish texts, this can be achieved by entering `\aliasshorthand{"}{/}`. *Please note* that the substitute shorthand character must have been declared in the preamble of your document, using a command such as `\usesshorthands{/}` in this example.

`\languageshorthands` The command `\languageshorthands` can be used to switch the shorthands on the language level. It takes one argument, the name of a language. Note that for this to work the language should have been specified as an option when loading the `babel` package.

`\shorthandon` It is sometimes necessary to switch a shorthand character off temporarily, because it must be used in an entirely different way. For this purpose, the user commands `\shorthandoff` and `\shorthandon` are provided. They each take a list of characters as their arguments. The command `\shorthandoff` sets the `\catcode` for each of the characters in its argument to other (12); the command `\shorthandon` sets the `\catcode` to active (13). Both commands only work on ‘known’ shorthand characters. If a character is not known to be a shorthand character its category code will be left unchanged.

`\languageattribute` This is a user-level command, to be used in the preamble of a document (after `\usepackage[...]{babel}`), that declares which attributes are to be used for a given language. It takes two arguments: the first is the name of the language; the second, a (list of) attribute(s) to used. The command checks whether the language is known in this document and whether the attribute(s) are known for this language.

## 1.1 Languages supported by Babel

In the following table all the languages supported by Babel are listed, together with the names of the options with which you can load `babel` for each language.

Language	Option(s)
Afrikaans	afrikaans
Bahasa	bahasa, indonesian, indon, bahasai, bahasam, malay, meyalu
Basque	basque
Breton	breton
Bulgarian	bulgarian
Catalan	catalan
Croatian	croatian
Czech	czech
Danish	danish
Dutch	dutch
English	english, USenglish, american, UKenglish, british, canadian, australian, newzealand
Esperanto	esperanto
Estonian	estonian
Finnish	finnish
French	french, francais, canadien, acadian
Galician	galician
German	austrian, german, germanb, ngerman, naustrian
Greek	greek, polutonikogreek

Language	Option(s)
Hebrew	hebrew
Hungarian	magyar, hungarian
Icelandic	icelandic
Interlingua	interlingua
Irish Gaelic	irish
Italian	italian
Latin	latin
Lower Sorbian	lowersorbian
North Sami	samin
Norwegian	norsk, nynorsk
Polish	polish
Portuguese	portuges, portuguese, brazilian, brazil
Romanian	romanian
Russian	russian
Scottish Gaelic	scottish
Spanish	spanish
Slovakian	slovak
Slovenian	slovene
Swedish	swedish
Serbian	serbian
Turkish	turkish
Ukrainian	ukrainian
Upper Sorbian	upporsorbian
Welsh	welsh

For some languages `babel` supports the options `activeacute` and `activegrave`; for typesetting Russian texts, `babel` knows about the options `LWN` and `LCY` to specify the fontencoding of the cyrillic font used. Currently only `LWN` is supported.

## 1.2 Workarounds

If you use the document class `book` *and* you use `\ref` inside the argument of `\chapter`,  $\LaTeX$  will keep complaining about an undefined label. The reason is that the argument of `\ref` is passed through `\uppercase` at some time during processing. To prevent such problems, you could revert to using uppercase labels, or you can use `\lowercase{\ref{foo}}` inside the argument of `\chapter`.

## 2 Changes for $\LaTeX$ 2 $\epsilon$

With the advent of  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$  the interface to `babel` in the preamble of the document has changed. With  $\LaTeX$ 2.09 one used to call up the `babel` system with a line such as:

```
\documentstyle[dutch,english]{article}
```

which would tell  $\LaTeX$  that the document would be written in two languages, Dutch and English, and that English would be the first language in use.

The  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$  way of providing the same information is:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[dutch,english]{babel}
```

or, making `dutch` and `english` global options in order to let other packages detect and use them:

```
\documentclass[dutch,english]{article}
\usepackage{babel}
\usepackage{varioref}
```

In this last example, the package `varioref` will also see the options and will be able to use them.

### 3 Changes in Babel version 3.7

In Babel version 3.7 a number of bugs that were found in version 3.6 are fixed. Also a number of changes and additions have occurred:

- Shorthands are expandable again. The disadvantage is that one has to type `'{\a}` when the acute accent is used as a shorthand character. The advantage is that a number of other problems (such as the breaking of ligatures, etc.) have vanished.
- Two new commands, `\shorthandon` and `\shorthandoff` have been introduced to enable to temporarily switch off one or more shorthands.
- Support for typesetting Greek has been enhanced. Code from the `kdgreek` package (suggested by the author) was added and `\greeknumeral` has been added.
- Support for typesetting Basque is now available thanks to Juan Aguirregabiria.
- Support for typesetting Serbian with Latin script is now available thanks to Dejan Muhamedagić and Jankovic Slobodan.
- Support for typesetting Hebrew (and potential support for typesetting other right-to-left written languages) is now available thanks to Rama Porrat and Boris Lavva.
- Support for typesetting Bulgarian is now available thanks to Georgi Boshnakov.
- Support for typesetting Latin is now available, thanks to Claudio Beccari and Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski.
- Support for typesetting North Sami is now available, thanks to Regnor Jernsletten.
- The options `canadian`, `canadien` and `acadien` have been added for Canadian English and French use.
- A language attribute has been added to the `\mark...` commands in order to make sure that a Greek header line comes out right on the last page before a language switch.
- Hyphenation pattern files are now read *inside a group*; therefore any changes a pattern file needs to make to lowercase codes, uppercase codes, and category codes are kept local to that group. If they are needed for the language, these changes will need to be repeated and stored in `\extras...`
- The concept of language attributes is introduced. It is intended to give the user some control over the features a language-definition file provides. Its first use is for the Greek language, where the user can choose the *πολυτονικό* (“Polutoniko” or multi-accented) Greek way of typesetting texts. These attributes will possibly find wider use in future releases.
- The environment `hyphenrules` is introduced.
- The syntax of the file `language.dat` has been extended to allow (optionally) specifying the font encoding to be used while processing the patterns file.
- The command `\providehyphenmins` should now be used in language definition files in order to be able to keep any settings provided by the pattern file.

## 4 Changes in Babel version 3.6

In Babel version 3.6 a number of bugs that were found in version 3.5 are fixed. Also a number of changes and additions have occurred:

- A new environment `otherlanguage*` is introduced. it only switches the ‘specials’, but leaves the ‘captions’ untouched.
- The shorthands are no longer fully expandable. Some problems could only be solved by peeking at the token following an active character. The advantage is that `'{a}` works as expected for languages that have the `'` active.
- Support for typesetting french texts is much enhanced; the file `francais.ldf` is now replaced by `frenchb.ldf` which is maintained by Daniel Flipo.
- Support for typesetting the russian language is again available. The language definition file was originally developed by Olga Lapko from CyrTUG. The fonts needed to typeset the russian language are now part of the babel distribution. The support is not yet up to the level which is needed according to Olga, but this is a start.
- Support for typesetting greek texts is now also available. What is offered in this release is a first attempt; it will be enhanced later on by Yannis Haralambous.
- in babel 3.6j some hooks have been added for the development of support for Hebrew typesetting.
- Support for typesetting texts in Afrikaans (a variant of Dutch, spoken in South Africa) has been added to `dutch.ldf`.
- Support for typesetting Welsh texts is now available.
- A new command `\aliasshorthand` is introduced. It seems that in Poland various conventions are used to type the necessary Polish letters. It is now possible to use the character `/` as a shorthand character instead of the character `"`, by issuing the command `\aliasshorthand{"}{/}`.
- The shorthand mechanism now deals correctly with characters that are already active.
- Shorthand characters are made active at `\begin{document}`, not earlier. This is to prevent problems with other packages.
- A *preambleonly* command `\substitutefontfamily` has been added to create `.fd` files on the fly when the font families of the Latin text differ from the families used for the Cyrillic or Greek parts of the text.
- Three new commands `\LdfInit`, `\ldf@quit` and `\ldf@finish` are introduced that perform a number of standard tasks.
- In babel 3.6k the language Ukrainian has been added and the support for Russian typesetting has been adapted to the package ‘cyrillic’ to be released with the December 1998 release of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>.

## 5 Changes in Babel version 3.5

In Babel version 3.5 a lot of changes have been made when compared with the previous release. Here is a list of the most important ones:

- the selection of the language is delayed until `\begin{document}`, which means you must add appropriate `\selectlanguage` commands if you include `\hyphenation` lists in the preamble of your document.



- `babel` now has a `language` environment and a new command `\foreignlanguage`;
- the way active characters are dealt with is completely changed. They are called ‘shorthands’; one can have three levels of shorthands: on the user level, the language level, and on ‘system level’. A consequence of the new way of handling active characters is that they are now written to auxiliary files ‘verbatim’;
- A language change now also writes information in the `.aux` file, as the change might also affect typesetting the table of contents. The consequence is that an `.aux` file generated by a LaTeX format with `babel` preloaded gives errors when read with a LaTeX format without `babel`; but I think this probably doesn’t occur;
- `babel` is now compatible with the `inputenc` and `fontenc` packages;
- the language definition files now have a new extension, `ldf`;
- the syntax of the file `language.dat` is extended to be compatible with the `french` package by Bernard Gaulle;
- each language definition file looks for a configuration file which has the same name, but the extension `.cfg`. It can contain any valid L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X code.

## 6 The interface between the core of `babel` and the language definition files

In the core of the `babel` system, several macros are defined for use in language definition files. Their purpose is to make a new language known.

`\addlanguage` The macro `\addlanguage` is a non-outer version of the macro `\newlanguage`, defined in `plain.tex` version 3.x. For older versions of `plain.tex` and `lplain.tex` a substitute definition is used.

`\adddialect` The macro `\adddialect` can be used when two languages can (or must) use the same hyphenation patterns. This can also be useful for languages for which no patterns are preloaded in the format. In such cases the default behaviour of the `babel` system is to define this language as a ‘dialect’ of the language for which the patterns were loaded as `\language0`.

The language definition files must conform to a number of conventions, because these files have to fill in the gaps left by the common code in `babel.def`, i.e., the definitions of the macros that produce texts. Also the language-switching possibility which has been built into the `babel` system has its implications.

The following assumptions are made:

- Some of the language-specific definitions might be used by plain T<sub>E</sub>X users, so the files have to be coded so that they can be read by both L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and plain T<sub>E</sub>X. The current format can be checked by looking at the value of the macro `\fmtname`.
- The common part of the `babel` system redefines a number of macros and environments (defined previously in the document style) to put in the names of macros that replace the previously hard-wired texts. These macros have to be defined in the language definition files.
- The language definition files define five macros, used to activate and deactivate the language-specific definitions. These macros are `\langle lang \rangle hyphenmins`, `\langle lang \rangle captions`, `\langle lang \rangle date`, `\langle lang \rangle extras` and `\noextras`; where `\langle lang \rangle` is either the name of the language definition file or the name of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X option that is to be used. These macros and their functions are discussed below.

- When a language definition file is loaded, it can define `\l@<lang>` to be a dialect of `\language0` when `\l@<lang>` is undefined.
- The language definition files can be read in the preamble of the document, but also in the middle of document processing. This means that they have to function independently of the current `\catcode` of the `@` sign.

<code>\providehyphenmins</code>	The macro <code>\providehyphenmins</code> should be used in the language definition files to set the <code>\lefthyphenmin</code> and <code>\righthyphenmin</code> . This macro will check whether these parameters were provided by the hyphenation file before it takes any action.
<code>\langhyphenmins</code>	The macro <code>\&lt;lang&gt;hyphenmins</code> is used to store the values of the <code>\lefthyphenmin</code> and <code>\righthyphenmin</code> .
<code>\captionlang</code>	The macro <code>\caption&lt;lang&gt;</code> defines the macros that hold the texts to replace the original hard-wired texts.
<code>\datelang</code>	The macro <code>\date&lt;lang&gt;</code> defines <code>\today</code> and
<code>\extraslang</code>	The macro <code>\extras&lt;lang&gt;</code> contains all the extra definitions needed for a specific language.
<code>\noextraslang</code>	Because we want to let the user switch between languages, but we do not know what state <code>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> might be in after the execution of <code>\extras&lt;lang&gt;</code> , a macro that brings <code>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> into a predefined state is needed. It will be no surprise that the name of this macro is <code>\noextras&lt;lang&gt;</code> .
<code>\bbl@declare@ttribute</code>	This is a command to be used in the language definition files for declaring a language attribute. It takes three arguments: the name of the language, the attribute to be defined, and the code to be executed when the attribute is to be used.
<code>\main@language</code>	To postpone the activation of the definitions needed for a language until the beginning of a document, all language definition files should use <code>\main@language</code> instead of <code>\selectlanguage</code> . This will just store the name of the language, and the proper language will be activated at the start of the document.
<code>\ProvidesLanguage</code>	The macro <code>\ProvidesLanguage</code> should be used to identify the language definition files. Its syntax is similar to the syntax of the <code>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> command <code>\ProvidesPackage</code> .
<code>\LdfInit</code>	The macro <code>\LdfInit</code> performs a couple of standard checks that must be made at the beginning of a language definition file, such as checking the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, preventing the <code>.ldf</code> file from being processed twice, etc.
<code>\ldf@quit</code>	The macro <code>\ldf@quit</code> does work needed if a <code>.ldf</code> file was processed earlier. This includes resetting the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, preparing the language to be activated at <code>\begin{document}</code> time, and ending the input stream.
<code>\ldf@finish</code>	The macro <code>\ldf@finish</code> does work needed at the end of each <code>.ldf</code> file. This includes resetting the category code of the <code>@</code> -sign, loading a local configuration file, and preparing the language to be activated at <code>\begin{document}</code> time.
<code>\loadlocalcfg</code>	After processing a language definition file, <code>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> can be instructed to load a local configuration file. This file can, for instance, be used to add strings to <code>\caption&lt;lang&gt;</code> to support local document classes. The user will be informed that this configuration file has been loaded. This macro is called by <code>\ldf@finish</code> .
<code>\substitutefontfamily</code>	This command takes three arguments, a font encoding and two font family names. It creates a font description file for the first font in the given encoding. This <code>.fd</code> file will instruct <code>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> to use a font from the second family when a font from the first family in the given encoding seems to be needed.

## 6.1 Support for active characters

In quite a number of language definition files, active characters are introduced. To facilitate this, some support macros are provided.

<code>\initiate@active@char</code>	The internal macro <code>\initiate@active@char</code> is used in language definition files to instruct <code>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> to give a character the category code ‘active’. When a character has been made active it will remain that way until the end of the document. Its definition may vary.
------------------------------------	---

`\bbl@activate`      The command `\bbl@activate` is used to change the way an active character expands. `\bbl@activate` ‘switches on’ the active behaviour of the character. `\bbl@deactivate` lets the active character expand to its former (mostly) non-active self.

`\declare@shorthand`      The macro `\declare@shorthand` is used to define the various shorthands. It takes three arguments: the name for the collection of shorthands this definition belongs to; the character (sequence) that makes up the shorthand, i.e. `~` or `"a`; and the code to be executed when the shorthand is encountered.

`\bbl@add@special`  
`\bbl@remove@special`      The  $\TeX$ book states: “Plain  $\TeX$  includes a macro called `\dospecials` that is essentially a set macro, representing the set of all characters that have a special category code.” [1, p. 380] It is used to set text ‘verbatim’. To make this work if more characters get a special category code, you have to add this character to the macro `\dospecial`.  $\LaTeX$  adds another macro called `\@sanitize` representing the same character set, but without the curly braces. The macros `\bbl@add@special⟨char⟩` and `\bbl@remove@special⟨char⟩` add and remove the character `⟨char⟩` to these two sets.

## 6.2 Support for saving macro definitions

Language definition files may want to *redefine* macros that already exist. Therefore a mechanism for saving (and restoring) the original definition of those macros is provided. We provide two macros for this<sup>1</sup>.

`\babel@save`      To save the current meaning of any control sequence, the macro `\babel@save` is provided. It takes one argument, `⟨csequence⟩`, the control sequence for which the meaning has to be saved.

`\babel@savevariable`      A second macro is provided to save the current value of a variable. In this context, anything that is allowed after the `\the` primitive is considered to be a variable. The macro takes one argument, the `⟨variable⟩`.

The effect of the preceding macros is to append a piece of code to the current definition of `\originalTeX`. When `\originalTeX` is expanded, this code restores the previous definition of the control sequence or the previous value of the variable.

## 6.3 Support for extending macros

`\addto`      The macro `\addto{⟨control sequence⟩}{⟨TeX code⟩}` can be used to extend the definition of a macro. The macro need not be defined. This macro can, for instance, be used in adding instructions to a macro like `\extrasenglish`.

## 6.4 Macros common to a number of languages

`\allowhyphens`      In a couple of European languages compound words are used. This means that when  $\TeX$  has to hyphenate such a compound word, it only does so at the ‘-’ that is used in such words. To allow hyphenation in the rest of such a compound word, the macro `\allowhyphens` can be used.

`\set@low@box`      For some languages, quotes need to be lowered to the baseline. For this purpose the macro `\set@low@box` is available. It takes one argument and puts that argument in an `\hbox`, at the baseline. The result is available in `\box0` for further processing.

`\save@sf@q`      Sometimes it is necessary to preserve the `\spacefactor`. For this purpose the macro `\save@sf@q` is available. It takes one argument, saves the current spacefactor, executes the argument, and restores the spacefactor.

`\bbl@frenchspacing`  
`\bbl@nonfrenchspacing`      The commands `\bbl@frenchspacing` and `\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` can be used to properly switch French spacing on and off.

<sup>1</sup>This mechanism was introduced by Bernd Raichle.

## 7 Compatibility with `german.sty`

The file `german.sty` has been one of the sources of inspiration for the `babel` system. Because of this I wanted to include `german.sty` in the `babel` system. To be able to do that I had to allow for one incompatibility: in the definition of the macro `\selectlanguage` in `german.sty` the argument is used as the *number* for an `\ifcase`. So in this case a call to `\selectlanguage` might look like `\selectlanguage{\german}`.

In the definition of the macro `\selectlanguage` in `babel.def` the argument is used as a part of other macronames, so a call to `\selectlanguage` now looks like `\selectlanguage{german}`. Notice the absence of the escape character. As of version 3.1a of `babel` both syntaxes are allowed.

All other features of the original `german.sty` have been copied into a new file, called `germanb.sty`<sup>2</sup>.

Although the `babel` system was developed to be used with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, some of the features implemented in the language definition files might be needed by plain T<sub>E</sub>X users. Care has been taken that all files in the system can be processed by plain T<sub>E</sub>X.

## 8 Compatibility with `ngerman.sty`

When used with the options `ngerman` or `naustrian`, `babel` will provide all features of the package `ngerman`. There is however one exception: The commands for special hyphenation of double consonants ("ff etc.) and ck ("ck), which are no longer required with the new German orthography, are undefined. With the `ngerman` package, however, these commands will generate appropriate warning messages only.

## 9 Compatibility with the french package

It has been reported to me that the package `french` by Bernard Gaulle (`gaulle@idris.fr`) works together with `babel`. On the other hand, it seems *not* to work well together with a lot of other packages. Therefore I have decided to no longer load `french.ldf` by default. Instead, when you want to use the package by Bernard Gaulle, you will have to request it specifically, by passing either `frenchle` or `frenchpro` as an option to `babel`.

## 10 Identification

The file `babel.sty`<sup>3</sup> is meant for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>, therefor we make sure that the format file used is the right one.

`\ProvidesLanguage` The identification code for each file is something that was introduced in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>. When the command `\ProvidesFile` does not exist, a dummy definition is provided temporarily. For use in the language definition file the command `\ProvidesLanguage` is defined by `babel`.

```
10.1 (*!package)
10.2 \ifx\ProvidesFile\@undefined
10.3 \def\ProvidesFile#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
10.4   \wlog{File: #1 #4 #3 <#2>}%
10.5 (*kernel & patterns)
10.6   \toks8{Babel <#3> and hyphenation patterns for }%
10.7 </kernel & patterns>
```

<sup>2</sup>The 'b' is added to the name to distinguish the file from Partls' file.

<sup>3</sup>The file described in this section is called `babel.dtx`, has version number v3.8j and was last revised on 2008/03/16.

```

10.8   \let\ProvidesFile\@undefined
10.9   }

```

As an alternative for `\ProvidesFile` we define `\ProvidesLanguage` here to be used in the language definition files.

```

10.10 (*kernel)
10.11   \def\ProvidesLanguage#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
10.12     \wlog{Language: #1 #4 #3 <#2>}%
10.13   }
10.14 \else

```

In this case we save the original definition of `\ProvidesFile` in `\bbl@tempa` and restore it after we have stored the version of the file in `\toks8`.

```

10.15 (*kernel & patterns)
10.16   \let\bbl@tempa\ProvidesFile
10.17   \def\ProvidesFile#1[#2 #3 #4]{%
10.18     \toks8{Babel <#3> and hyphenation patterns for }%
10.19     \bbl@tempa#1[#2 #3 #4]%
10.20     \let\ProvidesFile\bbl@tempa}
10.21 \kernel & patterns)

```

When `\ProvidesFile` is defined we give `\ProvidesLanguage` a similar definition.

```

10.22   \def\ProvidesLanguage#1{%
10.23     \begingroup
10.24       \catcode'\ 10 %
10.25       \@makeother\/%
10.26       \@ifnextchar[%]
10.27         {\@provideslanguage{#1}}{\@provideslanguage{#1}[]}}
10.28   \def\@provideslanguage#1[#2]{%
10.29     \wlog{Language: #1 #2}%
10.30     \expandafter\xdef\csname ver@#1.ldf\endcsname{#2}%
10.31     \endgroup}
10.32 \kernel)
10.33 \fi
10.34 \!package)

```

Identify each file that is produced from this source file.

```

10.35 (+package)\ProvidesPackage{babel}
10.36 (+core)\ProvidesFile{babel.def}
10.37 (+kernel & patterns)\ProvidesFile{hyphen.cfg}
10.38 (+kernel&!patterns)\ProvidesFile{switch.def}
10.39 (+driver&!user)\ProvidesFile{babel.drv}
10.40 (+driver & user)\ProvidesFile{user.drv}
10.41   [2008/03/16 v3.8j %
10.42 (+package)   The Babel package]
10.43 (+core)     Babel common definitions]
10.44 (+kernel)   Babel language switching mechanism]
10.45 (+driver)]

```

## 11 The Package File

In order to make use of the features of  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ , the `babel` system contains a package file, `babel.sty`. This file is loaded by the `\usepackage` command and defines all the language options known in the `babel` system. It also takes care of a number of compatibility issues with other packages.

### 11.1 Language options

```

11.1 (*package)
11.2 \ifx\LdfInit\@undefined\input babel.def\relax\fi

```

For all the languages supported we need to declare an option.

```

11.3 \DeclareOption{acadian}{\input{frenchb.ldf}}

```

```

11.4 \DeclareOption{albanian}{\input{albanian.ldf}}
11.5 \DeclareOption{afrikaans}{\input{dutch.ldf}}
11.6 \DeclareOption{american}{\input{english.ldf}}
11.7 \DeclareOption{australian}{\input{english.ldf}}
  Austrian is really a dialect of German.
11.8 \DeclareOption{austrian}{\input{germanb.ldf}}
11.9 \DeclareOption{bahasa}{\input{bahasai.ldf}}
11.10 \DeclareOption{indonesian}{\input{bahasai.ldf}}
11.11 \DeclareOption{indon}{\input{bahasai.ldf}}
11.12 \DeclareOption{bahasai}{\input{bahasai.ldf}}
11.13 \DeclareOption{malay}{\input{bahasam.ldf}}
11.14 \DeclareOption{meyalu}{\input{bahasam.ldf}}
11.15 \DeclareOption{bahasam}{\input{bahasam.ldf}}
11.16 \DeclareOption{basque}{\input{basque.ldf}}
11.17 \DeclareOption{brazil}{\input{portuges.ldf}}
11.18 \DeclareOption{brazilian}{\input{portuges.ldf}}
11.19 \DeclareOption{breton}{\input{breton.ldf}}
11.20 \DeclareOption{british}{\input{english.ldf}}
11.21 \DeclareOption{bulgarian}{\input{bulgarian.ldf}}
11.22 \DeclareOption{canadian}{\input{english.ldf}}
11.23 \DeclareOption{canadien}{\input{frenchb.ldf}}
11.24 \DeclareOption{catalan}{\input{catalan.ldf}}
11.25 \DeclareOption{croatian}{\input{croatian.ldf}}
11.26 \DeclareOption{czech}{\input{czech.ldf}}
11.27 \DeclareOption{danish}{\input{danish.ldf}}
11.28 \DeclareOption{dutch}{\input{dutch.ldf}}
11.29 \DeclareOption{english}{\input{english.ldf}}
11.30 \DeclareOption{esperanto}{\input{esperanto.ldf}}
11.31 \DeclareOption{estonian}{\input{estonian.ldf}}
11.32 \DeclareOption{finnish}{\input{finnish.ldf}}

```

The babel support of French used to be stored in `francais.ldf`; therefor the  $\LaTeX$ 2.09 option used to be `francais`. The hyphenation patterns may be loaded as either `'french'` or as `'francais'`.

```

11.33 \DeclareOption{francais}{\input{frenchb.ldf}}
11.34 \DeclareOption{frenchb}{\input{frenchb.ldf}}

```

With  $\LaTeX$ 2<sub>ε</sub> we can now also use the option `french` and still call the file `frenchb.ldf`.

```

11.35 \DeclareOption{french}{\input{frenchb.ldf}}%
11.36 \DeclareOption{galician}{\input{galician.ldf}}
11.37 \DeclareOption{german}{\input{germanb.ldf}}
11.38 \DeclareOption{germanb}{\input{germanb.ldf}}
11.39 \DeclareOption{greek}{\input{greek.ldf}}
11.40 \DeclareOption{polutonikogreek}{%
11.41   \input{greek.ldf}}%
11.42   \languageattribute{greek}{polutoniko}}
11.43 \DeclareOption{hebrew}{%
11.44   \input{rlbabel.def}}%
11.45   \input{hebrew.ldf}}
  hungarian is just a synonym for magyar
11.46 \DeclareOption{hungarian}{\input{magyar.ldf}}
11.47 \DeclareOption{icelandic}{\input{icelandic.ldf}}
11.48 \DeclareOption{interlingua}{\input{interlingua.ldf}}
11.49 \DeclareOption{irish}{\input{irish.ldf}}
11.50 \DeclareOption{italian}{\input{italian.ldf}}
11.51 \DeclareOption{latin}{\input{latin.ldf}}
11.52 \DeclareOption{lowersorbian}{\input{lsorbian.ldf}}
11.53 %^A\DeclareOption{kannada}{\input{kannada.ldf}}
11.54 \DeclareOption{magyar}{\input{magyar.ldf}}

```

```

11.55 %^A\DeclareOption{nagari}{\input{nagari.ldf}}
    ‘New’ German orthography, including Austrian variant:
11.56 \DeclareOption{naustrian}{\input{ngermanb.ldf}}
11.57 \DeclareOption{newzealand}{\input{english.ldf}}
11.58 \DeclareOption{ngerman}{\input{ngermanb.ldf}}
11.59 \DeclareOption{norsk}{\input{norsk.ldf}}
11.60 \DeclareOption{samin}{\input{samin.ldf}}

    For Norwegian two spelling variants are provided.
11.61 \DeclareOption{nynorsk}{\input{norsk.ldf}}
11.62 \DeclareOption{polish}{\input{polish.ldf}}
11.63 \DeclareOption{portuges}{\input{portuges.ldf}}
11.64 \DeclareOption{portuguese}{\input{portuges.ldf}}
11.65 \DeclareOption{romanian}{\input{romanian.ldf}}
11.66 \DeclareOption{russian}{\input{russianb.ldf}}

11.67 %^A\DeclareOption{sanskrit}{\input{sanskrit.ldf}}
11.68 \DeclareOption{scottish}{\input{scottish.ldf}}
11.69 \DeclareOption{serbian}{\input{serbian.ldf}}
11.70 \DeclareOption{slovak}{\input{slovak.ldf}}
11.71 \DeclareOption{slovene}{\input{slovene.ldf}}
11.72 \DeclareOption{spanish}{\input{spanish.ldf}}
11.73 \DeclareOption{swedish}{\input{swedish.ldf}}
11.74 %^A\DeclareOption{tamil}{\input{tamil.ldf}}
11.75 \DeclareOption{turkish}{\input{turkish.ldf}}
11.76 \DeclareOption{ukrainian}{\input{ukraineb.ldf}}
11.77 \DeclareOption{uppersorbian}{\input{usorbian.ldf}}
11.78 \DeclareOption{welsh}{\input{welsh.ldf}}

11.79 \DeclareOption{UKenglish}{\input{english.ldf}}
11.80 \DeclareOption{USenglish}{\input{english.ldf}}

```

For all those languages for which the option name is the same as the name of the language specific file we specify a default option, which tries to load the file specified. If this doesn't succeed an error is signalled.

```

11.81 \DeclareOption*{%
11.82   \InputIfFileExists{\CurrentOption.ldf}{}{}%
11.83   \PackageError{babel}{%
11.84     Language definition file \CurrentOption.ldf not found}{%
11.85     Maybe you misspelled the language option?}}%
11.86 }

```

Another way to extend the list of ‘known’ options for babel is to create the file `bblopts.cfg` in which one can add option declarations.

```

11.87 \InputIfFileExists{bblopts.cfg}{%
11.88   \typeout{*****^J%
11.89           * Local config file bblopts.cfg used^^J%
11.90           *}%
11.91 }{}

```

Apart from all the language options we also have a few options that influence the behaviour of language definition files.

The following options don't do anything themselves, they are just defined in order to make it possible for language definition files to check if one of them was specified by the user.

```

11.92 \DeclareOption{activeacute}{}
11.93 \DeclareOption{activegrave}{}

```

The next option tells babel to leave shorthand characters active at the end of processing the package. This is *not* the default as it can cause problems with other packages, but for those who want to use the shorthand characters in the preamble of their documents this can help.

```

11.94 \DeclareOption{KeepShorthandsActive}{}

```

The options have to be processed in the order in which the user specified them:

```

11.95 \ProcessOptions*

```

In order to catch the case where the user forgot to specify a language we check whether `\bbl@main@language`, has become defined. If not, no language has been loaded and an error message is displayed.

```

11.96 \ifx\bbl@main@language\@undefined
11.97   \PackageError{babel}{%
11.98     You haven't specified a language option}{%
11.99     You need to specify a language, either as a global
11.100    option\MessageBreak
11.101    or as an optional argument to the \string\usepackage\space
11.102    command; \MessageBreak
11.103    You shouldn't try to proceed from here, type x to quit.}

```

To prevent undefined command errors when the user insists on continuing we load `babel.def` here. He should expect more errors though.

```

11.104 \input{babel.def}
11.105 \fi

```

`\substitutefontfamily` The command `\substitutefontfamily` creates an `.fd` file on the fly. The first argument is an encoding mnemonic, the second and third arguments are font family names.

```

11.106 \def\substitutefontfamily#1#2#3{%
11.107   \lowercase{\immediate\openout15=#1#2.fd\relax}%
11.108   \immediate\write15{%
11.109     \string\ProvidesFile{#1#2.fd}%
11.110     [\the\year/\two@digits{\the\month}/\two@digits{\the\day}
11.111     \space generated font description file]^^J
11.112     \string\DeclareFontFamily{#1}{#2}{^^J
11.113     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{n}{<->ssub * #3/m/n}{^^J
11.114     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{it}{<->ssub * #3/m/it}{^^J
11.115     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{sl}{<->ssub * #3/m/sl}{^^J
11.116     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{m}{sc}{<->ssub * #3/m/sc}{^^J
11.117     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{n}{<->ssub * #3/bx/n}{^^J
11.118     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{it}{<->ssub * #3/bx/it}{^^J
11.119     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{sl}{<->ssub * #3/bx/sl}{^^J
11.120     \string\DeclareFontShape{#1}{#2}{b}{sc}{<->ssub * #3/bx/sc}{^^J
11.121     }%
11.122     \closeout15
11.123   }

```

This command should only be used in the preamble of a document.

```

11.124 \@onlypreamble\substitutefontfamily
11.125 </package>

```

## 12 The Kernel of Babel

The kernel of the `babel` system is stored in either `hyphen.cfg` or `switch.def` and `babel.def`. The file `hyphen.cfg` is a file that can be loaded into the format, which is necessary when you want to be able to switch hyphenation patterns. The file `babel.def` contains some `TeX` code that can be read in at run time. When `babel.def` is loaded it checks if `hyphen.cfg` is in the format; if not the file `switch.def` is loaded.

Because plain `TeX` users might want to use some of the features of the `babel` system too, care has to be taken that plain `TeX` can process the files. For this reason the current format will have to be checked in a number of places. Some of the code below is common to plain `TeX` and `LATeX`, some of it is for the `LATeX` case only.

When the command `\AtBeginDocument` doesn't exist we assume that we are dealing with a plain-based format. In that case the file `plain.def` is needed.

```

12.1 (*kernel | core)
12.2 \ifx\AtBeginDocument\@undefined

```



But we need to use the second part of `plain.def` (when we load it from `switch.def`) which we can do by defining `\adddialect`.

```
12.3 <kernel&!patterns> \def\adddialect{}
12.4 \input plain.def\relax
12.5 \fi
12.6 </kernel | core>
```

Check the presence of the command `\iflanguage`, if it is undefined read the file `switch.def`.

```
12.7 <*core>
12.8 \ifx\iflanguage\undefined
12.9 \input switch.def\relax
12.10 \fi
12.11 </core>
```

## 12.1 Encoding issues (part 1)

The first thing we need to do is to determine, at `\begin{document}`, which latin fontencoding to use.

`\latinencoding` When text is being typeset in an encoding other than ‘latin’ (OT1 or T1), it would be nice to still have Roman numerals come out in the Latin encoding. So we first assume that the current encoding at the end of processing the package is the Latin encoding.

```
12.12 <*core>
12.13 \AtEndOfPackage{\edef\latinencoding{\cf@encoding}}
```

But this might be overruled with a later loading of the package `fontenc`. Therefore we check at the execution of `\begin{document}` whether it was loaded with the T1 option. The normal way to do this (using `\@ifpackageloaded`) is disabled for this package. Now we have to revert to parsing the internal macro `\@filelist` which contains all the filenames loaded.

```
12.14 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.15 \gdef\latinencoding{OT1}%
12.16 \ifx\cf@encoding\bbl@t@one
12.17 \xdef\latinencoding{\bbl@t@one}%
12.18 \else
12.19 \@ifl@aded{def}{t1enc}{\xdef\latinencoding{\bbl@t@one}}{}%
12.20 \fi
12.21 }
```

`\latintext` Then we can define the command `\latintext` which is a declarative switch to a latin font-encoding.

```
12.22 \DeclareRobustCommand{\latintext}{%
12.23 \fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
12.24 \def\encodingdefault{\latinencoding}}
```

`\textlatin` This command takes an argument which is then typeset using the requested font encoding. In order to avoid many encoding switches it operates in a local scope.

```
12.25 \ifx\undefined\DeclareTextFontCommand
12.26 \DeclareRobustCommand{\textlatin}[1]{\leavevmode{\latintext #1}}
12.27 \else
12.28 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textlatin}{\latintext}
12.29 \fi
12.30 </core>
```

We also need to redefine a number of commands to ensure that the right font encoding is used, but this can’t be done before `babel.def` is loaded.

## 12.2 Multiple languages

With T<sub>E</sub>X version 3.0 it has become possible to load hyphenation patterns for more than one language. This means that some extra administration has to be taken care of. The user has to know for which languages patterns have been loaded, and what values of `\language` have been used.

Some discussion has been going on in the T<sub>E</sub>X world about how to use `\language`. Some have suggested to set a fixed standard, i. e., patterns for each language should *always* be loaded in the same location. It has also been suggested to use the ISO list for this purpose. Others have pointed out that the ISO list contains more than 256 languages, which have *not* been numbered consecutively.

I think the best way to use `\language`, is to use it dynamically. This code implements an algorithm to do so. It uses an external file in which the person who maintains a T<sub>E</sub>X environment has to record for which languages he has hyphenation patterns *and* in which files these are stored<sup>4</sup>. When hyphenation exceptions are stored in a separate file this can be indicated by naming that file *after* the file with the hyphenation patterns.

This “configuration file” can contain empty lines and comments, as well as lines which start with an equals (=) sign. Such a line will instruct L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X that the hyphenation patterns just processed have to be known under an alternative name. Here is an example:

```
% File      : language.dat
% Purpose   : tell iniTeX what files with patterns to load.
english    english.hyphenations
=british

dutch      hyphen.dutch exceptions.dutch % Nederlands
german     hyphen.ger
```

As the file `switch.def` needs to be read only once, we check whether it was read before. If it was, the command `\iflanguage` is already defined, so we can stop processing.

```
12.31 (*kernel)
12.32 (*!patterns)
12.33 \expandafter\ifx\csname iflanguage\endcsname\relax \else
12.34 \expandafter\endinput
12.35 \fi
12.36 /!patterns)
```

`\language` Plain T<sub>E</sub>X version 3.0 provides the primitive `\language` that is used to store the current language. When used with a pre-3.0 version this function has to be implemented by allocating a counter.

```
12.37 \ifx\language\@undefined
12.38   \csname newcount\endcsname\language
12.39 \fi
```

`\last@language` Another counter is used to store the last language defined. For pre-3.0 formats an extra counter has to be allocated,

```
12.40 \ifx\newlanguage\@undefined
12.41   \csname newcount\endcsname\last@language
   plain TEX version 3.0 uses \count 19 for this purpose.
12.42 \else
12.43   \countdef\last@language=19
12.44 \fi
```

---

<sup>4</sup>This is because different operating systems sometimes use *very* different file-naming conventions.

`\addlanguage` To add languages to T<sub>E</sub>X's memory plain T<sub>E</sub>X version 3.0 supplies `\newlanguage`, in a pre-3.0 environment a similar macro has to be provided. For both cases a new macro is defined here, because the original `\newlanguage` was defined to be `\outer`.

For a format based on plain version 2.x, the definition of `\newlanguage` can not be copied because `\count 19` is used for other purposes in these formats. Therefor `\addlanguage` is defined using a definition based on the macros used to define `\newlanguage` in plain T<sub>E</sub>X version 3.0.

```

12.45 \ifx\newlanguage\undefined
12.46 \def\addlanguage#1{%
12.47   \global\advance\last@language \@ne
12.48   \ifnum\last@language<\@cclvi
12.49   \else
12.50     \errmessage{No room for a new \string\language!}%
12.51   \fi
12.52   \global\chardef#1\last@language
12.53   \wlog{\string#1 = \string\language\the\last@language}}

```

For formats based on plain version 3.0 the definition of `\newlanguage` can be simply copied, removing `\outer`.

```

12.54 \else
12.55   \def\addlanguage{\alloc@9\language\chardef\@cclvi}
12.56 \fi

```

`\adddialect` The macro `\adddialect` can be used to add the name of a dialect or variant language, for which an already defined hyphenation table can be used.

```

12.57 \def\adddialect#1#2{%
12.58   \global\chardef#1#2\relax
12.59   \wlog{\string#1 = a dialect from \string\language#2}}

```

`\iflanguage` Users might want to test (in a private package for instance) which language is currently active. For this we provide a test macro, `\iflanguage`, that has three arguments. It checks whether the first argument is a known language. If so, it compares the first argument with the value of `\language`. Then, depending on the result of the comparison, it executes either the second or the third argument.

```

12.60 \def\iflanguage#1{%
12.61   \expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1\endcsname\relax
12.62     \nolanerr{#1}%
12.63   \else
12.64     \bbl@afterfi{\ifnum\csname l@#1\endcsname=\language
12.65       \expandafter\@firstoftwo
12.66     \else
12.67       \expandafter\@secondoftwo
12.68     \fi}%
12.69   \fi}

```

`\selectlanguage` The macro `\selectlanguage` checks whether the language is already defined before it performs its actual task, which is to update `\language` and activate language-specific definitions.

To allow the call of `\selectlanguage` either with a control sequence name or with a simple string as argument, we have to use a trick to delete the optional escape character.

To convert a control sequence to a string, we use the `\string` primitive. Next we have to look at the first character of this string and compare it with the escape character. Because this escape character can be changed by setting the internal integer `\escapechar` to a character number, we have to compare this number with the character of the string. To do this we have to use T<sub>E</sub>X's backquote notation to specify the character as a number.

If the first character of the `\string`'ed argument is the current escape character, the comparison has stripped this character and the rest in the 'then' part consists of the rest of the control sequence name. Otherwise we know that either the argument is not a control sequence or `\escapechar` is set to a value outside of the character range 0–255.

If the user gives an empty argument, we provide a default argument for `\string`. This argument should expand to nothing.

```
12.70 \edef\selectlanguage{%
12.71   \noexpand\protect
12.72   \expandafter\noexpand\csname selectlanguage \endcsname
12.73 }
```

Because the command `\selectlanguage` could be used in a moving argument it expands to `\protect\selectlanguage_`. Therefore, we have to make sure that a macro `\protect` exists. If it doesn't it is `\let` to `\relax`.

```
12.74 \ifx\@undefined\protect\let\protect\relax\fi
```

As L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 writes to files *expanded* whereas L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> takes care *not* to expand the arguments of `\write` statements we need to be a bit clever about the way we add information to `.aux` files. Therefore we introduce the macro `\xstring` which should expand to the right amount of `\string`'s.

```
12.75 \ifx\documentclass\@undefined
12.76   \def\xstring{\string\string\string}
12.77 \else
12.78   \let\xstring\string
12.79 \fi
```

Since version 3.5 `babel` writes entries to the auxiliary files in order to typeset table of contents etc. in the correct language environment.

`\bbl@pop@language` *But* when the language change happens *inside* a group the end of the group doesn't write anything to the auxiliary files. Therefore we need T<sub>E</sub>X's `aftergroup` mechanism to help us. The command `\aftergroup` stores the token immediately following it to be executed when the current group is closed. So we define a temporary control sequence `\bbl@pop@language` to be executed at the end of the group. It calls `\bbl@set@language` with the name of the current language as its argument.

`\bbl@language@stack` The previous solution works for one level of nesting groups, but as soon as more levels are used it is no longer adequate. For that case we need to keep track of the nested languages using a stack mechanism. This stack is called `\bbl@language@stack` and initially empty.

```
12.80 \xdef\bbl@language@stack{}
```

When using a stack we need a mechanism to push an element on the stack and to retrieve the information afterwards.

`\bbl@push@language` The stack is simply a list of languagenames, separated with a '+' sign; the push function can be simple:

`\bbl@pop@language`

```
12.81 \def\bbl@push@language{%
12.82   \xdef\bbl@language@stack{\languagename+\bbl@language@stack}%
12.83 }
```

Retrieving information from the stack is a little bit less simple, as we need to remove the element from the stack while storing it in the macro `\languagename`. For this we first define a helper function.

`\bbl@pop@lang` This macro stores its first element (which is delimited by the '+'-sign) in `\languagename` and stores the rest of the string (delimited by '-') in its third argument.

```
12.84 \def\bbl@pop@lang#1+#2-#3{%
12.85   \def\languagename{#1}\xdef#3{#2}%
12.86 }
```

The reason for the somewhat weird arrangement of arguments to the helper function is the fact it is called in the following way:

```
12.87 \def\bbl@pop@language{%
12.88   \expandafter\bbl@pop@lang\bbl@language@stack-\bbl@language@stack
```

This means that before `\bbl@pop@lang` is executed  $\TeX$  first *expands* the stack, stored in `\bbl@language@stack`. The result of that is that the argument string of `\bbl@pop@lang` contains one or more language names, each followed by a '+'-sign (zero language names won't occur as this macro will only be called after something has been pushed on the stack) followed by the '-'-sign and finally the reference to the stack.

```
12.89 $$
12.90   \expandafter\bbl@set@language\expandafter{\language}%
12.91   }
```

Once the name of the previous language is retrieved from the stack, it is fed to `\bbl@set@language` to do the actual work of switching everything that needs switching.

```
12.92 \expandafter\def\csname selectlanguage \endcsname#1{%
12.93   \bbl@push@language
12.94   \aftergroup\bbl@pop@language
12.95   \bbl@set@language{#1}}
```

`\bbl@set@language` The macro `\bbl@set@language` takes care of switching the language environment *and* of writing entries on the auxiliary files.

```
12.96 \def\bbl@set@language#1{%
12.97   \edef\language{%
12.98     \ifnum\escapechar=\expandafter'\string#1\@empty
12.99     \else \string#1\@empty\fi}%
12.100  \select@language{\language}%
```

We also write a command to change the current language in the auxiliary files.

```
12.101 \if@filesw
12.102   \protected@write\auxout{}\string\select@language{\language}}%
12.103   \addtocontents{toc}{\xstring\select@language{\language}}%
12.104   \addtocontents{lof}{\xstring\select@language{\language}}%
12.105   \addtocontents{lot}{\xstring\select@language{\language}}%
12.106 \fi}
```

First, check if the user asks for a known language. If so, update the value of `\language` and call `\originalTeX` to bring  $\TeX$  in a certain pre-defined state.

```
12.107 \def\select@language#1{%
12.108   \expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1\endcsname\relax
12.109     \@nolanerr{#1}%
12.110   \else
12.111     \expandafter\ifx\csname date#1\endcsname\relax
12.112       \@noopterr{#1}%
12.113     \else
12.114       \language=\csname l@#1\endcsname\relax
12.115       \originalTeX
```

The name of the language is stored in the control sequence `\language`. The contents of this control sequence could be tested in the following way:

```
\edef\tmp{\string english}
\ifx\language\tmp
...
\else
...
\fi
```

The construction with `\string` is necessary because `\language` returns the name with characters of category code 12 (other). Then we have to *redefine* `\originalTeX` to compensate for the things that have been activated. To save memory space for the macro definition of `\originalTeX`, we construct the control sequence name for the `\noextras⟨lang⟩` command at definition time by expanding the `\csname` primitive.

```

12.116     \expandafter\def\expandafter\originalTeX
12.117         \expandafter{\csname noextras#1\endcsname
12.118             \let\originalTeX\@empty}%

12.119     \languageshorthands{none}%
12.120     \babel@beginsave

```

Now activate the language-specific definitions. This is done by constructing the names of three macros by concatenating three words with the argument of `\selectlanguage`, and calling these macros.

```

12.121     \csname captions#1\endcsname
12.122     \csname date#1\endcsname
12.123     \csname extras#1\endcsname\relax

```

The switching of the values of `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` is somewhat different. First we save their current values, then we check if `\⟨lang⟩hyphenmins` is defined. If it is not, we set default values (2 and 3), otherwise the values in `\⟨lang⟩hyphenmins` will be used.

```

12.124     \babel@savevariable\lefthyphenmin
12.125     \babel@savevariable\righthyphenmin
12.126     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
12.127         \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@\relax
12.128     \else
12.129         \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
12.130             \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
12.131     \fi
12.132     \fi
12.133 \fi}

```

**otherlanguage** The `otherlanguage` environment can be used as an alternative to using the `\selectlanguage` declarative command. When you are typesetting a document which mixes left-to-right and right-to-left typesetting you have to use this environment in order to let things work as you expect them to.

The first thing this environment does is store the name of the language in `\language`; it then calls `\selectlanguage_` to switch on everything that is needed for this language. The `\ignorespaces` command is necessary to hide the environment when it is entered in horizontal mode.

```

12.134 \long\def\otherlanguage#1{%
12.135     \csname selectlanguage \endcsname{#1}%
12.136     \ignorespaces
12.137 }

```

The `\endotherlanguage` part of the environment calls `\originalTeX` to restore (most of) the settings and tries to hide itself when it is called in horizontal mode.

```

12.138 \long\def\endotherlanguage{%
12.139     \originalTeX
12.140     \global\@ignoretrue\ignorespaces
12.141 }

```

**otherlanguage\*** The `otherlanguage` environment is meant to be used when a large part of text from a different language needs to be typeset, but without changing the translation of words such as ‘figure’.

This environment makes use of `\foreign@language`.

```

12.142 \expandafter\def\csname otherlanguage*\endcsname#1{%
12.143     \foreign@language{#1}%
12.144 }

```

At the end of the environment we need to switch off the extra definitions. The grouping mechanism of the environment will take care of resetting the correct hyphenation rules.

```
12.145 \expandafter\def\csname endotherlanguage*\endcsname{%
12.146   \csname noextras\language\endcsname
12.147 }
```

`\foreignlanguage` The `\foreignlanguage` command is another substitute for the `\selectlanguage` command. This command takes two arguments, the first argument is the name of the language to use for typesetting the text specified in the second argument.

Unlike `\selectlanguage` this command doesn't switch *everything*, it only switches the hyphenation rules and the extra definitions for the language specified. It does this within a group and assumes the `\extras<lang>` command doesn't make any `\global` changes. The coding is very similar to part of `\selectlanguage`.

```
12.148 \def\foreignlanguage{\protect\csname foreignlanguage \endcsname}
12.149 \expandafter\def\csname foreignlanguage \endcsname#1#2{%
12.150   \begingroup
12.151     \originalTeX
12.152     \foreign@language{#1}%
12.153     #2%
12.154     \csname noextras#1\endcsname
12.155   \endgroup
12.156 }
```

`\foreign@language` This macro does the work for `\foreignlanguage` and the `otherlanguage*` environment.

```
12.157 \def\foreign@language#1{%
```

First we need to store the name of the language and check that it is a known language.

```
12.158   \def\language{#1}%
12.159   \expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1\endcsname\relax
12.160     \nolanerr{#1}%
12.161   \else
```

If it is we can select the proper hyphenation table and switch on the extra definitions for this language.

```
12.162     \language=\csname l@#1\endcsname\relax
12.163     \languageshorthands{none}%
```

Then we set the left- and right hyphenmin variables.

```
12.164     \csname extras#1\endcsname
12.165     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
12.166       \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax
12.167     \else
12.168       \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
12.169         \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
12.170     \fi
12.171   \fi
12.172 }
```

`hyphenrules` The environment `hyphenrules` can be used to select *just* the hyphenation rules. This environment does *not* change `\language` and when the hyphenation rules specified were not loaded it has no effect.

```
12.173 \def\hyphenrules#1{%
12.174   \expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1\endcsname\undefined
12.175     \nolanerr{#1}%
12.176   \else
12.177     \language=\csname l@#1\endcsname\relax
12.178     \languageshorthands{none}%
12.179     \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
12.180       \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@@\relax
```

```

12.181     \else
12.182     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
12.183     \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
12.184     \fi
12.185 \fi
12.186 }
12.187 \def\endhyphenrules{}

```

`\providehyphenmins` The macro `\providehyphenmins` should be used in the language definition files to provide a *default* setting for the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`. If the macro `\(lang)hyphenmins` is already defined this command has no effect.

```

12.188 \def\providehyphenmins#1#2{%
12.189   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
12.190   \@namedef{#1hyphenmins}{#2}%
12.191   \fi}

```

`\set@hyphenmins` This macro sets the values of `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`. It expects two values as its argument.

```

12.192 \def\set@hyphenmins#1#2{\lefthyphenmin#1\righthyphenmin#2}

```

`\LdfInit` This macro is defined in two versions. The first version is to be part of the ‘kernel’ of `babel`, ie. the part that is loaded in the format; the second version is defined in `babel.def`. The version in the format just checks the category code of the ampersand and then loads `babel.def`.

```

12.193 \def\LdfInit{%
12.194   \chardef\atcatcode=\catcode'\@
12.195   \catcode'\@=11\relax
12.196   \input babel.def\relax

   The category code of the ampersand is restored and the macro calls itself again
   with the new definition from babel.def

12.197   \catcode'\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
12.198   \LdfInit}
12.199 </kernel>

```

The second version of this macro takes two arguments. The first argument is the name of the language that will be defined in the language definition file; the second argument is either a control sequence or a string from which a control sequence should be constructed. The existence of the control sequence indicates that the file has been processed before.

At the start of processing a language definition file we always check the category code of the ampersand. We make sure that it is a ‘letter’ during the processing of the file.

```

12.200 (*core)
12.201 \def\LdfInit#1#2{%
12.202   \chardef\atcatcode=\catcode'\@
12.203   \catcode'\@=11\relax

```

Another character that needs to have the correct category code during processing of language definition files is the equals sign, ‘=’, because it is sometimes used in constructions with the `\let` primitive. Therefore we store its current catcode and restore it later on.

```

12.204   \chardef\eqcatcode=\catcode'\=
12.205   \catcode'\==12\relax

```

Now we check whether we should perhaps stop the processing of this file. To do this we first need to check whether the second argument that is passed to `\LdfInit` is a control sequence. We do that by looking at the first token after passing `#2` through `string`. When it is equal to `\@backslashchar` we are dealing with a control sequence which we can compare with `\@undefined`.

```

12.206   \let\bb1@tempa\relax

```



```

12.207 \expandafter\if\expandafter\@backslashchar
12.208         \expandafter\@car\string#2\@nil
12.209     \ifx#2\@undefined
12.210     \else

```

If so, we call `\ldf@quit` (but after the end of this `\if` construction) to set the main language, restore the category code of the `@`-sign and call `\endinput`.

```

12.211         \def\bb1@tempa{\ldf@quit{#1}}
12.212     \fi
12.213 \else

```

When `#2` was *not* a control sequence we construct one and compare it with `\relax`.

```

12.214     \expandafter\ifx\csname#2\endcsname\relax
12.215     \else
12.216         \def\bb1@tempa{\ldf@quit{#1}}
12.217     \fi
12.218 \fi
12.219 \bb1@tempa

```

Finally we check `\originalTeX`.

```

12.220 \ifx\originalTeX\@undefined
12.221     \let\originalTeX\@empty
12.222 \else
12.223     \originalTeX
12.224 \fi}

```

`\ldf@quit` This macro interrupts the processing of a language definition file.

```

12.225 \def\ldf@quit#1{%
12.226     \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
12.227     \catcode'\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
12.228     \catcode'\==\eqcatcode \let\eqcatcode\relax
12.229     \endinput
12.230 }

```

`\ldf@finish` This macro takes one argument. It is the name of the language that was defined in the language definition file.

We load the local configuration file if one is present, we set the main language (taking into account that the argument might be a control sequence that needs to be expanded) and reset the category code of the `@`-sign.

```

12.231 \def\ldf@finish#1{%
12.232     \loadlocalcfg{#1}%
12.233     \expandafter\main@language\expandafter{#1}%
12.234     \catcode'\@=\atcatcode \let\atcatcode\relax
12.235     \catcode'\==\eqcatcode \let\eqcatcode\relax
12.236 }

```

After the preamble of the document the commands `\LdfInit`, `\ldf@quit` and `\ldf@finish` are no longer needed. Therefore they are turned into warning messages in `LATEX`.

```

12.237 \@onlypreamble\LdfInit
12.238 \@onlypreamble\ldf@quit
12.239 \@onlypreamble\ldf@finish

```

`\main@language` This command should be used in the various language definition files. It stores its argument in `\bb1@main@language`; to be used to switch to the correct language at the beginning of the document.

```

12.240 \def\main@language#1{%
12.241     \def\bb1@main@language{#1}%
12.242     \let\languagename\bb1@main@language
12.243     \language=\csname l@\languagename\endcsname\relax
12.244 }

```

The default is to use English as the main language.

```
12.245 \ifx\l@english\@undefined
12.246 \let\l@english\z@
12.247 \fi
12.248 \main@language{english}
```

We also have to make sure that some code gets executed at the beginning of the document.

```
12.249 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.250 \expandafter\selectlanguage\expandafter{\bbl@main@language}}
12.251 </core>
```

`\originalTeX` The macro `\originalTeX` should be known to  $\TeX$  at this moment. As it has to be expandable we `\let` it to `\@empty` instead of `\relax`.

```
12.252 <*kernel>
12.253 \ifx\originalTeX\@undefined\let\originalTeX\@empty\fi
```

Because this part of the code can be included in a format, we make sure that the macro which initialises the save mechanism, `\babel@beginsave`, is not considered to be undefined.

```
12.254 \ifx\babel@beginsave\@undefined\let\babel@beginsave\relax\fi
```

`\@nolanerr` The `babel` package will signal an error when a documents tries to select a language that hasn't been defined earlier. When a user selects a language for which no hyphenation patterns were loaded into the format he will be given a warning about that fact. We revert to the patterns for `\language=0` in that case. In most formats that will be (US)english, but it might also be empty.

`\@noopterr` When the package was loaded without options not everything will work as expected. An error message is issued in that case.

When the format knows about `\PackageError` it must be  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ , so we can safely use its error handling interface. Otherwise we'll have to 'keep it simple'.

```
12.255 \ifx\PackageError\@undefined
12.256 \def\@nolanerr#1{%
12.257 \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
12.258 \errmessage{You haven't defined the language #1\space yet}}
12.259 \def\@nopatterns#1{%
12.260 \message{No hyphenation patterns were loaded for}%
12.261 \message{the language '#1'}%
12.262 \message{I will use the patterns loaded for \string\language=0
12.263 instead}}
12.264 \def\@noopterr#1{%
12.265 \errmessage{The option #1 was not specified in \string\usepackage}
12.266 \errhelp{You may continue, but expect unexpected results}}
12.267 \def\@activated#1{%
12.268 \wlog{Package babel Info: Making #1 an active character}}
12.269 \else
12.270 \newcommand*\@nolanerr}[1]{%
12.271 \PackageError{babel}%
12.272 {You haven't defined the language #1\space yet}%
12.273 {Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}}
12.274 \newcommand*\@nopatterns}[1]{%
12.275 \PackageWarningNoLine{babel}%
12.276 {No hyphenation patterns were loaded for\MessageBreak
12.277 the language '#1'\MessageBreak
12.278 I will use the patterns loaded for \string\language=0
12.279 instead}}
12.280 \newcommand*\@noopterr}[1]{%
12.281 \PackageError{babel}%
12.282 {You haven't loaded the option #1\space yet}%
12.283 {You may proceed, but expect unexpected results}}
12.284 \newcommand*\@activated}[1]{%
```

```

12.285 \PackageInfo{babel}{%
12.286 Making #1 an active character}}
12.287 \fi

```

The following code is meant to be read by `iniTEX` because it should instruct `TEX` to read hyphenation patterns. To this end the `docstrip` option `patterns` can be used to include this code in the file `hyphen.cfg`.

```
12.288 (*patterns)
```

`\process@line` Each line in the file `language.dat` is processed by `\process@line` after it is read. The first thing this macro does is to check whether the line starts with `=`. When the first token of a line is an `=`, the macro `\process@synonym` is called; otherwise the macro `\process@language` will continue.

```

12.289 \def\process@line#1#2 #3/{%
12.290 \ifx=#1
12.291 \process@synonym#2 /
12.292 \else
12.293 \process@language#1#2 #3/%
12.294 \fi
12.295 }

```

`\process@synonym` This macro takes care of the lines which start with an `=`. It needs an empty token register to begin with.

```

12.296 \toks@{}
12.297 \def\process@synonym#1 /{%
12.298 \ifnum\last@language=\m@ne

```

When no languages have been loaded yet, the name following the `=` will be a synonym for hyphenation register 0.

```

12.299 \expandafter\chardef\csname l@#1\endcsname\relax
12.300 \wlog{\string\l@#1=\string\language0}

```

As no hyphenation patterns are read in yet, we can not yet set the `hyphenmin` parameters. Therefor a commands to do so is stored in a token register and executed when the first pattern file has been processed.

```

12.301 \toks@\expandafter{the\toks@
12.302 \expandafter\let\csname #1hyphenmins\expandafter\endcsname
12.303 \csname\language\hyphenmins\endcsname}%
12.304 \else

```

Otherwise the name will be a synonym for the language loaded last.

```

12.305 \expandafter\chardef\csname l@#1\endcsname\last@language
12.306 \wlog{\string\l@#1=\string\language\the\last@language}

```

We also need to copy the `hyphenmin` parameters for the synonym.

```

12.307 \expandafter\let\csname #1hyphenmins\expandafter\endcsname
12.308 \csname\language\hyphenmins\endcsname
12.309 \fi
12.310 }

```

`\process@language` The macro `\process@language` is used to process a non-empty line from the ‘configuration file’. It has three arguments, each delimited by white space. The third argument is optional, so a `/` character is expected to delimit the last argument. The first argument is the ‘name’ of a language; the second is the name of the file that contains the patterns. The optional third argument is the name of a file containing hyphenation exceptions.

The first thing to do is call `\addlanguage` to allocate a pattern register and to make that register ‘active’.

```

12.311 \def\process@language#1 #2 #3/{%
12.312 \expandafter\addlanguage\csname l@#1\endcsname
12.313 \expandafter\language\csname l@#1\endcsname
12.314 \def\language#1}%

```

Then the ‘name’ of the language that will be loaded now is added to the token register `\toks8`. and finally the pattern file is read.

```
12.315 \global\toks8\expandafter{\the\toks8#1, }%
```

For some hyphenation patterns it is needed to load them with a specific font encoding selected. This can be specified in the file `language.dat` by adding for instance ‘:T1’ to the name of the language. The macro `\bbl@get@enc` extracts the font encoding from the language name and stores it in `\bbl@hyph@enc`.

```
12.316 \begingroup
12.317 \bbl@get@enc#1:@@@
12.318 \ifx\bbl@hyph@enc\@empty
12.319 \else
12.320 \fontencoding{\bbl@hyph@enc}\selectfont
12.321 \fi
```

Some pattern files contain assignments to `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.  $\TeX$  does not keep track of these assignments. Therefore we try to detect such assignments and store them in the `\(lang)hyphenmins` macro. When no assignments were made we provide a default setting.

```
12.322 \lefthyphenmin\m@ne
```

Some pattern files contain changes to the `\lccode` en `\uccode` arrays. Such changes should remain local to the language; therefore we process the pattern file in a group; the `\patterns` command acts globally so its effect will be remembered.

```
12.323 \input #2\relax
```

Now we globally store the settings of `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` and close the group.

```
12.324 \ifnum\lefthyphenmin=\m@ne
12.325 \else
12.326 \expandafter\xdef\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname{%
12.327 \the\lefthyphenmin\the\righthyphenmin}%
12.328 \fi
12.329 \endgroup
```

If the counter `\language` is still equal to zero we set the hyphenmin parameters to the values for the language loaded on pattern register 0.

```
12.330 \ifnum\the\language=\z@
12.331 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname\relax
12.332 \set@hyphenmins\tw@\thr@\relax
12.333 \else
12.334 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\set@hyphenmins
12.335 \csname #1hyphenmins\endcsname
12.336 \fi
```

Now execute the contents of token register zero as it may contain commands which set the hyphenmin parameters for synonyms that were defined before the first pattern file is read in.

```
12.337 \the\toks@
12.338 \fi
```

Empty the token register after use.

```
12.339 \toks@{ }%
```

When the hyphenation patterns have been processed we need to see if a file with hyphenation exceptions needs to be read. This is the case when the third argument is not empty and when it does not contain a space token.

```
12.340 \def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
12.341 \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty
12.342 \else
12.343 \ifx\bbl@tempa\space
12.344 \else
12.345 \input #3\relax
```

```

12.346   \fi
12.347   \fi
12.348   }

```

`\bbl@get@enc` The macro `\bbl@get@enc` extracts the font encoding from the language name and `\bbl@hyph@enc` stores it in `\bbl@hyph@enc`. It uses delimited arguments to achieve this.

```
12.349 \def\bbl@get@enc#1:#2\@@{%
```

First store both arguments in temporary macros,

```

12.350   \def\bbl@tempa{#1}%
12.351   \def\bbl@tempb{#2}%

```

then, if the second argument was empty, no font encoding was specified and we're done.

```

12.352   \ifx\bbl@tempb\@empty
12.353     \let\bbl@hyph@enc\@empty
12.354   \else

```

But if the second argument was *not* empty it will now have a superfluous colon attached to it which we need to remove. This done by feeding it to `\bbl@get@enc`. The string that we are after will then be in the first argument and be stored in `\bbl@tempa`.

```

12.355     \bbl@get@enc#2\@@@
12.356     \edef\bbl@hyph@enc{\bbl@tempa}%
12.357   \fi}

```

`\readconfigfile` The configuration file can now be opened for reading.

```
12.358 \openin1 = language.dat
```

See if the file exists, if not, use the default hyphenation file `hyphen.tex`. The user will be informed about this.

```

12.359 \ifeof1
12.360   \message{I couldn't find the file language.dat,\space
12.361             I will try the file hyphen.tex}
12.362   \input hyphen.tex\relax
12.363 \else

```

Pattern registers are allocated using count register `\last@language`. Its initial value is 0. The definition of the macro `\newlanguage` is such that it first increments the count register and then defines the language. In order to have the first patterns loaded in pattern register number 0 we initialize `\last@language` with the value `-1`.

```
12.364 \last@language@m@ne
```

We now read lines from the file until the end is found

```
12.365 \loop
```

While reading from the input, it is useful to switch off recognition of the end-of-line character. This saves us stripping off spaces from the contents of the control sequence.

```

12.366   \endlinechar@m@ne
12.367   \read1 to \bbl@line
12.368   \endlinechar'\~M

```

Empty lines are skipped.

```

12.369   \ifx\bbl@line\@empty
12.370   \else

```

Now we add a space and a `/` character to the end of `\bbl@line`. This is needed to be able to recognize the third, optional, argument of `\process@language` later on.

```

12.371     \edef\bbl@line{\bbl@line\space/}%
12.372     \expandafter\process@line\bbl@line
12.373   \fi

```

Check for the end of the file. To avoid a new `if` control sequence we create the necessary `\iftrue` or `\iffalse` with the help of `\csname`. But there is one complication with this approach: when skipping the loop...repeat  $\TeX$  has to read `\if/\fi` pairs. So we have to insert a ‘dummy’ `\iftrue`.

```
12.374 \iftrue \csname fi\endcsname
12.375 \csname if\ifeof1 false\else true\fi\endcsname
12.376 \repeat
```

Reactivate the default patterns,

```
12.377 \language=0
12.378 \fi
```

and close the configuration file.

```
12.379 \closein1
```

Also remove some macros from memory

```
12.380 \let\process@language\@undefined
12.381 \let\process@synonym\@undefined
12.382 \let\process@line\@undefined
12.383 \let\bbl@tempa\@undefined
12.384 \let\bbl@tempb\@undefined
12.385 \let\bbl@eq\@undefined
12.386 \let\bbl@line\@undefined
12.387 \let\bbl@get@enc\@undefined
```

We add a message about the fact that `babel` is loaded in the format and with which language patterns to the `\everyjob` register.

```
12.388 \ifx\addto@hook\@undefined
12.389 \else
12.390 \expandafter\addto@hook\expandafter\everyjob\expandafter{%
12.391 \expandafter\typeout\expandafter{\the\toks8 loaded.}}
12.392 \fi
```

Here the code for `ini $\TeX$`  ends.

```
12.393 </patterns>
12.394 </kernel>
```

## 12.3 Support for active characters

`\bbl@add@special` The macro `\bbl@add@special` is used to add a new character (or single character control sequence) to the macro `\dospecials` (and `\@sanitize` if  $\LaTeX$  is used).

To keep all changes local, we begin a new group. Then we redefine the macros `\do` and `\@makeother` to add themselves and the given character without expansion.

```
12.395 (*core | shorthands)
12.396 \def\bbl@add@special#1{\begingroup
12.397 \def\do{\noexpand\do\noexpand}%
12.398 \def\@makeother{\noexpand\@makeother\noexpand}%
```

To add the character to the macros, we expand the original macros with the additional character inside the redefinition of the macros. Because `\@sanitize` can be undefined, we put the definition inside a conditional.

```
12.399 \edef\x{\endgroup
12.400 \def\noexpand\dospecials{\dospecials\do#1}%
12.401 \expandafter\ifx\csname @sanitize\endcsname\relax \else
12.402 \def\noexpand\@sanitize{\@sanitize\@makeother#1}%
12.403 \fi}%
```

The macro `\x` contains at this moment the following:

```
\endgroup\def\dospecials{old contents \do⟨char⟩}.
```

If `\@sanitize` is defined, it contains an additional definition of this macro. The last thing we have to do, is the expansion of `\x`. Then `\endgroup` is executed,

which restores the old meaning of `\x`, `\do` and `\@makeother`. After the group is closed, the new definition of `\dospecials` (and `\@sanitize`) is assigned.

12.404 `\x}`

`\bbl@remove@special` The companion of the former macro is `\bbl@remove@special`. It is used to remove a character from the set macros `\dospecials` and `\@sanitize`.

To keep all changes local, we begin a new group. Then we define a help macro `\x`, which expands to empty if the characters match, otherwise it expands to its nonexpandable input. Because T<sub>E</sub>X inserts a `\relax`, if the corresponding `\else` or `\fi` is scanned before the comparison is evaluated, we provide a ‘stop sign’ which should expand to nothing.

```
12.405 \def\bbl@remove@special#1{\begingroup
12.406   \def\x##1##2{\ifnum'#1='##2\noexpand\@empty
12.407   \else\noexpand##1\noexpand##2\fi}%
```

With the help of this macro we define `\do` and `\make@other`.

```
12.408   \def\do{\x\do}%
12.409   \def\@makeother{\x\@makeother}%
```

The rest of the work is similar to `\bbl@add@special`.

```
12.410   \edef\x{\endgroup
12.411   \def\noexpand\dospecials{\dospecials}%
12.412   \expandafter\ifx\csname \@sanitize\endcsname\relax \else
12.413   \def\noexpand\@sanitize{\@sanitize}%
12.414   \fi}%
12.415 \x}
```

## 12.4 Shorthands

`\initiate@active@char` A language definition file can call this macro to make a character active. This macro takes one argument, the character that is to be made active. When the character was already active this macro does nothing. Otherwise, this macro defines the control sequence `\normal@char⟨char⟩` to expand to the character in its ‘normal state’ and it defines the active character to expand to `\normal@char⟨char⟩` by default (`⟨char⟩` being the character to be made active). Later its definition can be changed to expand to `\active@char⟨char⟩` by calling `\bbl@activate{⟨char⟩}`.

For example, to make the double quote character active one could have the following line in a language definition file:

```
\initiate@active@char{"}
```

`\bbl@afterelse` Because the code that is used in the handling of active characters may need to look ahead, we take extra care to ‘throw’ it over the `\else` and `\fi` parts of an `\if`-statement<sup>5</sup>. These macros will break if another `\if... \fi` statement appears in one of the arguments.

`\bbl@afterfi`

```
12.416 \long\def\bbl@afterelse#1\else#2\fi{\fi#1}
12.417 \long\def\bbl@afterfi#1\fi{\fi#1}
```

`\peek@token` To prevent error messages when a shorthand, which normally takes an argument, sees a `\par`, or `}`, or similar tokens, we need to be able to ‘peek’ at what is coming up next in the input stream. Depending on the category code of the token that is seen, we need to either continue the code for the active character, or insert the non-active version of that character in the output. The macro `\peek@token` therefore takes two arguments, with which it constructs the control sequence to expand next. It `\let`’s `\bbl@nexta` and `\bbl@nextb` to the two possible macros. This is necessary for `\bbl@test@token` to take the right decision.

<sup>5</sup>This code is based on code presented in TUGboat vol. 12, no2, June 1991 in “An expansion Power Lemma” by Sonja Maus.

```

12.418 %\def\peek@token#1#2{%
12.419 % \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@nexta\csname #1\string#2\endcsname
12.420 % \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@nextb
12.421 % \csname system@active\string#2\endcsname
12.422 % \futurelet\bbl@token\bbl@test@token}

```

`\bbl@test@token` When the result of peeking at the next token has yielded a token with category ‘letter’, ‘other’ or ‘active’ it is safe to proceed with evaluating the code for the shorthand. When a token is found with any other category code proceeding is unsafe and therefore the original shorthand character is inserted in the output. The macro that calls `\bbl@test@token` needs to setup `\bbl@nexta` and `\bbl@nextb` in order to achieve this.

```

12.423 %\def\bbl@test@token{%
12.424 % \let\bbl@next\bbl@nexta
12.425 % \ifcat\noexpand\bbl@token a%
12.426 % \else
12.427 % \ifcat\noexpand\bbl@token=%
12.428 % \else
12.429 % \ifcat\noexpand\bbl@token\noexpand\bbl@next
12.430 % \else
12.431 % \let\bbl@next\bbl@nextb
12.432 % \fi
12.433 % \fi
12.434 % \fi
12.435 % \bbl@next}

```

The macro `\initiate@active@char` takes all the necessary actions to make its argument a shorthand character. The real work is performed once for each character.

```

12.436 \def\initiate@active@char#1{%
12.437 \expandafter\ifx\csname active@char\string##1\endcsname\relax
12.438 \bbl@afterfi{\@initiate@active@char{##1}}%
12.439 \fi}

```

Note that the definition of `\@initiate@active@char` needs an active character, for this the `~` is used. Some of the changes we need, do not have to become available later on, so we do it inside a group.

```

12.440 \begingroup
12.441 \catcode'\~\active
12.442 \def\x{\endgroup
12.443 \def\@initiate@active@char##1{%

```

If the character is already active we provide the default expansion under this shorthand mechanism.

```

12.444 \ifcat\noexpand##1\noexpand~\relax
12.445 \ifundefined{normal@char\string##1}{%
12.446 \expandafter\let\csname normal@char\string##1\endcsname##1%
12.447 \expandafter\gdef
12.448 \expandafter##1%
12.449 \expandafter{%
12.450 \expandafter\active@prefix\expandafter##1%
12.451 \csname normal@char\string##1\endcsname}}{%
12.452 \else

```

Otherwise we write a message in the transcript file,

```

12.453 \@activated{##1}%

```

and define `\normal@char⟨char⟩` to expand to the character in its default state.

```

12.454 \@namedef{normal@char\string##1}{##1}%

```

If we are making the right quote active we need to change `\prim@s` as well.

```

12.455 \if##1'%
12.456 \let\prim@s\bbl@prim@s

```



Also, make sure that a single ' in math mode 'does the right thing'.

```
12.457      \namedef{normal@char\string##1}{%
12.458      \textormath{##1}{~\bgroup\prim@s}}%
12.459      \fi
```

If we are using the caret as a shorthand character special care should be taken to make sure math still works. Therefor an extra level of expansion is introduced with a check for math mode on the upper level.

```
12.460      \ifx##1~%
12.461      \gdef\bbl@act@caret{%
12.462      \ifmmode
12.463      \csname normal@char\string~\endcsname
12.464      \else
12.465      \bbl@afterfi
12.466      {\if@safe@actives
12.467      \bbl@afterelse\csname normal@char\string##1\endcsname
12.468      \else
12.469      \bbl@afterfi\csname user@active\string##1\endcsname
12.470      \fi}%
12.471      \fi}
12.472      \fi
```

To prevent problems with the loading of other packages after babel we reset the catcode of the character at the end of the package.

```
12.473      \@ifpackagewith{babel}{KeepShorthandsActive}{%
12.474      \edef\bbl@tempa{\catcode'\noexpand##1\the\catcode'##1}%
12.475      \expandafter\AtEndOfPackage\expandafter{\bbl@tempa}}%
```

Now we set the lowercase code of the ~ equal to that of the character to be made active and execute the rest of the code inside a \lowercase 'environment'.

```
12.476      \@tempcnta=\lccode'\~
12.477      \lccode'~='##1%
12.478      \lowercase{%
```

Make the character active and add it to \dospecials and \@sanitize.

```
12.479      \catcode'\~\active
12.480      \expandafter\bbl@add@special
12.481      \csname \string##1\endcsname
```

Also re-activate it again at \begin{document}.

```
12.482      \AtBeginDocument{%
12.483      \catcode'##1\active
```

We also need to make sure that the shorthands are active during the processing of the .aux file. Otherwise some citations may give unexpected results in the printout when a shorthand was used in the optional argument of \bibitem for example.

```
12.484      \if@filesw
12.485      \immediate\write\@mainaux{%
12.486      \string\catcode'##1\string\active}%
12.487      \fi}%
```

Define the character to expand to

$$\backslash\text{active@prefix } \langle char \rangle \backslash\text{normal@char } \langle char \rangle$$

(where \active@char⟨char⟩ is one control sequence!).

```
12.488      \expandafter\gdef
12.489      \expandafter~%
12.490      \expandafter{%
12.491      \expandafter\active@prefix\expandafter##1%
12.492      \csname normal@char\string##1\endcsname}}%
12.493      \lccode'\~\@tempcnta
12.494      \fi
```

For the active caret we first expand to `\bbl@act@caret` in order to be able to handle math mode correctly.

```
12.495     \ifx##1~%
12.496     \namedef{active@char\string##1}{\bbl@act@caret}%
12.497     \else
```

We define the first level expansion of `\active@char⟨char⟩` to check the status of the `@safe@actives` flag. If it is set to true we expand to the ‘normal’ version of this character, otherwise we call `\@active@char⟨char⟩`.

```
12.498     \namedef{active@char\string##1}{%
12.499     \if@safe@actives
12.500     \bbl@afterelse\csname normal@char\string##1\endcsname
12.501     \else
12.502     \bbl@afterfi\csname user@active\string##1\endcsname
12.503     \fi}%
12.504     \fi
```

The next level of the code checks whether a user has defined a shorthand for himself with this character. First we check for a single character shorthand. If that doesn’t exist we check for a shorthand with an argument.

```
12.505     \namedef{user@active\string##1}{%
12.506     \expandafter\ifx
12.507     \csname \user@group @sh@\string##1@\endcsname
12.508     \relax
12.509     \bbl@afterelse\bbl@sh@select\user@group##1%
12.510     {user@active@arg\string##1}{language@active\string##1}%
12.511     \else
12.512     \bbl@afterfi\csname \user@group @sh@\string##1@\endcsname
12.513     \fi}%
```

When there is also no user-level shorthand with an argument we will check whether there is a language defined shorthand for this active character. Before the next token is absorbed as argument we need to make sure that this is safe. Therefore `\peek@token` is called to decide that.

```
12.514     \long\namedef{user@active@arg\string##1}####1{%
12.515     \expandafter\ifx
12.516     \csname \user@group @sh@\string##1@\string####1@\endcsname
12.517     \relax
12.518     \bbl@afterelse
12.519     \csname language@active\string##1\endcsname####1%
12.520     \else
12.521     \bbl@afterfi
12.522     \csname \user@group @sh@\string##1@\string####10%
12.523     \endcsname
12.524     \fi}%
```

In order to do the right thing when a shorthand with an argument is used by itself at the end of the line we provide a definition for the case of an empty argument. For that case we let the shorthand character expand to its non-active self.

```
12.525     \namedef{\user@group @sh@\string##1@}{%
12.526     \csname normal@char\string##1\endcsname}
```

Like the shorthands that can be defined by the user, a language definition file can also define shorthands with and without an argument, so we need two more macros to check if they exist.

```
12.527     \namedef{language@active\string##1}{%
12.528     \expandafter\ifx
12.529     \csname \language@group @sh@\string##1@\endcsname
12.530     \relax
12.531     \bbl@afterelse\bbl@sh@select\language@group##1%
12.532     {language@active@arg\string##1}{system@active\string##1}%
12.533     \else
12.534     \bbl@afterfi
```

```

12.535     \csname \language@group @sh@\string##1@\endcsname
12.536     \fi}%

12.537     \long\@namedef{language@active@arg\string##1}####1{%
12.538     \expandafter\ifx
12.539     \csname \language@group @sh@\string##1@\string####1@\endcsname
12.540     \relax
12.541     \bbl@afterelse
12.542     \csname system@active\string##1\endcsname####1%
12.543     \else
12.544     \bbl@afterfi
12.545     \csname \language@group @sh@\string##1@\string####1@%
12.546     \endcsname
12.547     \fi}%

```

And the same goes for the system level.

```

12.548     \@namedef{system@active\string##1}{%
12.549     \expandafter\ifx
12.550     \csname \system@group @sh@\string##1@\endcsname
12.551     \relax
12.552     \bbl@afterelse\bbl@sh@select\system@group##1%
12.553     {system@active@arg\string##1}{normal@char\string##1}%
12.554     \else
12.555     \bbl@afterfi\csname \system@group @sh@\string##1@\endcsname
12.556     \fi}%

```

When no shorthands were found the ‘normal’ version of the active character is inserted.

```

12.557     \long\@namedef{system@active@arg\string##1}####1{%
12.558     \expandafter\ifx
12.559     \csname \system@group @sh@\string##1@\string####1@\endcsname
12.560     \relax
12.561     \bbl@afterelse\csname normal@char\string##1\endcsname####1%
12.562     \else
12.563     \bbl@afterfi
12.564     \csname \system@group @sh@\string##1@\string####1@\endcsname
12.565     \fi}%

```

When a shorthand combination such as ‘’ ends up in a heading  $\TeX$  would see  $\backslash\protect\protect$ . To prevent this from happening a shorthand needs to be defined at user level.

```

12.566     \@namedef{user@sh@\string##1@\string\protect}{%
12.567     \csname user@active\string##1\endcsname}%
12.568     }%
12.569     }\x

```

$\backslash\text{bbl@sh@select}$  This command helps the shorthand supporting macros to select how to proceed. Note that this macro needs to be expandable as do all the shorthand macros in order for them to work in expansion-only environments such as the argument of  $\backslash\text{hyphenation}$ .

This macro expects the name of a group of shorthands in its first argument and a shorthand character in its second argument. It will expand to either  $\backslash\text{bbl@firstcs}$  or  $\backslash\text{bbl@scndcs}$ . Hence two more arguments need to follow it.

```

12.570 \def\bbl@sh@select#1#2{%
12.571 \expandafter\ifx\csname#1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\relax
12.572 \bbl@afterelse\bbl@scndcs
12.573 \else
12.574 \bbl@afterfi\csname#1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname
12.575 \fi
12.576 }

```

`\active@prefix` The command `\active@prefix` which is used in the expansion of active characters has a function similar to `\OT1-cmd` in that it `\protect`s the active character whenever `\protect` is *not* `\@typeset@protect`.

```
12.577 \def\active@prefix#1{%
12.578   \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
12.579   \else
```

When `\protect` is set to `\@unexpandable@protect` we make sure that the active character is *als not* expanded by inserting `\noexpand` in front of it. The `\@gobble` is needed to remove a token such as `\activechar:` (when the double colon was the active character to be dealt with).

```
12.580   \ifx\protect\@unexpandable@protect
12.581     \bbl@afterelse\bbl@afterfi\noexpand#1\@gobble
12.582   \else
12.583     \bbl@afterfi\bbl@afterfi\protect#1\@gobble
12.584   \fi
12.585 \fi}
```

`\if@safe@actives` In some circumstances it is necessary to be able to change the expansion of an active character on the fly. For this purpose the switch `@safe@actives` is available. The setting of this switch should be checked in the first level expansion of `\active@char<char>`.

```
12.586 \newif\if@safe@actives
12.587 \@safe@activesfalse
```

`\bbl@restore@actives` When the output routine kicks in while the active characters were made “safe” this must be undone in the headers to prevent unexpected typeset results. For this situation we define a command to make them “unsafe” again.

```
12.588 \def\bbl@restore@actives{\if@safe@actives\@safe@activesfalse\fi}
```

`\bbl@activate` This macro takes one argument, like `\initiate@active@char`. The macro is used to change the definition of an active character to expand to `\active@char<char>` instead of `\normal@char<char>`.

```
12.589 \def\bbl@activate#1{%
12.590   \expandafter\def
12.591   \expandafter#1\expandafter{%
12.592     \expandafter\active@prefix
12.593     \expandafter#1\csname active@char\string#1\endcsname}%
12.594 }
```

`\bbl@deactivate` This macro takes one argument, like `\bbl@activate`. The macro doesn’t really make a character non-active; it changes its definition to expand to `\normal@char<char>`.

```
12.595 \def\bbl@deactivate#1{%
12.596   \expandafter\def
12.597   \expandafter#1\expandafter{%
12.598     \expandafter\active@prefix
12.599     \expandafter#1\csname normal@char\string#1\endcsname}%
12.600 }
```

`\bbl@firstcs` These macros have two arguments. They use one of their arguments to build a control sequence from.

```
12.601 \def\bbl@firstcs#1#2{\csname#1\endcsname}
12.602 \def\bbl@scndcs#1#2{\csname#2\endcsname}
```

`\declare@shorthand` The command `\declare@shorthand` is used to declare a shorthand on a certain level. It takes three arguments:

1. a name for the collection of shorthands, i.e. ‘system’, or ‘dutch’;
2. the character (sequence) that makes up the shorthand, i.e. `~` or `"a`;

3. the code to be executed when the shorthand is encountered.

```

12.603 \def\declare@shorthand#1#2{\@decl@short{#1}#2\@nil}
12.604 \def\@decl@short#1#2#3\@nil#4{%
12.605   \def\bbl@tempa{#3}%
12.606   \ifx\bbl@tempa\@empty
12.607     \expandafter\let\csname #1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\bbl@scndcs
12.608     \@namedef{#1@sh@\string#2@}{#4}%
12.609   \else
12.610     \expandafter\let\csname #1@sh@\string#2@sel\endcsname\bbl@firstcs
12.611     \@namedef{#1@sh@\string#2@\string#3@}{#4}%
12.612   \fi}

```

`\textormath` Some of the shorthands that will be declared by the language definition files have to be usable in both text and mathmode. To achieve this the helper macro `\textormath` is provided.

```

12.613 \def\textormath#1#2{%
12.614   \ifmmode
12.615     \bbl@afterelse#2%
12.616   \else
12.617     \bbl@afterfi#1%
12.618   \fi}

```

`\user@group` The current concept of ‘shorthands’ supports three levels or groups of shorthands.  
`\language@group` For each level the name of the level or group is stored in a macro. The default is  
`\system@group` to have a user group; use language group ‘english’ and have a system group called ‘system’.

```

12.619 \def\user@group{user}
12.620 \def\language@group{english}
12.621 \def\system@group{system}

```

`\useshorthands` This is the user level command to tell L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X that user level shorthands will be used in the document. It takes one argument, the character that starts a shorthand.

```

12.622 \def\useshorthands#1{%
    First note that this is user level.
12.623   \def\user@group{user}%
    Then initialize the character for use as a shorthand character.
12.624   \initiate@active@char{#1}%
    Now that TEX has seen the character its category code is fixed, but for the actions
    of \bbl@activate to succeed we need it to be active. Hence the trick with the
    \lccode to circumvent this.
12.625   \@tempcnta\lccode‘~
12.626   \lccode‘~=#1%
12.627   \lowercase{\catcode‘~\active\bbl@activate{~}}%
12.628   \lccode‘~\@tempcnta}

```

`\defineshorthand` Currently we only support one group of user level shorthands, called ‘user’.

```

12.629 \def\defineshorthand{\declare@shorthand{user}}

```

`\languageshorthands` A user level command to change the language from which shorthands are used.

```

12.630 \def\languageshorthands#1{\def\language@group{#1}}

```

`\aliasshorthand`

```

12.631 \def\aliasshorthand#1#2{%
    First the new shorthand needs to be initialized,
12.632   \expandafter\ifx\csname active@char\string#2\endcsname\relax
12.633     \ifx\document\@notprerr
12.634       \@notshorthand{#2}
12.635     \else
12.636       \initiate@active@char{#2}%

```

Then we need to use the `\lccode` trick to make the new shorthand behave like the old one. Therefore we save the current `\lccode` of the `~`-character and restore it later. Then we `\let` the new shorthand character be equal to the original.

```

12.637     \@tempcnta\lccode'\~
12.638     \lccode'\~='#2%
12.639     \lowercase{\let~#1}%
12.640     \lccode'\~\@tempcnta
12.641     \fi
12.642     \fi
12.643 }

```

`\@notshorthand`

```

12.644 \def\@notshorthand#1{%
12.645     \PackageError{babel}{%
12.646         The character '\string #1' should be made
12.647         a shorthand character;\MessageBreak
12.648         add the command \string\useshorthands\string{#1\string} to
12.649         the preamble.\MessageBreak
12.650         I will ignore your instruction}{}%
12.651 }

```

`\shorthandon` The first level definition of these macros just passes the argument on to `\shorthandoff` `\bbl@switch@sh`, adding `\@nil` at the end to denote the end of the list of characters.

```

12.652 \newcommand*\shorthandon[1]{\bbl@switch@sh{on}#1\@nil}
12.653 \newcommand*\shorthandoff[1]{\bbl@switch@sh{off}#1\@nil}

```

`\bbl@switch@sh` The macro `\bbl@switch@sh` takes the list of characters apart one by one and subsequently switches the category code of the shorthand character according to the first argument of `\bbl@switch@sh`.

```

12.654 \def\bbl@switch@sh#1#2#3\@nil{%

```

But before any of this switching takes place we make sure that the character we are dealing with is known as a shorthand character. If it is, a macro such as `\active@char` should exist.

```

12.655     \ifundefined{active@char\string#2}{%
12.656         \PackageError{babel}{%
12.657             The character '\string #2' is not a shorthand character
12.658             in \language}%
12.659             Maybe you made a typing mistake?\MessageBreak
12.660             I will ignore your instruction}}{%
12.661         \csname bbl@switch@sh@#1\endcsname#2}%

```

Now that, as the first character in the list has been taken care of, we pass the rest of the list back to `\bbl@switch@sh`.

```

12.662     \ifx#3\@empty\else
12.663         \bbl@afterfi\bbl@switch@sh{#1}#3\@nil
12.664     \fi}

```

`\bbl@switch@sh@off` All that is left to do is define the actual switching macros. Switching off is easy, we just set the category code to 'other' (12).

```

12.665 \def\bbl@switch@sh@off#1{\catcode'#112\relax}

```

`\bbl@switch@sh@on` But switching the shorthand character back on is a bit more tricky. It involves making sure that we have an active character to begin with when the macro is being defined. It also needs the use of `\lowercase` and `\lccode` trickery to get everything to work out as expected. And to keep things local that need to remain local a group is opened, which is closed as soon as `\x` gets executed.

```

12.666 \begingroup
12.667     \catcode'\~\active
12.668     \def\x{\endgroup

```

```

12.669 \def\bb1@switch@sh@on##1{%
12.670 \begingroup
12.671 \lccode'~='##1%
12.672 \lowercase{\endgroup
12.673 \catcode'~\active
12.674 }%
12.675 }%
12.676 }

```

The next operation makes the above definition effective.

```

12.677 \x
12.678 %

```

To prevent problems with constructs such as `\char"01A` when the double quote is made active, we define a shorthand on system level.

```

12.679 \declare@shorthand{system}{"}{\csname normal@char\string\endcsname}

```

When the right quote is made active we need to take care of handling it correctly in mathmode. Therefore we define a shorthand at system level to make it expand to a non-active right quote in textmode, but expand to its original definition in mathmode. (Note that the right quote is ‘active’ in mathmode because of its mathcode.)

```

12.680 \declare@shorthand{system}{'}{%
12.681 \textormath{\csname normal@char\string'\endcsname}%
12.682 {\sp\bgroup\prim@s}}

```

When the left quote is made active we need to take care of handling it correctly when it is followed by for instance an open brace token. Therefore we define a shorthand at system level to make it expand to a non-active left quote.

```

12.683 \declare@shorthand{system}{'}{\csname normal@char\string'\endcsname}

```

`\bb1@prim@s` One of the internal macros that are involved in substituting `\prime` for each right quote in mathmode is `\prim@s`. This checks if the next character is a right quote. When the right quote is active, the definition of this macro needs to be adapted to look for an active right quote.

```

12.684 \def\bb1@prim@s{%
12.685 \prime\futurelet\@let@token\bb1@pr@m@s}
12.686 \begingroup
12.687 \catcode'\'\active\let'\relax
12.688 \def\x{\endgroup
12.689 \def\bb1@pr@m@s{%
12.690 \ifx'\@let@token
12.691 \expandafter\pr@@@s
12.692 \else
12.693 \ifx^\@let@token
12.694 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\pr@@@t
12.695 \else
12.696 \egroup
12.697 \fi
12.698 \fi}%
12.699 }
12.700 \x

```

```

12.701 </core | shorthands>

```

Normally the `~` is active and expands to `\penalty\@M\l`. When it is written to the `.aux` file it is written expanded. To prevent that and to be able to use the character `~` as a start character for a shorthand, it is redefined here as a one character shorthand on system level.

```

12.702 <*core>
12.703 \initiate@active@char{~}
12.704 \declare@shorthand{system}{~}{\leavevmode\nobreak\ }
12.705 \bb1@activate{~}

```

`\OT1dqpos` The position of the double quote character is different for the OT1 and T1 encodings. It will later be selected using the `\f@encoding` macro. Therefor we define `\T1dqpos` two macros here to store the position of the character in these encodings.

```
12.706 \expandafter\def\csname OT1dqpos\endcsname{127}
12.707 \expandafter\def\csname T1dqpos\endcsname{4}
```

When the macro `\f@encoding` is undefined (as it is in plain  $\TeX$ ) we define it here to expand to OT1

```
12.708 \ifx\f@encoding\undefined
12.709   \def\f@encoding{OT1}
12.710 \fi
```

## 12.5 Language attributes

Language attributes provide a means to give the user control over which features of the language definition files he wants to enable.

`\languageattribute` The macro `\languageattribute` checks whether its arguments are valid and then activates the selected language attribute.

```
12.711 \newcommand\languageattribute[2]{%
```

First check whether the language is known.

```
12.712   \expandafter\ifx\csname l@#1\endcsname\relax
12.713     \@nolanerr{#1}%
12.714   \else
```

Then process each attribute in the list.

```
12.715     \@for\bb1@attr:=#2\do{%
```

We want to make sure that each attribute is selected only once; therefor we store the already selected attributes in `\bb1@known@attribs`. When that control sequence is not yet defined this attribute is certainly not selected before.

```
12.716       \ifx\bb1@known@attribs\undefined
12.717         \in@false
12.718       \else
```

Now we need to see if the attribute occurs in the list of already selected attributes.

```
12.719         \edef\bb1@tempa{\noexpand\in@{,#1-\bb1@attr,}%
12.720           {,\bb1@known@attribs,}}%
12.721         \bb1@tempa
12.722       \fi
```

When the attribute was in the list we issue a warning; this might not be the users intention.

```
12.723         \ifin@
12.724         \PackageWarning{Babel}{%
12.725           You have more than once selected the attribute
12.726           '\bb1@attr'\MessageBreak for language #1}%
12.727       \else
```

When we end up here the attribute is not selected before. So, we add it to the list of selected attributes and execute the associated  $\TeX$ -code.

```
12.728         \edef\bb1@tempa{%
12.729           \noexpand\bb1@add@list\noexpand\bb1@known@attribs{#1-\bb1@attr}}%
12.730         \bb1@tempa
12.731         \edef\bb1@tempa{#1-\bb1@attr}%
12.732         \expandafter\bb1@ifknown@ttrib\expandafter{\bb1@tempa}\bb1@attributes%
12.733         {\csname#1@attr@\bb1@attr\endcsname}%
12.734         {\@attrerr{#1}{\bb1@attr}}%
12.735       \fi
12.736     }
12.737 \fi}
```

This command should only be used in the preamble of a document.

```
12.738 \@onlypreamble\languageattribute
```



The error text to be issued when an unknown attribute is selected.

```
12.739 \newcommand*\@attrerr}[2]{%
12.740   \PackageError{babel}%
12.741     {The attribute #2 is unknown for language #1.}%
12.742     {Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}}
```

`\bbl@declare@attribute` This command adds the new language/attribute combination to the list of known attributes.

```
12.743 \def\bbl@declare@attribute#1#2#3{%
12.744   \bbl@add@list\bbl@attributes{#1-#2}%
```

Then it defines a control sequence to be executed when the attribute is used in a document. The result of this should be that the macro `\extras...` for the current language is extended, otherwise the attribute will not work as its code is removed from memory at `\begin{document}`.

```
12.745   \expandafter\def\csname#1@attr@#2\endcsname{#3}%
12.746 }
```

`\bbl@ifattributeset` This internal macro has 4 arguments. It can be used to interpret TeX code based on whether a certain attribute was set. This command should appear inside the argument to `\AtBeginDocument` because the attributes are set in the document preamble, *after* `babel` is loaded.

The first argument is the language, the second argument the attribute being checked, and the third and fourth arguments are the true and false clauses.

```
12.747 \def\bbl@ifattributeset#1#2#3#4{%
```

First we need to find out if any attributes were set; if not we're done.

```
12.748   \ifx\bbl@known@attribs\@undefined
12.749     \in@false
12.750   \else
```

The we need to check the list of known attributes.

```
12.751   \edef\bbl@tempa{\noexpand\in@{,#1-#2,}%
12.752     {\bbl@known@attribs,}}%
12.753   \bbl@tempa
12.754   \fi
```

When we're this far `\ifin@` has a value indicating if the attribute in question was set or not. Just to be safe the code to be executed is 'thrown over the `\fi`'.

```
12.755   \ifin@
12.756     \bbl@afterelse#3%
12.757   \else
12.758     \bbl@afterfi#4%
12.759   \fi
12.760 }
```

`\bbl@add@list` This internal macro adds its second argument to a comma separated list in its first argument. When the list is not defined yet (or empty), it will be initiated

```
12.761 \def\bbl@add@list#1#2{%
12.762   \ifx#1\@undefined
12.763     \def#1{#2}%
12.764   \else
12.765     \ifx#1\@empty
12.766       \def#1{#2}%
12.767     \else
12.768       \edef#1{#1,#2}%
12.769     \fi
12.770   \fi
12.771 }
```

`\bbl@ifknown@attrib` An internal macro to check whether a given language/attribute is known. The macro takes 4 arguments, the language/attribute, the attribute list, the TeX-code

to be executed when the attribute is known and the  $\TeX$ -code to be executed otherwise.

```
12.772 \def\bbl@ifknown@ttrib#1#2{%
```

We first assume the attribute is unknown.

```
12.773 \let\bbl@tempa\@secondoftwo
```

Then we loop over the list of known attributes, trying to find a match.

```
12.774 \@for\bbl@tempb:=#2\do{%
```

```
12.775 \expandafter\in@\expandafter{\expandafter,\bbl@tempb,}{, #1,}%
```

```
12.776 \ifin@
```

When a match is found the definition of `\bbl@tempa` is changed.

```
12.777 \let\bbl@tempa\@firstoftwo
```

```
12.778 \else
```

```
12.779 \fi}%
```

Finally we execute `\bbl@tempa`.

```
12.780 \bbl@tempa
```

```
12.781 }
```

`\bbl@clear@ttribs` This macro removes all the attribute code from  $\LaTeX$ 's memory at `\begin{document}` time (if any is present).

```
12.782 \def\bbl@clear@ttribs{%
```

```
12.783 \ifx\bbl@attributes\@undefined\else
```

```
12.784 \@for\bbl@tempa:=\bbl@attributes\do{%
```

```
12.785 \expandafter\bbl@clear@ttrib\bbl@tempa.
```

```
12.786 }%
```

```
12.787 \let\bbl@attributes\@undefined
```

```
12.788 \fi
```

```
12.789 }
```

```
12.790 \def\bbl@clear@ttrib#1-#2.{%
```

```
12.791 \expandafter\let\csname#1@attr@#2\endcsname\@undefined}
```

```
12.792 \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@clear@ttribs}
```

## 12.6 Support for saving macro definitions

To save the meaning of control sequences using `\babel@save`, we use temporary control sequences. To save hash table entries for these control sequences, we don't use the name of the control sequence to be saved to construct the temporary name. Instead we simply use the value of a counter, which is reset to zero each time we begin to save new values. This works well because we release the saved meanings before we begin to save a new set of control sequence meanings (see `\selectlanguage` and `\originalTeX`).

`\babel@savecnt` The initialization of a new save cycle: reset the counter to zero.

```
\babel@beginsave12.793 \def\babel@beginsave{\babel@savecnt\z@}
```

Before it's forgotten, allocate the counter and initialize all.

```
12.794 \newcount\babel@savecnt
```

```
12.795 \babel@beginsave
```

`\babel@save` The macro `\babel@save<csname>` saves the current meaning of the control sequence `<csname>` to `\originalTeX`<sup>6</sup>. To do this, we let the current meaning to a temporary control sequence, the restore commands are appended to `\originalTeX` and the counter is incremented.

```
12.796 \def\babel@save#1{%
```

```
12.797 \expandafter\let\csname babel@\number\babel@savecnt\endcsname #1\relax
```

```
12.798 \begingroup
```

```
12.799 \toks@\expandafter{\originalTeX \let#1=}%
```

```
12.800 \edef\x{\endgroup
```

<sup>6</sup>`\originalTeX` has to be expandable, i. e. you shouldn't let it to `\relax`.

```

12.801     \def\noexpand\originalTeX{\the\toks@ \expandafter\noexpand
12.802         \csname babel@number\babel@savecnt\endcsname\relax}}%
12.803     \x
12.804     \advance\babel@savecnt\@ne}

```

`\babel@savevariable` The macro `\babel@savevariable` $\langle variable \rangle$  saves the value of the variable.  $\langle variable \rangle$  can be anything allowed after the `\the` primitive.

```

12.805 \def\babel@savevariable#1{\begingroup
12.806     \toks@\expandafter{\originalTeX #1=}%
12.807     \edef\x{\endgroup
12.808         \def\noexpand\originalTeX{\the\toks@ \the#1\relax}}%
12.809     \x}

```

`\bbl@frenchspacing` Some languages need to have `\frenchspacing` in effect. Others don't want that.  
`\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` The command `\bbl@frenchspacing` switches it on when it isn't already in effect and `\bbl@nonfrenchspacing` switches it off if necessary.

```

12.810 \def\bbl@frenchspacing{%
12.811     \ifnum\the\sfcode'\.=\@m
12.812         \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\relax
12.813     \else
12.814         \frenchspacing
12.815         \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\nonfrenchspacing
12.816     \fi}
12.817 \let\bbl@nonfrenchspacing\nonfrenchspacing

```

## 12.7 Support for extending macros

`\addto` For each language four control sequences have to be defined that control the language-specific definitions. To be able to add something to these macro once they have been defined the macro `\addto` is introduced. It takes two arguments, a  $\langle control sequence \rangle$  and T<sub>E</sub>X-code to be added to the  $\langle control sequence \rangle$ .

If the  $\langle control sequence \rangle$  has not been defined before it is defined now.

```

12.818 \def\addto#1#2{%
12.819     \ifx#1\@undefined
12.820         \def#1{#2}%
12.821     \else

```

The control sequence could also expand to `\relax`, in which case a circular definition results. The net result is a stack overflow.

```

12.822     \ifx#1\relax
12.823         \def#1{#2}%
12.824     \else

```

Otherwise the replacement text for the  $\langle control sequence \rangle$  is expanded and stored in a token register, together with the T<sub>E</sub>X-code to be added. Finally the  $\langle control sequence \rangle$  is redefined, using the contents of the token register.

```

12.825         {\toks@\expandafter{#1#2}%
12.826         \xdef#1{\the\toks@}}%
12.827     \fi
12.828 \fi
12.829 }

```

## 12.8 Macros common to a number of languages

`\allowhyphens` This macro makes hyphenation possible. Basically its definition is nothing more than `\nobreak \hskip Opt plus Opt`<sup>7</sup>.

```

12.830 \def\bbl@t@one{T1}
12.831 \def\allowhyphens{%
12.832     \ifx\cf@encoding\bbl@t@one\else\bbl@allowhyphens\fi}
12.833 \def\bbl@allowhyphens{\nobreak\hskip\z@skip}

```

<sup>7</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X begins and ends a word for hyphenation at a glue node. The penalty prevents a linebreak at this glue node.

`\set@low@box` The following macro is used to lower quotes to the same level as the comma. It prepares its argument in box register 0.

```
12.834 \def\set@low@box#1{\setbox\tw@\hbox{,}\setbox\z@\hbox{#1}%
12.835   \dimen\z@\ht\z@ \advance\dimen\z@ -\ht\tw@%
12.836   \setbox\z@\hbox{\lower\dimen\z@ \box\z@}\ht\z@\ht\tw@ \dp\z@\dp\tw@}
```

`\save@sf@q` The macro `\save@sf@q` is used to save and reset the current space factor.

```
12.837 \def\save@sf@q #1{\leavevmode
12.838   \begingroup
12.839   \edef\@SF{\spacefactor \the\spacefactor}#1\@SF
12.840   \endgroup
12.841 }
```

`\bbl@disc` For some languages the macro `\bbl@disc` is used to ease the insertion of discretionary for letters that behave ‘abnormally’ at a breakpoint.

```
12.842 \def\bbl@disc#1#2{%
12.843   \nobreak\discretionary{#2-}{#1}\allowhyphens}
```

## 12.9 Making glyphs available

The file `babel.dtx`<sup>8</sup> makes a number of glyphs available that either do not exist in the OT1 encoding and have to be ‘faked’, or that are not accessible through `T1enc.def`.

### 12.10 Quotation marks

`\quotedblbase` In the T1 encoding the opening double quote at the baseline is available as a separate character, accessible via `\quotedblbase`. In the OT1 encoding it is not available, therefore we make it available by lowering the normal open quote character to the baseline.

```
12.844 \ProvideTextCommand{\quotedblbase}{OT1}{%
12.845   \save@sf@q{\set@low@box{\textquotedblright\}}%
12.846   \box\z@\kern-.04em\allowhyphens}}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used this glyph can still be typeset.

```
12.847 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\quotedblbase}{%
12.848   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\quotedblbase}}
```

`\quotesinglbase` We also need the single quote character at the baseline.

```
12.849 \ProvideTextCommand{\quotesinglbase}{OT1}{%
12.850   \save@sf@q{\set@low@box{\textquoteright\}}%
12.851   \box\z@\kern-.04em\allowhyphens}}
```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used this glyph can still be typeset.

```
12.852 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\quotesinglbase}{%
12.853   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\quotesinglbase}}
```

`\guillemotleft` The guillemet characters are not available in OT1 encoding. They are faked.

```
\guillemotright12.854 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemotleft}{OT1}{%
12.855   \ifmmode
12.856     \ll
12.857   \else
12.858     \save@sf@q{\nobreak
12.859       \raise.2ex\hbox{\scriptscriptstyle\ll}\allowhyphens}%
12.860     \fi}
12.861 \ProvideTextCommand{\guillemotright}{OT1}{%
```

---

<sup>8</sup>The file described in this section has version number v3.8j, and was last revised on 2008/03/16.

```

12.862 \ifmmode
12.863   \gg
12.864 \else
12.865   \save@sf@q{\nobreak
12.866     \raise.2ex\hbox{\scriptscriptstyle\gg}\allowhyphens}%
12.867 \fi}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

12.868 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemotleft}{%
12.869   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemotleft}}
12.870 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guillemotright}{%
12.871   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guillemotright}}

```

`\guilsinglleft` The single guillemets are not available in OT1 encoding. They are faked.

```

\guilsinglright12.872 \ProvideTextCommand{\guilsinglleft}{OT1}{%
12.873   \ifmmode
12.874     <%
12.875   \else
12.876     \save@sf@q{\nobreak
12.877       \raise.2ex\hbox{\scriptscriptstyle<}\allowhyphens}%
12.878   \fi}
12.879 \ProvideTextCommand{\guilsinglright}{OT1}{%
12.880   \ifmmode
12.881     >%
12.882   \else
12.883     \save@sf@q{\nobreak
12.884       \raise.2ex\hbox{\scriptscriptstyle>}\allowhyphens}%
12.885   \fi}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

12.886 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guilsinglleft}{%
12.887   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guilsinglleft}}
12.888 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\guilsinglright}{%
12.889   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\guilsinglright}}

```

## 12.11 Letters

`\ij` The dutch language uses the letter ‘ij’. It is available in T1 encoded fonts, but not `\IJ` in the OT1 encoded fonts. Therefore we fake it for the OT1 encoding.

```

12.890 \DeclareTextCommand{\ij}{OT1}{%
12.891   \allowhyphens i\kern-0.02em j\allowhyphens}
12.892 \DeclareTextCommand{\IJ}{OT1}{%
12.893   \allowhyphens I\kern-0.02em J\allowhyphens}
12.894 \DeclareTextCommand{\ij}{T1}{\char188}
12.895 \DeclareTextCommand{\IJ}{T1}{\char156}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

12.896 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\ij}{%
12.897   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\ij}}
12.898 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\IJ}{%
12.899   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\IJ}}

```

`\dj` The croatian language needs the letters `\dj` and `\DJ`; they are available in the T1 `\DJ` encoding, but not in the OT1 encoding by default.

Some code to construct these glyphs for the OT1 encoding was made available to me by Stipcevic Mario, ([stipcevic@olimp.irb.hr](mailto:stipcevic@olimp.irb.hr)).

```

12.900 \def\crrtic@{\hrule height0.1ex width0.3em}
12.901 \def\crrtic@{\hrule height0.1ex width0.33em}
12.902 %

```

```

12.903 \def\ddj@{%
12.904   \setbox0\hbox{d}\dimen@=\ht0
12.905   \advance\dimen@1ex
12.906   \dimen@.45\dimen@
12.907   \dimen@ii\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen\@ne\font\dimen@
12.908   \advance\dimen@ii.5ex
12.909   \leavevmode\rlap{\raise\dimen@\hbox{\kern\dimen@ii\vbox{\crrtic}}}}
12.910 \def\DDJ@{%
12.911   \setbox0\hbox{D}\dimen@=.55\ht0
12.912   \dimen@ii\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen\@ne\font\dimen@
12.913   \advance\dimen@ii.15ex %           correction for the dash position
12.914   \advance\dimen@ii-.15\fontdimen7\font %   correction for cmtt font
12.915   \dimen\thr@@\expandafter\rem@pt\the\fontdimen7\font\dimen@
12.916   \leavevmode\rlap{\raise\dimen@\hbox{\kern\dimen@ii\vbox{\crrtic}}}}
12.917 %
12.918 \DeclareTextCommand{\dj}{OT1}{\ddj@ d}
12.919 \DeclareTextCommand{\DJ}{OT1}{\DDJ@ D}

```

Make sure that when an encoding other than OT1 or T1 is used these glyphs can still be typeset.

```

12.920 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\dj}{%
12.921   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\dj}}
12.922 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\DJ}{%
12.923   \UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\DJ}}

```

`\SS` For the T1 encoding `\SS` is defined and selects a specific glyph from the font, but for other encodings it is not available. Therefor we make it available here.

```

12.924 \DeclareTextCommand{\SS}{OT1}{SS}
12.925 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\SS}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\SS}}

```

## 12.12 Shorthands for quotation marks

Shorthands are provided for a number of different quotation marks, which make them usable both outside and inside mathmode.

`\glq` The ‘german’ single quotes.

```

\grq12.926 \ProvideTextCommand{\glq}{OT1}{%
12.927   \textormath{\quotesinglbase}{\mbox{\quotesinglbase}}}
12.928 \ProvideTextCommand{\glq}{T1}{%
12.929   \textormath{\quotesinglbase}{\mbox{\quotesinglbase}}}
12.930 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\glq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\glq}

```

The definition of `\grq` depends on the fontencoding. With T1 encoding no extra kerning is needed.

```

12.931 \ProvideTextCommand{\grq}{T1}{%
12.932   \textormath{\textquoteleft}{\mbox{\textquoteleft}}}
12.933 \ProvideTextCommand{\grq}{OT1}{%
12.934   \save@sf@q{\kern-.0125em%
12.935   \textormath{\textquoteleft}{\mbox{\textquoteleft}}}%
12.936   \kern.07em\relax}}
12.937 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\grq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\grq}

```

`\glqq` The ‘german’ double quotes.

```

\grqq12.938 \ProvideTextCommand{\glqq}{OT1}{%
12.939   \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
12.940 \ProvideTextCommand{\glqq}{T1}{%
12.941   \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
12.942 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\glqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\glqq}

```

The definition of `\grqq` depends on the fontencoding. With T1 encoding no extra kerning is needed.

```

12.943 \ProvideTextCommand{\grqq}{T1}{%
12.944   \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}

```

```

12.945 \ProvideTextCommand{\grqq}{OT1}{%
12.946   \save@sf@q{\kern-.07em%
12.947   \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}%
12.948   \kern.07em\relax}}
12.949 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\grqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\grqq}

```

`\flq` The ‘french’ single guillemets.

```

\frq12.950 \ProvideTextCommand{\flq}{OT1}{%
12.951   \textormath{\guilsinglleft}{\mbox{\guilsinglleft}}}
12.952 \ProvideTextCommand{\flq}{T1}{%
12.953   \textormath{\guilsinglleft}{\mbox{\guilsinglleft}}}
12.954 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\flq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\flq}

12.955 \ProvideTextCommand{\frq}{OT1}{%
12.956   \textormath{\guilsinglright}{\mbox{\guilsinglright}}}
12.957 \ProvideTextCommand{\frq}{T1}{%
12.958   \textormath{\guilsinglright}{\mbox{\guilsinglright}}}
12.959 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\frq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\frq}

```

`\flqq` The ‘french’ double guillemets.

```

\frqq12.960 \ProvideTextCommand{\flqq}{OT1}{%
12.961   \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
12.962 \ProvideTextCommand{\flqq}{T1}{%
12.963   \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
12.964 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\flqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\flqq}

12.965 \ProvideTextCommand{\frqq}{OT1}{%
12.966   \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}
12.967 \ProvideTextCommand{\frqq}{T1}{%
12.968   \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}
12.969 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\frqq}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\frqq}

```

## 12.13 Umlauts and trema’s

The command `\` needs to have a different effect for different languages. For German for instance, the ‘umlaut’ should be positioned lower than the default position for placing it over the letters a, o, u, A, O and U. When placed over an e, i, E or I it can retain its normal position. For Dutch the same glyph is always placed in the lower position.

`\umlauthigh` To be able to provide both positions of `\` we provide two commands to switch the positioning, the default will be `\umlauthigh` (the normal positioning).

```

12.970 \def\umlauthigh{%
12.971   \def\bb@umlauta##1{\leavevmode\bgroup%
12.972     \expandafter\accent\csname\f@encoding dqpos\endcsname
12.973     ##1\allowhyphens\egroup}%
12.974   \let\bb@umlaute\bb@umlauta}
12.975 \def\umlautlow{%
12.976   \def\bb@umlauta{\protect\lower@umlaut}}
12.977 \def\umlaute\low{%
12.978   \def\bb@umlaute{\protect\lower@umlaut}}
12.979 \umlauthigh

```

`\lower@umlaut` The command `\lower@umlaut` is used to position the `\` closer to the letter.

We want the umlaut character lowered, nearer to the letter. To do this we need an extra *dimen* register.

```

12.980 \expandafter\ifx\csname U@D\endcsname\relax
12.981   \csname newdimen\endcsname\U@D
12.982 \fi

```

The following code fools T<sub>E</sub>X’s `make_accent` procedure about the current x-height of the font to force another placement of the umlaut character.

```

12.983 \def\lower@umlaut#1{%

```

First we have to save the current x-height of the font, because we'll change this font dimension and this is always done globally.

```
12.984 \leavevmode\bgroup
12.985 \U@D 1ex%
```

Then we compute the new x-height in such a way that the umlaut character is lowered to the base character. The value of `.45ex` depends on the METAFONT parameters with which the fonts were built. (Just try out, which value will look best.)

```
12.986 {\setbox\z@\hbox{%
12.987 \expandafter\char\csname\f@encoding dqpos\endcsname}%
12.988 \dimen@ -.45ex\advance\dimen@\ht\z@
```

If the new x-height is too low, it is not changed.

```
12.989 \ifdim 1ex<\dimen@ \fontdimen5\font\dimen@ \fi%
```

Finally we call the `\accent` primitive, reset the old x-height and insert the base character in the argument.

```
12.990 \expandafter\accent\csname\f@encoding dqpos\endcsname
12.991 \fontdimen5\font\U@D #1%
12.992 \egroup}
```

For all vowels we declare `\` to be a composite command which uses `\bbl@umlauta` or `\bbl@umlaute` to position the umlaut character. We need to be sure that these definitions override the ones that are provided when the package `fontenc` with option `OT1` is used. Therefore these declarations are postponed until the beginning of the document.

```
12.993 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.994 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{a}{\bbl@umlauta{a}}%
12.995 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{e}{\bbl@umlaute{e}}%
12.996 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{i}{\bbl@umlaute{ï}}%
12.997 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{ï}{\bbl@umlaute{ï}}%
12.998 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{o}{\bbl@umlauta{o}}%
12.999 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{u}{\bbl@umlauta{u}}%
12.1000 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{A}{\bbl@umlauta{A}}%
12.1001 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{E}{\bbl@umlaute{E}}%
12.1002 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{I}{\bbl@umlaute{I}}%
12.1003 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{O}{\bbl@umlauta{O}}%
12.1004 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{U}{\bbl@umlauta{U}}%
12.1005 }
```

## 12.14 The redefinition of the style commands

The rest of the code in this file can only be processed by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, so we check the current format. If it is plain T<sub>E</sub>X, processing should stop here. But, because of the need to limit the scope of the definition of `\format`, a macro that is used locally in the following `\if` statement, this comparison is done inside a group. To prevent T<sub>E</sub>X from complaining about an unclosed group, the processing of the command `\endinput` is deferred until after the group is closed. This is accomplished by the command `\aftergroup`.

```
12.1006 {\def\format{lpplain}
12.1007 \ifx\fmtname\format
12.1008 \else
12.1009 \def\format{LaTeX2e}
12.1010 \ifx\fmtname\format
12.1011 \else
12.1012 \aftergroup\endinput
12.1013 \fi
12.1014 \fi}
```

Now that we're sure that the code is seen by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X only, we have to find out what the main (primary) document style is because we want to redefine some



macros. This is only necessary for releases of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X dated before December 1991. Therefor this part of the code can optionally be included in `babel.def` by specifying the `docstrip` option `names`.

12.1015 `(*names)`

The standard styles can be distinguished by checking whether some macros are defined. In table 1 an overview is given of the macros that can be used for this purpose.

article	:	both the <code>\chapter</code> and <code>\opening</code> macros are undefined
report and book	:	the <code>\chapter</code> macro is defined and the <code>\opening</code> is undefined
letter	:	the <code>\chapter</code> macro is undefined and the <code>\opening</code> is defined

Table 1: How to determine the main document style

The macros that have to be redefined for the `report` and `book` document styles happen to be the same, so there is no need to distinguish between those two styles.

`\doc@style` First a parameter `\doc@style` is defined to identify the current document style. This parameter might have been defined by a document style that already uses macros instead of hard-wired texts, such as `artikel1.sty` [6], so the existence of `\doc@style` is checked. If this macro is undefined, i. e., if the document style is unknown and could therefore contain hard-wired texts, `\doc@style` is defined to the default value ‘0’.

12.1016 `\ifx\@undefined\doc@style`

12.1017 `\def\doc@style{0}%`

This parameter is defined in the following `if` construction (see table 1):

```

12.1018 \ifx\@undefined\opening
12.1019 \ifx\@undefined\chapter
12.1020 \def\doc@style{1}%
12.1021 \else
12.1022 \def\doc@style{2}%
12.1023 \fi
12.1024 \else
12.1025 \def\doc@style{3}%
12.1026 \fi%
12.1027 \fi%
```

### 12.14.1 Redefinition of macros

Now here comes the real work: we start to redefine things and replace hard-wired texts by macros. These redefinitions should be carried out conditionally, in case it has already been done.

For the `figure` and `table` environments we have in all styles:

```

12.1028 \@ifundefined{figurename}{\def\fnun@figure{\figurename} \thefigure}}{}
12.1029 \@ifundefined{tablename}{\def\fnun@table{\tablename} \thetable}}{}

```

The rest of the macros have to be treated differently for each style. When `\doc@style` still has its default value nothing needs to be done.

12.1030 `\ifcase \doc@style\relax`

12.1031 `\or`

This means that `babel.def` is read after the `article` style, where no `\chapter` and `\opening` commands are defined<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>9</sup>A fact that was pointed out to me by Nico Poppelier and was already used in Piet van Oostrum’s document style option `n1`.

First we have the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`:

```

12.1032 \@ifundefined{contentsname}%
12.1033   {\def\tableofcontents{\section*{\contentsname\@mkboth
12.1034     {\uppercase{\contentsname}}{\uppercase{\contentsname}}}%
12.1035     \@starttoc{toc}}}{\}
12.1036
12.1037 \@ifundefined{listfigurename}%
12.1038   {\def\listoffigures{\section*{\listfigurename\@mkboth
12.1039     {\uppercase{\listfigurename}}{\uppercase{\listfigurename}}}%
12.1040     \@starttoc{lof}}}{\}
12.1041
12.1042 \@ifundefined{listtablename}%
12.1043   {\def\listoftables{\section*{\listtablename\@mkboth
12.1044     {\uppercase{\listtablename}}{\uppercase{\listtablename}}}%
12.1045     \@starttoc{lot}}}{\}

```

Then the `\thebibliography` and `\theindex` environments.

```

12.1046 \@ifundefined{refname}%
12.1047   {\def\thebibliography#1{\section*{\refname
12.1048     \@mkboth{\uppercase{\refname}}{\uppercase{\refname}}}%
12.1049     \list{\arabic{enumi}}{\settowidth\labelwidth{[#1]}%
12.1050       \leftmargin\labelwidth
12.1051       \advance\leftmargin\labelsep
12.1052       \usecounter{enumi}}%
12.1053     \def\newblock{\hskip.11em plus.33em minus.07em}%
12.1054     \sloppy\clubpenalty4000\widowpenalty\clubpenalty
12.1055     \sfcode'\.=1000\relax}}{\}
12.1056
12.1057 \@ifundefined{indexname}%
12.1058   {\def\theindex{\@restonecoltrue\if@twocolumn\@restonecolfalse\fi
12.1059     \columnseprule \z@
12.1060     \columnsep 35pt\twocolumn[\section*{\indexname}]%
12.1061     \@mkboth{\uppercase{\indexname}}{\uppercase{\indexname}}%
12.1062     \thispagestyle{plain}%
12.1063     \parskip\z@ plus.3pt\parindent\z@\let\item\@idxitem}}{\}

```

The abstract environment:

```

12.1064 \@ifundefined{abstractname}%
12.1065   {\def\abstract{\if@twocolumn
12.1066     \section*{\abstractname}%
12.1067     \else \small
12.1068     \begin{center}%
12.1069     {\bf \abstractname\vspace{-.5em}\vspace{\z@}}%
12.1070     \end{center}%
12.1071     \quotation
12.1072     \fi}}{\}

```

And last but not least, the macro `\part`:

```

12.1073 \@ifundefined{partname}%
12.1074 {\def\@part[#1]#2{\ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
12.1075   \refstepcounter{part}%
12.1076   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\thepart
12.1077     \hspace{1em}#1}\else
12.1078   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}\fi
12.1079   {\parindent\z@ \raggedright
12.1080   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
12.1081     \Large \bf \partname{} \thepart
12.1082     \par \nobreak
12.1083     \fi
12.1084     \huge \bf
12.1085     #2\markboth{}{\}\par}%
12.1086     \nobreak
12.1087     \vskip 3ex\@afterheading}%

```

12.1088 }{}

This is all that needs to be done for the `article` style.

12.1089 \or

The next case is formed by the two styles `book` and `report`. Basically we have to do the same as for the `article` style, except now we must also change the `\chapter` command.

The tables of contents, figures and tables:

```
12.1090 \ifundefined{contentsname}%
12.1091   {\def\tableofcontents{\@restonecolfalse
12.1092     \if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn
12.1093     \fi\chapter*{\contentsname\@mkboth
12.1094       {\uppercase{\contentsname}}{\uppercase{\contentsname}}}%
12.1095     \@starttoc{toc}%
12.1096     \csname if@restonecol\endcsname\twocolumn
12.1097     \csname fi\endcsname}}{}}
12.1098
12.1099 \ifundefined{listfigurename}%
12.1100   {\def\listoffigures{\@restonecolfalse
12.1101     \if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn
12.1102     \fi\chapter*{\listfigurename\@mkboth
12.1103       {\uppercase{\listfigurename}}{\uppercase{\listfigurename}}}%
12.1104     \@starttoc{lof}%
12.1105     \csname if@restonecol\endcsname\twocolumn
12.1106     \csname fi\endcsname}}{}}
12.1107
12.1108 \ifundefined{listtablename}%
12.1109   {\def\listoftables{\@restonecolfalse
12.1110     \if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn
12.1111     \fi\chapter*{\listtablename\@mkboth
12.1112       {\uppercase{\listtablename}}{\uppercase{\listtablename}}}%
12.1113     \@starttoc{lot}%
12.1114     \csname if@restonecol\endcsname\twocolumn
12.1115     \csname fi\endcsname}}{}}
```

Again, the bibliography and index environments; notice that in this case we use `\bibname` instead of `\refname` as in the definitions for the `article` style. The reason for this is that in the `article` document style the term ‘References’ is used in the definition of `\thebibliography`. In the `report` and `book` document styles the term ‘Bibliography’ is used.

```
12.1116 \ifundefined{bibname}%
12.1117   {\def\thebibliography#1{\chapter*{\bibname
12.1118     \@mkboth{\uppercase{\bibname}}{\uppercase{\bibname}}}%
12.1119     \list{[arabic{enumi}]}{\settowidth\labelwidth{[#1]}%
12.1120     \leftmargin\labelwidth \advance\leftmargin\labelsep
12.1121     \usecounter{enumi}}}%
12.1122     \def\newblock{\hskip.11em plus.33em minus.07em}%
12.1123     \sloppy\clubpenalty4000\widowpenalty\clubpenalty
12.1124     \sfcode‘\.=1000\relax}}{}}
12.1125
12.1126 \ifundefined{indexname}%
12.1127   {\def\theindex{\@restonecoltrue\if@twocolumn\@restonecolfalse\fi
12.1128     \columnseprule \z@
12.1129     \columnsep 35pt\twocolumn[\@makeschapterhead{\indexname}]%
12.1130     \@mkboth{\uppercase{\indexname}}{\uppercase{\indexname}}}%
12.1131     \thispagestyle{plain}%
12.1132     \parskip\z@ plus.3pt\parindent\z@ \let\item\@idxitem}}{}}
```

Here is the abstract environment:

```
12.1133 \ifundefined{abstractname}%
12.1134   {\def\abstract{\titlepage
12.1135     \null\vfil
```

```

12.1136 \begin{center}%
12.1137 {\bf \abstractname}%
12.1138 \end{center}}{}

```

And last but not least the `\chapter`, `\appendix` and `\part` macros.

```

12.1139 \@ifundefined{chaptername}{\def\@chapapp{chaptername}}{}
12.1140 %
12.1141 \@ifundefined{appendixname}%
12.1142 {\def\appendix{\par
12.1143 \setcounter{chapter}{0}%
12.1144 \setcounter{section}{0}%
12.1145 \def\@chapapp{appendixname}%
12.1146 \def\thechapter{\Alph{chapter}}}}{}
12.1147 %
12.1148 \@ifundefined{partname}%
12.1149 {\def\@part[#1]#2{\ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
12.1150 \refstepcounter{part}%
12.1151 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\thepart
12.1152 \hspace{1em}#1}\else
12.1153 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}\fi
12.1154 \markboth{}{}}%
12.1155 {\centering
12.1156 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
12.1157 \huge\bf \partname{} \thepart
12.1158 \par
12.1159 \vskip 20pt \fi
12.1160 \Huge \bf
12.1161 #1\par}\@endpart}}{}%
12.1162 \or

```

Now we address the case where `babel.def` is read after the `letter` style. The `letter` document style defines the macro `\opening` and some other macros that are specific to `letter`. This means that we have to redefine other macros, compared to the previous two cases.

First two macros for the material at the end of a letter, the `\cc` and `\encl` macros.

```

12.1163 \@ifundefined{ccname}%
12.1164 {\def\cc#1{\par\noindent
12.1165 \parbox[t]{\textwidth}%
12.1166 {\@hangfrom{\rm \ccname : }\ignorespaces #1\strut}\par}}{}
12.1167
12.1168 \@ifundefined{enclname}%
12.1169 {\def\encl#1{\par\noindent
12.1170 \parbox[t]{\textwidth}%
12.1171 {\@hangfrom{\rm \enclname : }\ignorespaces #1\strut}\par}}{}

```

The last thing we have to do here is to redefine the headings pagestyle:

```

12.1172 \@ifundefined{headtoname}%
12.1173 {\def\ps@headings{%
12.1174 \def\@oddhead{\sl \headtoname{} \ignorespaces\toname \hfil
12.1175 \date \hfil \pagename{} \thepage}%
12.1176 \def\@oddfoot{}}}{}

```

This was the last of the four standard document styles, so if `\docstyle` has another value we do nothing and just close the `if` construction.

```
12.1177 \fi
```

Here ends the code that can be optionally included when a version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X is in use that is dated *before* December 1991.

```

12.1178 </names>
12.1179 </core>

```

## 12.15 Cross referencing macros

The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X book states:

The *key* argument is any sequence of letters, digits, and punctuation symbols; upper- and lowercase letters are regarded as different.

When the above quote should still be true when a document is typeset in a language that has active characters, special care has to be taken of the category codes of these characters when they appear in an argument of the cross referencing macros.

When a cross referencing command processes its argument, all tokens in this argument should be character tokens with category ‘letter’ or ‘other’.

The only way to accomplish this in most cases is to use the trick described in the T<sub>E</sub>Xbook [1] (Appendix D, page 382). The primitive `\meaning` applied to a token expands to the current meaning of this token. For example, `\meaning\A` with `\A` defined as `\def\A#1{\B}` expands to the characters `‘macro:#1->\B’` with all category codes set to ‘other’ or ‘space’.

`\bbl@redefine` To redefine a command, we save the old meaning of the macro. Then we redefine it to call the original macro with the ‘sanitized’ argument. The reason why we do it this way is that we don’t want to redefine the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macros completely in case their definitions change (they have changed in the past).

Because we need to redefine a number of commands we define the command `\bbl@redefine` which takes care of this. It creates a new control sequence, `\org@...`

```
12.1180 (*core | shorthands)
12.1181 \def\bbl@redefine#1{%
12.1182   \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobble\string#1}%
12.1183   \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1
12.1184   \expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname}
```

This command should only be used in the preamble of the document.

```
12.1185 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefine
```

`\bbl@redefine@long` This version of `\babel@redefine` can be used to redefine `\long` commands such as `\ifthenelse`.

```
12.1186 \def\bbl@redefine@long#1{%
12.1187   \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobble\string#1}%
12.1188   \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1
12.1189   \expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname}
12.1190 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefine@long
```

`\bbl@redefineroobust` For commands that are redefined, but which *might* be robust we need a slightly more intelligent macro. A robust command `foo` is defined to expand to `\protect\foo`. So it is necessary to check whether `\foo` exists.

```
12.1191 \def\bbl@redefineroobust#1{%
12.1192   \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\@gobble\string#1}%
12.1193   \expandafter\ifx\csname\bbl@tempa\space\endcsname\relax
12.1194     \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\endcsname#1
12.1195     \expandafter\edef\csname\bbl@tempa\endcsname{\noexpand\protect
12.1196       \expandafter\noexpand\csname\bbl@tempa\space\endcsname}%
12.1197   \else
12.1198     \expandafter\let\csname org@\bbl@tempa\expandafter\endcsname
12.1199       \csname\bbl@tempa\space\endcsname
12.1200   \fi
```

The result of the code above is that the command that is being redefined is always robust afterwards. Therefore all we need to do now is define `\foo`.

```
12.1201 \expandafter\def\csname\bbl@tempa\space\endcsname}
```

This command should only be used in the preamble of the document.

```
12.1202 \@onlypreamble\bbl@redefineroobust
```

`\newlabel` The macro `\label` writes a line with a `\newlabel` command into the `.aux` file to define labels.

```
12.1203 %\bbl@redefine\newlabel#1#2{%
12.1204 % \@safe@activestru\org@newlabel{#1}{#2}\@safe@activesfalse}
```

`\@newl@bel` We need to change the definition of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X-internal macro `\@newl@bel`. This is needed because we need to make sure that shorthand characters expand to their non-active version.

```
12.1205 \def\@newl@bel#1#2#3{%
```

First we open a new group to keep the changed setting of `\protect` local and then we set the `@safe@actives` switch to true to make sure that any shorthand that appears in any of the arguments immediately expands to its non-active self.

```
12.1206 {%
12.1207 \@safe@activestru
12.1208 \@ifundefined{#1@#2}%
12.1209 \relax
12.1210 {%
12.1211 \gdef \@multiplelabels {%
12.1212 \@latex@warning@no@line{There were multiply-defined labels}}%
12.1213 \@latex@warning@no@line{Label ‘#2’ multiply defined}%
12.1214 }%
12.1215 \global\@namedef{#1@#2}{#3}%
12.1216 }%
12.1217 }
```

`\@testdef` An internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macro used to test if the labels that have been written on the `.aux` file have changed. It is called by the `\enddocument` macro. This macro needs to be completely rewritten, using `\meaning`. The reason for this is that in some cases the expansion of `\#1@#2` contains the same characters as the `#3`; but the character codes differ. Therefore L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X keeps reporting that the labels may have changed.

```
12.1218 \CheckCommand*\@testdef[3]{%
12.1219 \def\reserved@a{#3}%
12.1220 \expandafter \ifx \csname #1@#2\endcsname \reserved@a
12.1221 \else
12.1222 \@tempswatru
12.1223 \fi}
```

Now that we made sure that `\@testdef` still has the same definition we can rewrite it. First we make the shorthands ‘safe’.

```
12.1224 \def\@testdef #1#2#3{%
12.1225 \@safe@activestru
```

Then we use `\bbl@tempa` as an ‘alias’ for the macro that contains the label which is being checked.

```
12.1226 \expandafter\let\expandafter\bbl@tempa\csname #1@#2\endcsname
```

Then we define `\bbl@tempb` just as `\@newl@bel` does it.

```
12.1227 \def\bbl@tempb{#3}%
12.1228 \@safe@activesfalse
```

When the label is defined we replace the definition of `\bbl@tempa` by its meaning.

```
12.1229 \ifx\bbl@tempa\relax
12.1230 \else
12.1231 \edef\bbl@tempa{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempa}%
12.1232 \fi
```

We do the same for `\bbl@tempb`.

```
12.1233 \edef\bbl@tempb{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\bbl@tempb}%
```

If the label didn't change, `\bbl@tempa` and `\bbl@tempb` should be identical macros.

```
12.1234 \ifx \bbl@tempa \bbl@tempb
12.1235 \else
12.1236 \@tempswatru
12.1237 \fi}
```

`\ref` The same holds for the macro `\ref` that references a label and `\pageref` to reference a page. So we redefine `\ref` and `\pageref`. While we change these macros, we make them robust as well (if they weren't already) to prevent problems if they should become expanded at the wrong moment.

```
12.1238 \bbl@redefineroobust\ref#1{%
12.1239 \@safe@activestrue\org@ref{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
12.1240 \bbl@redefineroobust\pageref#1{%
12.1241 \@safe@activestrue\org@pageref{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
```

`\@citex` The macro used to cite from a bibliography, `\cite`, uses an internal macro, `\@citex`. It is this internal macro that picks up the argument(s), so we redefine this internal macro and leave `\cite` alone. The first argument is used for typesetting, so the shorthands need only be deactivated in the second argument.

```
12.1242 \bbl@redefine\@citex[#1]#2{%
12.1243 \@safe@activestrue\edef\@tempa{#2}\@safe@activesfalse
12.1244 \org@@citex[#1]{\@tempa}}
```

Unfortunately, the packages `natbib` and `cite` need a different definition of `\@citex`... To begin with, `natbib` has a definition for `\@citex` with *three* arguments... We only know that a package is loaded when `\begin{document}` is executed, so we need to postpone the different redefinition.

```
12.1245 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.1246 \@ifpackageloaded{natbib}{%
```

Notice that we use `\def` here instead of `\bbl@redefine` because `\org@@citex` is already defined and we don't want to overwrite that definition (it would result in parameter stack overflow because of a circular definition).

```
12.1247 \def\@citex[#1][#2]#3{%
12.1248 \@safe@activestrue\edef\@tempa{#3}\@safe@activesfalse
12.1249 \org@@citex[#1][#2]{\@tempa}}%
12.1250 }{}}
```

The package `cite` has a definition of `\@citex` where the shorthands need to be turned off in both arguments.

```
12.1251 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.1252 \@ifpackageloaded{cite}{%
12.1253 \def\@citex[#1]#2{%
12.1254 \@safe@activestrue\org@@citex[#1]#2}\@safe@activesfalse}%
12.1255 }{}}
```

`\nocite` The macro `\nocite` which is used to instruct BiBTeX to extract uncited references from the database.

```
12.1256 \bbl@redefine\nocite#1{%
12.1257 \@safe@activestrue\org@nocite{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
```

`\bibcite` The macro that is used in the `.aux` file to define citation labels. When packages such as `natbib` or `cite` are not loaded its second argument is used to typeset the citation label. In that case, this second argument can contain active characters but is used in an environment where `\@safe@activestrue` is in effect. This switch needs to be reset inside the `\hbox` which contains the citation label. In order to determine during `.aux` file processing which definition of `\bibcite` is needed we define `\bibcite` in such a way that it redefines itself with the proper definition.

```
12.1258 \bbl@redefine\bibcite{%
```

We call `\bbl@cite@choice` to select the proper definition for `\bibcite`. This new definition is then activated.

```
12.1259 \bbl@cite@choice
12.1260 \bibcite}
```

`\bbl@bibcite` The macro `\bbl@bibcite` holds the definition of `\bibcite` needed when neither `natbib` nor `cite` is loaded.

```
12.1261 \def\bbl@bibcite#1#2{%
12.1262 \org@bibcite{#1}\@safe@activesfalse#2}}
```

`\bbl@cite@choice` The macro `\bbl@cite@choice` determines which definition of `\bibcite` is needed.

```
12.1263 \def\bbl@cite@choice{%
  First we give \bibcite its default definition.
12.1264 \global\let\bibcite\bbl@bibcite
```

Then, when `natbib` is loaded we restore the original definition of `\bibcite`.

```
12.1265 \@ifpackageloaded{natbib}{\global\let\bibcite\org@bibcite}{}%
```

For `cite` we do the same.

```
12.1266 \@ifpackageloaded{cite}{\global\let\bibcite\org@bibcite}{}%
```

Make sure this only happens once.

```
12.1267 \global\let\bbl@cite@choice\relax
12.1268 }
```

When a document is run for the first time, no `.aux` file is available, and `\bibcite` will not yet be properly defined. In this case, this has to happen before the document starts.

```
12.1269 \AtBeginDocument{\bbl@cite@choice}
```

`\@bibitem` One of the two internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macros called by `\bibitem` that write the citation label on the `.aux` file.

```
12.1270 \bbl@redefine\@bibitem#1{%
12.1271 \@safe@activestrue\org@bibitem{#1}\@safe@activesfalse}
```

## 12.16 marks

`\markright` Because the output routine is asynchronous, we must pass the current language attribute to the head lines, together with the text that is put into them. To achieve this we need to adapt the definition of `\markright` and `\markboth` somewhat.

```
12.1272 \bbl@redefine\markright#1{%
```

First of all we temporarily store the language switching command, using an expanded definition in order to get the current value of `\language`.

```
12.1273 \edef\bbl@tempb{\noexpand\protect
12.1274 \noexpand\foreignlanguage{\language}}%
```

Then, we check whether the argument is empty; if it is, we just make sure the scratch token register is empty.

```
12.1275 \def\bbl@arg{#1}%
12.1276 \ifx\bbl@arg\@empty
12.1277 \toks@{}%
12.1278 \else
```

Next, we store the argument to `\markright` in the scratch token register, together with the expansion of `\bbl@tempb` (containing the language switching command) as defined before. This way these commands will not be expanded by using `\edef` later on, and we make sure that the text is typeset using the correct language settings. While doing so, we make sure that active characters that may end up in the mark are not disabled by the output routine kicking in while `\@safe@activestrue` is in effect.

```
12.1279 \expandafter\toks@\expandafter{%
12.1280 \bbl@tempb{\protect\bbl@restore@actives#1}}%
12.1281 \fi
```



Then we define a temporary control sequence using `\edef`.

```
12.1282 \edef\bbl@tempa{%
    When \bbl@tempa is executed, only \language will be expanded, because of
    the way the token register was filled.
12.1283 \noexpand\org@markright{\the\toks@}}%
12.1284 \bbl@tempa
12.1285 }
```

`\markboth` The definition of `\markboth` is equivalent to that of `\markright`, except that we need two token registers. The documentclasses `report` and `book` define and set the headings for the page. While doing so they also store a copy of `\markboth` in `\@mkboth`. Therefore we need to check whether `\@mkboth` has already been set. If so we need to do that again with the new definition of `\makrboth`.

```
12.1286 \ifx\@mkboth\markboth
12.1287 \def\bbl@tempc{\let\@mkboth\markboth}
12.1288 \else
12.1289 \def\bbl@tempc{}
12.1290 \fi

    Now we can start the new definition of \markboth
12.1291 \bbl@redefine\markboth#1#2{%
12.1292 \edef\bbl@tempb{\noexpand\protect
12.1293 \noexpand\foreignlanguage{\language}}%
12.1294 \def\bbl@arg{#1}%
12.1295 \ifx\bbl@arg\@empty
12.1296 \toks@{}%
12.1297 \else
12.1298 \expandafter\toks@\expandafter{%
12.1299 \bbl@tempb{\protect\bbl@restore@actives#1}}%
12.1300 \fi
12.1301 \def\bbl@arg{#2}%
12.1302 \ifx\bbl@arg\@empty
12.1303 \toks8{}%
12.1304 \else
12.1305 \expandafter\toks8\expandafter{%
12.1306 \bbl@tempb{\protect\bbl@restore@actives#2}}%
12.1307 \fi
12.1308 \edef\bbl@tempa{%
12.1309 \noexpand\org@markboth{\the\toks@}{\the\toks8}}%
12.1310 \bbl@tempa
12.1311 }
```

and copy it to `\@mkboth` if necessary.

```
12.1312 \bbl@tempc
12.1313 </core | shorthands>
```

## 12.17 Encoding issues (part 2)

`\TeX` Because documents may use font encodings other than one of the latin encodings, `\LaTeX` we make sure that the logos of `TeX` and `LATeX` always come out in the right encoding.

```
12.1314 <*core>
12.1315 \bbl@redefine\TeX{\textlatin{\org@TeX}}
12.1316 \bbl@redefine\LaTeX{\textlatin{\org@LaTeX}}
12.1317 </core>
```

## 12.18 Preventing clashes with other packages

### 12.18.1 `ifthen`

`\ifthenelse` Sometimes a document writer wants to create a special effect depending on the page a certain fragment of text appears on. This can be achieved by the following

piece of code:

```
\ifthenelse{\isodd{\pageref{some:label}}}{
  {code for odd pages}
  {code for even pages}}
```

In order for this to work the argument of `\isodd` needs to be fully expandable. With the above redefinition of `\pageref` it is not in the case of this example. To overcome that, we add some code to the definition of `\ifthenelse` to make things work.

The first thing we need to do is check if the package `ifthen` is loaded. This should be done at `\begin{document}` time.

```
12.1318 (*package)
12.1319 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.1320   \@ifpackageloaded{ifthen}{%
    Then we can redefine \ifthenelse:
12.1321   \bbl@redefine@long\ifthenelse#1#2#3{%
```

We want to revert the definition of `\pageref` to its original definition for the duration of `\ifthenelse`, so we first need to store its current meaning.

```
12.1322     \let\bbl@tempa\pageref
12.1323     \let\pageref\org@pageref
```

Then we can set the `\@safe@actives` switch and call the original `\ifthenelse`. In order to be able to use shorthands in the second and third arguments of `\ifthenelse` the resetting of the switch *and* the definition of `\pageref` happens inside those arguments.

```
12.1324     \@safe@activestrue
12.1325     \org@ifthenelse{#1}{%
12.1326       \let\pageref\bbl@tempa
12.1327       \@safe@activesfalse
12.1328       #2}{%
12.1329       \let\pageref\bbl@tempa
12.1330       \@safe@activesfalse
12.1331       #3}%
12.1332   }%
```

When the package wasn't loaded we do nothing.

```
12.1333   }{%
12.1334 }
```

## 12.18.2 varioref

`\@vppageref` When the package `varioref` is in use we need to modify its internal command `\vrefpagemum` `\@vppageref` in order to prevent problems when an active character ends up in `\Ref` the argument of `\vref`.

```
12.1335 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.1336   \@ifpackageloaded{varioref}{%
12.1337     \bbl@redefine\@vppageref#1[#2]#3{%
12.1338       \@safe@activestrue
12.1339       \org@@vppageref{#1}[#2]{#3}%
12.1340       \@safe@activesfalse}%
```

The same needs to happen for `\vrefpagemum`.

```
12.1341   \bbl@redefine\vrefpagemum#1#2{%
12.1342     \@safe@activestrue
12.1343     \org\vrefpagemum{#1}#2}%
12.1344   \@safe@activesfalse}%
```

The package `varioref` defines `\Ref` to be a robust command with uppercases the first character of the reference text. In order to be able to do that it needs to access the expandable form of `\ref`. So we employ a little trick here. We

redefine the (internal) command `\Ref` to call `\org@ref` instead of `\ref`. The disadvantage of this solution is that whenever the definition of `\Ref` changes, this definition needs to be updated as well.

```

12.1345   \expandafter\def\csname Ref \endcsname#1{%
12.1346     \protected@edef\@tempa{\org@ref{#1}}\expandafter\MakeUppercase\@tempa}
12.1347   }{}%
12.1348   }

```

### 12.18.3 `hhline`

`\hhline` Delaying the activation of the shorthand characters has introduced a problem with the `hhline` package. The reason is that it uses the ‘:’ character which is made active by the french support in `babel`. Therefore we need to *reload* the package when the ‘:’ is an active character.

So at `\begin{document}` we check whether `hhline` is loaded.

```

12.1349 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.1350   \@ifpackageloaded{hhline}%

```

Then we check whether the expansion of `\normal@char:` is not equal to `\relax`.

```

12.1351   {\expandafter\ifx\csname normal@char\string:\endcsname\relax
12.1352   \else

```

In that case we simply reload the package. Note that this happens *after* the category code of the @-sign has been changed to other, so we need to temporarily change it to letter again.

```

12.1353     \makeatletter
12.1354     \def\@currname{hhline}\input{hhline.sty}\makeatother
12.1355     \fi}%
12.1356   {}}

```

### 12.18.4 `hyperref`

`\pdfstringdefDisableCommands` Although a number of interworking problems between `babel` and `hyperref` are tackled by `hyperref` itself we need to take care of correctly handling the shorthand characters. When they get expanded inside a bookmark a warning will appear in the log file which can be prevented. This is done by informing `hyperref` that it should use the shorthands as defined on the system level rather than at the user level.

```

12.1357 \AtBeginDocument{%
12.1358   \@ifundefined{pdfstringdefDisableCommands}%
12.1359   {}%
12.1360   {\pdfstringdefDisableCommands{%
12.1361     \languageshorthands{system}}}%
12.1362   }%
12.1363 }

```

### 12.18.5 General

`\FOREIGNLANGUAGE` The package `fancyhdr` treats the running head and foot lines somewhat differently as the standard classes. A symptom of this is that the command `\foreignlanguage` which `babel` adds to the marks can end up inside the argument of `\MakeUppercase`. To prevent unexpected results we need to define `\FOREIGNLANGUAGE` here.

```

12.1364 \DeclareRobustCommand{\FOREIGNLANGUAGE}[1]{%
12.1365   \lowercase{\foreignlanguage{#1}}}
12.1366 \package

```

`\nfss@catcodes` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X’s font selection scheme sometimes wants to read font definition files in the middle of processing the document. In order to guard against any characters having the wrong `\catcodes` it always calls `\nfss@catcodes` before loading a file.

Unfortunately, the characters " and ' are not dealt with. Therefore we have to add them until L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X does that herself.

```

12.1367 <*core | shorthands>
12.1368 \ifx\nfss@catcodes\@undefined
12.1369 \else
12.1370 \addto\nfss@catcodes{%
12.1371 \@makeother\'%
12.1372 \@makeother"%
12.1373 }
12.1374 \fi

12.1375 </core | shorthands>

```

## 13 Local Language Configuration

`\loadlocalcfg` At some sites it may be necessary to add site-specific actions to a language definition file. This can be done by creating a file with the same name as the language definition file, but with the extension `.cfg`. For instance the file `norsk.cfg` will be loaded when the language definition file `norsk.ldf` is loaded.

```
13.1 <*core>
```

For plain-based formats we don't want to override the definition of `\loadlocalcfg` from `plain.def`.

```

13.2 \ifx\loadlocalcfg\@undefined
13.3 \def\loadlocalcfg#1{%
13.4 \InputIfFileExists{#1.cfg}
13.5 {\typeout{*****^~J%
13.6 * Local config file #1.cfg used^~J%
13.7 *}%
13.8 }
13.9 {}}
13.10 \fi

```

Just to be compatible with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 we add a few more lines of code:

```

13.11 \ifx\@unexpandable@protect\@undefined
13.12 \def\@unexpandable@protect{\noexpand\protect\noexpand}
13.13 \long\def \protected@write#1#2#3{%
13.14 \begingroup
13.15 \let\thepage\relax
13.16 #2%
13.17 \let\protect\@unexpandable@protect
13.18 \edef\reserved@a{\write#1{#3}}%
13.19 \reserved@a
13.20 \endgroup
13.21 \if@nobreak\ifvmode\nobreak\fi\fi
13.22 }
13.23 \fi
13.24 </core>

```

## 14 Driver files for the documented source code

Since babel version 3.4 all source files that are part of the babel system can be typeset separately. But to typeset them all in one document, the file `babel.drv` can be used. If you only want the information on how to use the babel system and what goodies are provided by the language-specific files, you can run the file `user.drv` through L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to get a user guide.

```
14.1 (*driver)
14.2 \documentclass{ltxdoc}
14.3 \usepackage{url,tienc,supertabular}
14.4 \usepackage[icelandic,english]{babel}
14.5 \DoNotIndex{!,\',\,,\.,\-, \:, \;, \?, \/, \^, \', \@M}
14.6 \DoNotIndex{\@, \@ne, \@m, \@afterheading, \@date, \@endpart}
14.7 \DoNotIndex{\@hangfrom, \@idxtitem, \@makeschapterhead, \@mkboth}
14.8 \DoNotIndex{\@oddfoot, \@odfhead, \@restonecolfalse, \@restonecoltrue}
14.9 \DoNotIndex{\@starttoc, \@unused}
14.10 \DoNotIndex{\accent, \active}
14.11 \DoNotIndex{\addcontentsline, \advance, \Alph, \arabic}
14.12 \DoNotIndex{\baselineskip, \begin, \beginngroup, \bf, \box, \c@secnumdepth}
14.13 \DoNotIndex{\catcode, \centering, \char, \chardef, \clubpenalty}
14.14 \DoNotIndex{\columnsep, \columnseprule, \crrc, \csname}
14.15 \DoNotIndex{\day, \def, \dimen, \discretionary, \divide, \dp, \do}
14.16 \DoNotIndex{\edef, \else, \@empty, \end, \endgroup, \endcsname, \endinput}
14.17 \DoNotIndex{\errhelp, \errmessage, \expandafter, \fi, \filedate}
14.18 \DoNotIndex{\fileversion, \fmtname, \fnum@figure, \fnum@table, \fontdimen}
14.19 \DoNotIndex{\gdef, \global}
14.20 \DoNotIndex{\hbox, \hidewidth, \hfil, \hskip, \hspace, \ht, \Huge, \huge}
14.21 \DoNotIndex{\ialign, \if@twocolumn, \ifcase, \ifcat, \ifhmode, \ifmmode}
14.22 \DoNotIndex{\ifnum, \ifx, \immediate, \ignorespaces, \input, \item}
14.23 \DoNotIndex{\kern}
14.24 \DoNotIndex{\labelsep, \Large, \large, \labelwidth, \lccode, \leftmargin}
14.25 \DoNotIndex{\lineskip, \leavevmode, \let, \list, \ll, \long, \lower}
14.26 \DoNotIndex{\m@ne, \mathchar, \mathaccent, \markboth, \month, \multiply}
14.27 \DoNotIndex{\newblock, \newbox, \newcount, \newdimen, \newif, \newwrite}
14.28 \DoNotIndex{\nobreak, \noexpand, \noindent, \null, \number}
14.29 \DoNotIndex{\onecolumn, \or}
14.30 \DoNotIndex{\p@, \par, \parbox, \parindent, \parskip, \penalty}
14.31 \DoNotIndex{\protect, \ps@headings}
14.32 \DoNotIndex{\quotation}
14.33 \DoNotIndex{\raggedright, \raise, \refstepcounter, \relax, \rm, \setbox}
14.34 \DoNotIndex{\section, \setcounter, \settowidth, \scriptscriptstyle}
14.35 \DoNotIndex{\sfcode, \sl, \sloppy, \small, \space, \spacefactor, \strut}
14.36 \DoNotIndex{\string}
14.37 \DoNotIndex{\textwidth, \the, \thechapter, \thefigure, \thepage, \thepart}
14.38 \DoNotIndex{\thetable, \thispagestyle, \titlepage, \tracingmacros}
14.39 \DoNotIndex{\tw@, \twocolumn, \typeout, \uppercase, \usecounter}
14.40 \DoNotIndex{\vbox, \vfil, \vskip, \vspace, \vss}
14.41 \DoNotIndex{\widowpenalty, \write, \xdef, \year, \z@, \z@skip}
```

Here `\dlqq` is defined so that an example of " ' " can be given.

```
14.42 \makeatletter
14.43 \gdef\dlqq{\setbox\tw@=\hbox{,}\setbox\z@=\hbox{'}}%
14.44 \dimen\z@=\ht\z@ \advance\dimen\z@-\ht\tw@
14.45 \setbox\z@=\hbox{\lower\dimen\z@\box\z@}\ht\z@=\ht\tw@
14.46 \dp\z@=\dp\tw@ \box\z@\kern-.04em}}
```

The code lines are numbered within sections,

```
14.47 (*!user)
14.48 \@addtoreset{CodelineNo}{section}
14.49 \renewcommand\theCodelineNo{%
14.50 \reset@font\scriptsize\thesection.\arabic{CodelineNo}}
```

which should also be visible in the index; hence this redefinition of a macro from `doc.sty`.

```

14.51 \renewcommand\codeline@wrindex[1]{\if@filesw
14.52     \immediate\write\@indexfile
14.53     {\string\indexentry{#1}%
14.54     {\number\c@section.\number\c@CodelineNo}}\fi}

```

The glossary environment is used or the change log, but its definition needs changing for this document.

```

14.55 \renewenvironment{theglossary}{%
14.56     \glossary@prologue%
14.57     \GlossaryParms \let\item\@idxitem \ignorespaces}%
14.58     {}
14.59 <!/user>
14.60 \makeatother

```

A few shorthands used in the documentation

```

14.61 \font\manual=logo10 % font used for the METAFONT logo, etc.
14.62 \newcommand*\MF{\manual META}\-\manual FONT}
14.63 \newcommand*\TeXhax{\TeX hax}
14.64 \newcommand*\babel{\textsf{babel}}
14.65 \newcommand*\Babel{\textsf{Babel}}
14.66 \newcommand*\m[1]{\mbox{\$\langle$\it#1\/$\rangle$}}
14.67 \newcommand*\langvar{\m{lang}}

```

Some more definitions needed in the documentation.

```

14.68 %\newcommand*\note[1]{\textbf{#1}}
14.69 \newcommand*\note[1]{}
14.70 \newcommand*\bsl{\protect\bslash}
14.71 \newcommand*\Lopt[1]{\textsf{#1}}
14.72 \newcommand*\Lenv[1]{\textsf{#1}}
14.73 \newcommand*\file[1]{\texttt{#1}}
14.74 \newcommand*\cls[1]{\texttt{#1}}
14.75 \newcommand*\pkg[1]{\texttt{#1}}
14.76 \newcommand*\langdeffile[1]{%
14.77 (-user) \clearpage
14.78 \DocInput{#1}}

```

When a full index should be generated uncomment the line with `\EnableCrossrefs`.

Beware, processing may take some time. Use `\DisableCrossrefs` when the index is ready.

```

14.79 % \EnableCrossrefs
14.80 \DisableCrossrefs

```

Include the change log.

```

14.81 (-user)\RecordChanges

```

The index should use the linenumbers of the code.

```

14.82 (-user)\CodelineIndex

```

Set everything in `\MacroFont` instead of `\AltMacroFont`

```

14.83 \setcounter{StandardModuleDepth}{1}

```

For the user guide we only want the description parts of all the files.

```

14.84 (+user)\OnlyDescription

```

Here starts the document

```

14.85 \begin{document}
14.86 \DocInput{babel.dtx}

```

All the language definition files.

```

14.87 (+user)\clearpage
14.88 \langdeffile{esperanto.dtx}
14.89 \langdeffile{interlingua.dtx}
14.90 %
14.91 \langdeffile{dutch.dtx}

```

```

14.92 \langdeffile{english.dtx}
14.93 \langdeffile{germanb.dtx}
14.94 \langdeffile{ngermanb.dtx}
14.95 %
14.96 \langdeffile{breton.dtx}
14.97 \langdeffile{welsh.dtx}
14.98 \langdeffile{irish.dtx}
14.99 \langdeffile{scottish.dtx}
14.100 %
14.101 \langdeffile{greek.dtx}
14.102 %
14.103 \langdeffile{frenchb.dtx}
14.104 \langdeffile{italian.dtx}
14.105 \langdeffile{latin.dtx}
14.106 \langdeffile{portuges.dtx}
14.107 \langdeffile{spanish.dtx}
14.108 \langdeffile{catalan.dtx}
14.109 \langdeffile{galician.dtx}
14.110 \langdeffile{basque.dtx}
14.111 \langdeffile{romanian.dtx}
14.112 %
14.113 \langdeffile{danish.dtx}
14.114 \langdeffile{icelandic.dtx}
14.115 \langdeffile{norsk.dtx}
14.116 \langdeffile{swedish.dtx}
14.117 \langdeffile{samin.dtx}
14.118 %
14.119 \langdeffile{finnish.dtx}
14.120 \langdeffile{magyar.dtx}
14.121 \langdeffile{estonian.dtx}
14.122 %
14.123 \langdeffile{albanian.dtx}
14.124 \langdeffile{croatian.dtx}
14.125 \langdeffile{czech.dtx}
14.126 \langdeffile{polish.dtx}
14.127 \langdeffile{serbian.dtx}
14.128 \langdeffile{slovak.dtx}
14.129 \langdeffile{slovene.dtx}
14.130 \langdeffile{russianb.dtx}
14.131 \langdeffile{bulgarian.dtx}
14.132 \langdeffile{ukraineb.dtx}
14.133 %
14.134 \langdeffile{lsorbian.dtx}
14.135 \langdeffile{usorbian.dtx}
14.136 \langdeffile{turkish.dtx}
14.137 %
14.138 \langdeffile{hebrew.dtx}
14.139 \DocInput{hebinp.dtx}
14.140 \DocInput{hebrew.fdd}
14.141 \DocInput{heb209.dtx}
14.142 \langdeffile{bahasa.dtx}
14.143 \langdeffile{bahasam.dtx}
14.144 %\langdeffile{sanskrit.dtx}
14.145 %\langdeffile{kannada.dtx}
14.146 %\langdeffile{nagari.dtx}
14.147 %\langdeffile{tamil.dtx}
14.148 \clearpage
14.149 \DocInput{bbplain.dtx}

    Finally print the index and change log (not for the user guide).

14.150 (*!user)
14.151 \clearpage
14.152 \def\filename{index}

```

```
14.153 \PrintIndex
14.154 \clearpage
14.155 \def\filename{changes}
14.156 \PrintChanges
14.157 \!user)
14.158 \end{document}
14.159 \!driver)
```



## 15 Conclusion

A system of document options has been presented that enable the user of  $\LaTeX$  to adapt the standard document classes of  $\LaTeX$  to the language he or she prefers to use. These options offer the possibility of switching between languages in one document. The basic interface consists of using one option, which is the same for *all* standard document classes.

In some cases the language definition files provide macros that can be useful to plain  $\TeX$  users as well as to  $\LaTeX$  users. The `babel` system has been implemented so that it can be used by both groups of users.

## 16 Acknowledgements

I would like to thank all who volunteered as  $\beta$ -testers for their time. I would like to mention Julio Sanchez who supplied the option file for the Spanish language and Maurizio Codogno who supplied the option file for the Italian language. Michel Goossens supplied contributions for most of the other languages. Nico Poppelier helped polish the text of the documentation and supplied parts of the macros for the Dutch language. Paul Wackers and Werenfried Spit helped find and repair bugs.

During the further development of the `babel` system I received much help from Bernd Raichle, for which I am grateful.

## 17 References

- [1] Donald E. Knuth, *The  $\TeX$ book*, Addison-Wesley, 1986.
- [2] Leslie Lamport,  *$\LaTeX$ , A document preparation System*, Addison-Wesley, 1986.
- [3] K.F. Treebus. *Tekstwijzer, een gids voor het grafisch verwerken van tekst*. SDU Uitgeverij ('s-Gravenhage, 1988). A Dutch book on layout design and typography.
- [4] Hubert Partl, *German  $\TeX$* , *TUGboat* 9 (1988) #1, p. 70–72.
- [5] Leslie Lamport, in:  $\TeX$ hax Digest, Volume 89, #13, 17 February 1989.
- [6] Johannes Braams, Victor Eijkhout and Nico Poppelier, *The development of national  $\LaTeX$  styles*, *TUGboat* 10 (1989) #3, p. 401–406.
- [7] Joachim Schrod, *International  $\LaTeX$  is ready to use*, *TUGboat* 11 (1990) #1, p. 87–90.

## 18 The Esperanto language

The file `esperanto.dtx`<sup>10</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Esperanto language.

For this language the character `^` is made active. In table 2 an overview is given of its purpose.

<code>^c</code>	gives <code>ĉ</code> with hyphenation in the rest of the word allowed, this works for <code>c, C, g, G, H, J, s, S, z, Z</code>
<code>^h</code>	prevents <code>ĥ</code> from becoming too tall
<code>^j</code>	gives <code>ĵ</code>
<code>^u</code>	gives <code>ŭ</code> , with hyphenation in the rest of the word allowed
<code>^U</code>	gives <code>Ŭ</code> , with hyphenation in the rest of the word allowed
<code>^ </code>	inserts a <code>\discretionary{-}{-}{-}</code>

Table 2: The functions of the active character for Esperanto.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
18.1 (*code)
18.2 \LdfInit{esperanto}\captionesperanto
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `esperanto` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@esperanto` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
18.3 \ifx\l@esperanto\@undefined
18.4 \@nopatterns{Esperanto}
18.5 \adddialect\l@esperanto0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to the Esperanto language. The reason for this is that a user might want to switch back and forth between languages.

```
\captionesperanto The macro \captionesperanto defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with LATEX.
```

```
18.6 \addto\captionesperanto{%
18.7 \def\prefacename{Anta\{u}parolo}%
18.8 \def\refname{Cita\^j{oj}}%
18.9 \def\abstractname{Resumo}%
18.10 \def\bibName{Bibliografio}%
18.11 \def\chaptername{{\^C}apitro}%
18.12 \def\appendixname{Apendico}%
18.13 \def\contentsname{Enhavo}%
18.14 \def\listfigurename{Listo de figuroj}%
18.15 \def\listtablename{Listo de tabeloj}%
18.16 \def\indexname{Indekso}%
18.17 \def\figurename{Figuro}%
18.18 \def\tablename{Tabelo}%
18.19 \def\partname{Parto}%
18.20 \def\enclname{Aldono(j)}%
18.21 \def\ccname{Kopie al}%
18.22 \def\headtoname{Al}%
18.23 \def\pagename{Pa\^go}%
18.24 \def\subjectname{Temo}%
18.25 \def\seename{vidu} a^u: vd.
```

<sup>10</sup>The file described in this section has version number ? and was last revised on ?. A contribution was made by Ruiz-Altaba Marti (`ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch`). Code from the file `esperant.sty` by Jörg Knappen (`knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de`) was included.

```

18.26 \def\alsoname{vidu anka\u{u}}% a~u vd. anka\u{u}
18.27 \def\proofname{Pruvo}%
18.28 \def\glossaryname{Glosaro}%
18.29 }

```

`\dateesperanto` The macro `\dateesperanto` redefines the command `\today` to produce Esperanto dates.

```

18.30 \def\dateesperanto{%
18.31 \def\today{\number\day{--a}~de~\ifcase\month\or
18.32 januaro\or februaro\or marto\or aprilo\or majo\or junio\or
18.33 julio\or a\u{u}gusto\or septembro\or oktobro\or novembro\or
18.34 decembro\fi,\space \number\year}}

```

`\extrasesperanto` The macro `\extrasesperanto` performs all the extra definitions needed for the Esperanto language. The macro `\noextrasesperanto` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasesperanto`.

For Esperanto the `^` character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary.

```
18.35 \initiate@active@char{^}
```

Because the character `^` is used in math mode with quite a different purpose we need to add an extra level of evaluation to the definition of the active `^`. It checks whether math mode is active; if so the shorthand mechanism is bypassed by a direct call of `\normal@char^`.

```

18.36 \addto\extrasesperanto{\languageshorthands{esperanto}}
18.37 \addto\extrasesperanto{\bbl@activate{^}}
18.38 \addto\noextrasesperanto{\bbl@deactivate{^}}

```

In order to prevent problems with the active `^` we add a shorthand on system level which expands to a `'normal ^`.

```
18.39 \declare@shorthand{system}{^}{\csname normal@char\string^~\endcsname}
```

And here are the uses of the active `^`:

```

18.40 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^c}{\^c\allowhyphens}
18.41 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^C}{\^C\allowhyphens}
18.42 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^g}{\^g\allowhyphens}
18.43 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^G}{\^G\allowhyphens}
18.44 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^h}{\h\llap{\^}}\allowhyphens}
18.45 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^H}{\^H\allowhyphens}
18.46 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^j}{\^j\allowhyphens}
18.47 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^J}{\^J\allowhyphens}
18.48 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^s}{\^s\allowhyphens}
18.49 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^S}{\^S\allowhyphens}
18.50 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^u}{\u u\allowhyphens}
18.51 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^U}{\u U\allowhyphens}
18.52 \declare@shorthand{esperanto}{^|}{\discretionary{-}{-}{^}\allowhyphens}

```

`\Esper` In `esperant.sty` Jörg Knappen provides the macros `\esper` and `\Esper` that can be used instead of `\alph` and `\Alph`. These macros are available in this file as well.

Their definition takes place in two steps. First the toplevel.

```

18.53 \def\esper#1{\@esper{\@nameuse{c#1}}}
18.54 \def\Eesper#1{\@Esper{\@nameuse{c#1}}}

```

Then the second level.

```

18.55 \def\@esper#1{%
18.56 \ifcase#1\or a\or b\or c\or \^c\or d\or e\or f\or g\or \^g\or
18.57 h\or h\llap{\^}}\or i\or j\or \^j\or k\or l\or m\or n\or o\or
18.58 p\or r\or s\or \^s\or t\or u\or \u{u}\or v\or z\else\@ctrerr\fi}
18.59 \def\@Esper#1{%
18.60 \ifcase#1\or A\or B\or C\or \^C\or D\or E\or F\or G\or \^G\or
18.61 H\or \^H\or I\or J\or \^J\or K\or L\or M\or N\or O\or
18.62 P\or R\or S\or \^S\or T\or U\or \u{U}\or V\or Z\else\@ctrerr\fi}

```

`\hodiaun` In `esperant.sty` Jörg Knappen provides two alternative macros for `\today`, `\hodiaun` and `\hodiaun`. The second macro produces an accusative version of the date in Esperanto.

```
18.63 \addto\dateesperanto{\def\hodiaun{la \today}}
18.64 \def\hodiaun{la \number\day --an~de~\ifcase\month\or
18.65   januaro\or februaro\or marto\or aprilo\or majo\or junio\or
18.66   julio\or a\u{u}gusto\or septembro\or oktobro\or novembro\or
18.67   decembro\fi, \space \number\year}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
18.68 \ldf@finish{esperanto}
18.69 </code>
```

## 19 The Interlingua language

The file `interlingua.dtx`<sup>11</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Interlingua language. This file was contributed by Peter Kleiweg, `kleiweg at let.rug.nl`.

Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English's than to neolatin languages. The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it.

You can have a look at the grammar at <http://www.geocities.com/linguablau>

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
19.1 (*code)
```

```
19.2 \LdfInit{interlingua}{captionsinterlingua}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `interlingua` could be an 'unknown' language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@interlingua` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
19.3 \ifx\undefined\l@interlingua
```

```
19.4 \@nopatterns{Interlingua}
```

```
19.5 \adddialect\l@interlingua0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Interlingua language.

`\interlinguahyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```
19.6 \providehyphenmins{interlingua}{\tw@\tw@}
```

`\captionsinterlingua` The macro `\captionsinterlingua` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
19.7 \def\captionsinterlingua{%
```

```
19.8 \def\prefacename{Prefacio}%
```

```
19.9 \def\refname{Referentias}%
```

```
19.10 \def\abstractname{Summario}%
```

```
19.11 \def\bibName{Bibliographia}%
```

```
19.12 \def\chaptername{Capitulo}%
```

```
19.13 \def\appendixname{Appendice}%
```

```
19.14 \def\contentsname{Contento}%
```

```
19.15 \def\listfigurename{Lista de figuras}%
```

```
19.16 \def\listtablename{Lista de tabellas}%
```

```
19.17 \def\indexname{Indice}%
```

```
19.18 \def\figurename{Figura}%
```

```
19.19 \def\tablename{Tabella}%
```

```
19.20 \def\partname{Parte}%
```

```
19.21 \def\enclname{Incluso}%
```

```
19.22 \def\ccname{Copia}%
```

```
19.23 \def\headtoname{A}%
```

```
19.24 \def\pagename{Pagina}%
```

```
19.25 \def\seenname{vide}%
```

```
19.26 \def\alsoname{vide etiam}%
```

```
19.27 \def\proofname{Prova}%
```

```
19.28 \def\glossaryname{Glossario}%
```

```
19.29 }
```

`\dateinterlingua` The macro `\dateinterlingua` redefines the command `\today` to produce Interlingua dates.

---

<sup>11</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.6 and was last revised on 2005/03/30.

```

19.30 \def\dateinterlingua{%
19.31   \def\today{le~\number\day\space de \ifcase\month\or
19.32     janeiro\or fevereiro\or martio\or april\or maio\or junio\or
19.33     julio\or agosto\or setembro\or outubro\or novembro\or
19.34     dezembro\fi
19.35     \space \number\year}}

```

`\extrasinterlingua` The macro `\extrasinterlingua` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Interlingua language. The macro `\noextrasinterlingua` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasinterlingua`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

```

19.36 \addto\extrasinterlingua{}
19.37 \addto\noextrasinterlingua{}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

19.38 \ldf@finish{interlingua}
19.39 </code>

```

## 20 The Dutch language

The file `dutch.dtx`<sup>12</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Dutch language and the ‘Afrikaans’ version<sup>13</sup> of it.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 3 an overview is given of its purpose. One of the reasons for this is that in the Dutch language a word with a dieresis can be hyphenated just before the letter with the umlaut, but the dieresis has to disappear if the word is broken between the previous letter and the accented letter.

In [3] the quoting conventions for the Dutch language are discussed. The preferred convention is the single-quote Anglo-American convention, i.e. ‘This is a quote’. An alternative is the slightly old-fashioned Dutch method with initial double quotes lowered to the baseline, „This is a quote”, which should be typed as "‘This is a quote’”.

"a	\a which hyphenates as -a; also implemented for the other letters.
"y	puts a negative kern between i and j
"Y	puts a negative kern between I and J
"	disable ligature at this position.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
"~	to produce a hyphencharacter without the following <code>\discretionary{}{}{}</code> .
" "	to produce an invisible ‘breakpoint’.
"‘	lowered double left quotes (see example below).
"’	normal double right quotes.
\-	like the old \-, but allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.

Table 3: The extra definitions made by `dutch.ldf`

```
20.1 % \changes{dutch-3.8a}{1996/10/04}{made check dependant on
20.2 %   \cs{CurrentOption}}
20.3 %
20.4 %   The macro |\LdfInit| takes care of preventing that this file is
20.5 %   loaded more than once, checking the category code of the
20.6 %   \texttt{@} sign, etc.
20.7 % \changes{dutch-3.8a}{1996/10/30}{Now use \cs{LdfInit} to perform
20.8 %   initial checks}
20.9 %   \begin{macrocode}
20.10 (*code)
20.11 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{captions\CurrentOption}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `dutch` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@dutch` or `l@afrikaans` to see whether we have to do something here.

First we try to establish with which option we are being processed.

```
20.12 \def\bb1@tempa{dutch}
20.13 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa
```

If it is `dutch` then we first check if the Dutch hyphenation patterns were loaded,

```
20.14 \ifx\l@dutch\undefined
```

if no we issue a warning and make `dutch` a ‘dialect’ of either the hyphenation patterns that were loaded in slot 0 or of ‘afrikaans’ when it is available.

---

<sup>12</sup>The file described in this section has version number v3.8i, and was last revised on 2005/03/30.

<sup>13</sup>contributed by Stoffel Lombard (lombc@b31pc87.up.ac.za)

```

20.15 \nopatterns{Dutch}
20.16 \ifx\l@afrikaans\undefined
20.17 \adddialect\l@dutch0
20.18 \else
20.19 \adddialect\l@dutch\l@afrikaans
20.20 \fi
20.21 \fi

```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Dutch language.

`\captionsdutch` The macro `\captionsdutch` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

20.22 \begingroup
20.23 \catcode'\'\active
20.24 \def\x{\endgroup
20.25 \def\captionsdutch{%
20.26 \def\prefacename{Voorwoord}%
20.27 \def\refname{Referenties}%
20.28 \def\abstractname{Samenvatting}%
20.29 \def\bibName{Bibliografie}%
20.30 \def\chaptername{Hoofdstuk}%
20.31 \def\appendixname{B"ylage}%
20.32 \def\contentsname{Inhoudsopgave}%
20.33 \def\listfigurename{L"yst van figuren}%
20.34 \def\listtablename{L"yst van tabellen}%
20.35 \def\indexname{Index}%
20.36 \def\figurename{Figuur}%
20.37 \def\tablename{Tabel}%
20.38 \def\partname{Deel}%
20.39 \def\enclname{B"ylage(n)}%
20.40 \def\ccname{cc}%
20.41 \def\headtoname{Aan}%
20.42 \def\pagename{Pagina}%
20.43 \def\seename{zie}%
20.44 \def\alsoname{zie ook}%
20.45 \def\proofname{Bew"ys}%
20.46 \def\glossaryname{Verklarende Woordenl"yst}%
20.47 }
20.48 }\x

```

`\datedutch` The macro `\datedutch` redefines the command `\today` to produce Dutch dates.

```

20.49 \def\datedutch{%
20.50 \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
20.51 januari\or februari\or maart\or april\or mei\or juni\or
20.52 juli\or augustus\or september\or oktober\or november\or
20.53 december\fi
20.54 \space \number\year}}

```

When the option with which this file is being process was not `dutch` we assume it was `afrikaans`. We perform a similar check on the availability of the hyphenation patterns.

```

20.55 \else
20.56 \ifx\l@afrikaans\undefined
20.57 \nopatterns{Afrikaans}
20.58 \ifx\l@dutch\undefined
20.59 \adddialect\l@afrikaans0
20.60 \else
20.61 \adddialect\l@afrikaans\l@dutch
20.62 \fi
20.63 \fi

```



`\caption safrikaans` Now is the time to define the words for ‘Afrikaans’.

```
20.64 \def\caption safrikaans{%
20.65   \def\prefacename{Voorwoord}%
20.66   \def\refname{Verwysings}%
20.67   \def\abstractname{Samevatting}%
20.68   \def\bibName{Bibliografie}%
20.69   \def\chaptername{Hoofstuk}%
20.70   \def\appendixname{Bylae}%
20.71   \def\contentsname{Inhoudsopgawe}%
20.72   \def\listfigurename{Lys van figure}%
20.73   \def\listtablename{Lys van tabelle}%
20.74   \def\indexname{Inhoud}%
20.75   \def\figurename{Figuur}%
20.76   \def\tablename{Tabel}%
20.77   \def\partname{Deel}%
20.78   \def\enclname{Bylae(n)}%
20.79   \def\ccname{a.a.}%
20.80   \def\headtoname{Aan}%
20.81   \def\pagename{Bladsy}%
20.82   \def\seename{sien}%
20.83   \def\alsoname{sien ook}%
20.84   \def\proofname{Bewys}%
20.85 }
```

`\date afrikaans` Here is the ‘Afrikaans’ version of the date macro.

```
20.86 \def\date afrikaans{%
20.87   \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
20.88     Januarie\or Februarie\or Maart\or April\or Mei\or Junie\or
20.89     Julie\or Augustus\or September\or Oktober\or November\or
20.90     Desember\fi
20.91     \space \number\year}}
20.92 \fi
```

`\extras dutch` The macros `\extras dutch` and `\caption safrikaans` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Dutch language. The macros `\noextras dutch` and `\noextras afrikaans` is used to cancel the actions of `\extras dutch` and `\caption safrikaans`.

For Dutch the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary. Other languages in the same document may also use the " character for shorthands; we specify that the dutch group of shorthands should be used.

```
20.93 \initiate@active@char{"}
```

Both version of the language use the same set of shorthand definitions although the ‘ij’ is not used in Afrikaans.

```
20.94 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{\languageshorthands{dutch}}
20.95 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
20.96   \bbl@activate{"}}
```

The ‘umlaut’ character should be positioned lower on *all* vowels in Dutch texts.

```
20.97 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
20.98   \umlautlow\umlautelaw}
20.99 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{%
20.100   \umlauthigh}
```

`\dutch hyphenmins` The dutch hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` set to 2 and `\afrikaans hyphenmins` `\righthyphenmin` set to 3.

```
20.101 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\thr@@}
```

`\@trema` In the Dutch language vowels with a trema are treated specially. If a hyphenation occurs before a vowel-plus-trema, the trema should disappear. To be able to do

this we could first define the hyphenation break behaviour for the five vowels, both lowercase and uppercase, in terms of `\discretionary`. But this results in a large `\if`-construct in the definition of the active ". Because we think a user should not use " when he really means something like ' ' we chose not to distinguish between vowels and consonants. Therefore we have one macro `\@trema` which specifies the hyphenation break behaviour for all letters.

```
20.102 \def\@trema#1{\allowhyphens\discretionary{-}{#1}{\{"#1}\allowhyphens}
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: the tremas,

```
20.103 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"a}{\textormath{\@trema a}{\ddot a}}
20.104 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"e}{\textormath{\@trema e}{\ddot e}}
20.105 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"i}{\textormath
20.106   {\allowhyphens\discretionary{-}{i}{\{"i}\allowhyphens}%
20.107   {\ddot \imath}}
20.108 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"o}{\textormath{\@trema o}{\ddot o}}
20.109 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"u}{\textormath{\@trema u}{\ddot u}}
```

dutch quotes,

```
20.110 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"‘}{%
20.111   \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
20.112 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"’}{%
20.113   \textormath{\textquotedblright}{\mbox{\textquotedblright}}}
```

and some additional commands:

```
20.114 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"-}{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
20.115 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"~}{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}}{-}}
20.116 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"|}{%
20.117   \textormath{\discretionary{-}{|}{\kern.03em}}{}}
20.118 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
20.119 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"y}{\textormath{\ij}}{\ddot y}}
20.120 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"Y}{\textormath{\IJ}}{\ddot Y}}
```

To enable hyphenation in two words, written together but separated by a slash, as in 'uitdrukking/opmerking' we define the command "/.

```
20.121 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"/}{\textormath
20.122   {\bbl@allowhyphens\discretionary{/}{/}{\bbl@allowhyphens}}}
```

- \- All that is left now is the redefinition of \-. The new version of \- should indicate an extra hyphenation position, while allowing other hyphenation positions to be generated automatically. The standard behaviour of T<sub>E</sub>X in this respect is very unfortunate for languages such as Dutch and German, where long compound words are quite normal and all one needs is a means to indicate an extra hyphenation position on top of the ones that T<sub>E</sub>X can generate from the hyphenation patterns.

```
20.123 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
20.124   \babel@save\ -}
20.125 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
20.126   \def\ -{\bbl@allowhyphens\discretionary{-}{-}{\bbl@allowhyphens}}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of @ to its original value.

```
20.127 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
20.128 </code>
```

## 21 The English language

The file `english.dtx`<sup>14</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the English language as well as for the American and Australian version of this language. For the Australian version the British hyphenation patterns will be used, if available, for the Canadian variant the American patterns are selected.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

21.1 `(*code)`

21.2 `\LdfInit\CurrentOption{date\CurrentOption}`

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `english` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@english` to see whether we have to do something here.

We allow for the british english patterns to be loaded as either ‘british’, or ‘UKenglish’. When neither of those is known we try to define `\l@english` as an alias for `\l@american` or `\l@USenglish`.

```
21.3 \ifx\l@english\@undefined
21.4   \ifx\l@UKenglish\@undefined
21.5     \ifx\l@british\@undefined
21.6       \ifx\l@american\@undefined
21.7         \ifx\l@USenglish\@undefined
21.8           \ifx\l@canadian\@undefined
21.9             \ifx\l@australian\@undefined
21.10              \ifx\l@newzealand\@undefined
21.11                \@nopatterns{English}
21.12                \addialect\l@english0
21.13                \else
21.14                  \let\l@english\l@newzealand
21.15                  \fi
21.16                \else
21.17                  \let\l@english\l@australian
21.18                  \fi
21.19                \else
21.20                  \let\l@english\l@canadian
21.21                  \fi
21.22                \else
21.23                  \let\l@english\l@USenglish
21.24                  \fi
21.25                \else
21.26                  \let\l@english\l@american
21.27                  \fi
21.28                \else
21.29                  \let\l@english\l@british
21.30                  \fi
21.31                \else
21.32                  \let\l@english\l@UKenglish
21.33                \fi
21.34 \fi
```

Because we allow ‘british’ to be used as the babel option we need to make sure that it will be recognised by `\selectlanguage`. In the code above we have made sure that `\l@english` was defined. Now we want to make sure that `\l@british` and `\l@UKenglish` are defined as well. When either of them is we make them equal to each other, when neither is we fall back to the default, `\l@english`.

```
21.35 \ifx\l@british\@undefined
```

```
21.36   \ifx\l@UKenglish\@undefined
```

---

<sup>14</sup>The file described in this section has version number v3.3o and was last revised on 2005/03/30.

```

21.37 \adddialect\l@british\l@english
21.38 \adddialect\l@UKenglish\l@english
21.39 \else
21.40 \let\l@british\l@UKenglish
21.41 \fi
21.42 \else
21.43 \let\l@UKenglish\l@british
21.44 \fi

```

‘American’ is a version of ‘English’ which can have its own hyphenation patterns. The default english patterns are in fact for american english. We allow for the patterns to be loaded as ‘english’ ‘american’ or ‘USenglish’.

```

21.45 \ifx\l@american\@undefined
21.46 \ifx\l@USenglish\@undefined

```

When the patterns are not known as ‘american’ or ‘USenglish’ we add a “dialect”.

```

21.47 \adddialect\l@american\l@english
21.48 \else
21.49 \let\l@american\l@USenglish
21.50 \fi
21.51 \else

```

Make sure that USenglish is known, even if the patterns were loaded as ‘american’.

```

21.52 \ifx\l@USenglish\@undefined
21.53 \let\l@USenglish\l@american
21.54 \fi
21.55 \fi

```

‘Canadian’ english spelling is a hybrid of British and American spelling. Although so far no special ‘translations’ have been reported we allow this file to be loaded by the option `candian` as well.

```

21.56 \ifx\l@canadian\@undefined
21.57 \adddialect\l@canadian\l@american
21.58 \fi

```

‘Australian’ and ‘New Zealand’ english spelling seem to be the same as British spelling. Although so far no special ‘translations’ have been reported we allow this file to be loaded by the options `australian` and `newzealand` as well.

```

21.59 \ifx\l@australian\@undefined
21.60 \adddialect\l@australian\l@british
21.61 \fi
21.62 \ifx\l@newzealand\@undefined
21.63 \adddialect\l@newzealand\l@british
21.64 \fi

```

`\englishhyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```

21.65 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\thr@@}

```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the English language.

`\captionseenglish` The macro `\captionseenglish` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

21.66 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
21.67 \def\prefacename{Preface}%
21.68 \def\refname{References}%
21.69 \def\abstractname{Abstract}%
21.70 \def\bibname{Bibliography}%
21.71 \def\chaptername{Chapter}%
21.72 \def\appendixname{Appendix}%
21.73 \def\contentsname{Contents}%
21.74 \def\listfigurename{List of Figures}%

```

```

21.75 \def\listtablename{List of Tables}%
21.76 \def\indexname{Index}%
21.77 \def\figurename{Figure}%
21.78 \def\tablename{Table}%
21.79 \def\partname{Part}%
21.80 \def\enclname{encl}%
21.81 \def\ccname{cc}%
21.82 \def\headtoname{To}%
21.83 \def\pagename{Page}%
21.84 \def\seename{see}%
21.85 \def\alsoname{see also}%
21.86 \def\proofname{Proof}%
21.87 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}%
21.88 }

```

`\dateenglish` In order to define `\today` correctly we need to know whether it should be ‘english’, ‘australian’, or ‘american’. We can find this out by checking the value of `\CurrentOption`.

```

21.89 \def\bb1@tempa{british}
21.90 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa\def\bb1@tempb{UK}\fi
21.91 \def\bb1@tempa{UKenglish}
21.92 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa\def\bb1@tempb{UK}\fi
21.93 \def\bb1@tempa{american}
21.94 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa\def\bb1@tempb{US}\fi
21.95 \def\bb1@tempa{USenglish}
21.96 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa\def\bb1@tempb{US}\fi
21.97 \def\bb1@tempa{canadian}
21.98 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa\def\bb1@tempb{US}\fi
21.99 \def\bb1@tempa{australian}
21.100 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa\def\bb1@tempb{AU}\fi
21.101 \def\bb1@tempa{newzealand}
21.102 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa\def\bb1@tempb{AU}\fi

```

The macro `\dateenglish` redefines the command `\today` to produce English dates.

```

21.103 \def\bb1@tempa{UK}
21.104 \ifx\bb1@tempa\bb1@tempb
21.105   \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
21.106     \def\today{\ifcase\day\or
21.107       1st\or 2nd\or 3rd\or 4th\or 5th\or
21.108       6th\or 7th\or 8th\or 9th\or 10th\or
21.109       11th\or 12th\or 13th\or 14th\or 15th\or
21.110       16th\or 17th\or 18th\or 19th\or 20th\or
21.111       21st\or 22nd\or 23rd\or 24th\or 25th\or
21.112       26th\or 27th\or 28th\or 29th\or 30th\or
21.113       31st\fi~\ifcase\month\or
21.114       January\or February\or March\or April\or May\or June\or
21.115       July\or August\or September\or October\or November\or
21.116       December\fi\space \number\year}}

```

`\dateaustralian` Now, test for ‘australian’ or ‘american’.

```
21.117 \else
```

The macro `\dateaustralian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Australian resp. New Zealand dates.

```

21.118 \def\bb1@tempa{AU}
21.119 \ifx\bb1@tempa\bb1@tempb
21.120   \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
21.121     \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
21.122       January\or February\or March\or April\or May\or June\or
21.123       July\or August\or September\or October\or November\or
21.124       December\fi\space \number\year}}

```

`\dateamerican` The macro `\dateamerican` redefines the command `\today` to produce American dates.

```
21.125 \else
21.126   \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
21.127     \def\today{\ifcase\month\or
21.128       January\or February\or March\or April\or May\or June\or
21.129       July\or August\or September\or October\or November\or
21.130       December\fi \space\number\day, \number\year}}
21.131 \fi
21.132 \fi
```

`\extrasenglish` The macro `\extrasenglish` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the English language. The macro `\noextrasenglish` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasenglish`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

```
21.133 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{}
21.134 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
21.135 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
21.136 </code>
```

## 22 The German language

The file `germanb.dtx`<sup>15</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the German language as well as for the Austrian dialect of this language<sup>16</sup>.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 4 an overview is given of its purpose. One of the reasons for this is that in the German language some character combinations change when a word is broken between the combination. Also the vertical placement of the umlaut can be controlled this way. The quotes

"a	\a, also implemented for the other lowercase and uppercase vowels.
"s	to produce the German ß (like \ss{ }).
"z	to produce the German ß (like \ss{ }).
"ck	for ck to be hyphenated as k-k.
"ff	for ff to be hyphenated as ff-f, this is also implemented for l, m, n, p, r and t
"S	for SS to be \uppercase{"s}.
"Z	for SZ to be \uppercase{"z}.
"	disable ligature at this position.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. x-"y).
"~	for a compound word mark without a breakpoint.
"=	for a compound word mark with a breakpoint, allowing hyphenation in the composing words.
"‘	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
"’	for German right double quotes.
"<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).

Table 4: The extra definitions made by `german.1df`

in table 4 can also be typeset by using the commands in table 5.

\glqq	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
\grqq	for German right double quotes (looks like “).
\glq	for German left single quotes (looks like ,).
\grq	for German right single quotes (looks like ‘).
\flqq	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
\frqq	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).
\flq	for (French) left single quotes (similar to <).
\frq	for (French) right single quotes (similar to >).
\dq	the original quotes character (").

Table 5: More commands which produce quotes, defined by `german.1df`

When this file was read through the option `germanb` we make it behave as if `german` was specified.

```
22.1 \def\bbl@tempa{germanb}
22.2 \ifx\CurrentOption\bbl@tempa
22.3 \def\CurrentOption{german}
22.4 \ifx\l@german\@undefined
22.5 \nopatterns{German}
22.6 \addialect\l@german0
```

<sup>15</sup>The file described in this section has version number v2.6l and was last revised on 2008/03/17.

<sup>16</sup>This file is a re-implementation of Hubert Partl's `german.sty` version 2.5b, see [4].

```

22.7 \fi
22.8 \let\l@germanb\l@german
22.9 \AtBeginDocument{%
22.10 \let\captionsgermanb\captionsgerman
22.11 \let\dategermanb\dategerman
22.12 \let\extrasgermanb\extrasgerman
22.13 \let\noextrasgermanb\noextrasgerman
22.14 }
22.15 \fi

```

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```

22.16 (*code)
22.17 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{captions\CurrentOption}

```

When this file is read as an option, i.e., by the `\usepackage` command, `german` will be an ‘unknown’ language, so we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@german` to see whether we have to do something here.

```

22.18 \ifx\l@german\@undefined
22.19 \@nopatterns{German}
22.20 \adddialect\l@german0
22.21 \fi

```

For the Austrian version of these definitions we just add another language.

```

22.22 \adddialect\l@austrian\l@german

```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the German language.

`\captionsgerman` Either the macro `\captionsgerman` or the macro `\captionsaustrian` will define all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

22.23 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
22.24 \def\prefacename{Vorwort}%
22.25 \def\refname{Literatur}%
22.26 \def\abstractname{Zusammenfassung}%
22.27 \def\bibname{Literaturverzeichnis}%
22.28 \def\chaptername{Kapitel}%
22.29 \def\appendixname{Anhang}%
22.30 \def\contentsname{Inhaltsverzeichnis}% % oder nur: Inhalt
22.31 \def\listfigurename{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
22.32 \def\listtablename{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
22.33 \def\indexname{Index}%
22.34 \def\figurename{Abbildung}%
22.35 \def\tablename{Tabelle}% % oder: Tafel
22.36 \def\partname{Teil}%
22.37 \def\enclname{Anlage(n)}% % oder: Beilage(n)
22.38 \def\ccname{Verteiler}% % oder: Kopien an
22.39 \def\headtoname{An}%
22.40 \def\pagename{Seite}%
22.41 \def\seename{siehe}%
22.42 \def\alsoname{siehe auch}%
22.43 \def\proofname{Beweis}%
22.44 \def\glossaryname{Glossar}%
22.45 }

```

`\dategerman` The macro `\dategerman` redefines the command `\today` to produce German dates.

```

22.46 \def\month@german{\ifcase\month\or
22.47 Januar\or Februar\or M"arz\or April\or Mai\or Juni\or
22.48 Juli\or August\or September\or Oktober\or November\or Dezember\fi}
22.49 \def\dategerman{\def\today{\number\day.\~\month@german
22.50 \space\number\year}}

```



`\dateaustrian` The macro `\dateaustrian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Austrian version of the German dates.

```
22.51 \def\dateaustrian{\def\today{\number\day.\~\ifnum1=\month
22.52 J\"anner\else \month@german\fi \space\number\year}}
```

`\extrasgerman` Either the macro `\extrasgerman` or the macros `\extrasaustrian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the German language. The macro `\noextrasgerman` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasgerman`.

`\noextrasaustrian` For German (as well as for Dutch) the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary.

```
22.53 \initiate@active@char{"}
22.54 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{%
22.55 \languageshorthands{german}}
22.56 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
22.57 \bbl@activate{"}}
```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```
22.58 \addto\noextrasgerman{\bbl@deactivate{"}}
```

In order for  $\TeX$  to be able to hyphenate German words which contain ‘ß’ (in the OT1 position  $\sim Y$ ) we have to give the character a nonzero `\lccode` (see Appendix H, the  $\TeX$ book).

```
22.59 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
22.60 \babel@savevariable{\lccode25}%
22.61 \lccode25=25}
```

The umlaut accent macro `\` is changed to lower the umlaut dots. The redefinition is done with the help of `\umlautlow`.

```
22.62 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
22.63 \babel@save{\}\umlautlow}
22.64 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{\umlauthigh}
```

The german hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
22.65 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
```

For German texts we need to make sure that `\frenchspacing` is turned on.

```
22.66 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
22.67 \bbl@frenchspacing}
22.68 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
22.69 \bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
```

The code above is necessary because we need an extra active character. This character is then used as indicated in table 4.

To be able to define the function of `\`, we first define a couple of ‘support’ macros.

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent `\` can now be typed as `\`.

```
22.70 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
22.71 \def\x{\endgroup
22.72 \def\SS{\mathchar"7019 }
22.73 \def\dq{"}}
22.74 \x
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: the umlauts,

```
22.75 \declare@shorthand{german}{a}{\textormath{"{a}\allowhyphens}{\ddot a}}
22.76 \declare@shorthand{german}{o}{\textormath{"{o}\allowhyphens}{\ddot o}}
22.77 \declare@shorthand{german}{u}{\textormath{"{u}\allowhyphens}{\ddot u}}
22.78 \declare@shorthand{german}{A}{\textormath{"{A}\allowhyphens}{\ddot A}}
22.79 \declare@shorthand{german}{O}{\textormath{"{O}\allowhyphens}{\ddot O}}
22.80 \declare@shorthand{german}{U}{\textormath{"{U}\allowhyphens}{\ddot U}}
```

tremas,

```
22.81 \declare@shorthand{german}{"e"}{\textormath{\{"e"}{\ddot e}}
22.82 \declare@shorthand{german}{"E"}{\textormath{\{"E"}{\ddot E}}
22.83 \declare@shorthand{german}{"i"}{\textormath{\{"i"}%
22.84         {\ddot\imath}}
22.85 \declare@shorthand{german}{"I"}{\textormath{\{"I"}{\ddot I}}
```

german es-zet (sharp s),

```
22.86 \declare@shorthand{german}{"s"}{\textormath{\ss}{\@SS{}}}
22.87 \declare@shorthand{german}{"S"}{\SS}
22.88 \declare@shorthand{german}{"z"}{\textormath{\ss}{\@SS{}}}
22.89 \declare@shorthand{german}{"Z"}{\SZ}
```

german and french quotes,

```
22.90 \declare@shorthand{german}{"‘"}{\glqq}
22.91 \declare@shorthand{german}{"’"}{\grqq}
22.92 \declare@shorthand{german}{"<"}{\flqq}
22.93 \declare@shorthand{german}{">"}{\frqq}
```

discretionary commands

```
22.94 \declare@shorthand{german}{"c"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc ck}{c}}
22.95 \declare@shorthand{german}{"C"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc CK}{C}}
22.96 \declare@shorthand{german}{"F"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc F{FF}}{F}}
22.97 \declare@shorthand{german}{"l"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc l{ll}}{l}}
22.98 \declare@shorthand{german}{"L"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc L{LL}}{L}}
22.99 \declare@shorthand{german}{"m"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc m{mm}}{m}}
22.100 \declare@shorthand{german}{"M"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc M{MM}}{M}}
22.101 \declare@shorthand{german}{"n"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc n{nn}}{n}}
22.102 \declare@shorthand{german}{"N"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc N{NN}}{N}}
22.103 \declare@shorthand{german}{"p"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc p{pp}}{p}}
22.104 \declare@shorthand{german}{"P"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc P{PP}}{P}}
22.105 \declare@shorthand{german}{"r"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc r{rr}}{r}}
22.106 \declare@shorthand{german}{"R"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc R{RR}}{R}}
22.107 \declare@shorthand{german}{"t"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc t{tt}}{t}}
22.108 \declare@shorthand{german}{"T"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc T{TT}}{T}}
```

We need to treat "f a bit differently in order to preserve the ff-ligature.

```
22.109 \declare@shorthand{german}{"f"}{\textormath{\bbl@discff}{f}}
22.110 \def\bbl@discff{\penalty\@M
22.111   \afterassignment\bbl@insertff \let\bbl@nextff= }
22.112 \def\bbl@insertff{%
22.113   \if f\bbl@nextff
22.114     \expandafter\@firstoftwo\else\expandafter\@secondoftwo\fi
22.115   {\relax\discretionary{ff-}{f}{ff}\allowhyphens}{f\bbl@nextff}}
22.116 \let\bbl@nextff=f
```

and some additional commands:

```
22.117 \declare@shorthand{german}{"-"}{\nobreak\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
22.118 \declare@shorthand{german}{"|"}{%
22.119   \textormath{\penalty\@M\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
22.120     \allowhyphens}{}}
22.121 \declare@shorthand{german}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
22.122 \declare@shorthand{german}{ "~ }{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}}{-}}
22.123 \declare@shorthand{german}{ "="}{\penalty\@M-\hskip\z@skip}
```

`\mdqon` All that's left to do now is to define a couple of commands for reasons of compatibility with `german.sty`.

```
\ck22.124 \def\mdqon{\shorthandon{""}}
22.125 \def\mdqoff{\shorthandoff{""}}
22.126 \def\ck{\allowhyphens\discretionary{k-}{k}{ck}\allowhyphens}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
22.127 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
22.128 </code>
```

## 23 The German language – new orthography

The file `ngermanb.dtx`<sup>17</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the German language with the ‘new orthography’ introduced in August 1998. This includes also the Austrian dialect of this language.

As with the ‘traditional’ German orthography, the character " is made active, and the commands in table 4 can be used, except for "ck and "ff etc., which are no longer required.

The internal language names are `ngerman` and `naustrian`.

When this file was read through the option `ngermanb` we make it behave as if `ngerman` was specified.

```
23.1 \def\bb1@tempa{ngermanb}
23.2 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa
23.3 \def\CurrentOption{ngerman}
23.4 \fi
```

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
23.5 (*code)
23.6 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{captions\CurrentOption}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e., by the `\usepackage` command, `ngerman` will be an ‘unknown’ language, so we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@ngerman` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
23.7 \ifx\l@ngerman\@undefined
23.8 \@nopatterns{ngerman}
23.9 \adddialect\l@ngerman0
23.10 \fi
```

For the Austrian version of these definitions we just add another language.

```
23.11 \adddialect\l@naustrian\l@ngerman
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the German language.

`\captionsgerman`    Either the macro `\captionsgerman` or the macro `\captionснаustrian` will define all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
23.12 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
23.13 \def\prefacename{Vorwort}%
23.14 \def\refname{Literatur}%
23.15 \def\abstractname{Zusammenfassung}%
23.16 \def\bibname{Literaturverzeichnis}%
23.17 \def\chaptername{Kapitel}%
23.18 \def\appendixname{Anhang}%
23.19 \def\contentsname{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%    % oder nur: Inhalt
23.20 \def\listfigurename{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
23.21 \def\listtablename{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
23.22 \def\indexname{Index}%
23.23 \def\figurename{Abbildung}%
23.24 \def\tablename{Tabelle}%                    % oder: Tafel
23.25 \def\partname{Teil}%
23.26 \def\enclname{Anlage(n)}%                % oder: Beilage(n)
23.27 \def\ccname{Verteiler}%                 % oder: Kopien an
23.28 \def\headtoname{An}%
23.29 \def\pagename{Seite}%
23.30 \def\seename{siehe}%
23.31 \def\alsiname{siehe auch}%
23.32 \def\proofname{Beweis}%
23.33 \def\glossaryname{Glossar}%
23.34 }
```

<sup>17</sup>The file described in this section has version number v2.6m and was last revised on 2008/03/17.

`\datengerman` The macro `\datengerman` redefines the command `\today` to produce German dates.

```
23.35 \def\month@ngerman{\ifcase\month\or
23.36 Januar\or Februar\or M"arz\or April\or Mai\or Juni\or
23.37 Juli\or August\or September\or Oktober\or November\or Dezember\fi}
23.38 \def\datengerman{\def\today{\number\day.\~\month@ngerman
23.39 \space\number\year}}
```

`\dateaustrian` The macro `\datenaustrian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Austrian version of the German dates.

```
23.40 \def\datenaustrian{\def\today{\number\day.\~\ifnum1=\month
23.41 J"anner\else \month@ngerman\fi \space\number\year}}
```

`\extrasngerman` Either the macro `\extrasngerman` or the macros `\extrasnaustrian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the German language. The macro `\noextrasngerman` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasngerman`.  
`\noextrasnaustrian` For German (as well as for Dutch) the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary.

```
23.42 \initiate@active@char{"}
23.43 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{%
23.44 \languageshortands{ngerman}}
23.45 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
23.46 \bbl@activate{"}}
```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```
23.47 \addto\noextrasngerman{\bbl@deactivate{"}}
```

In order for  $\TeX$  to be able to hyphenate German words which contain 'ß' (in the OT1 position  $\sim Y$ ) we have to give the character a nonzero `\lccode` (see Appendix H, the  $\TeX$ book).

```
23.48 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
23.49 \babel@savevariable{\lccode25}%
23.50 \lccode25=25}
```

The umlaut accent macro `\` is changed to lower the umlaut dots. The redefinition is done with the help of `\umlautlow`.

```
23.51 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
23.52 \babel@save"\umlautlow}
23.53 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{\umlauthigh}
```

The current version of the 'new' German hyphenation patterns (`dehyphn.tex` is to be used with `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
23.54 \providehyphenmins{CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
```

For German texts we need to make sure that `\frenchspacing` is turned on.

```
23.55 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
23.56 \bbl@frenchspacing}
23.57 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
23.58 \bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
```

The code above is necessary because we need an extra active character. This character is then used as indicated in table 4.

To be able to define the function of `"`, we first define a couple of 'support' macros.

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent `\` can now be typed as `"`.

```
23.59 \begingroup \catcode'\12
23.60 \def\x{\endgroup
23.61 \def\@SS{\mathchar"7019 }
23.62 \def\dq{"}}
23.63 \x
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: the umlauts,

```

23.64 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"a}{\textormath{"a}\allowhyphens}{\ddot a}}
23.65 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"o}{\textormath{"o}\allowhyphens}{\ddot o}}
23.66 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"u}{\textormath{"u}\allowhyphens}{\ddot u}}
23.67 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"A}{\textormath{"A}\allowhyphens}{\ddot A}}
23.68 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"O}{\textormath{"O}\allowhyphens}{\ddot O}}
23.69 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"U}{\textormath{"U}\allowhyphens}{\ddot U}}

```

tremas,

```

23.70 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"e}{\textormath{"e}{\ddot e}}
23.71 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"E}{\textormath{"E}{\ddot E}}
23.72 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"i}{\textormath{"i}{\ddot i}}%
23.73         {\ddot \imath}}
23.74 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"I}{\textormath{"I}{\ddot I}}

```

german es-zet (sharp s),

```

23.75 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"s}{\textormath{\ss}{\@SS{}}}
23.76 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"S}{\SS}
23.77 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"z}{\textormath{\ss}{\@SS{}}}
23.78 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"Z}{SZ}

```

german and french quotes,

```

23.79 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"' }{\glqq}
23.80 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"' }{\grqq}
23.81 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"< }{\flqq}
23.82 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"> }{\frqq}

```

and some additional commands:

```

23.83 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"- }{\nobreak\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
23.84 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"| }{%
23.85   \textormath{\penalty\@M\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
23.86     \allowhyphens}{}}
23.87 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{" "}{\hskip\z@skip}
23.88 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"~ }{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}{-}}{-}}
23.89 \declare@shorthand{ngerman}{"=} {\penalty\@M-\hskip\z@skip}

```

`\mdqon` All that's left to do now is to define a couple of commands for reasons of compatibility with `german.sty`.

```

23.90 \def\mdqon{\shorthandon{}}
23.91 \def\mdqoff{\shorthandoff{}}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

23.92 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
23.93 </code>

```



`\extrasbreton` The macro `\extrasbreton` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Breton language. The macro `\noextrasbreton` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasbreton`.

The category code of the characters `:`, `;`, `!` and `?` is made `\active` to insert a little white space.

```
24.35 \initiate@active@char{:}
24.36 \initiate@active@char{;}
24.37 \initiate@active@char{!}
24.38 \initiate@active@char{?}
```

We specify that the breton group of shorthands should be used.

```
24.39 \addto\extrasbreton{\languageshorthands{breton}}
```

These characters are ‘turned on’ once, later their definition may vary.

```
24.40 \addto\extrasbreton{%
24.41   \bbl@activate{:}\bbl@activate{;}%
24.42   \bbl@activate{!}\bbl@activate{?}}
```

Don’t forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```
24.43 \addto\noextrasbreton{%
24.44   \bbl@deactivate{:}\bbl@deactivate{;}%
24.45   \bbl@deactivate{!}\bbl@deactivate{?}}
```

The last thing `\extrasbreton` needs to do is to make sure that `\frenchspacing` is in effect. If this is not the case the execution of `\noextrasbreton` will switch it of again.

```
24.46 \addto\extrasbreton{\bbl@frenchspacing}
24.47 \addto\noextrasbreton{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
```

`\breton@sh@;` We have to reduce the amount of white space before `;`, `:` and `!` when the user types a space in front of these characters. This should only happen outside mathmode, hence the test with `\ifmmode`.

```
24.48 \declare@shorthand{breton}{:}{;%
24.49   \ifmmode
24.50     \string;\space
24.51   \else\relax
```

In horizontal mode we check for the presence of a ‘space’ and replace it by a `\thinspace`.

```
24.52   \ifhmode
24.53     \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
24.54       \unskip\penalty\@M\thinspace
24.55     \fi
24.56   \fi
24.57   \string;\space
24.58   \fi}%
```

`\breton@sh@:` Because these definitions are very similar only one is displayed in a way that the definition can be easily checked.

`\breton@sh@!:`

```
24.59 \declare@shorthand{breton}{:}{;%
24.60   \ifmmode\string;\space
24.61   \else\relax
24.62   \ifhmode
24.63     \ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\penalty\@M\thinspace\fi
24.64   \fi
24.65   \string;\space
24.66   \fi}
24.67 \declare@shorthand{breton}{!}{;%
24.68   \ifmmode\string!\space
24.69   \else\relax
24.70   \ifhmode
24.71     \ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\penalty\@M\thinspace\fi
24.72   \fi
```



```

24.73   \string!\space
24.74   \fi}

```

`\breton@sh@?@` For the question mark something different has to be done. In this case the amount of white space that replaces the space character depends on the dimensions of the font.

```

24.75 \declare@shorthand{breton}{?}{%
24.76   \ifmmode
24.77     \string?\space
24.78   \else\relax
24.79     \ifhmode
24.80       \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
24.81         \unskip
24.82         \kern\fontdimen2\font
24.83         \kern-1.4\fontdimen3\font
24.84       \fi
24.85     \fi
24.86     \string?\space
24.87   \fi}

```

All that is left to do now is provide the breton user with some extra utilities. Some definitions for special characters.

```

24.88 \DeclareTextSymbol{\at}{OT1}{64}
24.89 \DeclareTextSymbol{\at}{T1}{64}
24.90 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\at}{OT1}
24.91 \DeclareTextSymbol{\boi}{OT1}{92}
24.92 \DeclareTextSymbol{\boi}{T1}{16}
24.93 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\boi}{OT1}
24.94 \DeclareTextSymbol{\circonflexe}{OT1}{94}
24.95 \DeclareTextSymbol{\circonflexe}{T1}{2}
24.96 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\circonflexe}{OT1}
24.97 \DeclareTextSymbol{\tild}{OT1}{126}
24.98 \DeclareTextSymbol{\tild}{T1}{3}
24.99 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\tild}{OT1}
24.100 \DeclareTextSymbol{\degre}{OT1}{23}
24.101 \DeclareTextSymbol{\degre}{T1}{6}
24.102 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\degre}{OT1}

```

The following macros are used in the redefinition of `\^` and `\"` to handle the letter i.

```

24.103 \AtBeginDocument{%
24.104   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\^}{OT1}{i}{\^i}
24.105   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\"}{OT1}{i}{\"i}}

```

And some more macros for numbering.

```

24.106 \def\kentan{1\/$}^{\rm a\tilde{n}}$}
24.107 \def\eil{2\/$}^{\rm l}$}
24.108 \def\ref{//$}^{\rm re}$}
24.109 \def\trede{3\re}
24.110 \def\pevare{4\re}
24.111 \def\vet{//$}^{\rm vet}$}
24.112 \def\pempvet{5\vet}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

24.113 \ldf@finish{breton}
24.114 </code>

```

## 25 The Welsh language

The file `welsh.dtx`<sup>19</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Welsh language.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\ldf@init` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

25.1 `(*code)`

25.2 `\LdfInit{welsh}{captionswelsh}`

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `welsh` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@welsh` to see whether we have to do something here.

25.3 `\ifx\undefined\l@welsh`

25.4 `\@nopatterns{welsh}`

25.5 `\adddialect\l@welsh0\fi`

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Welsh language.

`\welshhyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

25.6 `\providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\thr@@}`

`\captionswelsh` The macro `\captionswelsh` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

25.7 `\def\captionswelsh{%`

25.8 `\def\prefacename{Rhagair}%`

25.9 `\def\refname{Cyfeiriadau}%`

25.10 `\def\abstractname{Crynodeb}%`

25.11 `\def\bibname{Llyfryddiaeth}%`

25.12 `\def\chaptername{Pennod}%`

25.13 `\def\appendixname{Atodiad}%`

25.14 `\def\contentsname{Cynnwys}%`

25.15 `\def\listfigurename{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%`

25.16 `\def\listtablename{Rhestr Dablau}%`

25.17 `\def\indexname{Mynegai}%`

25.18 `\def\figurename{Darlun}%`

25.19 `\def\tablename{Taflen}%`

25.20 `\def\partname{Rhan}%`

25.21 `\def\enclname{amgae"edig}%`

25.22 `\def\ccname{cop"i au}%`

25.23 `\def\headtoname{At}% % ‘at’ on letters meaning ‘to ( a person)’`

25.24 `% ‘to (a place)’ is ‘i’ in Welsh`

25.25 `\def\pagename{tudalen}%`

25.26 `\def\seename{gweler}%`

25.27 `\def\alsoname{gweler hefyd}%`

25.28 `\def\proofname{Prawf}%`

25.29 `\def\glossaryname{Rhestr termau}%`

25.30 `}`

`\datewelsh` The macro `\datewelsh` redefines the command `\today` to produce welsh dates.

25.31 `\def\datewelsh{%`

25.32 `\def\today{\ifnum\day=1\relax 1\/$\~{\mathrm{a\tilde{n}}}\$}\else`

25.33 `\number\day\fi\space\ifcase\month\or`

25.34 `Ionawr\or Chwefror\or Mawrth\or Ebrill\or`

25.35 `Mai\or Mehefin\or Gorffennaf\or Awst\or`

25.36 `Medi\or Hydref\or Tachwedd\or Rhagfyr\fi`

25.37 `\space\number\year}}`

---

<sup>19</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0d and was last revised on 2005/03/31.

`\extraswelsh` The macro `\extraswelsh` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the welsh language. The macro `\noextraswelsh` is used to cancel the actions of `\extraswelsh`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

25.38 `\addto\extraswelsh{}`

25.39 `\addto\noextraswelsh{}`

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

25.40 `\ldf@finish{welsh}`

25.41 `\code}`

## 26 The Irish language

The file `irish.dtx`<sup>20</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Irish language.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

26.1 `(*code)`

26.2 `\LdfInit{irish}\captionsirish`

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `irish` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@irish` to see whether we have to do something here.

26.3 `\ifx\l@irish\@undefined`

26.4 `\@nopatterns{irish}`

26.5 `\adddialect\l@irish0\fi`

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Irish language.

`\irishhyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

26.6 `\providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\thr@@}`

`\captionsirish` The macro `\captionsirish` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

26.7 `\addto\captionsirish{%`

26.8 `\def\prefacename{R\'eamhr\'a}%` <-- also "Brollach"

26.9 `\def\refname{Tagairt\'{\i}}%`

26.10 `\def\abstractname{Achoimre}%`

26.11 `\def\bibname{Leabharliosta}%`

26.12 `\def\chaptername{Caibidil}%`

26.13 `\def\appendixname{Aguis\'{\i}n}%`

26.14 `\def\contentsname{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%`

26.15 `\def\listfigurename{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%`

26.16 `\def\listtablename{T\'abla\'{\i}}%`

26.17 `\def\indexname{Inn\'eacs}%`

26.18 `\def\figurename{L\'ear\'aid}%`

26.19 `\def\tablename{T\'abla}%`

26.20 `\def\partname{Cuid}%`

26.21 `\def\enclname{faoi iamh}%`

26.22 `\def\ccname{cc}%` abrv. ‘c’oip chuig’

26.23 `\def\headtoname{Go}%`

26.24 `\def\pagename{Leathanach}%`

26.25 `\def\seename{f\'each}%`

26.26 `\def\alsoname{f\'each freisin}%`

26.27 `\def\proofname{Cruth\'unas}%`

26.28 `\def\glossaryname{Glossary}%` <-- Needs translation

26.29 `}`

`\dateirish` The macro `\dateirish` redefines the command `\today` to produce Irish dates.

26.30 `\def\dateirish{%`

26.31 `\def\today{%`

26.32 `\number\day\space \ifcase\month\or`

26.33 `Ean\'air\or Feabhra\or M\'arta\or Aibre\'an\or`

26.34 `Bealtaine\or Meitheamh\or I\'uil\or L\'unasa\or`

26.35 `Me\'an F\'omhair\or Deireadh F\'omhair\or`

26.36 `M\'{\i} na Samhna\or M\'{\i} na Nollag\fi`

26.37 `\space \number\year}}`

<sup>20</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0h and was last revised on 2005/03/30. A contribution was made by Marion Gunn.

`\extrasirish` The macro `\extrasirish` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Irish language. The macro `\noextrasirish` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasirish`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

26.38 `\addto\extrasirish{}`

26.39 `\addto\noextrasirish{}`

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

26.40 `\ldf@finish{irish}`

26.41 `\code}`

## 27 The Scottish language

The file `scottish.dtx`<sup>21</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Scottish language.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
27.1 (*code)
27.2 \LdfInit{scottish}\captionsscottish
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `scottish` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@scottish` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
27.3 \ifx\l@scottish@undefined
27.4 \@nopatterns{scottish}
27.5 \adddialect\l@scottish0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Scottish language.

`\captionsscottish` The macro `\captionsscottish` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
27.6 \addto\captionsscottish{%
27.7 \def\prefacename{Preface}% <-- needs translation
27.8 \def\refname{Iomraidh}%
27.9 \def\abstractname{Br‘{\i}gh}%
27.10 \def\bibname{Leabhraichean}%
27.11 \def\chaptername{Caibideil}%
27.12 \def\appendixname{Ath-sgr‘{\i}obhadh}%
27.13 \def\contentsname{Cl‘ar-obrach}%
27.14 \def\listfigurename{Liosta Dhealbh }%
27.15 \def\listtablename{Liosta Chl‘ar}%
27.16 \def\indexname{Cl‘ar-innse}%
27.17 \def\figurename{Dealbh}%
27.18 \def\tablename{Cl‘ar}%
27.19 \def\partname{Cuid}%
27.20 \def\enclname{a-staigh}%
27.21 \def\ccname{l lethbhreac gu}%
27.22 \def\headtoname{gu}%
27.23 \def\pagename{t.d.}% abrv. ‘taobh duilleag’
27.24 \def\seename{see}% <-- needs translation
27.25 \def\alsoname{see also}% <-- needs translation
27.26 \def\proofname{Proof}% <-- needs translation
27.27 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
27.28 }
```

`\datescottish` The macro `\datescottish` redefines the command `\today` to produce Scottish dates.

```
27.29 \def\datescottish{%
27.30 \def\today{%
27.31 \number\day\space \ifcase\month\or
27.32 am Faoilteach\or an Gearran\or am M‘art\or an Giblean\or
27.33 an C‘eitean\or an t-‘Og mhios\or an t-Iuchar\or
27.34 L‘unasdal\or an Sultuine\or an D‘amhar\or
27.35 an t-Samhainn\or an Dubhlachd\fi
27.36 \space \number\year}}
```

`\extrasscottish` The macro `\extrasscottish` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Scottish language. The macro `\noextrasscottish` is used to cancel the actions of

---

<sup>21</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0g and was last revised on 2005/03/31. A contribution was made by Fraser Grant (FRASER@CERNVM).

`\extrasscottish`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

```
27.37 \addto\extrasscottish{}  
27.38 \addto\noextrasscottish{}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
27.39 \ldf@finish{scottish}  
27.40 </code>
```

## 28 The Greek language

The file `greek.dtx`<sup>22</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Greek language, i.e., as it used today with only one accent, and the attribute *πολυτονικό* (“Polutoniko”) for typesetting greek text with all accents. This separation arose out of the need to simplify things, for only very few people will be really interested to typeset polytonic Greek text.

`\greektext`     The commands `\greektext` and `\latintext` can be used to switch to greek  
`\latintext`     or latin fonts. These are declarations.  
`\textgreek`     The commands `\textgreek` and `\textlatin` both take one argument which is  
`\textlatin`     then typeset using the requested font encoding. The command `\greekol` switches  
`\textol`         to the greek outline font family, while the command `\textol` typesets a short text  
                  in outline font. A number of extra greek characters are made available through the  
                  added text commands `\stigma`, `\qoppa`, `\sampi`, `\ddigamma`, `\Digamma`, `\euro`,  
                  `\permill`, and `\vardigamma`.

### 28.1 Typing conventions

Entering greek text can be quite difficult because of the many diacritical signs that need to be added for various purposes. The fonts that are used to typeset Greek make this a lot easier by offering a lot of ligatures. But in order for this to work, some characters need to be considered as letters. These characters are `<`, `>`, `~`, `‘`, `’`, `"` and `|`. Therefore their `\lccode` is changed when Greek is in effect. In order to let `\uppercase` give correct results, the `\uccode` of these characters is set to a non-existing character to make them disappear. Of course not all characters are needed when typesetting “modern” *μouoTouvikó*. In that case we only need the `’` and `"` symbols which are treated in the proper way.

### 28.2 Greek numbering

The Greek alphabetical numbering system, like the Roman one, is still used in everyday life for short enumerations. Unfortunately most Greeks don’t know how to write Greek numbers bigger than 20 or 30. Nevertheless, in official editions of the last century and beginning of this century this numbering system was also used for dates and numbers in the range of several thousands. Nowadays this numbering system is primary used by the Eastern Orthodox Church and by certain scholars. It is hence necessary to be able to typeset any Greek numeral up to 999 999. Here are the conventions:

- There is no Greek numeral for any number less than or equal to 0.
- Numbers from 1 to 9 are denoted by letters alpha, beta, gamma, delta, epsilon, stigma, zeta, eta, theta, followed by a mark similar to the mathematical symbol “prime”. (Nowadays instead of letter stigma the digraph sigma tau is used for number 6. Mainly because the letter stigma is not always available, so people opt to write down the first two letters of its name as an alternative. In our implementation we produce the letter stigma, not the digraph sigma tau.)
- Decades from 10 to 90 are denoted by letters iota, kappa, lambda, mu, nu, xi, omikron, pi, qoppa, again followed by the numeric mark. The qoppa used for this purpose has a special zig-zag form, which doesn’t resemble at all the original ‘q’-like qoppa.
- Hundreds from 100 to 900 are denoted by letters rho, sigma, tau, upsilon, phi, chi, psi, omega, sampi, followed by the numeric mark.

---

<sup>22</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.3l and was last revised on 2005/03/30. The original author is Apostolos Syropoulos ([apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr](mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr)), code from `kdgreek.sty` by David Kastrup [dak@neuroinformatik.ruhr-uni-bochum.de](mailto:dak@neuroinformatik.ruhr-uni-bochum.de) was used to enhance the support for typesetting greek texts.



- Any number between 1 and 999 is obtained by a group of letters denoting the hundreds decades and units, followed by a numeric mark.
- To denote thousands one uses the same method, but this time the mark is placed in front of the letter, and under the baseline (it is inverted by 180 degrees). When a group of letters denoting thousands is followed by a group of letters denoting a number under 1000, then both marks are used.

`\greeknumeral` Using these conventions one obtains numbers up to 999 999. The command `\greeknumeral` makes it possible to typeset Greek numerals. There is also an “uppercase” version of this macro: `\Greeknumeral`.

Another system which was in wide use only in Athens, could express any positive number. This system is implemented in package `athnum`.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

28.1 `{*code}`

28.2 `\LdfInit\CurrentOption{captions\CurrentOption}`

When the option `polutonikogreek` was used, redefine `\CurrentOption` to prevent problems later on.

28.3 `\gdef\CurrentOption{greek}%`

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `greek` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@greek` to see whether we have to do something here.

28.4 `\ifx\l@greek\@undefined`

28.5 `\@nopatterns{greek}`

28.6 `\adddialect\l@greek0\fi`

Now we declare the `polutoniko` language attribute.

28.7 `\bbl@declare@ttribute{greek}{polutoniko}{%`

This code adds the expansion of `\extraspolutonikogreek` to `\extragreek` and changes the definition of `\today` for Greek to produce polytonic month names.

28.8 `\expandafter\addto\expandafter\extragreek`

28.9 `\expandafter{\extraspolutonikogreek}%`

28.10 `\let\captionsgreek\captionspolutonikogreek`

28.11 `\let\gr@month\gr@c@month`

We need to take some extra precautions in order not to break older documents which still use the old `polutonikogreek` option.

28.12 `\let\l@polutonikogreek\l@greek`

28.13 `\let\datepolutonikogreek\dategreek`

28.14 `\let\extraspolutonikogreek\extragreek`

28.15 `\let\noextraspolutonikogreek\noextragreek`

28.16 `}`

Typesetting Greek texts implies that a special set of fonts needs to be used.

The current support for greek uses the `cb` fonts created by Claudio Beccari<sup>23</sup>. The `cb` fonts provide all sorts of *font combinations*. In order to use these fonts we define the Local GRreek encoding (LGR, see the file `greek.fdd`). We make sure that this encoding is known to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, and if it isn’t we abort.

28.17 `\InputIfFileExists{lgrenc.def}{%`

28.18 `\message{Loading the definitions for the Greek font encoding}}{%`

28.19 `\errhelp{I can’t find the lgrenc.def file for the Greek fonts}}{%`

28.20 `\errmessage{Since I do not know what the LGR encoding means^^J`

28.21 `I can’t typeset Greek.^^J`

28.22 `I stop here, while you get a suitable lgrenc.def file}\@end`

28.23 `}`

Now we define two commands that offer the possibility to switch between Greek and Roman encodings.

---

<sup>23</sup>Apostolos Syropoulos wishes to thank him for his patience, collaboration, cooments and suggestions.

`\greektext` The command `\greektext` will switch from Latin font encoding to the Greek font encoding. This assumes that the ‘normal’ font encoding is a Latin one. This command is a *declaration*, for shorter pieces of text the command `\textgreek` should be used.

```
28.24 \DeclareRobustCommand{\greektext}{%
28.25   \fontencoding{LGR}\selectfont
28.26   \def\encodingdefault{LGR}}
```

`\textgreek` This command takes an argument which is then typeset using the requested font encoding. In order to avoid many encoding switches it operates in a local scope.

```
28.27 \DeclareRobustCommand{\textgreek}[1]{\leavevmode{\greektext #1}}
```

`\textol` A last aspect of the set of fonts provided with this version of support for typesetting Greek texts is that it contains an outline family. In order to make it available we define the command `\textol`.

```
28.28 \def\outlfamily{\usefont{LGR}{cmro}{m}{n}}
28.29 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textol}{\outlfamily}
```

The next step consists in defining commands to switch to (and from) the Greek language.

`\greekhyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```
28.30 % Yannis Haralambous has suggested this value
28.31 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\@ne\@ne}
```

`\captionsgreek` The macro `\captionsgreek` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
28.32 \addto\captionsgreek{%
28.33   \def\prefacename{Pr'ologos}%
28.34   \def\refname{Anafor'es}%
28.35   \def\abstractname{Per'ilhyh}%
28.36   \def\bibname{Bibliograf'ia}%
28.37   \def\chaptername{Kef'alaio}%
28.38   \def\appendixname{Par'arthma}%
28.39   \def\contentsname{Perieq'omena}%
28.40   \def\listfigurename{Kat'alogos Sqhm'atwn}%
28.41   \def\listtablename{Kat'alogos Pin'akwn}%
28.42   \def\indexname{Euret'hrio}%
28.43   \def\figurename{Sq'hma}%
28.44   \def\tablename{P'inakas}%
28.45   \def\partname{M'eros}%
28.46   \def\enclname{Sunhmm'ena}%
28.47   \def\ccname{Koinopo'ihsh}%
28.48   \def\headtoname{Pros}%
28.49   \def\pagename{Sel'ida}%
28.50   \def\seename{bl'epe}%
28.51   \def\alsiname{bl'epe ep'ishs}%
28.52   \def\proofname{Ap'odeixh}%
28.53   \def\glossaryname{Glwss'ari}%
28.54 }
```

`\captionspolutonikogreek` For texts written in the *πολυτονικό* (polytonic greek) the translations are the same as above, but some words are spelled differently. For now we just add extra definitions to `\captionsgreek` in order to override the earlier definitions.

```
28.55 \let\captionspolutonikogreek\captionsgreek
28.56 \addto\captionspolutonikogreek{%
28.57   \def\refname{>Anafor'es}%
28.58   \def\indexname{E<uret'hrio}%}
```

```

28.59 \def\figurename{Sq`hma}%
28.60 \def\headtoname{Pr`os}%
28.61 \def\alsoname{bl`epe >ep`ishs}%
28.62 \def\proofname{>Ap`odeixh}%
28.63 }

\gr@month The macro \dategreek redefines the command \today to produce greek dates.
\dategreek The name of the month is now produced by the macro \gr@month since it is needed
in the definition of the macro \Grtoday.
28.64 \def\gr@month{%
28.65 \ifcase\month\or
28.66 Ianouar`iou\or Febrouar`iou\or Mart`iou\or April`iou\or
28.67 Ma`"iou\or Ioun`iou\or Ioul`iou\or Augo`ustou\or
28.68 Septembr`iou\or Oktwbr`iou\or Noembr`iou\or Dekembr`iou\fi}
28.69 \def\dategreek{%
28.70 \def\today{\number\day \space \gr@month\space \number\year}}

\gr@c@greek
28.71 \def\gr@c@month{%
28.72 \ifcase\month\or >Ianouar`iou\or
28.73 Febrouar`iou\or Mart`iou\or >April`iou\or Ma`"iou\or
28.74 >Ioun`iou\or >Ioul`iou\or A>ugo`ustou\or Septembr`iou\or
28.75 >Oktwbr`iou\or Noembr`iou\or Dekembr`iou\fi}

\Grtoday The macro \Grtoday produces the current date, only that the month and the day
are shown as greek numerals instead of arabic as it is usually the case.
28.76 \def\Grtoday{%
28.77 \expandafter\Greeknatural\expandafter{\the\day}\space
28.78 \gr@c@month \space
28.79 \expandafter\Greeknatural\expandafter{\the\year}}

\extrasgreek The macro \extrasgreek will perform all the extra definitions needed for the
\noextrasgreek Greek language. The macro \noextrasgreek is used to cancel the actions of
\extrasgreek. For the moment these macros switch the fontencoding used and
the definition of the internal macros \@alph and \@Alph because in Greek we do
use the Greek numerals.
28.80 \addto\extrasgreek{\greektext}
28.81 \addto\noextrasgreek{\latintext}

\gr@ill@value When the argument of \greeknumeral has a value outside of the acceptable
bounds ( $0 < x < 999999$ ) a warning will be issued (and nothing will be printed).
28.82 \def\gr@ill@value#1{%
28.83 \PackageWarning{babel}{Illegal value (#1) for greeknumeral}}

\anw@true When a a large number with three trailing zero's is to be printed those zeros and
\anw@false the numeric mark need to be discarded. As each 'digit' is processed by a separate
\anw@print macro and because the processing needs to be expandable we need some helper
macros that help remember to not print the numeric mark (\anwtonos).
The command \anw@false switches the printing of the numeric mark off by
making \anw@print expand to nothing. The command \anw@true (re)enables the
printing of the numeric marc. These macro's need to be robust in order to prevent
improper expansion during writing to files or during \uppercase.
28.84 \DeclareRobustCommand\anw@false{%
28.85 \DeclareRobustCommand\anw@print{}}
28.86 \DeclareRobustCommand\anw@true{%
28.87 \DeclareRobustCommand\anw@print{\anwtonos}}
28.88 \anw@true

\greeknumeral The command \greeknumeral needs to be fully expandable in order to get the
right information in auxiliary files. Therefore we use a big \if-construction to
check the value of the argument and start the parsing at the right level.
28.89 \def\greeknumeral#1{%

```

If the value is negative or zero nothing is printed and a warning is issued.

```

28.90 \ifnum#1<\@ne\space\gr@ill@value{#1}%
28.91 \else
28.92 \ifnum#1<10\expandafter\gr@num@i\number#1%
28.93 \else
28.94 \ifnum#1<100\expandafter\gr@num@ii\number#1%
28.95 \else

```

We use the available shorthands for 1.000 ( $\@m$ ) and 10.000 ( $\@M$ ) to save a few tokens.

```

28.96 \ifnum#1<\@m\expandafter\gr@num@iii\number#1%
28.97 \else
28.98 \ifnum#1<\@M\expandafter\gr@num@iv\number#1%
28.99 \else
28.100 \ifnum#1<100000\expandafter\gr@num@v\number#1%
28.101 \else
28.102 \ifnum#1<1000000\expandafter\gr@num@vi\number#1%
28.103 \else

```

If the value is too large, nothing is printed and a warning is issued.

```

28.104 \space\gr@ill@value{#1}%
28.105 \fi
28.106 \fi
28.107 \fi
28.108 \fi
28.109 \fi
28.110 \fi
28.111 \fi
28.112 }

```

$\backslash$ Greeknumeral The command  $\backslash$ Greeknumeral prints uppercase greek numerals. The parsing is performed by the macro  $\backslash$ greeknumeral.

```

28.113 \def\Greeknumeral#1{%
28.114 \expandafter\MakeUppercase\expandafter{\greeknumeral{#1}}

```

$\backslash$ greek@alph In the previous release of this language definition the commands  $\backslash$ greek@aplh and  $\backslash$ greek@Alph were kept just for reasons of compatibility. Here again they become meaningful macros. They are defined in a way that even page numbering with greek numerals is possible. Since the macros  $\backslash$ @alph and  $\backslash$ @Alph will lose their original meaning while the Greek option is active, we must save their original value. macros  $\backslash$ @alph

```

28.115 \let\latin@alph\@alph
28.116 \let\latin@Alph\@Alph

```

Then we define the Greek versions; the additional  $\backslash$ expandafters are needed in order to make sure the table of contents will be correct, e.g., when we have appendixes.

```

28.117 \def\greek@alph#1{\expandafter\greeknumeral\expandafter{\the#1}}
28.118 \def\greek@Alph#1{\expandafter\Greeknumeral\expandafter{\the#1}}

```

Now we can set up the switching.

```

28.119 \addto\extragreek{%
28.120 \let\@alph\greek@alph
28.121 \let\@Alph\greek@Alph}
28.122 \addto\noextragreek{%
28.123 \let\@alph\latin@alph
28.124 \let\@Alph\latin@Alph}

```

$\backslash$ greek@roman To prevent roman numerals being typeset in greek letters we need to adopt the internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands  $\backslash$ @roman and  $\backslash$ @Roman. **Note that this may cause errors where roman ends up in a situation where it needs to be expanded; problems are known to exist with the AMS document classes.**

```

28.125 \let\latin@roman\@roman
28.126 \let\latin@Roman\@Roman
28.127 \def\greek@roman#1{\textlatin{\latin@roman{#1}}}
28.128 \def\greek@Roman#1{\textlatin{\latin@Roman{#1}}}
28.129 \addto\extrasgreek{%
28.130   \let\@roman\greek@roman
28.131   \let\@Roman\greek@Roman}
28.132 \addto\noextrasgreek{%
28.133   \let\@roman\latin@roman
28.134   \let\@Roman\latin@Roman}

```

`\greek&` The greek fonts do not contain an ampersand, so the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X command `\&` doesn't give the expected result if we do not do something about it.

```

28.135 \let\ltx&\&
28.136 \def\greek&{\textlatin{\ltx&}}
28.137 \addto\extrasgreek{\let&\greek&}
28.138 \addto\noextrasgreek{\let&\ltx&}}

```

What is left now is the definition of a set of macros to produce the various digits.

`\gr@num@i` As there is no representation for 0 in this system the zeros are simply discarded.  
`\gr@num@ii` When we have a large number with three *trailing* zero's also the numeric mark is discarded. Therefore these macros need to pass the information to each other  
`\gr@num@iii` about the (non-)translation of a zero.

```

28.139 \def\gr@num@i#1{%
28.140   \ifcase#1\or a\or b\or g\or d\or e\or \sigma\or z\or h\or j\fi
28.141   \ifnum#1=\z@\else\anw@true\fi\anw@print}
28.142 \def\gr@num@ii#1{%
28.143   \ifcase#1\or i\or k\or l\or m\or n\or x\or o\or p\or \qoppa\fi
28.144   \ifnum#1=\z@\else\anw@true\fi\gr@num@i}
28.145 \def\gr@num@iii#1{%
28.146   \ifcase#1\or r\or sv\or t\or u\or f\or q\or y\or w\or \sampi\fi
28.147   \ifnum#1=\z@\anw@false\else\anw@true\fi\gr@num@ii}

```

`\gr@num@iv` The first three 'digits' always have the numeric mark, except when one is discarded  
`\gr@num@v` because it's value is zero.

```

28.148 \def\gr@num@iv#1{%
28.149   \ifnum#1=\z@\else\katwtonos\fi
28.150   \ifcase#1\or a\or b\or g\or d\or e\or \sigma\or z\or h\or j\fi
28.151   \gr@num@iii}
28.152 \def\gr@num@v#1{%
28.153   \ifnum#1=\z@\else\katwtonos\fi
28.154   \ifcase#1\or i\or k\or l\or m\or n\or x\or o\or p\or \qoppa\fi
28.155   \gr@num@iv}
28.156 \def\gr@num@vi#1{%
28.157   \katwtonos
28.158   \ifcase#1\or r\or sv\or t\or u\or f\or q\or y\or w\or \sampi\fi
28.159   \gr@num@v}

```

`\greek@tilde` In greek typesetting we need a number of characters with more than one accent. In the underlying family of fonts (the `cb` fonts) this is solved using Knuth's ligature mechanism. Characters we need to have ligatures with are the tilde, the acute and grave accent characters, the rough and smooth breathings, the subscript, and the double quote character. In text input the `~` is normally used to produce an unbreakable space. The command `\~` normally produces a tilde accent. For polytonic Greek we change the definition of `\~` to produce the tilde character itself, making sure it has category code 12.

```

28.160 \begingroup
28.161   \@ifundefined{active@char\string!}{\catcode'\~=\relax}
28.162   \catcode'\~=12

```

```

28.163 \lccode'\!='\~
28.164 \lowercase{\def\x{\endgroup
28.165     \def\greek@tilde{!}}\x}
28.166 \addto\extrapolutonikogreek{%
28.167 \babel@save\~\let\~\greek@tilde}

```

In order to get correct hyphenation we need to set the lower case code of a number of characters. The ‘v’ character has a special usage for the `cb` fonts: in fact this ligature mechanism detects the end of a word and assures that a final sigma is typeset with the proper sign which is different from that of an initial or medial sigma; the ‘v’ after an *isolated* sigma fools the ligature mechanism in order to typeset  $\sigma$  in place of  $\varsigma$ . Because of this we make sure its lowercase code is not changed. For “modern” greek we have to deal only with ‘ and ’ and so things are easy.

```

28.168 \addto\extragreek{%
28.169 \babel@savevariable{\lccode‘v}\lccode‘v=‘v%
28.170 \babel@savevariable{\lccode‘\'}\lccode‘\’=‘\’%
28.171 \babel@savevariable{\lccode‘\'}\lccode‘\’=‘\’%
28.172 \addto\extrapolutonikogreek{%
28.173 \babel@savevariable{\lccode‘\<}\lccode‘\<=‘\<%
28.174 \babel@savevariable{\lccode‘\>}\lccode‘\>=‘\>%
28.175 \babel@savevariable{\lccode‘\~}\lccode‘\~=‘\~%
28.176 \babel@savevariable{\lccode‘\|}\lccode‘\|=‘\|%
28.177 \babel@savevariable{\lccode‘\'}\lccode‘\’=‘\’%

```

And in order to get rid of all accents and breathings when a string is `\uppercase`d we also change a number of uppercase codes.

```

28.178 \addto\extragreek{%
28.179 \babel@savevariable{\uccode‘\'}\uccode‘\’=‘\’%
28.180 \babel@savevariable{\uccode‘\’}\uccode‘\’=159} %% 159 == ~9f
28.181 \addto\extrapolutonikogreek{%
28.182 \babel@savevariable{\uccode‘\~}\uccode‘\~=159%
28.183 \babel@savevariable{\uccode‘\>}\uccode‘\>=159%
28.184 \babel@savevariable{\uccode‘\<}\uccode‘\<=159%
28.185 \babel@savevariable{\uccode‘\|}\uccode‘\|=‘\|%
28.186 \babel@savevariable{\uccode‘\'}\uccode‘\’=159}

```

For this to work we make the character `~9f` a shorthand that expands to nothing. In order for this to work we need to make a character look like `~9f` in `TEX`’s eyes. The trick is to have another character and assign it a different lowercase code. To execute the macros needed in a `\lowercase` environment. Usually the tilde character is used for such purposes. Before we do this we save its original lowercase code to restore it once we’re done.

```

28.187 \@tempcnta=\lccode‘\~
28.188 \lccode‘\~=159
28.189 \lowercase{%
28.190 \initiate@active@char{~}%
28.191 \declare@shorthand{greek}{~}{~}
28.192 \lccode‘\~=\@tempcnta

```

We can also make the tilde character itself expand to a tilde with category code 12 to make the typing of texts easier.

```

28.193 \addto\extrapolutonikogreek{\languageshorthands{greek}}%
28.194 \declare@shorthand{greek}{~}{\greek@tilde}

```

We now define a few symbols which are used in the typesetting of greek numerals, as well as some other symbols which are useful, such as the  $\epsilon\rho\omega$  symbol, etc.

```

28.195 \DeclareTextCommand{\anwtonos}{LGR}{\char"FE\relax}
28.196 \DeclareTextCommand{\katwtonos}{LGR}{\char"FF\relax}
28.197 \DeclareTextCommand{\qoppa}{LGR}{\char"12\relax}
28.198 \DeclareTextCommand{\stigma}{LGR}{\char"06\relax}

```

```

28.199 \DeclareTextCommand{\sampi}{LGR}{\char"1B\relax}
28.200 \DeclareTextCommand{\Digamma}{LGR}{\char"C3\relax}
28.201 \DeclareTextCommand{\ddigamma}{LGR}{\char"93\relax}
28.202 \DeclareTextCommand{\vardigamma}{LGR}{\char"07\relax}
28.203 \DeclareTextCommand{\euro}{LGR}{\char"18\relax}
28.204 \DeclareTextCommand{\permill}{LGR}{\char"19\relax}

```

Since the ~ cannot be used to produce an unbreakable white space we must redefine at least the commands `\fnum@figure` and `\fnum@table` so they do not produce a ~ instead of white space.

```

28.205 %\def\fnum@figure{\figurename\nobreakspace\thefigure}
28.206 %\def\fnum@table{\tablename\nobreakspace\thetable}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of @ to its original value.

```

28.207 \ldf@finish{\CurrentOption}
28.208 </code>

```

## 29 The French language

The file `frenchb.dtx`<sup>24</sup>, defines all the language definition macros for the French language.

Customisation for the French language is achieved following the book “Lexique des règles typographiques en usage à l’Imprimerie nationale” troisième édition (1994), ISBN-2-11-081075-0.

First version released: 1.1 (1996/05/31) as part of `babel-3.6beta`.

`frenchb` has been improved using helpful suggestions from many people, mainly from Jacques André, Michel Bovani, Thierry Bouche, and Vincent Jalby. Thanks to all of them!

This new version (2.0) has been designed to be used with  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  and  $\text{PlainTeX}$  formats only.  $\text{\LaTeX}$ -2.09 is no longer supported. Changes between version 1.6 and 2.0 are listed in subsection 29.4 p. 108.

An extensive documentation is available in French here:

<http://daniel.flipo.free.fr/frenchb>

### 29.1 Basic interface

The command `\selectlanguage{french}` switches to the French language<sup>25</sup>, with the following effects:

1. French hyphenation patterns are made active;
2. ‘double punctuation’ (: ; ! ?) is made active for correct spacing in French;
3. `\today` prints the date in French;
4. the caption names are translated into French ( $\text{\LaTeX}$  only);
5. the default items in itemize environment are set to ‘—’ instead of ‘•’, and all vertical spacing and glue is deleted, hooks to reset standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  settings are provided (see `\frenchbsetup{}`); it is possible to change ‘—’ to something else (‘—’ for instance) using `\frenchbsetup{}`;
6. vertical spacing in general  $\text{\LaTeX}$  lists is shortened, a hook to reset standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  settings is provided (see `\frenchbsetup{}`);
7. the first paragraph of each section is indented ( $\text{\LaTeX}$  only);
8. the space after `\dots` is removed in French.

Some commands are provided in `frenchb` to make typesetting easier:

1. French quotation marks can be entered using the commands `\og` and `\fg` which work in  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  and  $\text{PlainTeX}$ , their appearance depending on what is available to draw them; even if you use  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  and T1-encoding, you should refrain from entering them as `<<~French quotation marks~>>`: `\og` and `\fg` provide better horizontal spacing. `\og` and `\fg` can be used outside French, they typeset then English quotes “ and ”.
2. A command `\up` is provided to typeset superscripts like `M\up{me}` (abbreviation for “Madame”), `1\up{er}` (for “premier”). Other commands are also provided for ordinals: `\ier`, `\iere`, `\iers`, `\ieres`, `\ieme`, `\iemes` (`3\iemes` prints 3<sup>es</sup>).
3. Family names should be typeset in small capitals and never be hyphenated, the macro `\bsc` (boxed small caps) does this, e.g., `Leslie~\bsc{Lampport}` will produce Leslie LAMPOR<sup>T</sup>. Note that composed names (such as Dupont-Durant) may now be hyphenated on explicit hyphens, this differs from `frenchb` v.1.x.

<sup>24</sup>The file described in this section has version number ? and was last revised on ?.

<sup>25</sup>`\selectlanguage{français}` and `\selectlanguage{frenchb}` are kept for backward compatibility but should no longer be used.



4. Commands `\primo`, `\secundo`, `\tertio` and `\quarto` may be used to enumerate in lists.
5. Abbreviations for “Numéro” and “numéro” are obtained via the commands `\No`, `\no`.
6. Two commands are provided to typeset the symbol for “degré”: `\degre` prints the raw character and `\degres` should be used to typeset temperatures (e.g., “20~\degres C” with an unbreakable space), or for alcohols’ strengths (e.g., “45\degres” with *no* space in French).
7. In math mode the comma has to be surrounded with braces to avoid a spurious space being inserted after it, in decimal numbers for instance (see the `TEXbook` p. 134). The command `\DecimalMathComma` makes the comma be an ordinary character *in French only* (no space added); as a counterpart, if `\DecimalMathComma` is active, an explicit space has to be added in lists and intervals: `$(0, \ 1)$`, `$(x, \ y)$`. `\StandardMathComma` switches back to the standard behaviour of the comma.
8. A command `\nombre` was provided in 1.x versions to easily format numbers in slices of three digits separated either by a comma in English or with a space in French; `\nombre` is now mapped to `\numprint` from `numprint.sty`, see `numprint.pdf` for more information.
9. `frenchb` has been designed to take advantage of the `xspace` package if present: adding `\usepackage{xspace}` in the preamble will force macros like `\fg`, `\ier`, `\ieme`, `\dots`, ... , to respect the spaces you type after them, for instance typing ‘`1\ier juin`’ will print ‘1<sup>er</sup> juin’ (no need for a forced space after `1\ier`).

## 29.2 Customisation

Up to version 1.6, customisation of `frenchb` was achieved by entering commands in `frenchb.cfg`. This possibility remains for compatibility, but *should not longer be used*. Version 2.0 introduces a new command `\frenchbsetup{}` using the `keyval` syntax which should make it easier to choose among the many options available. The command `\frenchbsetup{}` is to appear in the preamble only (after loading `babel`).

`\frenchbsetup{ShowOptions}` prints all available options to the `.log` file, it is just meant as a remainder of the list of offered options. As usual with `keyval` syntax, boolean options (as `ShowOptions`) can be entered as `ShowOptions=true` or just `ShowOptions`, the ‘`=true`’ part can be omitted.

The other options are (their default value is shown between brackets):

- `StandardLayout=true` [`false`] forces `frenchb` not to interfere with the layout: no action on any kind of lists, first paragraphs of sections are not indented (as in English), no action on footnotes. This option replaces the former command `\StandardLayout`. It can be used either for unifying the layout of a document so that it is no longer language dependent or to avoid conflicts with classes or packages which customise lists or footnotes.
- `GlobalLayoutFrench=true` [`false`] is also meant for unifying the layout of a document: lists typeset in other languages than French look the same as in French and first paragraphs of sections are all indented. Note that the layout of footnotes is language independent anyway (see below `FrenchFootnotes` and `AutoSpaceFootnotes`). This option replaces the former command `\FrenchLayout`.

- `AutoSpacePunctuation=false` [`true`]; in French, the user *should* input a space before the four characters ‘:;!?’ but as many people forget about it (even among native French writers!), the default behaviour of `frenchb` is to automatically add a `\thinspace` before ‘;’, ‘!’ ‘?’ and a normal (unbreakable) space before ‘:’ (recommended by the French Imprimerie nationale). This is convenient in most cases but can lead to addition of spurious spaces in URLs or in MS-DOS paths. Choosing `AutoSpacePunctuation=false` will ensure that a proper space will be added before ‘:;!?’ *if and only if* a (normal) space has been typed in. Those who are unsure about their typing in this area should stick to the default option and type `\string; \string: \string! \string?` instead of `; : ! ?` whenever no space should be added before them (mostly in URLs and MS-DOS paths).
- `ThinColonSpace=true` [`false`] changes the normal (unbreakable) space added before the colon ‘:’ to a thin space, so that the same amount of space is added before any of the four double punctuation characters. The default setting is supported by the French Imprimerie nationale.
- `ReduceListSpacing=false` [`true`]; `frenchb` normally reduces the values of the vertical spaces used in the environment `list` in French; setting this option to `false` reverts to the standard settings of `list`. This option replaces the former command `\FrenchListSpacingfalse`.
- `CompactItemize=false` [`true`]; `frenchb` normally suppresses any vertical space between items of `itemize` lists in French; setting this option to `false` reverts to the standard settings of `itemize` lists. This option replaces the former command `\FrenchItemizeSpacingfalse`.
- `StandardItemLabels=true` [`false`] when set to `true` this option stops `frenchb` from changing the labels in `itemize` lists in French.
- `ItemLabels=\textemdash, \textbullet, \ding{43}, \dots, [\textendash]`; when `StandardItemLabels=false` (the default), this option enables to choose the label used in `itemize` lists for all levels. The next three options do the same but each one for one level only. Note that the example `\ding{43}` requires `\usepackage{pifont}`.
- `ItemLabeli=\textemdash, \textbullet, \ding{43}, \dots, [\textendash]`
- `ItemLabelii=\textemdash, \textbullet, \ding{43}, \dots, [\textendash]`
- `ItemLabeliii=\textemdash, \textbullet, \ding{43}, \dots, [\textendash]`
- `ItemLabeliv=\textemdash, \textbullet, \ding{43}, \dots, [\textendash]`
- `StandardLists=true` [`false`] forbids `frenchb` to customize any kind of list. Do activate the option `StandardLists` when using classes or packages that customise lists too (`enumitem`, `paralist`, ...) to avoid conflicts. This option is just a shorthand for `ReduceListSpacing=false` and `CompactItemize=false` and `StandardItemLabels=true`.
- `IndentFirst=false` [`true`]; `frenchb` normally forces indentation of the first paragraph of sections (in French only). When this option is set to `false`, the first paragraph of will look the same in French and in English (not indented).
- `FrenchFootnotes=false` [`true`] reverts to the standard layout of footnotes. By default `frenchb` typesets leading numbers as ‘1.’ instead of ‘<sup>1</sup>’, but has no effect on footnotes numbered with symbols (as in the `\thanks` command). The former commands `\StandardFootnotes` and `\FrenchFootnotes` are still there, `\StandardFootnotes` can be useful when some footnotes are numbered with letters (inside minipages for instance).

- `AutoSpaceFootnotes=false` [`true`] ; by default `frenchb` adds a thin space in the running text before the number or symbol calling the footnote. Making this option `false` reverts to the standard setting (no space added).
- `PartNameFull=false` [`true`]; when true, `frenchb` numbers the title of `\part{}` commands as “Première partie”, “Deuxième partie” and so on. With some classes which change the `\part{}` command (AMS and SMF classes do so), you will get “Première partie I”, “Deuxième partie II” instead; when this occurs, this option should be set to `false`, part titles will then be printed as “Partie I”, “Partie II”.
- `og=«`, `fg=»`; when guillemets characters are available on the keyboard (through a compose key for instance), it is nice to use them instead of typing `\og` and `\fg`. This option tells `frenchb` which characters are opening and closing French guillemets (they depend on the input encoding), then you can type either `« guillemets »`, or `«guillemets»` (with or without spaces), to get properly typeset French quotes. This option requires `inputenc` to be loaded with the proper encoding, it works with 8-bits encodings (`latin1`, `latin9`, `ansinew`, `applemac`,...) and multi-byte encodings (`utf8` and `utf8x`).

### 29.3 Hyphenation checks

Once you have built your format, a good precaution would be to perform some basic tests about hyphenation in French. For  $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$  I suggest this:

- run the following file, with the encoding suitable for your machine (*my-encoding* will be `latin1` for UNIX machines, `ansinew` for PCs running Windows, `applemac` or `latin1` for Macintoshes, or `utf8`...

```
%% Test file for French hyphenation.
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[my-encoding]{inputenc}
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc} % Use LM fonts
\usepackage{lmodern} % for French
\usepackage[frenchb]{babel}
\begin{document}
\showhyphens{signal container \’ev\’enement alg\’ebre}
\showhyphens{signal container évènement algèbre}
\end{document}
```

- check the hyphenations proposed by  $\text{\TeX}$  in your log-file; in French you should get with both 7-bit and 8-bit encodings  
`si-gnal contai-ner évé-ne-ment al-gèbre`.  
Do not care about how accented characters are displayed in the log-file, what matters is the position of the ‘-’ hyphen signs *only*.

If they are all correct, your installation (probably) works fine, if one (or more) is (are) wrong, ask a local wizard to see what’s going wrong and perform the test again (or e-mail me about what happens).

Frequent mismatches:

- you get `sig-nal con-tainer`, this probably means that the hyphenation patterns you are using are for US-English, not for French;
- you get no hyphen at all in `évé-ne-ment`, this probably means that you are using CM fonts and the macro `\accent` to produce accented characters. Using 8-bits fonts with built-in accented characters avoids this kind of mismatch.

**Options’ order** – Please remember that options are read in the order they appear inside the `\frenchbsetup` command. Someone wishing that `frenchb` leaves

the layout of lists and footnotes untouched but caring for indentation of first paragraph of sections could choose `\frenchbsetup{StandardLayout,IndentFirst}` and get the expected layout. Choosing `\frenchbsetup{IndentFirst,StandardLayout}` would not lead to the expected result: option `IndentFirst` would be overwritten by `StandardLayout`.

## 29.4 Changes

### What's new in version 2.0?

Here is the list of all changes:

- Support for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X-2.09 and for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> in compatibility mode has been dropped. This version is meant for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and Plain based formats (like `bplain`). L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> formats based on m<sup>L</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X are no longer supported either (plenty of good 8-bits fonts are available now, so T1 encoding should be preferred for typesetting in French). A warning is issued when OT1 encoding is in use at the `\begin{document}`.
- Customisation should now be handled by command `\frenchbsetup{}`, `frenchb.cfg` (kept for compatibility) should no longer be used. See section 29.2 for the list of available options.
- Captions in figures and table have changed in French: former abbreviations “Fig.” and “Tab.” have been replaced by full names “Figure” and “Table”. If this leads to formatting problems in captions, you can add the following two commands to your preamble (after loading `babel`) to get the former captions `\addto\captionsfrench{\def\figurename{\scshape Fig.}}`  
`\addto\captionsfrench{\def\tablename{\scshape Tab.}}`.
- The `\nombre` command is now provided by the `numprint` package which has to be loaded *after* `babel` with the option `autolanguage` if number formatting should depend on the current language.
- The `\bsc` command no longer uses an `\hbox` to stop hyphenation of names but a `\kern0pt` instead. This change enables `microtype` to fine tune the length of the argument of `\bsc`; as a side-effect, compound names like Dupont-Durand can now be hyphenated on explicit hyphens. You can get back to the former behaviour of `\bsc` by adding `\renewcommand*{\bsc}[1]{\leavevmode\hbox{\scshape #1}}` to the preamble of your document.
- Footnotes are now displayed “à la française” for the whole document, except with an explicit `\frenchbsetup{AutoSpaceFootnotes=false,FrenchFootnotes=false}`. Add this command if you want standard footnotes. It is still possible to revert locally to the standard layout of footnotes by adding `\StandardFootnotes` (inside a `minipage` environment for instance).

## 29.5 File frenchb.cfg

`frenchb.cfg` is now a dummy file just kept for compatibility with previous versions.

```

29.1 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%
29.2 %%%%%%%%%%% WARNING: THIS FILE SHOULD NO LONGER BE USED %%%%%%%%%%%
29.3 %% If you want to customise frenchb, please DO NOT hack into the code!
29.4 %% Do no put any code in this file either, please use the new command
29.5 %% \frenchbsetup{} with the proper options to customise frenchb.
29.6 %%
29.7 %% Add \frenchbsetup{ShowOptions} to your preamble to see the list of
29.8 %% available options and/or read the documentation.
29.9 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%%

```

## 30 T<sub>E</sub>Xnical details

### 30.1 Initial setup

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
30.1 \LdfInit\CurrentOption\datefrench
```

```
\ifLaTeXe No support is provided for late LATEX-2.09: issue a warning and exit if LATEX-2.09
is in use. Plain is still supported.
```

```
30.2 \newif\ifLaTeXe
```

```
30.3 \ifx\magnification\@undefined
```

```
30.4 \ifx\@compatibilitytrue\@undefined
```

```
30.5 \PackageError{frenchb.ldf}%
```

```
30.6 {LaTeX-2.09 format is no longer supported.\MessageBreak
```

```
30.7 Aborting here.}%
```

```
30.8 \endinput
```

```
30.9 \else
```

```
30.10 \LaTeXetrue
```

```
30.11 \fi
```

```
30.12 \fi
```

Check if hyphenation patterns for the French language have been loaded in `language.dat`; we allow for the names ‘french’, ‘français’, ‘canadien’ or ‘acadian’. The latter two are both names used in Canada for variants of French that are in use in that country.

```
30.13 \ifx\l@french\@undefined
```

```
30.14 \ifx\l@français\@undefined
```

```
30.15 \ifx\l@canadien\@undefined
```

```
30.16 \ifx\l@acadian\@undefined
```

```
30.17 \nopatterns{French}
```

```
30.18 \addialect\l@french0
```

```
30.19 \else
```

```
30.20 \let\l@french\l@acadian
```

```
30.21 \fi
```

```
30.22 \else
```

```
30.23 \let\l@french\l@canadien
```

```
30.24 \fi
```

```
30.25 \else
```

```
30.26 \let\l@french\l@français
```

```
30.27 \fi
```

```
30.28 \fi
```

Now `\l@french` is always defined.

The internal name for the French language will be ‘french’; ‘français’ and ‘frenchb’ will be synonymous for ‘french’: first let both names use the same hyphenation patterns. Later we will have to set aliases for `\captionfrench`, `\datefrench`, `\extrasfrench` and `\noextrasfrench`. As French uses the standard values of `\lefthyphenmin` (2) and `\righthyphenmin` (3), no special setting is required here.

```
30.29 \def\CurrentOption{french}
```

```
30.30 \ifx\l@français\@undefined
```

```
30.31 \let\l@français\l@french
```

```
30.32 \fi
```

```
30.33 \ifx\l@frenchb\@undefined
```

```
30.34 \let\l@frenchb\l@french
```

```
30.35 \fi
```

When this language definition file was loaded for one of the Canadian versions of French we need to make sure that a suitable hyphenation pattern register will be found by T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

30.36 \ifx\l@canadien\@undefined
30.37 \let\l@canadien\l@french
30.38 \fi
30.39 \ifx\l@acadian\@undefined
30.40 \let\l@acadian\l@french
30.41 \fi

```

This language definition can be loaded for different variants of the French language. The ‘key’ babel macros are only defined once, using ‘french’ as the language name, but frenchb and francais are synonymous.

```

30.42 \def\datefrancais{\datefrench}
30.43 \def\datefrenchb{\datefrench}
30.44 \def\extrasfrancais{\extrasfrench}
30.45 \def\extrasfrenchb{\extrasfrench}
30.46 \def\noextrasfrancais{\noextrasfrench}
30.47 \def\noextrasfrenchb{\noextrasfrench}

```

`\extrasfrench` The macro `\extrasfrench` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the French language. The macro `\noextrasfrench` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasfrench`.

In French, character “apostrophe” is a letter in expressions like l’ambulance (French hyphenation patterns provide entries for this kind of words). This means that the `\lccode` of “apostrophe” has to be non null in French for proper hyphenation of those expressions, and has to be reset to null when exiting French.

```

30.48 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{\lccode‘\’=‘\’}
30.49 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{\lccode‘\’=0}

```

One more thing `\extrasfrench` needs to do is to make sure that `\frenchspacing` is in effect. `\noextrasfrench` will switch `\frenchspacing` off again.

```

30.50 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.51 \bbl@frenchspacing}
30.52 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.53 \bbl@nonfrenchspacing}

```

## 30.2 Punctuation

As long as no better solution is available <sup>26</sup>, the ‘double punctuation’ characters (; ! ? and :) have to be made `\active` for an automatic control of the amount of space to insert before them. Before doing so, we have to save the standard definition of `\@makecaption` (which includes two ‘:’) to compare it later to its definition at the `\begin{document}`.

```

30.54 \long\def\STD@makecaption#1#2{%
30.55 \vskip\abovecaptionskip
30.56 \sbox\@tempboxa{#1: #2}%
30.57 \ifdim \wd\@tempboxa >\hsize
30.58 #1: #2\par
30.59 \else
30.60 \global \@minipagefalse
30.61 \hb@xt@\hsize{\hfil\box\@tempboxa\hfil}%
30.62 \fi
30.63 \vskip\belowcaptionskip}%

```

We define a new ‘if’ `\FBpunct@active` which will be made false whenever a better alternative will be available. The following code makes the four characters ; ! ? and : ‘active’ and provides their definitions.

```

30.64 \newif\ifFBpunct@active \FBpunct@activetrue
30.65 \ifFBpunct@active
30.66 \initiate@active@char{:}
30.67 \initiate@active@char{;}
30.68 \initiate@active@char{!}

```

<sup>26</sup>LuaTeX, or pdfTeX might provide alternatives in the future...

30.69 `\initiate@active@char{?}`

We first tune the amount of space before ; ! ? and :. This should only happen in horizontal mode, hence the test `\ifhmode`.

In horizontal mode, if a space has been typed before ‘;’ we remove it and put an unbreakable `\thinspace` instead. If no space has been typed, we add `\FDP@thinspace` which will be defined, up to the user’s wishes, as an automatic added thin space, or as `\@empty`.

```
30.70 \declare@shorthand{french}{;}{%
30.71     \ifhmode
30.72         \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
30.73             \unskip\penalty\@M\thinspace
30.74         \else
30.75             \FDP@thinspace
30.76         \fi
30.77     \fi
```

Now we can insert a ; character.

```
30.78     \string;}
```

The next three definitions are very similar.

```
30.79 \declare@shorthand{french}{!}{;%
30.80     \ifhmode
30.81         \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
30.82             \unskip\penalty\@M\thinspace
30.83         \else
30.84             \FDP@thinspace
30.85         \fi
30.86     \fi
30.87     \string!}
30.88 \declare@shorthand{french}{?}{;%
30.89     \ifhmode
30.90         \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
30.91             \unskip\penalty\@M\thinspace
30.92         \else
30.93             \FDP@thinspace
30.94         \fi
30.95     \fi
30.96     \string?}
```

According to the I.N. specifications, the ‘:’ requires a normal space before it, but some people prefer a `\thinspace` (just like the other three). We define `\Fcolonspace` to hold the required amount of space (user customisable).

```
30.97 \newcommand*{\Fcolonspace}{\space}
30.98 \declare@shorthand{french}{:}{;%
30.99     \ifhmode
30.100         \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
30.101             \unskip\penalty\@M\Fcolonspace
30.102         \else
30.103             \FDP@colonspace
30.104         \fi
30.105     \fi
30.106     \string:}
```

`\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP` `\FDP@thinspace` and `\FDP@space` are defined as unbreakable spaces by `\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP` `\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP` or as `\@empty` by `\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP`. Default is `\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP`.

```
30.107 \def\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP{%
30.108     \def\FDP@thinspace{\penalty\@M\thinspace}%
30.109     \def\FDP@colonspace{\penalty\@M\Fcolonspace}}
30.110 \def\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP{\let\FDP@thinspace\@empty
30.111     \let\FDP@colonspace\@empty}
30.112 \AutoSpaceBeforeFDP
```

When the active characters appear in an environment where their French behaviour is not wanted they should give an ‘expected’ result. Therefore we define shorthands at system level as well.

```
30.113 \declare@shorthand{system}{:}{\string:}
30.114 \declare@shorthand{system}{!}{\string!}
30.115 \declare@shorthand{system}{?}{\string?}
30.116 \declare@shorthand{system}{;}{\string;}
```

We specify that the French group of shorthands should be used.

```
30.117 \addto\extrasfrench{%
30.118 \languageshorthands{french}%
```

These characters are ‘turned on’ once, later their definition may vary. Don’t misunderstand the following code: they keep being active all along the document, even when leaving French.

```
30.119 \bbl@activate{:}\bbl@activate{;}%
30.120 \bbl@activate{!}\bbl@activate{?}%
30.121 }
30.122 \addto\noextrasfrench{%
30.123 \bbl@deactivate{:}\bbl@deactivate{;}%
30.124 \bbl@deactivate{!}\bbl@deactivate{?}}
30.125 \fi
```

### 30.3 French quotation marks

`\og` The top macros for quotation marks will be called `\og` (“ouvrez guillemets”) and `\fg` (“fermez guillemets”). Another option for typesetting quotes in multilingual texts is to use the package `csquotes.sty` and its command `\enquote`.

```
30.126 \newcommand*{\og}{\@empty}
30.127 \newcommand*{\fg}{\@empty}
```

`\guillemotleft` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X users are supposed to use 8-bit output encodings (T1, LY1, ...) to typeset French, those who still stick to OT1 should call `aeguill.sty` or a similar package. In both cases the commands `\guillemotleft` and `\guillemotright` will print the French opening and closing quote characters from the output font. For XeLaTeX, `\guillemotleft` and `\guillemotright` are defined by package `xunicode.sty`. We will check ‘AtBeginDocument’ that the proper output encodings are in use (see end of section 30.13).

We give the following definitions for Plain users only as a (poor) fall-back, they are welcome to change them for anything better.

```
30.128 \ifLaTeXe
30.129 \else
30.130 \ifx\guillemotleft\@undefined
30.131 \def\guillemotleft{\leavevmode\raise0.25ex
30.132 \hbox{\scriptscriptstyle\l1}}
30.133 \fi
30.134 \ifx\guillemotright\@undefined
30.135 \def\guillemotright{\raise0.25ex
30.136 \hbox{\scriptscriptstyle\gg}}
30.137 \fi
30.138 \let\xspace\relax
30.139 \fi
```

The next step is to provide correct spacing after `\guillemotleft` and before `\guillemotright`: a space precedes and follows quotation marks but no line break is allowed neither *after* the opening one, nor *before* the closing one. `\FBguill@spacing` which does the spacing, has been fine tuned by Thierry Bouche. French quotes (including spacing) are printed by `\FB@og` and `\FB@fg`, the expansion of the top level commands `\og` and `\fg` is different in and outside French. We’ll try to be smart to users of D. Carlisle’s `xspace` package: if this



package is loaded there will be no need for `{}` or `\` to get a space after `\fg`, otherwise `\xspace` will be defined as `\relax` (done at the end of this file).

```

30.140 \newcommand*{\FBguill@spacing}{\penalty\M\hskip.8\fontdimen2\font
30.141                               plus.3\fontdimen3\font
30.142                               minus.8\fontdimen4\font}
30.143 \DeclareRobustCommand*{\FB@og}{\leavevmode
30.144                               \guillemotleft\FBguill@spacing}
30.145 \DeclareRobustCommand*{\FB@fg}{\ifdim\lastskip>z@\unskip\fi
30.146                               \FBguill@spacing\guillemotright\xspace}

```

The top level definitions for French quotation marks are switched on and off through the `\extrasfrench` `\noextrasfrench` mechanism. Outside French, `\og` and `\fg` will typeset standard English opening and closing double quotes.

```

30.147 \ifLaTeXe
30.148   \def\bbl@frenchguillemets{\renewcommand*{\og}{\FB@og}}%
30.149   \renewcommand*{\fg}{\FB@fg}}
30.150   \def\bbl@nonfrenchguillemets{\renewcommand*{\og}{\textquotedblleft}}%
30.151   \renewcommand*{\fg}{\ifdim\lastskip>z@\unskip\fi
30.152   \textquotedblright}}
30.153 \else
30.154   \def\bbl@frenchguillemets{\let\og\FB@og
30.155   \let\fg\FB@fg}
30.156   \def\bbl@nonfrenchguillemets{\def\og{‘}%
30.157   \def\fg{\ifdim\lastskip>z@\unskip\fi ’}}
30.158 \fi
30.159 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.160   \bbl@frenchguillemets}
30.161 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.162   \bbl@nonfrenchguillemets}

```

## 30.4 Date in French

`\datefrench` The macro `\datefrench` redefines the command `\today` to produce French dates.

```

30.163 \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
30.164   \def\today{\number\day \ifnum1=\day {\ier}\fi \relax \space
30.165   \ifcase\month
30.166   \or janvier\or f'evrier\or mars\or avril\or mai\or juin\or
30.167   juillet\or ao\ut\or septembre\or octobre\or novembre\or
30.168   d'ecembre\fi \relax
30.169   \space \number\year}}

```

## 30.5 Extra utilities

Let's provide the French user with some extra utilities.

`\up` `\up` eases the typesetting of superscripts like ‘1<sup>er</sup>’. `\up` is just a shortcut for `\ieme` `\textsuperscript` in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>.

```

30.170 \ifLaTeXe
30.171   \newcommand*{\up}[1]{\textsuperscript{#1}}
30.172 \else
30.173   \newcommand*{\up}[1]{\leavevmode\raise1ex\hbox{\sevenrm #1}}
30.174 \fi
30.175 \def\ieme{\up{\lowercase{e}}\xspace}
30.176 \def\iemes{\up{\lowercase{es}}\xspace}
30.177 \def\ier{\up{\lowercase{er}}\xspace}
30.178 \def\iers{\up{\lowercase{ers}}\xspace}
30.179 \def\iere{\up{\lowercase{re}}\xspace}
30.180 \def\ieres{\up{\lowercase{res}}\xspace}

```

`\No` And some more macros for numbering, first two support macros.

```
\no30.181 \newcommand*{\FrenchEnumerate}[1]{%
\primo30.182 #1\up{\lowercase{o}}\kern+.3em}
\frimo)30.183 \newcommand*{\FrenchPopularEnumerate}[1]{%
30.184 #1\up{\lowercase{o}})\kern+.3em}
```

Typing `\primo` should result in ‘1°’,

```
30.185 \def\primo{\FrenchEnumerate1}
30.186 \def\secundo{\FrenchEnumerate2}
30.187 \def\tertio{\FrenchEnumerate3}
30.188 \def\quarto{\FrenchEnumerate4}
```

while typing `\frimo)` gives ‘1°’.

```
30.189 \def\frimo{\FrenchPopularEnumerate1}
30.190 \def\fsecundo{\FrenchPopularEnumerate2}
30.191 \def\ftertio{\FrenchPopularEnumerate3}
30.192 \def\fquarto{\FrenchPopularEnumerate4}
```

Let’s provide two macros for the common abbreviations of “Numéro”.

```
30.193 \DeclareRobustCommand*\No{N\up{\lowercase{o}}\kern+.2em}
30.194 \DeclareRobustCommand*\no{n\up{\lowercase{o}}\kern+.2em}
```

`\bsc` As family names should be written in small capitals and never be hyphenated, we provide a command (its name comes from Boxed Small Caps) to input them easily. Note that this command has changed with version 2 of frenchb: a `\kernOpt` is used instead of `\hbox` because `\hbox` would break microtype’s font expansion; as a (positive?) side effect, composed names (such as Dupont-Durand) can now be hyphenated on explicit hyphens. Usage: `Jean~\bsc{Duchemin}`.

```
30.195 \DeclareRobustCommand*\bsc}[1]{\leavevmode\begingroup\kernOpt
30.196 #1\endgroup}
30.197 \ifLaTeXe\else\let\scshape\relax\fi
```

Some definitions for special characters. We won’t define `\tilde` as a Text Symbol not to conflict with the macro `\tilde` for math mode and use the name `\tild` instead. Note that `\boi` may *not* be used in math mode, its name in math mode is `\backslash`. `\degre` can be accessed by the command `\r{}` for ring accent.

```
30.198 \ifLaTeXe
30.199 \DeclareTextSymbol{\at}{T1}{64}
30.200 \DeclareTextSymbol{\circonflexe}{T1}{94}
30.201 \DeclareTextSymbol{\tild}{T1}{126}
30.202 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\at}{T1}
30.203 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\circonflexe}{T1}
30.204 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\tild}{T1}
30.205 \DeclareRobustCommand*\boi{\textbackslash}
30.206 \DeclareRobustCommand*\degre{\r{}}
30.207 \else
30.208 \def\T@one{T1}
30.209 \ifx\fontencoding\T@one
30.210 \newcommand*\degre{\char6}
30.211 \else
30.212 \newcommand*\degre{\char23}
30.213 \fi
30.214 \newcommand*\at{\char64}
30.215 \newcommand*\circonflexe{\char94}
30.216 \newcommand*\tild{\char126}
30.217 \newcommand*\boi{\$\backslash$}
30.218 \fi
```

`\degrees` We now define a macro `\degrees` for typesetting the abbreviation for ‘degrees’ (as in ‘degrees Celsius’). As the bounding box of the character ‘degree’ has *very* different widths in CM/EC and PostScript fonts, we fix the width of the bounding

box of `\degrees` to 0.3 em, this lets the symbol ‘degree’ stick to the preceding (e.g., `45\degrees`) or following character (e.g., `20~\degrees C`).

If the T<sub>E</sub>X Companion fonts are available (`textcomp.sty`), we pick up `\textdegree` from them instead of using emulating ‘degrees’ from the `\r{}` accent. Otherwise we overwrite the (poor) definition of `\textdegree` given in `latin1.def`, `applemac.def` etc. (called by `inputenc.sty`) by our definition of `\degrees`. We also advice the user (once only) to use TS1-encoding.

```

30.219 \ifLaTeXe
30.220 \def\Warning@degree@TSone{%
30.221     \PackageWarning{frenchb.lfd}{%
30.222         Degrees would look better in TS1-encoding:
30.223         \MessageBreak add \protect
30.224         \usepackage{textcomp} to the preamble.
30.225         \MessageBreak Degrees used}}
30.226 \AtBeginDocument{\expandafter\ifx\csname M@TS1\endcsname\relax
30.227     \DeclareRobustCommand*\degrees{%
30.228         \leavevmode\hbox to 0.3em{\hss\degre\hss}%
30.229         \Warning@degree@TSone
30.230         \global\let\Warning@degree@TSone\relax}%
30.231     \let\textdegree\degrees
30.232 \else
30.233     \DeclareRobustCommand*\degrees{%
30.234         \hbox{\UseTextSymbol{TS1}{\textdegree}}}%
30.235 \fi}
30.236 \else
30.237 \newcommand*\degrees{%
30.238     \leavevmode\hbox to 0.3em{\hss\degre\hss}}
30.239 \fi

```

## 30.6 Formatting numbers

`\DecimalMathComma` As mentioned in the T<sub>E</sub>Xbook p. 134, the comma is of type `\mathpunct` in math mode: it is automatically followed by a space. This is convenient in lists and intervals but unpleasant when the comma is used as a decimal separator in French: it has to be entered as `{,}`. `\DecimalMathComma` makes the comma be an ordinary character (of type `\mathord`) in French *only* (no space added); `\StandardMathComma` switches back to the standard behaviour of the comma.

```

30.240 \newcount\std@mcc
30.241 \newcount\dec@mcc
30.242 \std@mcc=\mathcode'\,
30.243 \dec@mcc=\std@mcc
30.244 \@tempcnta=\std@mcc
30.245 \divide\@tempcnta by "1000
30.246 \multiply\@tempcnta by "1000
30.247 \advance\dec@mcc by -\@tempcnta
30.248 \newcommand*\DecimalMathComma{\iflanguage{french}%
30.249     {\mathcode'\,=\dec@mcc}}%
30.250     \addto\extrasfrench{\mathcode'\,=\dec@mcc}}
30.251 \newcommand*\StandardMathComma{\mathcode'\,=\std@mcc
30.252     \addto\extrasfrench{\mathcode'\,=\std@mcc}}
30.253 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.254     \mathcode'\,=\std@mcc}

```

`\nombre` The command `\nombre` is now borrowed from `numprint.sty` for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>. There is no point to maintain the former tricky code when a package is dedicated to do the same job and more. For Plain based formats, `\nombre` no longer formats numbers, it prints them as is and issues a warning about the change.

Fake command `\nombre` for Plain based formats, warning users of `frenchb v.1.x.` of the change.

```

30.255 \newcommand*{\nombre}[1][\message{%
30.256     *** \noexpand\nombre no longer formats numbers\string! ***}]%

```

The next definitions only make sense for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>. Let's cleanup and exit if the format in Plain based.

```

30.257 \let\FBstop@here\relax
30.258 \def\FBclean@on@exit{\let\ifLaTeXe\@undefined
30.259     \let\LaTeXettrue\@undefined
30.260     \let\LaTeXefalse\@undefined}
30.261 \ifx\magnification\@undefined
30.262 \else
30.263     \def\FBstop@here{\let\STD@makecaption\relax
30.264     \FBclean@on@exit
30.265     \ldf@quit\CurrentOption\endinput}
30.266 \fi
30.267 \FBstop@here

```

What follows now is for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> *only*. We redefine `\nombre` for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>. A warning is issued at the first call of `\nombre` if `\numprint` is not defined, suggesting what to do. The package `numprint` is *not* loaded automatically by `frenchb` because of possible options conflict.

```

30.268 \renewcommand*{\nombre}[1]{\Warning@nombre\numprint{#1}}
30.269 \newcommand*{\Warning@nombre}{%
30.270     \ifundefined{numprint}%
30.271     {\PackageWarning{frenchb.ldb}{%
30.272         \protect\nombre\space now relies on package numprint.sty,
30.273         \MessageBreak add \protect
30.274         \usepackage[autolanguage]{numprint}\MessageBreak
30.275         to your preamble *after* loading babel, \MessageBreak
30.276         see file numprint.pdf for other options.\MessageBreak
30.277         \protect\nombre\space called}%
30.278     \global\let\Warning@nombre\relax
30.279     \global\let\numprint\relax
30.280     }{}}%
30.281 }

30.282 \newcommand*{\ThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers}{%
30.283     \PackageWarning{frenchb.ldb}{%
30.284         Type \protect\frenchbsetup{ThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers}
30.285         \MessageBreak Command \protect\ThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers\space
30.286         is no longer\MessageBreak defined in frenchb v.2,}}

```

## 30.7 Caption names

The next step consists of defining the French equivalents for the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X caption names.

`\captionsfrench` Let's first define `\captionsfrench` which sets all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

30.287 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
30.288     \def\refname{R\ref\erences}%
30.289     \def\abstractname{R\esum\e}%
30.290     \def\bibname{Bibliographie}%
30.291     \def\prefacename{Pr\eface}%
30.292     \def\chaptername{Chapitre}%
30.293     \def\appendixname{Annexe}%
30.294     \def\contentsname{Table des mati\eres}%
30.295     \def\listfigurename{Table des figures}%
30.296     \def\listtablename{Liste des tableaux}%
30.297     \def\indexname{Index}%
30.298     \def\figurename{{\scshape Figure}}%
30.299     \def\tablename{{\scshape Table}}%

```

“Première partie” instead of “Part I”.

```

30.300 \def\partname{\protect\Fpt partie}%
30.301 \def@Fpt{{\ifcase\value{part}\or Premi\`ere\or Deuxi\`eme\or
30.302 Troisi\`eme\or Quatri\`eme\or Cinq\`eme\or Sixi\`eme\or
30.303 Septi\`eme\or Huiti\`eme\or Neuvi\`eme\or Dixi\`eme\or Onzi\`eme\or
30.304 Douzi\`eme\or Treizi\`eme\or Quatorzi\`eme\or Quinzi\`eme\or
30.305 Seizi\`eme\or Dix-septi\`eme\or Dix-huiti\`eme\or Dix-neuvi\`eme\or
30.306 Vingt\`eme\fi}\space\def\thepart{}}%
30.307 \def\pagename{page}%
30.308 \def\seename{{\emph{voir}}}%
30.309 \def\alsoname{{\emph{voir aussi}}}%
30.310 \def\enclname{P.~J. }%
30.311 \def\ccname{Copie \`a }%
30.312 \def\headtoname{}%
30.313 \def\proofname{D\`emonstration}%
30.314 \def\glossaryname{Glossaire}%
30.315 }

```

As some users who choose frenchb or francais as option of babel, might customise \captionsfrenchb or \captionsfrancais in the preamble, we merge their changes at the \begin{document} when they do so. The other variants of French (canadien, acadian) are defined by checking if the relevant option was used and then adding one extra level of expansion.

```

30.316 \AtBeginDocument{\let\captions@French\captionsfrench
30.317 \ifundefined{captionsfrenchb}%
30.318 {\let\captions@Frenchb\relax}%
30.319 {\let\captions@Frenchb\captionsfrenchb}%
30.320 \ifundefined{captionsfrancais}%
30.321 {\let\captions@Francais\relax}%
30.322 {\let\captions@Francais\captionsfrancais}%
30.323 \def\captionsfrench{\captions@French
30.324 \captions@Francais\captions@Frenchb}%
30.325 \def\captionsfrancais{\captionsfrench}%
30.326 \def\captionsfrenchb{\captionsfrench}%
30.327 \iflanguage{french}{\captionsfrench}{}}%
30.328 }
30.329 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{canadien}{%
30.330 \def\captionscanadien{\captionsfrench}%
30.331 \def\datecanadien{\datefrench}%
30.332 \def\extrascanadien{\extrasfrench}%
30.333 \def\noextrascanadien{\noextrasfrench}%
30.334 }{}
30.335 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{acadian}{%
30.336 \def\captionssacadian{\captionsfrench}%
30.337 \def\dateacadian{\datefrench}%
30.338 \def\extrasacadian{\extrasfrench}%
30.339 \def\noextrasacadian{\noextrasfrench}%
30.340 }{}

```

**\CaptionSeparator** Let’s consider now captions in figures and tables. In French, captions in figures and tables should be printed with endash (‘–’) instead of the standard ‘:’.

The standard definition of \makecaption (e.g., the one provided in article.cls, report.cls, book.cls which is frozen for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> according to Frank Mittelbach), has been saved in \STDmakecaption before making ‘:’ active (see section 30.2). ‘AtBeginDocument’ we compare it to its current definition (some classes like koma-script classes, AMS classes, ua-thesis.cls...change it). If they are identical, frenchb just adds a hook called \CaptionSeparator to \makecaption, \CaptionSeparator defaults to ‘:’ as in the standard \makecaption, and will be changed to ‘–’ in French. If the definitions differ, frenchb doesn’t overwrite the changes, but prints a message in the .log file.

```

30.341 \def\CaptionSeparator{\string\space}

```

```

30.342 \long\def\FB@makecaption#1#2{%
30.343 \vskip\abovecaptionskip
30.344 \sbox\@tempboxa{#1\CaptionSeparator #2}%
30.345 \ifdim \wd\@tempboxa >\hsize
30.346 #1\CaptionSeparator #2\par
30.347 \else
30.348 \global \@minipagefalse
30.349 \hb@xt@\hsize{\hfil\box\@tempboxa\hfil}%
30.350 \fi
30.351 \vskip\belowcaptionskip}
30.352 \AtBeginDocument{%
30.353 \ifx\@makecaption\STD@makecaption
30.354 \global\let\@makecaption\FB@makecaption
30.355 \else
30.356 \@ifundefined{@makecaption}{}%
30.357 {\PackageWarning{frenchb.ldf}%
30.358 {The definition of \protect\@makecaption\space
30.359 has been changed,\MessageBreak
30.360 frenchb will NOT customise it;\MessageBreak reported}%
30.361 }%
30.362 \fi
30.363 \let\FB@makecaption\relax
30.364 \let\STD@makecaption\relax
30.365 }
30.366 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.367 \def\CaptionSeparator{\space\textendash\space}}
30.368 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.369 \def\CaptionSeparator{\string:\space}}

```

## 30.8 French lists

`\listFB` Vertical spacing in general lists should be shorter in French texts than the defaults provided by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. Note that the easy way, just changing values of vertical spacing parameters when entering French and restoring them to their defaults on exit would not work; as most lists are based on `\list` we will define a variant of `\list` (`\listFB`) to be used in French.

The amount of vertical space before and after a list is given by `\topsep` + `\parskip` (+ `\partopsep` if the list starts a new paragraph). IMHO, `\parskip` should be added *only* when the list starts a new paragraph, so I subtract `\parskip` from `\topsep` and add it back to `\partopsep`; this will normally make no difference because `\parskip`'s default value is 0pt, but will be noticeable when `\parskip` is *not* null.

`\endlist` is not redefined, but `\endlistORI` is provided for the users who prefer to define their own lists from the original command, they can code: `\begin{listORI}{-}{-} \end{listORI}`.

```

30.370 \let\listORI\list
30.371 \let\endlistORI\endlist
30.372 \def\FB@listsettings{%
30.373 \setlength{\itemsep}{0.4ex plus 0.2ex minus 0.2ex}%
30.374 \setlength{\parsep}{0.4ex plus 0.2ex minus 0.2ex}%
30.375 \setlength{\topsep}{0.8ex plus 0.4ex minus 0.4ex}%
30.376 \setlength{\partopsep}{0.4ex plus 0.2ex minus 0.2ex}%

```

`\parskip` is of type ‘skip’, its mean value only (*not the glue*) should be subtracted from `\topsep` and added to `\partopsep`, so convert `\parskip` to a ‘dimen’ using `\@tempdima`.

```

30.377 \tempdima=\parskip
30.378 \addtolength{\topsep}{-\@tempdima}%
30.379 \addtolength{\partopsep}{\@tempdima}%
30.380 \def\listFB#1#2{\listORI{#1}{\FB@listsettings #2}}%
30.381 \let\endlistFB\endlist

```

`\itemizeFB` Let's now consider French itemize lists. They differ from those provided by the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> classes:

`\itemizeORI`

`\bbl@frenchlabelitems`

`\bbl@nonfrenchlabelitems`

- vertical spacing between items, before and after the list, should be *null* with *no glue* added;
- the item labels of a first level list should be vertically aligned on the paragraph's first character (i.e. at `\parindent` from the left margin);
- the '•' is never used in French itemize-lists, a long dash '–' is preferred for all levels. The item label used in French is stored in `\FrenchLabelItem`, it defaults to '–' and can be changed using `\frenchbsetup{}` (see section 30.13).

```

30.382 \newcommand*{\FrenchLabelItem}{\textendash}
30.383 \newcommand*{\Frlabelitemi}{\FrenchLabelItem}
30.384 \newcommand*{\Frlabelitemii}{\FrenchLabelItem}
30.385 \newcommand*{\Frlabelitemiii}{\FrenchLabelItem}
30.386 \newcommand*{\Frlabelitemiv}{\FrenchLabelItem}

```

`\bbl@frenchlabelitems` saves current itemize labels and changes them to their value in French. This code should never be executed twice in a row, so we need a new flag that will be set and reset by `\bbl@nonfrenchlabelitems` and `\bbl@frenchlabelitems`.

```

30.387 \newif\iffB@enterFrench \FB@enterFrenchtrue
30.388 \def\bbl@frenchlabelitems{%
30.389   \iffB@enterFrench
30.390     \let\@ltiORI\labelitemi
30.391     \let\@ltiiORI\labelitemii
30.392     \let\@ltiiiORI\labelitemiii
30.393     \let\@ltivORI\labelitemiv
30.394     \let\labelitemi\Frlabelitemi
30.395     \let\labelitemii\Frlabelitemii
30.396     \let\labelitemiii\Frlabelitemiii
30.397     \let\labelitemiv\Frlabelitemiv
30.398     \FB@enterFrenchfalse
30.399   \fi
30.400 }
30.401 \let\itemizeORI\itemize
30.402 \let\enditemizeORI\enditemize
30.403 \let\enditemizeFB\enditemize
30.404 \def\itemizeFB{%
30.405   \ifnum \@itemdepth >\thr@@\toodeep\else
30.406     \advance\@itemdepth\@ne
30.407     \edef\@itemitem{labelitem\romannumeral\the\@itemdepth}%
30.408     \expandafter
30.409     \listORI
30.410     \csname\@itemitem\endcsname
30.411     {\settowidth{\labelwidth}{\csname\@itemitem\endcsname}}%
30.412     \setlength{\leftmargin}{\labelwidth}%
30.413     \addtolength{\leftmargin}{\labelsep}%
30.414     \ifnum\@listdepth=0
30.415       \setlength{\itemindent}{\parindent}%
30.416     \else
30.417       \addtolength{\leftmargin}{\parindent}%
30.418     \fi
30.419     \setlength{\itemsep}{\z@}%
30.420     \setlength{\parsep}{\z@}%
30.421     \setlength{\topsep}{\z@}%
30.422     \setlength{\partopsep}{\z@}%

```

`\parskip` is of type 'skip', its mean value only (*not the glue*) should be subtracted from `\topsep` and added to `\partopsep`, so convert `\parskip` to a 'dimen' using `\@tempdima`.

```

30.423     \@tempdima=\parskip
30.424     \addtolength{\topsep}{-\@tempdima}%
30.425     \addtolength{\partopsep}{\@tempdima}}%
30.426     \fi}

```

The user's changes in labelitems are saved when leaving French for further use when switching back to French. This code should never be executed twice in a row (toggle with `\bbl@frenchlabelitems`).

```

30.427 \def\bbl@nonfrenchlabelitems{%
30.428   \ifFB@enterFrench
30.429   \else
30.430     \let\Frlabelitemi\labelitemi
30.431     \let\Frlabelitemii\labelitemii
30.432     \let\Frlabelitemiii\labelitemiii
30.433     \let\Frlabelitemiv\labelitemiv
30.434     \let\labelitemi\@ltiORI
30.435     \let\labelitemii\@ltiiORI
30.436     \let\labelitemiii\@ltiiiORI
30.437     \let\labelitemiv\@ltivORI
30.438     \FB@enterFrenchtrue
30.439   \fi
30.440 }

```

### 30.9 French indentation of sections

`\bbl@frenchindent` In French the first paragraph of each section should be indented, this is another difference with US-English.  
`\bbl@nonfrenchindent`

```

30.441 \let\@aifORI\@afterindentfalse
30.442 \def\bbl@frenchindent{\let\@afterindentfalse\@afterindenttrue
30.443   \@afterindenttrue}
30.444 \def\bbl@nonfrenchindent{\let\@afterindentfalse\@aifORI
30.445   \@afterindentfalse}

```

### 30.10 Formatting footnotes

The `bigfoot` package deeply changes the way footnotes are handled. When `bigfoot` is loaded, we just warn the user that `frenchb` will drop the customisation of footnotes.

The layout of footnotes is controlled by two flags `\ifFBAutoSpaceFootnotes` and `\ifFBFrenchFootnotes` which are set by options of `\frenchbsetup{}` (see section 30.13). Notice that the layout of footnotes *does not depend* on the current language (just think of two footnotes on the same page looking different because one was called in a French part, the other one in English!).

When `\ifFBAutoSpaceFootnotes` is true, `\@footnotemark` (whose definition is saved at the `\begin{document}` in order to include any customisation that packages might have done) is redefined to add a thin space before the number or symbol calling a footnote (any space typed in is removed first). This has no effect on the layout of the footnote itself.

```

30.446 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{bigfoot}%
30.447   {\PackageWarning{frenchb.1df}%
30.448     {bigfoot package in use.\MessageBreak
30.449     frenchb will NOT customise footnotes;\MessageBreak
30.450     reported}}%
30.451   {\let\@footnotemarkORI\@footnotemark
30.452     \def\@footnotemarkFB{\leavevmode\unskip\unkern
30.453       \,\@footnotemarkORI}%
30.454     \ifFBAutoSpaceFootnotes
30.455       \let\@footnotemark\@footnotemarkFB
30.456     \fi}%
30.457   }

```



We then define `\@makefntextFB`, a variant of `\@makefntext` which is responsible for the layout of footnotes, to match the specifications of the French ‘Imprimerie Nationale’: footnotes will be indented by `\parindentFFN`, numbers (if any) typeset on the baseline (instead of `textsuperscripts`) and followed by a dot and an half quad space. Whenever symbols are used to number footnotes (as in `\thanks` for instance), we switch back to the standard layout (the French layout of footnotes is meant for footnotes numbered by arabic or roman digits).

The value of `\parindentFFN` will be redefined at the `\begin{document}`, as the maximum of `\parindent` and 1.5em *only if* unless it has been set in the preamble (the weird value 10in is just for testing whether `\parindentFFN` has been set or not).

```

30.458 \newdimen\parindentFFN
30.459 \parindentFFN=10in
30.460 \def\ftnISsymbol{\@fnsymbol\c@footnote}
30.461 \long\def\@makefntextFB#1{\ifx\thefootnote\ftnISsymbol
30.462     \@makefntextORI{#1}%
30.463     \else
30.464     \parindent=\parindentFFN
30.465     \rule\z@\footnotesep
30.466     \setbox\@tempboxa\hbox{\@thefnmark}%
30.467     \ifdim\wd\@tempboxa>\z@
30.468     \llap{\@thefnmark}.\kern.5em
30.469     \fi #1
30.470     \fi}%

```

We save the standard definition of `\@makefntext` at the `\begin{document}`, and then redefine `\@makefntext` according to the value of flag `\ifFBFrenchFootnotes` (true or false).

```

30.471 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{bigfoot}{}%
30.472     {\ifdim\parindentFFN<10in
30.473     \else
30.474     \parindentFFN=\parindent
30.475     \ifdim\parindentFFN<1.5em\parindentFFN=1.5em\fi
30.476     \fi
30.477     \let\@makefntextORI\@makefntext
30.478     \long\def\@makefntext#1{%
30.479     \ifFBFrenchFootnotes
30.480     \@makefntextFB{#1}%
30.481     \else
30.482     \@makefntextORI{#1}%
30.483     \fi}%
30.484     }%
30.485     }

```

For compatibility reasons, we provide definitions for the commands dealing with the layout of footnotes in frenchb version 1.6. `\frenchbsetup{}` (see in section 30.13) should be preferred for setting these options. `\StandardFootnotes` may still be used locally (in `minipages` for instance), that’s why the test `\ifFBFrenchFootnotes` is done inside `\@makefntext`.

```

30.486 \newcommand*{\AddThinSpaceBeforeFootnotes}{\FBAutoSpaceFootnotestru}
30.487 \newcommand*{\FrenchFootnotes}{\FBFrenchFootnotestru}
30.488 \newcommand*{\StandardFootnotes}{\FBFrenchFootnotesfalse}

```

## 30.11 Global layout

In multilingual documents, some typographic rules must depend on the current language (e.g., hyphenation, typesetting of numbers, spacing before double punctuation...), others should, IMHO, be kept global to the document: especially the layout of lists (see 30.8) and footnotes (see 30.10), and the indentation of the first paragraph of sections (see 30.9).

From version 2.0 on, two flags control the global layout, their values are chosen in `\frenchbsetup{}` (see section 30.13). The default behaviour of frenchb is to customise the layout (i.e. lists, indentation of the first paragraphs of sections) only when the current language is French. Unifying the layout can be done in two ways: frenchb will leave the standard layout provided by the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X class untouched in French when the option `StandardLayout` is made true in `\frenchbsetup{}` or frenchb will (try to) force the layout outside French to be the same as in French when the option `GlobalLayoutFrench` is made true in `\frenchbsetup{}`. Of course, the second option only works if the other languages do not alter the layout.

The former commands `\FrenchLayout` and `\StandardLayout` are kept for compatibility reasons but should no longer be used.

```

30.489 \newcommand*{\FrenchLayout}{\FBGlobalLayoutFrenchtrue
30.490 \PackageWarning{frenchb.ldf}%
30.491   {\protect\FrenchLayout\space is obsolete. Please use\MessageBreak
30.492   \protect\frenchbsetup{GlobalLayoutFrench} instead.}%
30.493 }
30.494 \newcommand*{\StandardLayout}{\FBStandardLayouttrue
30.495 \PackageWarning{frenchb.ldf}%
30.496   {\protect\StandardLayout\space is obsolete. Please use\MessageBreak
30.497   \protect\frenchbsetup{StandardLayout} instead.}%
30.498 }
30.499 \@onlypreamble\FrenchLayout
30.500 \@onlypreamble\StandardLayout

```

## 30.12 Dots...

`\FBtextellipsis` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>'s standard definition of `\dots` in text-mode is `\textellipsis` which includes a `\kern` at the end; this space is not wanted in some cases (before a closing brace for instance) and `\kern` breaks hyphenation of the next word. We define `\FBtextellipsis` for French (in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> only).

The `\if` construction in the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> definition of `\dots` doesn't allow the use of `xspace` (`xspace` is always followed by a `\fi`), so we use the AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X construction of `\dots`; this has to be done 'AtBeginDocument' not to be overwritten when `amsmath.sty` is loaded after `babel`.

LY1 has a ready made character for `\textellipsis`, it should be used in French too (pointed out by Bruno Voisin).

```

30.501 \DeclareTextSymbol{\FBtextellipsis}{LY1}{133}
30.502 \DeclareTextCommandDefault{\FBtextellipsis}{%
30.503   \kern\fontdimen3\font.\kern\fontdimen3\font.\xspace}

```

`\Mdots@` and `\Tdots@ORI` hold the definitions of `\dots` in Math and Text mode. They default to those of `amsmath-2.0`, and will revert to standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X definitions 'AtBeginDocument', if `amsmath` has not been loaded. `\Mdots@` doesn't change when switching from/to French, while `\Tdots@` is `\FBtextellipsis` in French and `\Tdots@ORI` otherwise.

```

30.504 \newcommand*{\Tdots@ORI}{\@xp\textellipsis}
30.505 \newcommand*{\Tdots@}{\Tdots@ORI}
30.506 \newcommand*{\Mdots@}{\@xp\mdots@}
30.507 \AtBeginDocument{\DeclareRobustCommand{\dots}{\relax
30.508   \csname\ifmmode M\else T\fi dots@\endcsname}%
30.509   \@ifundefined{@xp}{\let\@xp\relax}{}%
30.510   \@ifundefined{mdots@}{\let\Tdots@ORI\textellipsis
30.511   \let\Mdots@\mathellipsis}{}}
30.512 \def\bbl@frenchdots{\let\Tdots@\FBtextellipsis}
30.513 \def\bbl@nonfrenchdots{\let\Tdots@\Tdots@ORI}
30.514 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.515   \bbl@frenchdots}
30.516 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
30.517   \bbl@nonfrenchdots}

```

### 30.13 Setup options: keyval stuff

`\frenchbsetup` From version 2.0 on, all setup options are handled by *one* command `\frenchbsetup` using the keyval syntax.

We first define a collection of conditionals with their defaults (true or false).

```

30.518 \newif\iffBStandardLayout           \FBStandardLayoutfalse
30.519 \newif\iffBGlobalLayoutFrench      \FBGlobalLayoutFrenchfalse
30.520 \newif\iffBAutoSpacePunctuation    \FBAutoSpacePunctuationtrue
30.521 \newif\iffBThinColonSpace          \FBThinColonSpacefalse
30.522 \newif\iffBReduceListSpacing       \FBReduceListSpacingtrue
30.523 \newif\iffBCompactItemize          \FBCompactItemizetrue
30.524 \newif\iffBStandardItemLabels      \FBStandardItemLabelsfalse
30.525 \newif\iffBStandardLists           \FBStandardListsfalse
30.526 \newif\iffBIndentFirst             \FBIndentFirsttrue
30.527 \newif\iffBFrenchFootnotes        \FBFrenchFootnotetrue
30.528 \newif\iffBAutoSpaceFootnotes      \FBAutoSpaceFootnotetrue
30.529 \newif\iffBThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers \FBThinSpaceInFrenchNumbersfalse
30.530 \newif\iffBPartNameFull            \FBPartNameFulltrue
30.531 \newif\iffBShowOptions              \FBShowOptionsfalse

```

Let's now define the main configuration command `\frenchbsetup` which reads and sets the options which will be processed later (at `\begin{document}`). It can only be called in the preamble.

```

30.532 \newcommand*{\frenchbsetup}[1]{%
30.533   \setkeys{FB}{#1}%
30.534 }%
30.535 \@onlypreamble\frenchbsetup

```

`frenchb` being an option of `babel`, it cannot load a package (keyval) while `frenchb.ldr` is read, so we defer the loading of `keyval` and the options setup at the end of `babel`'s loading.

`StandardLayout` resets the layout in French to the standard layout defined par the  $\LaTeX$  class and packages loaded. It deals with lists, indentation of first paragraphs of sections and footnotes. Other keys, entered *after* `StandardLayout` in `\frenchbsetup`, can overrule some of the `StandardLayout` settings.

```

30.536 \AtEndOfPackage{%
30.537   \RequirePackage{keyval}%
30.538   \define@key{FB}{StandardLayout}[true]%
30.539             {\csname FBStandardLayout#1\endcsname
30.540              \iffBStandardLayout
30.541                \FBStandardListstrue
30.542                \FBIndentFirstfalse
30.543                \FBFrenchFootnotesfalse
30.544                \FBAutoSpaceFootnotesfalse
30.545                \fi}%
30.546   \define@key{FB}{GlobalLayoutFrench}[true]%
30.547             {\csname FBGlobalLayoutFrench#1\endcsname}%
30.548   \define@key{FB}{AutoSpacePunctuation}[true]%
30.549             {\csname FBAutoSpacePunctuation#1\endcsname}%
30.550   \define@key{FB}{ThinColonSpace}[true]%
30.551             {\csname FBThinColonSpace#1\endcsname}%
30.552   \define@key{FB}{ReduceListSpacing}[true]%
30.553             {\csname FBReduceListSpacing#1\endcsname}%
30.554   \define@key{FB}{CompactItemize}[true]%
30.555             {\csname FBCompactItemize#1\endcsname}%
30.556   \define@key{FB}{StandardItemLabels}[true]%
30.557             {\csname FBStandardItemLabels#1\endcsname}%
30.558   \define@key{FB}{ItemLabels}{%
30.559     \renewcommand*{\FrenchLabelItem}{#1}}%
30.560   \define@key{FB}{ItemLabeli}{%
30.561     \renewcommand*{\Frlabelitemi}{#1}}%
30.562   \define@key{FB}{ItemLabelii}{%

```

```

30.563     \renewcommand*{\Frlabelitemii}{#1}}%
30.564 \define@key{FB}{ItemLabeliii}{%
30.565     \renewcommand*{\Frlabelitemiii}{#1}}%
30.566 \define@key{FB}{ItemLabeliv}{%
30.567     \renewcommand*{\Frlabelitemiv}{#1}}%
30.568 \define@key{FB}{StandardLists}[false]%
30.569         {\csname FBStandardLayout#1\endcsname
30.570         \ifFBStandardLists
30.571             \FBReduceListSpacingfalse
30.572             \FBCompactItemizefalse
30.573             \FBStandardItemLabelstrue
30.574             \fi}%
30.575 \define@key{FB}{IndentFirst}[true]%
30.576         {\csname FBIndentFirst#1\endcsname}%
30.577 \define@key{FB}{FrenchFootnotes}[true]%
30.578         {\csname FBFrenchFootnotes#1\endcsname}%
30.579 \define@key{FB}{AutoSpaceFootnotes}[true]%
30.580         {\csname FBAutoSpaceFootnotes#1\endcsname}%
30.581 \define@key{FB}{ThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers}[true]%
30.582         {\csname FBThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers#1\endcsname}%
30.583 \define@key{FB}{PartNameFull}[true]%
30.584         {\csname FBPartNameFull#1\endcsname}%
30.585 \define@key{FB}{ShowOptions}[true]%
30.586         {\csname FBShowOptions#1\endcsname}%

```

Inputing French quotes as *single characters* when they are available on the keyboard (through a compose key for instance) is more comfortable than typing `\og` and `\fg`. The purpose of the following code is to map the French quote characters to `\og\ignorespaces` and `{\fg}` respectively when the current language is French, and to `\guillemotleft` and `\guillemotright` otherwise (think of German quotes); thus correct unbreakable spaces will be added automatically to French quotes. The quote characters typed in depend on the input encoding, it can be single-byte (latin1, latin9, applemac, ...) or multi-bytes (utf-8, utf8x). We first check whether XeTeX is used or not, if not the package `inputenc` has to be loaded before the `\begin{document}` with the proper coding option, so we check if `\DeclareInputText` is defined.

```

30.587 \define@key{FB}{og}{%
30.588     \newcommand*{\FB@og}{\iflanguage{french}%
30.589         {\FB@og\ignorespaces}{\guillemotleft}}%
30.590 \expandafter\ifx\csname XeTeXrevision\endcsname\relax
30.591     \AtBeginDocument{%
30.592         \@ifundefined{DeclareInputText}%
30.593             {\PackageWarning{frenchb.ldf}%
30.594                 {Option ‘og’ requires package inputenc.\MessageBreak}}%
30.595             }%
30.596         {\@ifundefined{uc@dclc}%

```

if `\uc@dclc` is undefined, utf8x is not loaded. . .

```

30.597             {\@ifundefined{DeclareUnicodeCharacter}%

```

if `\DeclareUnicodeCharacter` is undefined, utf8 is not loaded either, we assume 8-bit character input encoding. Package `MULEenc.sty` (from CJK) defines `\mule@def` to map characters to control sequences.

```

30.598                 {\@tempcnta‘#1\relax
30.599                 \@ifundefined{mule@def}%
30.600                     {\DeclareInputText{\the\@tempcnta}{\FB@og}}%
30.601                     {\mule@def{11}{\FB@og}}}%
30.602                 }%

```

utf8 loaded, use `\DeclareUnicodeCharacter`,

```

30.603                 {\DeclareUnicodeCharacter{00AB}{\FB@og}}%
30.604             }%

```

```

utf8x loaded, use \uc@dclc,
30.605         {\uc@dclc{171}{default}}{\FB@@og}}%
30.606     }%
30.607 }%

```

XeTeX in use, the following trick for defining the active quote character is borrowed from `inputenc.dtx`.

```

30.608     \else
30.609         \catcode'#1=\active
30.610     \bgroup
30.611         \uccode'\~'#1%
30.612         \uppercase{%
30.613     \egroup
30.614     \def~%
30.615     }{\FB@@og}}%
30.616     \fi
30.617 }%

```

Same code for the closing quote.

```

30.618     \define@key{FB}{fg}{%
30.619         \newcommand*{\FB@fg}{\iflanguage{french}%
30.620             {\FB@fg}{\guillemotright}}}%
30.621     \expandafter\ifx\csname XeTeXrevision\endcsname\relax
30.622     \AtBeginDocument{%
30.623         \@ifundefined{DeclareInputText}%
30.624             {\PackageWarning{frenchb.ldf}%
30.625                 {Option 'fg' requires package inputenc.\MessageBreak}}%
30.626             }%
30.627         {\@ifundefined{uc@dclc}%
30.628             {\@ifundefined{DeclareUnicodeCharacter}%
30.629                 {\@tempcnta'#1\relax
30.630                 \@ifundefined{mule@def}%
30.631                     {\DeclareInputText{\the\@tempcnta}{\FB@fg}}}%
30.632                     {\mule@def{27}{\FB@fg}}}%
30.633                 }%
30.634                 {\DeclareUnicodeCharacter{00BB}{\FB@fg}}}%
30.635             }%
30.636             {\uc@dclc{187}{default}}{\FB@fg}}}%
30.637         }%
30.638     }%
30.639     \else
30.640         \catcode'#1=\active
30.641     \bgroup
30.642         \uccode'\~'#1%
30.643         \uppercase{%
30.644     \egroup
30.645     \def~%
30.646     }{\FB@@fg}}%
30.647     \fi
30.648 }%
30.649 }

```

`\FBprocess@options` processes the options, it is called *once* at `\begin{document}`.

```

30.650 \newcommand*{\FBprocess@options}{%

```

Nothing has to be done here for `StandardLayout` (the involved flags have already been set in `\frenchbsetup{}`).

`AutoSpacePunctuation` adds an unbreakable space (in French only) before the four active characters (`;;!?`) even if none has been typed before them.

```

30.651     \ifFBAutoSpacePunctuation
30.652         \AutoSpaceBeforeFDP
30.653     \else
30.654         \NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP
30.655     \fi

```

`ThinColonSpace` changes the normal unbreakable space typeset in French before ‘:’ to a thin space.

```
30.656 \iffBThinColonSpace\renewcommand*{\Fcolonspace}{\thinspace}\fi
```

The next three options deal with the layout of lists in French.

`ReduceListSpacing` reduces the vertical spaces between list items in French (done by changing `\list` to `\listFB`). When `GlobalLayoutFrench` is true the same is done outside French.

```
30.657 \iffBReduceListSpacing
30.658   \addto\extrasfrench{\let\list\listFB
30.659                       \let\endlist\endlistFB}%
30.660   \addto\noextrasfrench{\iffBGlobalLayoutFrench
30.661                               \let\list\listFB
30.662                               \let\endlist\endlistFB
30.663                               \else
30.664                               \let\list\listORI
30.665                               \let\endlist\endlistORI
30.666                               \fi}%
30.667 \else
30.668   \addto\extrasfrench{\let\list\listORI
30.669                       \let\endlist\endlistORI}%
30.670   \addto\noextrasfrench{\let\list\listORI
30.671                               \let\endlist\endlistORI}%
30.672 \fi
```

`CompactItemize` suppresses the vertical spacing between list items in French (done by changing `\itemize` to `\itemizeFB`). When `GlobalLayoutFrench` is true the same is done outside French.

```
30.673 \iffBCompactItemize
30.674   \addto\extrasfrench{\let\itemize\itemizeFB
30.675                       \let\enditemize\enditemizeFB}%
30.676   \addto\noextrasfrench{\iffBGlobalLayoutFrench
30.677                               \let\itemize\itemizeFB
30.678                               \let\enditemize\enditemizeFB
30.679                               \else
30.680                               \let\itemize\itemizeORI
30.681                               \let\enditemize\enditemizeORI
30.682                               \fi}%
30.683 \else
30.684   \addto\extrasfrench{\let\itemize\itemizeORI
30.685                       \let\enditemize\enditemizeORI}%
30.686   \addto\noextrasfrench{\let\itemize\itemizeORI
30.687                               \let\enditemize\enditemizeORI}%
30.688 \fi
```

`StandardItemLabels` resets labelitems in French to their standard values set by the `LATEX` class and packages loaded. When `GlobalLayoutFrench` is true labelitems are identical inside and outside French.

```
30.689 \iffBStandardItemLabels
30.690   \addto\extrasfrench{\bbl@nonfrenchlabelitems}%
30.691   \addto\noextrasfrench{\bbl@nonfrenchlabelitems}%
30.692 \else
30.693   \addto\extrasfrench{\bbl@frenchlabelitems}%
30.694   \addto\noextrasfrench{\iffBGlobalLayoutFrench
30.695                               \bbl@frenchlabelitems
30.696                               \else
30.697                               \bbl@nonfrenchlabelitems
30.698                               \fi}%
30.699 \fi
```

`IndentFirst` forces the first paragraphs of sections to be indented just like the other ones in French. When `GlobalLayoutFrench` is true the same is done outside French.

```

30.700 \ifFBIndentFirst
30.701   \addto\extrasfrench{\bbl@frenchindent}%
30.702   \addto\noextrasfrench{\ifFBGlobalLayoutFrench
30.703     \bbl@frenchindent
30.704     \else
30.705     \bbl@nonfrenchindent
30.706     \fi}%
30.707 \else
30.708   \addto\extrasfrench{\bbl@nonfrenchindent}%
30.709   \addto\noextrasfrench{\bbl@nonfrenchindent}%
30.710 \fi

```

The layout of footnotes is handled at the `\begin{document}` depending on the values of flags `FrenchFootnotes` and `AutoSpaceFootnotes` (see section 30.10), nothing has to be done here for footnotes.

When true, `ThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers` redefines `numprint.sty`'s `\npstylefrench` command to set `\npthousandsep` to `\,` (thinspace) instead of `~` (default). This option has no effect if package `numprint.sty` is not loaded with `'autolanguage'`. As old versions of `numprint.sty` did not define `\npstylefrench`, we have to provide this command.

```

30.711 \@ifpackageloaded{numprint}%
30.712   {\ifnprt@autolanguage
30.713     \providecommand*\npstylefrench{}}%
30.714     \ifFBThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers
30.715       \renewcommand*\npstylefrench{%
30.716         \npthousandsep{\,}%
30.717         \npdecimalsign{,}%
30.718         \npproductsign{\cdot}%
30.719         \npunitseparator{\,}%
30.720         \npdegreeseperator{}%
30.721         \nppercentseparator{\nprt@unitsep}%
30.722         }%
30.723     \else
30.724       \renewcommand*\npstylefrench{%
30.725         \npthousandsep{~}%
30.726         \npdecimalsign{,}%
30.727         \npproductsign{\cdot}%
30.728         \npunitseparator{\,}%
30.729         \npdegreeseperator{}%
30.730         \nppercentseparator{\nprt@unitsep}%
30.731         }%
30.732     \fi
30.733     \npaddtolanguage{french}{french}%
30.734 \fi}{}%

```

`PartNameFull`: if false, redefine `\partname`.

```

30.735 \ifFBPartNameFull
30.736 \else\addto\captionsfrench{\def\partname{Partie}}\fi

```

`ShowOptions`: if true, print the list of all options to the `.log` file.

```

30.737 \ifBShowOptions
30.738   \GenericWarning{* }{%
30.739     * **** List of possible options for frenchb ****\MessageBreak
30.740     [Default values between brackets]\MessageBreak
30.741     ShowOptions=true [false]\MessageBreak
30.742     StandardLayout=true [false]\MessageBreak
30.743     GlobalLayoutFrench=true [false]\MessageBreak
30.744     AutoSpacePunctuation=false [true]\MessageBreak
30.745     ThinColonSpace=true [false]\MessageBreak
30.746     StandardLists=true [false]\MessageBreak
30.747     ReduceListSpacing=false [true]\MessageBreak
30.748     CompactItemize=false [true]\MessageBreak
30.749     StandardItemLabels=true [false]\MessageBreak

```

```

30.750 ItemLabels=\textendash, \textbullet,
30.751 \protect\ding{43},... [\textendash]\MessageBreak
30.752 ItemLabeli=\textendash, \textbullet,
30.753 \protect\ding{43},... [\textendash]\MessageBreak
30.754 ItemLabelii=\textendash, \textbullet,
30.755 \protect\ding{43},... [\textendash]\MessageBreak
30.756 ItemLabeliii=\textendash, \textbullet,
30.757 \protect\ding{43},... [\textendash]\MessageBreak
30.758 ItemLabeliv=\textendash, \textbullet,
30.759 \protect\ding{43},... [\textendash]\MessageBreak
30.760 IndentFirst=false [true]\MessageBreak
30.761 FrenchFootnotes=false [true]\MessageBreak
30.762 AutoSpaceFootnotes=false [true]\MessageBreak
30.763 ThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers=true [false]\MessageBreak
30.764 PartNameFull=false [true]\MessageBreak
30.765 og= <left quote character>, fg= <right quote character>
30.766 \MessageBreak
30.767 *****
30.768 \MessageBreak\protect\frenchbsetup{ShowOptions}}
30.769 \fi
30.770 }

```

At `\begin{document}` we save again the definitions of the ‘list’ and ‘itemize’ environments and the values of `labelitems` so that all changes made in the preamble are taken into account in languages other than French and in French with the `StandardLayout` option. We also have to provide an `\xspace` command in case the `xspace.sty` package is not loaded.

```

30.771 \AtBeginDocument{%
30.772 \let\listORI\list
30.773 \let\endlistORI\endlist
30.774 \let\itemizeORI\itemize
30.775 \let\enditemizeORI\enditemize
30.776 \let\@ltiORI\labelitemi
30.777 \let\@ltiiORI\labelitemii
30.778 \let\@ltiiiORI\labelitemiii
30.779 \let\@ltivORI\labelitemiv
30.780 \providecommand*\xspace{\relax}%

```

It is time to process the options set with `\frenchboptions{}`. Then execute either `\extrasfrench` and `\captionsfrench` or `\noextrasfrench` according to the current language at the `\begin{document}` (these three commands are updated by `\FBprocess@options`).

```

30.781 \FBprocess@options
30.782 \iflanguage{french}{\extrasfrench\captionsfrench}{\noextrasfrench}%

```

Some warnings are issued when output font encodings are not properly set. With XeLaTeX, `fontspec.sty` and `xunicode.sty` should be loaded; with (pdf)LaTeX, a warning is issued when OT1 encoding is in use at the `\begin{document}`. Mind that `\encodingdefault` is defined as ‘long’, defining `\FBOTone` with `\newcommand*` would fail!

```

30.783 \expandafter\ifx\cscname XeTeXrevision\endcsname\relax
30.784 \begingroup \newcommand{\FBOTone}{OT1}%
30.785 \ifx\encodingdefault\FBOTone
30.786 \PackageWarning{frenchb.ldf}%
30.787 {OT1 encoding should not be used for French.
30.788 \MessageBreak
30.789 Add \protect\usepackage[T1]{fontenc} to the
30.790 preamble\MessageBreak of your document,}
30.791 \fi
30.792 \endgroup
30.793 \else
30.794 \@ifundefined{DeclareUTFcharacter}%
30.795 {\PackageWarning{frenchb.ldf}%

```



```

30.796      {Add \protect\usepackage{fontspec} *and*\MessageBreak
30.797      \protect\usepackage{xunicode} to the preamble\MessageBreak
30.798      of your document,}}%
30.799      {}%
30.800      \fi
30.801 }

```

### 30.14 Clean up and exit

Load `frenchb.cfg` (should do nothing, just for compatibility).

```
30.802 \loadlocalcfg{frenchb}
```

Final cleaning. The macro `\ldf@quit` takes care for setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value. The config file searched for has to be `'frenchb.cfg'`, and `\CurrentOption` has been set to `'french'`, so `\ldf@finish\CurrentOption` cannot be used: we first load `'frenchb.cfg'`, then call `\ldf@quit\CurrentOption`.

```

30.803 \FBclean@on@exit
30.804 \ldf@quit\CurrentOption

```

## 31 The Italian language

The file `italian.dtx`<sup>27</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Italian language.

The features of this language definition file are the following:

1. The Italian hyphenation is invoked, provided that file `ithyph.tex` was loaded when the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>Ε</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> format was built; in case it was not, read the information coming with your distribution of the T<sub>Ε</sub>X software, and the `babel` documentation.
2. The language dependent fixed words to be inserted by such commands as `\chapter`, `\caption`, `\tableofcontents`, etc. are redefined in accordance with the Italian typographical practice.
3. Since Italian can be easily hyphenated and Italian practice allows to break a word before the last two letters, hyphenation parameters have been set accordingly, but a very high demerit value has been set in order to avoid word breaks in the penultimate line of a paragraph. Specifically the `\clubpenalty`, and the `\widowpenalty` are set to rather high values and `\finalhyphdemerits` is set to such a high value that hyphenation is prohibited between the last two lines of a paragraph. In order to make it consistent, also `@clubpenalty` is set to the same value; actually the latter value is the reset value after every sectioning command, so that after the first section, `\clubpenalty` is reset to the low default value. Thanks to Enrico Gregorio for spotting this serious bug.
4. Some language specific shortcuts have been defined so as to allow etymological hyphenation, specifically " inserts a break point in any word boundary that the typesetter chooses, provided it is not followed by an accented letter (very unlikely in Italian, where compulsory accents fall only on the last and ending vowel of a word, but may take place with compound words that include foreign roots), and "| when the desired break point falls before an accented letter.
5. The shortcut "" introduces the raised (English) opening double quotes; this shortcut proves its usefulness when one reminds that the Italian keyboard misses the backtick key, and the backtick on a Windows based platform may be obtained only by pressing the `Alt` key while inputting the numerical code 0096; very, very annoying!
6. The shortcuts "< and "> insert the French guillemots, sometimes used in Italian typography; with the T1 font encoding the ligatures << and >> should insert such signs directly, but not all the virtual fonts that claim to follow the T1 font encoding actually contain the guillemots; with the OT1 encoding the guillemots are not available and must be faked in some way. By using the "< and "> shortcuts (even with the T1 encoding) the necessary tests are performed and in case the suitable glyphs are taken from other fonts normally available with any good, modern L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>Ε</sub>X distribution.
7. Three new specific commands `\unit`, `\ped`, and `\ap` are introduced so as to enable the correct composition of technical mathematics according to the ISO 31/XI recommendations. `\unit` does not get redefined if the `babel` package is loaded *after* the package `units.sty` whose homonymous command plays a different role and follows a different syntax.

---

<sup>27</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.2t and was last revised on 2008/03/14. The original author is Maurizio Codogno, ([mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it](mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)). It has been largely revised by Johannes Braams and Claudio Beccari

For this language a limited number of shortcuts has been defined, table 6, some of which are used to overcome certain limitations of the Italian keyboard; in section 31.3 there are other comments and hints in order to overcome some other keyboard limitations.

"	inserts a compound word mark where hyphenation is legal; it allows etymological hyphenation which is recommended for technical terms, chemical names and the like; it does not work if the next character is represented with a control sequence or is an accented character.
"	the same as the above without the limitation on characters represented with control sequences or accented ones.
""	inserts open quotes “.
"<	inserts open guillemots.
">	inserts closed guillemots.
"/	equivalent to <code>\slash</code>

Table 6: Shortcuts for the Italian language

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
31.1 (*code)
31.2 \LdfInit{italian}{captionsitalian}%
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `italian` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@italian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
31.3 \ifx\l@italian\undefined
31.4   \nopatterns{Italian}%
31.5   \adddialect\l@italian0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Italian language.

`\captionsitalian` The macro `\captionsitalian` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
31.6 \addto\captionsitalian{%
31.7   \def\prefacename{Prefazione}%
31.8   \def\refname{Riferimenti bibliografici}%
31.9   \def\abstractname{Sommario}%
31.10  \def\bibname{Bibliografia}%
31.11  \def\chaptername{Capitolo}%
31.12  \def\appendixname{Appendice}%
31.13  \def\contentsname{Indice}%
31.14  \def\listfigurename{Elenco delle figure}%
31.15  \def\listtablename{Elenco delle tabelle}%
31.16  \def\indexname{Indice analitico}%
31.17  \def\figurename{Figura}%
31.18  \def\tablename{Tabella}%
31.19  \def\partname{Parte}%
31.20  \def\enclname{Allegati}%
31.21  \def\ccname{e`p.~c.}%
31.22  \def\headtoname{Per}%
31.23  \def\pagename{Pag.}%    % in Italian the abbreviation is preferred
31.24  \def\seename{vedi}%
31.25  \def\alsoname{vedi anche}%
31.26  \def\proofname{Dimostrazione}%
31.27  \def\glossaryname{Glossario}%
31.28  }%
```

`\dateitalian` The macro `\dateitalian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Italian dates.

```
31.29 \def\dateitalian{%
31.30   \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
31.31     gennaio\or febbraio\or marzo\or aprile\or maggio\or giugno\or
31.32     luglio\or agosto\or settembre\or ottobre\or novembre\or
31.33     dicembre\fi\space \number\year}}%
```

`\italianhyphenmins` The italian hyphenation patterns can be used with both `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
31.34 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
```

`\extrasitalian` Lower the chance that clubs or widows occur.

```
\noextrasitalian 31.35 \addto\extrasitalian{%
31.36   \babel@savevariable\clubpenalty
31.37   \babel@savevariable\widowpenalty
31.38   \babel@savevariable@\clubpenalty
31.39   \clubpenalty3000\widowpenalty3000@\clubpenalty\clubpenalty}%
```

Never ever break a word between the last two lines of a paragraph in italian texts.

```
31.40 \addto\extrasitalian{%
31.41   \babel@savevariable\finalhyphendemerits
31.42   \finalhyphendemerits50000000}%
```

In order to enable the hyphenation of words such as “nell’altezza” we give the ‘ ’ a non-zero lower case code. When we do that  $\text{\TeX}$  finds the following hyphenation points nel-1’al-tez-za instead of none.

```
31.43 \addto\extrasitalian{%
31.44   \lccode‘ ’=‘ ’}%
31.45 \addto\noextrasitalian{%
31.46   \lccode‘ ’=0}%
```

## 31.1 Support for etymological hyphenation

In his article on Italian hyphenation [1] Beccari pointed out that the Italian language gets hyphenated on a phonetic basis, although etymological hyphenation is allowed; this is in contrast with what happens in Latin, for example, where etymological hyphenation is always used. Since the patterns for both languages would become too complicated in order to cope with etymological hyphenation, in his paper Beccari proposed the definition of an active character ‘\_’ such that it could insert a “soft” discretionary hyphen at the compound word boundary. For several reasons that idea and the specific active character proved to be unpractical and was abandoned.

This problem is so important with the majority of the European languages, that `babel` from the very beginning developed the tradition of making the “ character active so as to perform several actions that turned useful with every language. One of these actions consisted in defining the shortcut “|” that was extensively used in German and in many other languages in order to insert a discretionary hyphen such that hyphenation would not be precluded in the rest of the word as it happens with the standard  $\text{\TeX}$  command `\-`.

Meanwhile the `ec` fonts with the double Cork encoding (thus formerly called the `dc` fonts) have become more or less standard and are widely used by virtually all Europeans that write languages with many special national characters; by so doing they avoid the use of the `\accent` primitive which would be required with the standard `cm` fonts; with the latter fonts the primitive command `\accent` is such that hyphenation becomes almost impossible, in any case strongly impeached.

The `ec` fonts contain a special character, named “compound word mark”, that occupies position 23 in the font scheme and may be input with the sequence `^^W`.

Up to now, apparently, this special character has never been used in a practical way for the typesetting of languages rich of compound words; also it has never been inserted in the hyphenation pattern files of any language. Beccari modified his pattern file `ithyph.tex v4.8b` for Italian so as to contain five new patterns that involve  $\sim$ W, and he tried to give the `babel` active character " a new shortcut definition, so as to allow the insertion of the "compound word mark" in the proper place within any word where two semantic fragments join up. With such facility for marking the compound word boundaries, etymological hyphenation becomes possible even if the patterns know nothing about etymology (but the typesetter hopefully does!). In Italian such etymological hyphenation is desirable with technical terms, chemical names, and the like.

Even this solution proved to be inconvenient on certain UN\*X platforms, so Beccari resorted to another approach that uses the `babel` active character " and relies on the category code of the character that follows ".

```
31.47 \initiate@active@char{"}%
31.48 \addto\extrasitalian{\bbl@activate{"}\languageshorthands{italian}}%
```

`\it@cwm` The active character " is now defined for language `italian` so as to perform different actions in math mode compared to text mode; specifically in math mode a double quote is inserted so as to produce a double prime sign, while in text mode the temporary macro `\it@next` is defined so as to defer any further action until the next token category code has been tested.

```
31.49 \declare@shorthand{italian}{"}{%
31.50 \ifmmode
31.51   \def\it@next{''}%
31.52 \else
31.53   \def\it@next{\futurelet\it@temp\it@cwm}%
31.54 \fi
31.55 \it@next
31.56 }%
```

`\it@cwm` The `\it@next` service control sequence is such that upon its execution a temporary variable `\it@temp` is made equivalent to the next token in the input list without actually removing it. Such temporary token is then tested by the macro `\it@cwm` and if it is found to be a letter token, then it introduces a compound word separator control sequence `\it@allowhyphens` whose expansion introduces a discretionary hyphen and an unbreakable space; in case the token is not a letter, then it is tested against `|12`: if so a compound word separator is inserted and the `|` token is removed, otherwise another test is performed so as to see if another double quote sign follows: in this case a double open quote mark is inserted, otherwise two other tests are performed so as to see if guillemets have to be inserted, otherwise nothing is done. The double quote shortcut for inserting a double open quote sign is useful for people who are inputting Italian text by means of an Italian keyboard that unfortunately misses the grave or backtick key. By this shortcut " becomes equivalent to ‘ for inserting raised open high double quotes.

```
31.57 \def\it@@cwm{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{-}\nobreak\hskip\z@skip}%
31.58 \def\it@@ocap#1{\it@ocap}\def\it@@ccap#1{\it@ccap}%
31.59 \DeclareRobustCommand*\it@cwm{\let\it@next\relax
31.60 \ifcat\noexpand\it@temp a%
31.61   \def\it@@next{\it@@cwm}%
31.62 \else
31.63   \if\noexpand\it@temp \string|%
31.64     \def\it@@next{\it@@cwm@gobble}%
31.65   \else
31.66     \if\noexpand\it@temp \string<%
31.67       \def\it@@next{\it@@ocap}%
31.68     \else
31.69       \if\noexpand\it@temp \string>%
31.70         \def\it@@next{\it@@ccap}%

```

```

31.71         \else
31.72             \if\noexpand\it@temp\string/%
31.73             \def\it@@next{\slash\@gobble}%
31.74         \else
31.75             \ifx\it@temp"%
31.76             \def\it@@next{'\@gobble}%
31.77         \fi
31.78     \fi
31.79 \fi
31.80 \fi
31.81 \fi
31.82 \fi
31.83 \it@@next}%

```

By this definition of " if one types macro"istruzione the possible break points become ma-cro-istru-zio-ne, while without the " mark they would be ma-croi-struzio-ne, according to the phonetic rules such that the macro prefix is not taken as a unit. A chemical name such as des"clor"fenir"amina"cloridrato is breakable as des-clor-fe-nir-ami-na-clo-ri-dra-to instead of de-sclor-fe-ni-ra-mi-na-...

In other language description files a shortcut is defined so as to allow a break point without actually inserting any hyphen sign; examples are given such as entrada/salida; actually if one wants to allow a breakpoint after the slash, it is much clearer to type \slash instead of / and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X does everything by itself; here the shortcut "/" was introduced to stand for \slash so that one can type input"/output and allow a line break after the slash. This shortcut works only for the slash, since in Italian such constructs are extremely rare.

Attention: the expansion of " takes place before the actual expansion of OT1 or T1 accented sequences such as \{a}; therefore this etymological hyphenation facility works as it should only when the semantic word fragments *do not start* with an accented letter; this in Italian is always avoidable, because compulsory accents fall only on the last vowel, but it may be necessary to mark a compound word where one or more components come from a foreign language and contain diacritical marks according to the spelling rules of that language. In this case the special shorthand "| may be used that performs exactly as " normally does, except that the | sign is removed from the token input list: kilo"|\o}rsted gets hyphenated as ki-lo-ör-sted.

## 31.2 Facilities required by the ISO 31/XI regulations

The ISO 31/XI regulations require that units of measure are typeset in upright font in any circumstance, math or text, and that in text mode they are separated from the numerical indication of the measure with an unbreakable (thin) space. The command \unit that was defined for achieving this goal happened to conflict with the homonymous command defined by the package `units.sty`; we therefore need to test if that package has already been loaded so as to avoid conflicts; we assume that if the user loads that package, s/he wants to use that package facilities and command syntax.

The same regulations require also that super and subscripts (apices and pedices) are in upright font, *not in math italics*, when they represent "adjectives" or appositions to mathematical or physical variables that do not represent countable or measurable entities such as, for example,  $V_{\max}$  or  $V_{\text{rms}}$  for a maximum or a root mean square voltage, compared to  $V_i$  or  $V_T$  as the  $i$ -th voltage in a set, or a voltage that depends on the thermodynamic temperature  $T$ . See [2] for a complete description of the ISO regulations in connection with typesetting.

More rarely it happens to use superscripts that are not mathematical variables, such as the notation  $\mathbf{A}^T$  to denote the transpose of matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ ; text superscripts are useful also as ordinals or in old fashioned abbreviations in text mode; for example the feminine ordinal 1<sup>a</sup> or the old fashioned obsolete abbreviation F<sup>lli</sup> for Fratelli

in company names (compare with “Bros.” for brothers in American English); text subscripts are mostly used in logos.

```

\unit First we define the new (internal) commands \bbl@unit, \bbl@ap, and \bbl@ped
  \ap as robust ones.
\ped 31.84 \@ifpackageloaded{units}{-}{%
31.85   \DeclareRobustCommand*\bbl@unit}[1]{%
31.86     \textormath{\, \mbox{#1}}{\, \mathrm{#1}}}%
31.87   }%
31.88 \DeclareRobustCommand*\bbl@ap}[1]{%
31.89   \textormath{\textsuperscript{#1}}{\mathrm{#1}}}%
31.90 \DeclareRobustCommand*\bbl@ped}[1]{%
31.91   \textormath{\$_{\mbox{\fontsize\sf@size\z@
31.92     \selectfont#1}}$}{\mathrm{#1}}}%

Then we can use \let to define the user level commands, but in case the macros
already have a different meaning before entering in Italian mode typesetting, we
first memorize their meaning so as to restore them on exit.

31.93 \@ifpackageloaded{units}{-}{%
31.94   \addto\extrasitalian{%
31.95     \babel@save\unit\let\unit\bbl@unit}%
31.96   }%
31.97 \addto\extrasitalian{%
31.98   \babel@save\ap\let\ap\bbl@ap
31.99   \babel@save\ped\let\ped\bbl@ped
31.100  }%

```

### 31.3 Accents

Most of the other language description files introduce a number of shortcuts for inserting accents and other language specific diacritical marks in a more comfortable way compared with the lengthy standard T<sub>E</sub>X conventions. When an Italian keyboard is being used on a Windows based platform, it exhibits such limitations that up to now no convenient shortcuts have been developed; the reason lies in the fact that the Italian keyboard lacks the grave accent (also known as “backtick”), which is compulsory on all accented vowels except the ‘e’, but, on the opposite, it carries the keys with all the accented lowercase vowels; the keyboard lacks also the tie ~ (tilde) key, while the curly braces require pressing three keys simultaneously.

The best solution Italians have found so far is to use a smart editor that accepts shortcut definitions such that, for example, by striking “( one gets directly { on the screen and the same sign is saved into the .tex file; the same smart editor should be capable of translating the accented characters into the standard T<sub>E</sub>X sequences when writing a file to disk (for the sake of file portability), and to transform the standard T<sub>E</sub>X sequences into the corresponding signs when loading a .tex file from disk to memory. Such smart editors do exist and can be downloaded from the CTAN archives.

For what concerns the missing backtick key, which is used also for inputting the open quotes, it must be noticed that the shortcut “” described above completely solves the problem for *double* raised open quotes; according to the traditions of particular publishing houses, since there are no compulsory regulations on the matter, the French guillemets may be used; in this case the T1 font encoding solves the problem by means of its built in ligatures << and >>. But...

#### 31.4 *Caporali* or French double quotes

Although the T1 font encoding ligatures solve the problem, there are some circumstances where even the T1 font encoding cannot be used, either because the author/typesetter wants to use the OT1 encoding, or because s/he uses a font set that does not comply completely with the T1 font encoding; some virtual fonts,

for example, are supposed to implement the double Cork font encoding but actually miss some glyphs; one such virtual font set is given by the `ae` virtual fonts, because they are supposed to implement such double font encoding simply using the `cm` fonts, of which the type 1 PostScript version exists and is freely available. Since guillemets (in Italian *caporali*) do not exist in any `cm` latin font, their glyphs must be substituted with something else that approaches them.

Since in French typesetting guillemets are compulsory, the French language definition file resorts to a clever font substitution; such file exploits the  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  font selection machinery so as to get the guillemets from the Cyrillic fonts, because it suffices to locally change the default encoding. There are several sets of Cyrillic fonts, but the ones that obey the OT2 font encoding are generally distributed with all recent implementations of the  $\TeX$  software; they are part of the American Mathematical Society fonts and come both as METAFONT source files and Type 1 PostScript `.pfb` files. The availability of such fonts should be guaranteed by the presence of the `OT2cmr.fd` font description file. Actually the presence of this file does not guarantee the completeness of your  $\TeX$  implementation; should  $\LaTeX$  complain about a missing Cyrillic `.tfm` file (that kind of file that contains the font metric parameters) and/or about missing Cyrillic (`.mf`) files, then your  $\TeX$  system is *incomplete* and you should download such fonts from the CTAN archives. Temporarily you may issue the command `\LtxSymbCaporali` so as to approximate the missing glyphs with the  $\LaTeX$  symbol fonts. In some case warning messages are issued so as to inform the typesetter about the necessity of resorting to some *poor man* solution.

In spite of these alternate fonts, we must avoid invoking unusual fonts if the available encoding allows to use built in `caporali`. As far as I know (CB) the only T1-encoded font families that miss the guillemets are the AE ones; we therefore first test if the default encoding is the T1 one and in this case if the AE families are the default ones; in order for this to work properly it is necessary to load these optional packages *before* `babel`. If the T1 encoding is not the default one when the Italian language is specified, then some substitutions must be done.

```

\LtxSymbCaporali We define some macros for substituting the default guillemets; first the emulation
                  by means of the  $\LaTeX$  symbols; each one of these macro sets actually redefines the
\it@ocap          control sequences \it@ocap and \it@ccap that are the ones effectively activated
\it@ccap          by the shortcuts "<" and ">".

31.101 \def\LtxSymbCaporali{%
31.102     \DeclareRobustCommand*{\it@ocap}{\mbox{%
31.103         \fontencoding{U}\fontfamily{lasy}\selectfont(\kern-0.20em){}%
31.104         \ignorespaces}%
31.105     \DeclareRobustCommand*{\it@ccap}{\ifdim\lastskip>\z@ \unskip\fi
31.106         \mbox{%
31.107             \fontencoding{U}\fontfamily{lasy}\selectfont)\kern-0.20em)}}%
31.108 }%

```

Then the substitution with any specific font that contains such glyphs; it might be the CBgreek fonts, the Cyrillic one, the super-cm ones, the `lm` ones, or any other the user might prefer (the code is adapted from the one that appears in the `frenchb.ld` file; thanks to Daniel Flipo). By default if the user did not select the T1 encoding, the existence of the CBgreek fonts is tested; if they exist the guillemets are taken from this font, and since its families are a superset of the default CM ones and they apply also to typeset slides with the standard class `slides`. If the CBgreek fonts are not found, then the existence of the Cyrillic ones is tested, although this choice is not suited for typesetting slides; otherwise the poor man solution of the  $\LaTeX$  special symbols is used. In any case the user can force the use of the Cyrillic guillemets substitution by issuing the declaration `\CyrillicCaporali` just before the `\begin{document}` statement; in alternative the user can specify with

```

\CaporaliFrom{<encoding>}{<family>}{<opening number>}{<closing number>}

```



the encoding and family of the font s/he prefers, and the slot numbers of the opening and closing guillemets respectively. For example if the T1-encoded Latin Modern fonts are desired the specific command should be

```
\CaporaliFrom{T1}{lmr}{19}{20}
```

These user choices might be necessary for assuring the correct typesetting with fonts that contain the required glyphs and are available also in PostScript form so as to use them directly with pdf<sub>l</sub>atex, for example.

```
31.109 \def\CaporaliFrom#1#2#3#4{%
31.110   \DeclareFontEncoding{#1}{-}{-}%
31.111   \DeclareTextCommand{\it@ocap}{T1}{%
31.112     {\fontencoding{#1}\fontfamily{#2}\selectfont\char#3\ignorespaces}}%
31.113   \DeclareTextCommand{\it@ccap}{T1}{\ifdim\lastskip>\z@ \unskip\fi%
31.114     {\fontencoding{#1}\fontfamily{#2}\selectfont\char#4}}%
31.115   \DeclareTextCommand{\it@ocap}{OT1}{%
31.116     {\fontencoding{#1}\fontfamily{#2}\selectfont\char#3\ignorespaces}}%
31.117   \DeclareTextCommand{\it@ccap}{OT1}{\ifdim\lastskip>\z@ \unskip\fi%
31.118     {\fontencoding{#1}\fontfamily{#2}\selectfont\char#4}}
```

Then we set a boolean variable and test the default family; if such family has a name that starts with the letters “ae” then we have no built in guillemets; of course if the AE font family is chosen after the babel package is loaded, the test does not perform as required.

```
31.119 \def\get@ae#1#2#3!{\def\bb1@ae{#1#2}}%
31.120 \def@ifT@one@noCap{\expandafter\get@ae\family!%
31.121 \def\bb1@temp{ae}\ifx\bb1@ae\bb1@temp\expandafter\@firstoftwo\else
31.122   \expandafter\@secondoftwo\fi}%
```

We set another couple of boolean variables for testing the existence of the CBgreek or the Cyrillic fonts

```
31.123 \newif\if@CBgreekEncKnown
31.124 \IfFileExists{lgrcmr.fd}%
31.125   {\@CBgreekEncKnowntrue}{\@CBgreekEncKnownfalse}
31.126 \newif\if@CyrEncKnown
31.127 \IfFileExists{ot2cmr.fd}%
31.128   {\@CyrEncKnowntrue}{\@CyrEncKnownfalse}%
```

\CBgreekCaporali Next we define the macros \CBgreekCaporali, \T@unoCaporali, and \CyrillicCaporali;  
\CyrillicCaporali with the latter one we test the loaded class, and if it’s slides nothing gets done. In  
\T@unoCaporali any case each one of these declarations, if used, must be specified in the preamble.

```
31.129 \def\CBgreekCaporali{\@ifclassloaded{slides}{%
31.130   \IfFileExists{lgrlcmss.fd}{\DeclareFontEncoding{LGR}{-}{-}%
31.131     \DeclareRobustCommand*\it@ccap{%
31.132       {\ifdim\lastskip>\z@ \unskip\fi
31.133         {\fontencoding{LGR}\selectfont}}}%
31.134     \DeclareRobustCommand*\it@ocap{%
31.135       {\fontencoding{LGR}\selectfont(\ignorespaces)}}%
31.136     {\LtxSymbCaporali}}%
31.137   {\DeclareFontEncoding{LGR}{-}{-}%
31.138     \DeclareRobustCommand*\it@ccap{%
31.139       {\ifdim\lastskip>\z@ \unskip
31.140         \fi{\fontencoding{LGR}\selectfont}}}%
31.141     \DeclareRobustCommand*\it@ocap{%
31.142       {\fontencoding{LGR}\selectfont(\ignorespaces)}}%
31.143   }%
31.144 \def\CyrillicCaporali{\@ifclassloaded{slides}{\relax}%
31.145   {\DeclareFontEncoding{OT2}{-}{-}%
31.146     \DeclareRobustCommand*\it@ccap{%
31.147       {\ifdim\lastskip>\z@ \unskip\fi
31.148         {\fontencoding{OT2}\selectfont\char62\relax}}}%
31.149     \DeclareRobustCommand*\it@ocap{%
31.150       {\fontencoding{OT2}\selectfont\char60\relax}\ignorespaces}}}%
```

```

31.151 \@onlypreamble{\CBgreekCaporali}\@onlypreamble{\CyrillicCaporali}%
31.152 \def\T@unoCaporali{\DeclareRobustCommand*\it@ocap{\<<\ignorespaces}%
31.153     \DeclareRobustCommand*\it@ccap{\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\fi>>}}%

```

Now we can do some real setting; first we start testing the encoding; if the encoding is T1 we test if the font family is the AE one; if so, we further test for other possibilities

```

31.154 \ifx\cf@encoding\bb1@t@one
31.155   \@ifT@one@noCap{%
31.156     \if@CBgreekEncKnown
31.157       \CBgreekCaporali
31.158     \else
31.159       \if@CyrEncKnown
31.160         \CyrillicCaporali
31.161       \else
31.162         \LtxSymbCaporali
31.163     \fi
31.164   \fi}%
31.165   {\T@unoCaporali}%

```

But if the default encoding is not the T1 one, then the substitutions must be performed.

```

31.166 \else
31.167   \if@CBgreekEncKnown
31.168     \CBgreekCaporali
31.169   \else
31.170     \if@CyrEncKnown
31.171       \CyrillicCaporali
31.172     \else
31.173       \LtxSymbCaporali
31.174   \fi
31.175 \fi
31.176 \fi

```

### 31.5 Finishing commands

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

31.177 \ldf@finish{italian}%
31.178 </code>

```

### 31.6 References

- [1] Beccari C., “Computer Aided Hyphenation for Italian and Modern Latin”, TUGboat vol. 13, n. 1, pp. 23-33 (1992).
- [2] Beccari C., “Typesetting mathematics for science and technology according to ISO 31/XI”, TUGboat vol. 18, n. 1, pp. 39-48 (1997).

## 32 The Latin language

The file `latin.dtx`<sup>28</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Latin language both in modern and medieval spelling.

For this language the `\clubpenalty`, `\widowpenalty` are set to rather high values and `\finalhyphendemerits` is set to such a high value that hyphenation is prohibited between the last two lines of a paragraph.

For this language two “styles” of typesetting are implemented: “regular” or modern-spelling Latin, and medieval Latin. The medieval Latin specific commands can be activated by means of the language attribute `medieval`; the medieval spelling differs from the modern one by the systematic use of the lower case ‘u’ also where in modern spelling the letter ‘v’ is used; when typesetting with capital letters, on the opposite, the letter ‘V’ is used also in place of ‘U’. Medieval spelling also includes the ligatures `\ae` (æ), `\oe` (œ), `\AE` (Æ), and `\OE` (Œ) that are not used in modern spelling, nor were used in the classical times.

Furthermore a third typesetting style `withprosodicmarks` is defined in order to use special shortcuts for inserting breves and macrons when typesetting grammars, dictionaries, teaching texts, and the like, where prosodic marks are important for the complete information on the words or the verses. The shortcuts, listed in table 7 and described in section 33, may interfere with other packages; therefore by default this third style is off and no interference is introduced. If this third style is used and interference is experienced, there are special commands for turning on and off the specific short hand commands of this style.

For what concerns `babel` and typesetting with  $\LaTeX$ , the differences between the two styles of spelling reveal themselves in the strings used to name for example the “Preface” that becomes “Praefatio” or “Præfatio” respectively. Hyphenation rules are also different, but the hyphenation pattern file `lahyph.tex` takes care of both versions of the language. Needless to say that such patterns must be loaded in the  $\LaTeX$  format by running `initex` (or whatever the name if the initializer) on `latex.ltx`.

The name strings for chapters, figures, tables, etcetera, are suggested by prof. Raffaella Tabacco, a classicist of the University of Turin, Italy, to whom we address our warmest thanks. The names suggested by Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski, when different, are used as the names for the medieval variety, since he made a word and spelling choice more suited for this variety.

For this language some shortcuts are defined according to table 7; all of them are supposed to work with both spelling styles, except where the opposite is explicitly stated.

<code>~i</code>	inserts the breve accent as $\breve{i}$ ; valid also for the other lowercase vowels, but it does not operate on the medieval ligatures æ and œ.
<code>=a</code>	inserts the macron accent as $\bar{a}$ ; valid also for the other lowercase vowels, but it does not operate on the medieval ligatures æ and œ.
<code>"</code>	inserts a compound word mark where hyphenation is legal; the next character must not be a medieval ligature æ or œ, nor an accented letter (foreign names).
<code>" </code>	same as above, but operates also when the next character is a medieval ligature or an accented letter.

Table 7: Shortcuts defined for the Latin language. The characters `~` and `=` are active only when the language attribute `withprosodicmarks` has been declared, otherwise they are disabled; see section 33 for more details.

<sup>28</sup>The file described in this section has version number v2.0k and was last revised on 2008/03/21. The original author is Claudio Beccari with contributions by Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski, (`kkz@alfa.mimuw.edu.pl`)

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
32.1 (*code)
32.2 \LdfInit{latin}{captionslatin}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `latin` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@latin` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
32.3 \ifx\l@latin@undefined
32.4   \nopatterns{Latin}
32.5   \addialect\l@latin0\fi
```

Now we declare the medieval language attribute.

```
32.6 \bbl@declare@ttribute{latin}{medieval}{%
32.7   \addto\captionslatin{\def\prefacename{Pr{\ae}fatio}}%
32.8   \def\november{Nouembris}%
32.9   \expandafter\addto\expandafter\extraslatin
32.10  \expandafter{\extrasmedievallatin}%
32.11 }
```

The third typesetting style `withprosodicmarks` is defined here

```
32.12 \bbl@declare@ttribute{latin}{withprosodicmarks}{%
32.13   \expandafter\addto\expandafter\extraslatin
32.14   \expandafter{\extraswithprosodicmarks}%
32.15 }
```

It must be remembered that the `medieval` and the `withprosodicmarks` styles may be used together.

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Latin language<sup>29</sup>.

`\captionslatin` The macro `\captionslatin` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
32.16 \@namedef{captionslatin}{%
32.17   \def\prefacename{Praefatio}%
32.18   \def\refname{Conspectus librorum}%
32.19   \def\abstractname{Summarium}%
32.20   \def\bibname{Conspectus librorum}%
32.21   \def\chaptername{Caput}%
32.22   \def\appendixname{Additamentum}%
32.23   \def\contentsname{Index}%
32.24   \def\listfigurename{Conspectus descriptionum}%
32.25   \def\listtablename{Conspectus tabularum}%
32.26   \def\indexname{Index rerum notabilium}%
32.27   \def\figurename{Descriptio}%
32.28   \def\tablename{Tabula}%
32.29   \def\partname{Pars}%
32.30   \def\enclname{Adduntur}% Or " Additur" ? Or simply Add.?
32.31   \def\ccname{Exemplar}% Use the recipient's dative
32.32   \def\headtoname{\ignorespaces}% Use the recipient's dative
32.33   \def\pagename{Charta}%
32.34   \def\seename{cfr.}%
32.35   \def\alsoname{cfr.}% R.Tabacco never saw "cfr. atque" or similar forms
32.36   \def\proofname{Demonstratio}%
32.37   \def\glossaryname{Glossarium}%
32.38 }
```

In the above definitions there are some points that might change in the future or that require a minimum of attention from the typesetter.

<sup>29</sup>Most of these names were kindly suggested by Raffaella Tabacco.

1. the `\enclname` is translated by a passive verb, that literally means “(they) are being added”; if just one enclosure is joined to the document, the plural passive is not suited any more; nevertheless a generic plural passive might be incorrect but suited for most circumstances. On the opposite “Additur”, the corresponding singular passive, might be more correct with one enclosure and less suited in general: what about the abbreviation “Add.” that works in both cases, but certainly is less elegant?
2. The `\headtoname` is empty and gobbles the possible following space; in practice the typesetter should use the dative of the recipient’s name; since nowadays not all such names can be translated into Latin, they might result indeclinable. The clever use of an appellative by the typesetter such as “Domino” or “Dominae” might solve the problem, but the header might get too impressive. The typesetter must make a decision on his own.
3. The same holds true for the copy recipient’s name in the “Cc” field of `\ccname`.

`\datelatin` The macro `\datelatin` redefines the command `\today` to produce Latin dates; the choice of faked small caps Latin numerals is arbitrary and may be changed in the future. For medieval latin the spelling of ‘Novembris’ should be *Nouembris*. This is taken care of by using a control sequence which can be redefined when the attribute ‘medieval’ is selected.

```

32.39 \def\datelatin{%
32.40   \def\november{Novembris}%
32.41   \def\today{%
32.42     {\check@mathfonts\fontsize\sf@size\z@\math@fontsfalse\selectfont
32.43       \uppercase\expandafter{\romannumeral\day}}~\ifcase\month\or
32.44       Ianuarii\or Februarii\or Martii\or Aprilis\or Maii\or Iunii\or
32.45       Iulii\or Augusti\or Septembris\or Octobris\or \november\or
32.46       Decembris\fi
32.47       \space\uppercase\expandafter{\romannumeral\year}}}}

```

`\romandate` Thomas Martin Widmann ([viralbus@daimi.au.dk](mailto:viralbus@daimi.au.dk)) developed a macro originally named `\latindate` (but to be renamed `\romandate` so as not to conflict with the standard `babel` conventions) that should compute and translate the current date into a date *ab urbe condita* with days numbered according to the kalendae and idus; for the moment this is a placeholder for Thomas’ macro, waiting for a self standing one that keeps local all the intermediate data, counters, etc. If he succeeds, here is the place to add his macro.

`\latinhyphenmins` The Latin hyphenation patterns can be used with both `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```

32.48 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}

```

`\extraslatin` Lower the chance that clubs or widows occur.

```

\noextraslatin 32.49 \addto\extraslatin{%
32.50   \babel@savevariable\clubpenalty
32.51   \babel@savevariable\@clubpenalty
32.52   \babel@savevariable\widowpenalty
32.53   \clubpenalty3000\@clubpenalty3000\widowpenalty3000}

```

Never ever break a word between the last two lines of a paragraph in latin texts.

```

32.54 \addto\extraslatin{%
32.55   \babel@savevariable\finalhyphendemerits
32.56   \finalhyphendemerits50000000}

```

With medieval Latin we need the suitable correspondence between upper case V and lower case u, since in that spelling there is only one sign, and the u shape is the (uncial) version of the capital V. Everything else is identical with Latin.

```

32.57 \addto\extrasmedievallatin{%

```

```

32.58 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\V}%
32.59 \babel@savevariable{\uccode'\u}%
32.60 \lccode'\V='\'u \uccode'\u='\'V}

```

`\SetLatinLigatures` We need also the lccodes for æ and œ; since they occupy different positions in the OT1 T<sub>E</sub>X-fontencoding compared to the T1 one, we must save the lc- and the uccodes for both encodings, but we specify the new lc- and uccodes separately as it appears natural not to change encoding while typesetting the same language. The encoding is assumed to be set before starting to use the Latin language, so that if Latin is the default language, the font encoding must be chosen before requiring the `babel` package with the `latin` option, in any case before any `\selectlanguage` or `\foreignlanguage` command.

All this fuss is made in order to allow the use of the medieval ligatures æ and œ while typesetting with the medieval spelling; I have my doubts that the medieval spelling should be used at all in modern books, reports, and the like; the uncial ‘u’ shape of the lower case ‘v’ and the above ligatures were fancy styles of the copyists who were able to write faster with those rounded glyphs; with typesetting there is no question of handling a quill penn. . . Since my (CB) opinion may be wrong, I managed to set up the instruments and it is up to the typesetter to use them or not.

```

32.61 \addto\extramedievallatin{%
32.62 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\^^e6}% T1 \ae
32.63 \babel@savevariable{\uccode'\^^e6}% T1 \ae
32.64 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\^^c6}% T1 \AE
32.65 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\^^f7}% T1 \oe
32.66 \babel@savevariable{\uccode'\^^f7}% T1 \OE
32.67 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\^^d7}% T1 \OE
32.68 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\^^1a}% OT1 \ae
32.69 \babel@savevariable{\uccode'\^^1a}% OT1 \ae
32.70 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\^^1d}% OT1 \AE
32.71 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\^^1b}% OT1 \oe
32.72 \babel@savevariable{\uccode'\^^1b}% OT1 \OE
32.73 \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\^^1e}% OT1 \OE
32.74 \SetLatinLigatures}
32.75 \providecommand\SetLatinLigatures{%
32.76 \def\@tempA{T1}\ifx\@tempA\fontencoding
32.77 \catcode'\^^e6=11 \lccode'\^^e6='\'e6 \uccode'\^^e6='\'c6 % \ae
32.78 \catcode'\^^c6=11 \lccode'\^^c6='\'e6 % \AE
32.79 \catcode'\^^f7=11 \lccode'\^^f7='\'f7 \uccode'\^^f7='\'d7 % \oe
32.80 \catcode'\^^d7=11 \lccode'\^^d7='\'f7 % \OE
32.81 \else
32.82 \catcode'\^^1a=11 \lccode'\^^1a='\'1a \uccode'\^^1a='\'1d % \ae
32.83 \catcode'\^^1d=11 \lccode'\^^1d='\'1a % \AE (^^)
32.84 \catcode'\^^1b=11 \lccode'\^^1b='\'1b \uccode'\^^1b='\'1e % \oe
32.85 \catcode'\^^1e=11 \lccode'\^^1e='\'1b % \OE (^^)
32.86 \fi
32.87 \let\@tempA\@undefined
32.88 }

```

With the above definitions we are sure that `\MakeUppercase` works properly and `\MakeUppercase{C{\ae}sar}` correctly ‘yields’ ‘CÆSAR’; correspondingly `\MakeUppercase{Heluetia}` correctly yields “HELVETIA”.

### 33 Latin shortcuts

For writing dictionaries or didactic texts (in modern spelling only) we defined a third language attribute, or a third typesetting style, a couple of other active characters are defined: `˘` for marking a vowel with the breve sign, and `=` for marking a vowel with the macro sign. Please take notice that neither the OT1 font encoding,

nor the T1 one for most vowels, contain directly the marked vowels, therefore hyphenation of words containing these “accents” may become problematic; for this reason the above active characters not only introduce the required accent, but also an unbreakable zero skip that in practice does not introduce a discretionary break, but allows breaks in the rest of the word.

It must be remarked that the active characters  $\hat{}$  and  $=$  may have other meanings in other contexts. For example the equals sign is used by the graphic extensions for specifying keyword options for handling the graphic elements to be included in the document. At the same time, as mentioned in the previous paragraph, diacritical marking in Latin is used only for typesetting certain kind of documents, such as grammars and dictionaries. It is reasonable that the breve and macron active characters are switched on and off at will, and in particular that they are off by default if the attribute `withprosodicmarks` has not been set.

`\ProsodicMarksOn` We begin by adding to the normal typesetting style the definitions of the new  
`\ProsodicMarksOff` commands `\ProsodicMarksOn` and `\ProsodicMarksOff` that should produce error messages when the third style is not declared:

```
33.1 \addto\extraslatin{\def\ProsodicMarksOn{%
33.2   \GenericError{(latin)\@spaces\@spaces\@spaces\@spaces}%
33.3     {Latin language error: \string\ProsodicMarksOn\space
33.4     is defined by setting the\MessageBreak
33.5     language attribute to ‘withprosodicmarks’\MessageBreak
33.6     If you continue you are likely to encounter\MessageBreak
33.7     fatal errors that I can’t recover}%
33.8     {See the Latin language description in the babel
33.9     documentation for explanation}{\@ehd}}}
33.10 \addto\extraslatin{\let\ProsodicMarksOff\relax}
```

Then we temporarily set the caret and the equals sign to active characters so that they can receive their definitions. But first we store their current category codes to restore them later on.

```
33.11 \@tempcnta=\catcode‘\=
33.12 \@tempcntb=\catcode‘\^
33.13 \catcode‘\= \active
33.14 \catcode‘\^ \active
```

Now we can add the necessary declarations to the macros that are being activated when the Latin language and its typesetting styles are declared:

```
33.15 \addto\extraslatin{\languageshorthands{latin}}%
33.16 \addto\extraswithprosodicmarks{\bbl@activate{^}}%
33.17 \addto\extraswithprosodicmarks{\bbl@activate{=}}%
33.18 \addto\noextraswithprosodicmarks{\bbl@deactivate{^}}%
33.19 \addto\noextraswithprosodicmarks{\bbl@deactivate{=}}%
33.20 \addto\extraswithprosodicmarks{\ProsodicMarks}
```

`\ProsodicMarks` Next we define the defining macro for the active characters

```
33.21 \def\ProsodicMarks{%
33.22   \def\ProsodicMarksOn{\catcode‘\^ \active\catcode‘\= \active}%
33.23   \def\ProsodicMarksOff{\catcode‘\^ 7\catcode‘\= 12\relax}%
```

Notice that with the above redefinitions of the commands `\ProsodicMarksOn` and `\ProsodicMarksOff`, the operation of the newly defined shortcuts may be switched on and off at will, so that even if a picture has to be inserted in the document by means of the commands and keyword options of the `graphicx` package, it suffices to switch them off before invoking the picture including command, and switched on again afterwards; or, even better, since the picture very likely is being inserted within a `figure` environment, it suffices to switch them off within the environment, being conscious that their deactivation remains local to the environment.

```
33.24 \initiate@active@char{^}%
33.25 \initiate@active@char{=}%
33.26 \declare@shorthand{latin}{^a}{%
```

```

33.27 \textormath{\u{a}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\hat{a}}}%
33.28 \declare@shorthand{latin}{^e}{%
33.29 \textormath{\u{e}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\hat{e}}}%
33.30 \declare@shorthand{latin}{^i}{%
33.31 \textormath{\u{i}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\hat{\imath}}}%
33.32 \declare@shorthand{latin}{^o}{%
33.33 \textormath{\u{o}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\hat{o}}}%
33.34 \declare@shorthand{latin}{^u}{%
33.35 \textormath{\u{u}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\hat{u}}}%
33.36 %
33.37 \declare@shorthand{latin}{=a}{%
33.38 \textormath{\u{a}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\bar{a}}}%
33.39 \declare@shorthand{latin}{=e}{%
33.40 \textormath{\u{e}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\bar{e}}}%
33.41 \declare@shorthand{latin}{=i}{%
33.42 \textormath{\u{i}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\bar{\imath}}}%
33.43 \declare@shorthand{latin}{=o}{%
33.44 \textormath{\u{o}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\bar{o}}}%
33.45 \declare@shorthand{latin}{=u}{%
33.46 \textormath{\u{u}\bbl@allowhyphens}{\bar{u}}}%
33.47 }

```

Notice that the short hand definitions are given only for lower case letters; it would not be difficult to extend the set of definitions to upper case letters, but it appears of very little use in view of the kind of documents where prosodic marks are supposed to be used. Nevertheless in those rare cases when it's required to set some uppercase letters with their prosodic marks, it is always possible to use the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands such as `\u{I}` for typesetting  $\bar{I}$ , or `\={A}` for typesetting  $\bar{A}$ .

Finally we restore the caret and equals sign initial default category codes.

```

33.48 \catcode'\= \@tempcnta
33.49 \catcode'\^ \@tempcntb

```

so as to avoid conflicts with other packages or other babel options.

`\LatinMarksOn` We define two new commands so as to switch on and off the breve and macron shortcuts.  
`\LatinMarksOff`

```

33.50 \addto\extraswithprosodicmarks{\let\LatinMarksOn\ProsodicMarksOn}
33.51 \addto\extraswithprosodicmarks{\let\LatinMarksOff\ProsodicMarksOff}

```

It must be understood that by using the above prosodic marks, line breaking is somewhat impeached; since such prosodic marks are used almost exclusively in dictionaries, grammars, and poems (only in school textbooks), this shouldn't be of any importance for what concerns the quality of typesetting.

## 34 Etymological hyphenation

In order to deal in a clean way with prefixes and compound words to be divided etymologically, the active character " is given a special definition so as to behave as a discretionary break with hyphenation allowed after it. Most of the code for dealing with the active " is already contained in the core of babel, but we are going to use it as a single character shorthand for Latin.

```

34.1 \initiate@active@char{"}%
34.2 \addto\extraslatin{\bbl@activate{"}%
34.3 }

```

A temporary macro is defined so as to take different actions in math mode and text mode: specifically in the former case the macro inserts a double quote as it should in math mode, otherwise another delayed macro comes into action.

```

34.4 \declare@shorthand{latin}{"}{%
34.5 \ifmmode

```



```

34.6   \def\lt@next{''}%
34.7   \else
34.8   \def\lt@next{\futurelet\lt@temp\lt@cwm}%
34.9   \fi
34.10  \lt@next
34.11 }%

```

In text mode the `\lt@next` control sequence is such that upon its execution a temporary variable `\lt@temp` is made equivalent to the next token in the input list without actually removing it. Such temporary token is then tested by the macro `\lt@cwm` and if it is found to be a letter token, then it introduces a compound word separator control sequence `\lt@allowhyphens` whose expansion introduces a discretionary hyphen and an unbreakable space; in case the token is not a letter, the token is tested again to find if it is the character `|`, in which case it is gobbled and a discretionary break is introduced.

```

34.12 \def\lt@allowhyphens{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{-}\nobreak\hskip\z@skip}
34.13 \newcommand*{\lt@cwm}{\let\lt@nxt\relax
34.14   \ifcat\noexpand\lt@temp a%
34.15   \let\lt@nxt\lt@allowhyphens
34.16   \else
34.17   \if\noexpand\lt@temp|string|%
34.18   \def\lt@nxt{\lt@allowhyphens@gobble}%
34.19   \fi
34.20   \fi
34.21 \lt@nxt}%

```

Attention: the category code comparison does not work if the temporary control sequence `\lt@temp` has been let equal to an implicit character, such as `\ae`; therefore this etymological hyphenation facility does not work with medieval Latin spelling when `"` immediately precedes a ligature. In order to overcome this drawback the shorthand `"|` may be used in such cases; it behaves exactly as `"`, but it does not test the implicit character control sequence. An input such as `super"|{\ae}quitas30` gets hyphenated as `su-per-æqui-tas` instead of `su-pe-ræ-qui-tas`.

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

34.22 \ldf@finish{latin}
34.23 </code>

```

---

<sup>30</sup>This word does not exist in “regular” Latin, and it is used just as an example.

## 35 The Portuguese language

The file `portuges.dtx`<sup>31</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Portuguese language as well as for the Brazilian version of this language.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 8 an overview is given of its purpose.

"	disable ligature at this position.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for words that should break at some sign such as "entrada/salida.")
"<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).
\-	like the old \-, but allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.

Table 8: The extra definitions made by `portuges.ldf`

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
35.1 <*code>
35.2 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{captions\CurrentOption}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `portuges` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@portuges` to see whether we have to do something here. Since it is possible to load this file with any of the following four options to `babel`: `portuges`, `portuguese`, `brazil` and `brazilian` we also allow that the hyphenation patterns are loaded under any of these four names. We just have to find out which one was used.

```
35.3 \ifx\l@portuges\@undefined
35.4 \ifx\l@portuguese\@undefined
35.5 \ifx\l@brazil\@undefined
35.6 \ifx\l@brazilian\@undefined
35.7 \nopatterns{Portuguese}
35.8 \addialect\l@portuges0
35.9 \else
35.10 \let\l@portuges\l@brazilian
35.11 \fi
35.12 \else
35.13 \let\l@portuges\l@brazil
35.14 \fi
35.15 \else
35.16 \let\l@portuges\l@portuguese
35.17 \fi
35.18 \fi
```

By now `\l@portuges` is defined. When the language definition file was loaded under a different name we make sure that the hyphenation patterns can be found.

```
35.19 \expandafter\ifx\csname l@\CurrentOption\endcsname\relax
35.20 \expandafter\let\csname l@\CurrentOption\endcsname\l@portuges
35.21 \fi
```

Now we have to decide whether this language definition file was loaded for Portuguese or Brazilian use. This can be done by checking the contents of `\CurrentOption`. When it doesn’t contain either ‘portuges’ or ‘portuguese’ we make `\bbl@tempb` empty.

---

<sup>31</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.2q and was last revised on 2008/03/18. Contributions were made by Jose Pedro Ramalhete (JRAMALHE@CERNVM or Jose-Pedro\_Ramalhete@MACMAIL) and Arnaldo Viegas de Lima arnaldo@VNET.IBM.COM.

```

35.22 \def\bbl@tempa{portuguese}
35.23 \ifx\CurrentOption\bbl@tempa
35.24   \let\bbl@tempb\@empty
35.25 \else
35.26   \def\bbl@tempa{portuges}
35.27   \ifx\CurrentOption\bbl@tempa
35.28     \let\bbl@tempb\@empty
35.29   \else
35.30     \def\bbl@tempb{brazil}
35.31   \fi
35.32 \fi
35.33 \ifx\bbl@tempb\@empty

```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Portuguese language.

`\captionportuges` The macro `\captionportuges` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

35.34 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
35.35   \def\prefacename{Pref\'acio}%
35.36   \def\refname{Refer\~encias}%
35.37   \def\abstractname{Resumo}%
35.38   \def\bibName{Bibliografia}%
35.39   \def\chaptername{Cap\'}{\i}tulo}%
35.40   \def\appendixname{Ap\~endice}%

```

Some discussion took place around the correct translations for ‘Table of Contents’ and ‘Index’. the translations differ for Portuguese and Brazilian based the following history:

The whole issue is that some books without a real index at the end misused the term ‘Índice’ as table of contents. Then, what happens is that some books appeared with ‘Índice’ at the beginning and a ‘Índice Remissivo’ at the end. Remissivo is a redundant word in this case, but was introduced to make up the difference. So in Brasil people started using ‘Sumário’ and ‘Índice Remissivo’. In Portugal this seems not to be very common, therefore we chose ‘Índice’ instead of ‘Índice Remissivo’.

```

35.41   \def\contentsname{Conte\'}udo}%
35.42   \def\listfigurename{Lista de Figuras}%
35.43   \def\listtablename{Lista de Tabelas}%
35.44   \def\indexname{\'}Indice}%
35.45   \def\figurename{Figura}%
35.46   \def\tablename{Tabela}%
35.47   \def\partname{Parte}%
35.48   \def\enclname{Anexo}%
35.49   \def\ccname{Com c\'}opia a}%
35.50   \def\headtoname{Para}%
35.51   \def\pagename{P\'}agina}%
35.52   \def\seename{ver}%
35.53   \def\alsoname{ver tamb\'}em}%

```

An alternate term for ‘Proof’ could be ‘Prova’.

```

35.54   \def\proofname{Demonstra\c{c}\~ao}%
35.55   \def\glossaryname{Gloss\'}ario}%
35.56   }

```

`\dateportuges` The macro `\dateportuges` redefines the command `\today` to produce Portuguese dates.

```

35.57 \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
35.58   \def\today{\number\day\space de\space\ifcase\month\or
35.59     Janeiro\or Fevereiro\or Mar\c{c}o\or Abril\or Maio\or Junho\or

```

```

35.60     Julho\or Agosto\or Setembro\or Outubro\or Novembro\or Dezembro%
35.61     \fi
35.62     \space de\space\number\year}}
35.63 \else

```

For the Brazilian version of these definitions we just add a “dialect”.

```

35.64 \expandafter
35.65 \addialect\csname l@CurrentOption\endcsname\l@portuges

```

`\captionsbrazil` The “captions” are different for both versions of the language, so we define the macro `\captionsbrazil` here.

```

35.66 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
35.67 \def\prefacename{Pref\’acio}%
35.68 \def\refname{Refer\^encias}%
35.69 \def\abstractname{Resumo}%
35.70 \def\bibName{Refer\^encias Bibliogr\’aficas}%
35.71 \def\chaptername{Cap\’{i}tulo}%
35.72 \def\appendixname{Ap\^endice}%
35.73 \def\contentsname{Sum\’ario}%
35.74 \def\listfigurename{Lista de Figuras}%
35.75 \def\listtablename{Lista de Tabelas}%
35.76 \def\indexname{\’Indice Remissivo}%
35.77 \def\figurename{Figura}%
35.78 \def\tablename{Tabela}%
35.79 \def\partname{Parte}%
35.80 \def\enclname{Anexo}%
35.81 \def\ccname{C\’opia para}%
35.82 \def\headtoname{Para}%
35.83 \def\pagename{P\’agina}%
35.84 \def\seename{veja}%
35.85 \def\alsoname{veja tamb\’em}%
35.86 \def\proofname{Demonstra\c{c}\~ao}%
35.87 \def\glossaryname{Gloss\’ario}%
35.88 }

```

`\datebrazil` The macro `\datebrazil` redefines the command `\today` to produce Brazilian dates, for which the names of the months are not capitalized.

```

35.89 \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
35.90 \def\today{\number\day\space de\space\ifcase\month\or
35.91     janeiro\or fevereiro\or mar\c{c}o\or abril\or maio\or junho\or
35.92     julho\or agosto\or setembro\or outubro\or novembro\or dezembro%
35.93     \fi
35.94     \space de\space\number\year}}
35.95 \fi

```

`\portugeshyphenmins` Set correct values for `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```

35.96 \providehyphenmins{CurrentOption}{\tw@\thr@@}

```

`\extrasportuges` The macro `\extrasportuges` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Portuguese language. The macro `\noextrasportuges` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasportuges`.

For Portuguese the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary. Other languages in the same document may also use the " character for shorthands; we specify that the portuguese group of shorthands should be used.

```

35.97 \initiate@active@char{"}
35.98 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{\languageshorthands{portuges}}
35.99 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
35.100 \bbl@activate{"}}

```

Don’t forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

35.101 \addto\noextrasportuges{\bbl@deactivate{"}}

```

First we define access to the guillemets for quotations,

```
35.102 \declare@shorthand{portuges}{"<"}{%
35.103   \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
35.104 \declare@shorthand{portuges}{">"}{%
35.105   \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}
```

then we define two shorthands to be able to specify hyphenation breakpoints that behave a little different from \-.

```
35.106 \declare@shorthand{portuges}{"-"}{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
35.107 \declare@shorthand{portuges}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
```

And we want to have a shorthand for disabling a ligature.

```
35.108 \declare@shorthand{portuges}{"|"}{%
35.109   \textormath{\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}}{}}
```

\- All that is left now is the redefinition of \-. The new version of \- should indicate an extra hyphenation position, while allowing other hyphenation positions to be generated automatically. The standard behaviour of T<sub>E</sub>X in this respect is very unfortunate for languages such as Dutch and German, where long compound words are quite normal and all one needs is a means to indicate an extra hyphenation position on top of the ones that T<sub>E</sub>X can generate from the hyphenation patterns.

```
35.110 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
35.111   \babel@save\-\}
35.112 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
35.113   \def\-\{\allowhyphens\discretionary{-}{-}{\allowhyphens}}}
```

\ord We also provide an easy way to typeset ordinals, both in the male (\ord or \ro) and the female (orda or \ra) form.

```
\orda35.114 \def\ord{${\rm o}$}
\ra35.115 \def\orda{${\rm a}$}
35.116 \let\ro\ord\let\ra\orda
```

The macro \ldf@finish takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at \begin{document} and resetting the category code of @ to its original value.

```
35.117 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
35.118 \code}
```

## 36 The Spanish language

The file `spanish.dtx`<sup>32</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Spanish language.

Spanish support is implemented following mainly the guidelines given by José Martínez de Sousa. You may get the the full documentation (more comprehensive, but regrettably only in Spanish) by typesetting `spanish.dtx` directly. There are examples and some additional features documented in the Spanish version only. Cross-references in this section point to that document.

**Features** This style provides:

- Translations following the International L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X conventions, as well as `\today`.
- Shorthands listed in Table 9. Examples in subsection 3.4 are illustrative. Notice that `"~` has a special meaning in spanish different to other languages, and is used mainly in linguistic contexts.

<code>'a</code>	Acute accented a. Works for e, i, o, u, too (both lowercase and uppercase).
<code>'n</code>	ñ (uppercase too).
<code>"i</code>	ï (uppercase too).
<code>"u</code>	ü (uppercase too).
<code>"a "o</code>	Ordinal numbers (uppercase "A, "O too).
<code>"er "ER</code>	Ordinal 1. <sup>er</sup> 1. <sup>ER</sup>
<code>"c</code>	ç (uppercase too).
<code>"rr</code>	rr, but -r when hyphenated.
<code>"y</code>	An old ligature for “et” (like the English &).
<code>"-</code>	Like <code>\-</code> , but allowing hyphenation in the rest the word.
<code>"=</code>	Like <code>-</code> , but allowing hyphenation in the rest the word.
<code>"~</code>	The hyphen is repeated at the very beginning of the next line if the word is hyphenated at this point.
<code>""</code>	Like <code>"-</code> but producing no hyphen sign.
<code>~-</code>	Like <code>"-</code> but with no break after the hyphen. Works for en-dashes ( <code>~--</code> ) and em-dashes ( <code>~---</code> ). <code>"+</code> , <code>"+-</code> and <code>"+--</code> are synonymous.
<code>"/</code>	A slash slightly lowered, if necessary.
<code>" </code>	Disable ligatures at this point.
<code>"&lt;</code>	Left guillemets.
<code>"&gt;</code>	Right guillemets.
<code>&lt;&lt; &gt;&gt;</code>	<code>\begin{quoting}</code> and <code>\end{quoting}</code> . (See below.) "‘ and "’ are synonymous.
<code>"? "!</code>	Opening question and exclamation marks ( <code>¿</code> and <code>!</code> ) aligned on the baseline, useful for all-caps headings, etc.

Table 9: Extra definitions made by file `spanish.ldf`

- `\frenchspacing`.
- *In math mode*, a dot followed by a digit is replaced by a decimal comma.
- Spanish ordinals and abbreviations with the `\sptext{<text>}` command as, for instance, `1\sptext{er}`. The preceptive dot is included.

<sup>32</sup>The file described in this section has version number v5.0a and was last revised on 2007/02/21. The maintainer from v4.0 on is Javier Bezos (<http://www.txytipografia.com>). Previous versions were made by Julio Sánchez. The English documentation has been improved by José Luis Rivera; thanks to him it is now a lot clearer.

- Accented (lím, máx, mín, mód) and spaced (arc cos, etc.) functions.
- `\dotlessi` is provided for use in math mode.
- A `quoting` environment and a related pair of shorthands `<<` and `>>`. Useful for traditional spanish multi-paragraph quoting.
- There is a small space before the percent `\%` sign.
- `\lsc` provides lowercase small caps. (See subsection 3.10.)
- Ellipsis is best typed as `. . .` or, within a sentence, as `\. . .`

If `spanish` is the main language, the command `\layoutspanish` is added to the main group, modifying the standard classes throughout the whole document in the following way:

- Paragraphs are set with `\indentfirst`.
- Both `enumerate` and `itemize` are adapted to Spanish rules.
- Both `\alph` and `\Alph` include  $\tilde{n}$  after  $n$ .
- Symbol footmarks are one, two, three, etc., asterisks.
- OT1 guillemets are generated with two `lasy` symbols instead of small `\ll` and `\gg`.
- `\roman` is redefined to write small caps Roman numerals, since lowercase Roman numerals are discouraged (see below).
- There is a dot after section numbers in titles, headings, and toc.

A subset of these features is implemented for Plain  $\TeX$  (accessible with the command `\input spanish.sty`). Most significantly, `\lsc`, the `quoting` environment, and features provided by `\layoutspanish` are missing.

**Customization** Beginning with version 5.0, customization is made following two paths: via `options` or via `commands`; these options and commands override the layout for Spanish documents at different levels: options are meant for use at the preamble only, while commands may be used in the configuration file or at document level.

Global options control the overall appearance of the document, and may be set on the `{babel}` call, right after calling `spanish`, or shortly before the call to `{babel}`, to ensure their proper loading at runtime. Thus, the following calls are roughly equivalent:

```
\usepackage[... ,spanish,es-nosectiondot,es-nodecimaldot,...]{babel}

\def\spanishoptions{es-nosectiondot,es-nodecimaldot}
\usepackage[... ,spanish,...]{babel}
```

Some global options are built upon lower level options, and may be used as shorthand for more global customizations. Table 10 gives an overview of the global options constructed this way. Most of these options are self-explanatory: they disable the changes made to the basic  $\LaTeX$  layout by `spanish`. `es-lcroman` however, and a few others, need a bit of explanation, and they may be described as follows:

Basic Options	es-minimal	es-sloppy	es-noshorthands
es-noindentfirst	X	X	
es-nosectiondot	X	X	
es-nolists	X	X	
es-noquoting	X	X	X
es-notilde	X	X	X
es-nodecimaldot	X	X	X
es-nolayout		X	
es-ucroman	X		
es-lcroman	X	X	

Table 10: Spanish Customization Options

- Traditional Spanish typography discourages the use of lowercase Roman numerals; instead, a smallcaps variant is implemented. However, since `Makeindex` seems to choke on the code implementing lowercase Roman numerals (via the `\lsc` macro), two workarounds are implemented: the `es-ucroman` option converts all Roman numerals to uppercase, and the `es-lcroman` option turns all Roman numerals to lowercase; the former should be preferred over the latter. Three macros control local changes to Roman numbers: `\spanishscroman`, `\spanishucroman`, and `\spanishlcroman`.
- The `es-preindex` option calls the `romanidx.sty` package automatically to fix index entries in smallcaps roman form. An additional macro, `\spanishindexchars{<encap>}{<openrange>}{<closerange>}` determines the characters delimiting index entries. Defaults are `\spanishindexchars{|}{(}{)}`.
- The `es-tilden` option restores the old tilde `~` shorthand for `ñ`. This shorthand is however *strongly* deprecated.
- The `es-nolayout` option disables layout changes in the document when `spanish` is the main language. These changes affect enumerated and itemized lists, enumerations (alphabetic order excludes `ñ`), and symbolic footnotes.
- The `es-noshorthands` disables the shorthand mechanism completely: neither `"` nor `'` nor `<` nor `>` nor `~` nor `.` work at all.
- The `es-noquoting` option disables the macros `<<` and `>>` calling the `quoting` environment; the alternative macros `"'` and `"'` are still available.
- The `es-uppernames` option makes uppercase versions of captions for chapter, tablename, etc.
- The `es-tabla` option changes “cuadro” for “tabla” in captions.

Finally, the Spanish 5 series begins the implementation of national variations of Spanish typography, beginning with Mexico. Thus the global options `mexico` and `mexico-com` are adapted to practices spread in Mexico, and perhaps Central America, the Caribbean, and some countries in South America.<sup>33</sup>

Many of the global options are implemented via macros, which may be included in the configuration file `spanish.cfg`, in the preamble, after the call to `babel`, and in the body of the document. These macros are the following.

- The macros `\spanishdashitems` and `\spanishsignitems` change the values of itemized lists to a series of dashes or an alternative series of symbols, respectively.

<sup>33</sup>The main difference is that `mexico` disables the `decimaldot` mechanism, while `mexico-com` keeps it enabled; both change the `quoting` environment, disabling the use of guillemets.



<code>\lquote</code>	"<
<code>\rquote</code>	">
<code>\lquotii</code>	“
<code>\rquotii</code>	”
<code>\lquotiii</code>	‘
<code>\rquotiii</code>	’

Table 11: Default quoting signs set for the `quoting` environment.

- The command `\deactivatequoting` deactivates the `<<` and `>>` shorthands if you want to use `<` and `>` in numerical comparisons and some AMST<sub>EX</sub> commands.
- You may kill the space in spaced operators with `\unspacedoperators`.
- You may kill the accents on accented operators with `\unaccentedoperators`.
- The command `\decimalpoint` resets the decimal separator to its default (dot) value, while `\spanishdecimal{<symbol>}` allows for an arbitrary definition.
- `\spanishplainpercent` prevents the addition of a thinspace before the percent sign in texts. This might be useful for parenthesized percent signs in tables, etc.
- The macros `\spanishdatedel` and `\spanishdatede` control the if the article is given in years (`del` or `de`).
- The macro `\spanishreverseddate` sets the date of the format “Month Day del Year”.
- The macro `\Today` gives months in uppercase.
- The macros `\spanishcaption` change the value of the `caption` automatically (no need to add an `\addto`).
- The command `\spanishdeactivate{<characters>}` disables the shorthand characters listed in the argument. Eligible characters are the set `.'~<>`. These shorthand characters may be globally deactivated for Spanish adding this command to `\shorthandsspanish`.
- Extras are divided in groups controlled by the commands `\textspanish`, `\mathspanish`, `\shorthandsspanish` y `\layoutspanish`; their values may be cancelled typing `\renewcommand{<command>}{}`, or changed at will (check the Spanish documentation or the code for details).
- The command `\spanishoperators{<operators>}` defines command names for operators in Spanish. There is no standard name for some of them, so they may be created or changed at will. For instance, the command `\renewcommand{\spanishoperators}{arc\,ctg m\acute{i}n}` creates commands for these functions. The command `\,` adds thinspaces at the appropriate places for spaced operators (like `\arcctg` in this case), and the command `\acute{<letter>}` adds an accent to the letter included in the definition (thus, `m\acute{i}n` defines the accented function `\min` (mín); please notice that `\dotlessi` is not necessary).
- The commands `\lquote{<string>}` `\rquote{<string>}` `\lquotii{<string>}` `\rquotii{<string>}` `\lquotiii{<string>}` `\rquotiii{<string>}` set the quoting signs in the `quoting` environment, nested from outside in. They may be `\renewed` at will. Default values are shown in table 11.

- The command `\selectspanish*` is obsolete: if `spanish` is the main language, all its features are available right after loading `babel`. The `es-delayed` option is provided to restore the previous behavior and macros for backwards compatibility.

## 36.1 The Code

This file provides definition for both  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  and non  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  formats.

```

36.1 (*code)
36.2 \ProvidesLanguage{spanish.1df}
36.3     [2007/02/21 v5.0a Spanish support from the babel system]
36.4 \LdfInit{spanish}\captionsspanish
36.5
36.6 \edef\es@savedcatcodes{%
36.7   \catcode'\noexpand\~=\the\catcode'\~
36.8   \catcode'\noexpand\"=\the\catcode'\"}
36.9 \catcode'\~=\active
36.10 \catcode\"=12
36.11
36.12 \ifx\undefined\l@spanish
36.13   \nopatterns{Spanish}
36.14   \adddialect\l@spanish0
36.15 \fi
36.16
36.17 \def\es@sdef#1{\babel@save#1\def#1}
36.18
36.19 \@ifundefined{documentclass}
36.20   {\let\ifes@latex\iffalse}
36.21   {\let\ifes@latex\iftrue}
36.22 \ifes@latex
36.23
36.24 \@ifundefined{spanishoptions}{}
36.25 {\PassOptionsToPackage{\spanishoptions}{babel}}
36.26
36.27 \def\es@genoption#1#2#3{%
36.28   \DeclareOption{#1}{}%
36.29   \@ifpackagewith{babel}{#1}%
36.30   {\def\es@a{#1}%
36.31     \expandafter\let\expandafter\es@b\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname
36.32     \addto\es@b{, #2}%
36.33     \expandafter\let\csname opt@babel.sty\endcsname\es@b
36.34     \AtEndOfPackage{#3}}%
36.35   {}}
36.36
36.37 \es@genoption{es-minimal}
36.38 {es-ucroman,es-noindentfirst,es-nosectiondot,es-nolists,%
36.39  es-noquoting,es-notilde,es-nodecimaldot}
36.40 {\spanishplainpercent
36.41  \let\es@operators\relax}
36.42 \es@genoption{es-sloppy}
36.43 {es-nolayout,es-noshorthands}{}
36.44 \es@genoption{es-noshorthands}
36.45 {es-noquoting,es-nodecimaldot,es-notilde}{}
36.46 \es@genoption{mexico}
36.47 {mexico-com,es-nodecimaldot}{}
36.48 \es@genoption{mexico-com}
36.49 {es-tabla,es-noquoting}
36.50 {\def\lquotei{'}\def\rquotei{'}}%
36.51 \def\lquoteii{'}\def\rquoteii{'}}%

```

```

36.52 \def\lquotiii{\guillemotleft{}}%
36.53 \def\rquotiii{\guillemotright{}}%
36.54
36.55 \def\es@ifoption#1#2#3{%
36.56 \DeclareOption{es-#1}{}%
36.57 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{es-#1}{#2}{#3}}%
36.58
36.59 \def\es@optlayout#1#2{\es@ifoption{#1}{}{\addto\layoutspanish{#2}}}
36.60
36.61 \else
36.62
36.63 \def\es@ifoption#1#2#3{\@namedef{spanish#1}{#2}}
36.64
36.65 \fi
36.66
36.67 \let\es@uclc\@secondoftwo
36.68 \es@ifoption{uppernames}{\let\es@uclc\@firstoftwo}{%}
36.69
36.70 \def\es@tablename{Ccuadro}
36.71 \es@ifoption{tabla}{\def\es@tablename{Tabla}}{ }
36.72 \es@ifoption{cuadro}{\def\es@tablename{Ccuadro}}{ }

```

Captions follow a two step schema, so that, say, `\refname` is defined as `\spanishrefname` which in turn contains the string to be printed. The final definition of `\captionsspanish` is built below.

```

36.73 \def\captionsspanish{%
36.74 \es@a{preface}{Prefacio}%
36.75 \es@a{ref}{Referencias}%
36.76 \es@a{abstract}{Resumen}%
36.77 \es@a{bib}{Bibliograf\'}{\i}a}%
36.78 \es@a{chapter}{Cap\'}{\i}tulo}%
36.79 \es@a{appendix}{Ap\'}{e}ndice}%
36.80 \es@a{listfigure}{\'}{I}ndice de \es@uclc Ffiguras}%
36.81 \es@a{listtable}{\'}{I}ndice de \expandafter\es@uclc\es@tablename s}%
36.82 \es@a{index}{\'}{I}ndice \es@uclc Aalfab\'}{e}tico}%
36.83 \es@a{figure}{Figura}%
36.84 \es@a{table}{\expandafter\@firstoftwo\es@tablename}%
36.85 \es@a{part}{Parte}%
36.86 \es@a{encl}{Adjunto}%
36.87 \es@a{cc}{Copia a}%
36.88 \es@a{headto}{A}%
36.89 \es@a{page}{p\'}{a}gina}%
36.90 \es@a{see}{v\'}{e}ase}%
36.91 \es@a{also}{v\'}{e}ase tambi\'}{e}n}%
36.92 \es@a{proof}{Demostraci\'}{o}n}%
36.93 \es@a{glossary}{Glosario}%
36.94 \@ifundefined{chapter}
36.95 {\es@a{contents}{\'}Indice}}%
36.96 {\es@a{contents}{\'}Indice \es@uclc Ggeneral}}%
36.97
36.98 \def\es@a#1{\@namedef{spanish#1name}}
36.99 \captionsspanish
36.100 \def\es@a#1#2{%
36.101 \def\expandafter\noexpand\csname#1name\endcsname
36.102 {\expandafter\noexpand\csname spanish#1name\endcsname}}
36.103 \edef\captionsspanish{\captionsspanish}

```

Now two macros for dates (upper and lowercase).

```

36.104 \def\es@month#1{%
36.105 \expandafter#1\ifcase\month\or Enero\or Ffebrero\or
36.106 Mmarzo\or Aabril\or Mmayo\or Jjunio\or Jjulio\or Aagosto\or
36.107 Sseptiembre\or Ooctubre\or Nnoviembre\or Ddiciembre\fi}
36.108

```

```

36.109 \def\es@today#1{%
36.110 \ifcase\es@datefmt
36.111 \the\day~de \es@month#1%
36.112 \else
36.113 \es@month#1~\the\day
36.114 \fi
36.115 \ de\ifnum\year>1999\es@year1\fi~\the\year}
36.116
36.117 \def\datespanish{%
36.118 \def\today{\es@today\@secondoftwo}%
36.119 \def\Today{\es@today\@firstoftwo}}
36.120 \newcount\es@datefmt
36.121 \def\spanishreverseddate{\es@datefmt\@ne}
36.122 \def\spanishdatedel{\def\es@year1{1}}
36.123 \def\spanishdatede{\let\es@year1\@empty}
36.124 \spanishdatede

```

The basic macros to select the language in the preamble or the config file. Use of `\selectlanguage` should be avoided at this early stage because the active chars are not yet active. `\selectspanish` makes them active.

```

36.125 \def\selectspanish{%
36.126 \def\selectspanish{%
36.127 \def\selectspanish{%
36.128 \PackageWarning{spanish}{Extra \string\selectspanish ignored}}%
36.129 \es@select}}
36.130 \@onlypreamble\selectspanish
36.131 \def\es@select{%
36.132 \let\es@select\@undefined
36.133 \selectlanguage{spanish}}
36.134
36.135 \let\es@shlist\@empty

```

Instead of joining all the extras directly in `\extrasspanish`, we subdivide them in three further groups.

```

36.136 \def\extrasspanish{%
36.137 \textspanish
36.138 \mathspanish
36.139 \ifx\shorthandsspanish\@empty
36.140 \expandafter\spanishdeactivate\expandafter{\es@shlist}%
36.141 \languageshorthands{none}%
36.142 \else
36.143 \shorthandsspanish
36.144 \fi}
36.145 \def\noextrasspanish{%
36.146 \ifx\textspanish\@empty\else
36.147 \notextspanish
36.148 \fi
36.149 \ifx\mathspanish\@empty\else
36.150 \nomathspanish
36.151 \fi
36.152 \ifx\shorthandsspanish\@empty\else
36.153 \noshorthandsspanish
36.154 \fi
36.155 \csname es@restorelist\endcsname}
36.156
36.157 \addto\textspanish{\es@sdef\sptext{\protect\es@sptext}}
36.158
36.159 \def\es@orddot{.}

```

The definition of `\sptext` is more elaborated than that of `\textsuperscript`. With uppercase superscript text the `scriptscriptsize` is used. The mandatory dot is already included. There are two versions, depending on the format.

```

36.160 \ifes@latex
36.161 \def\es@sptext#1{%
36.162   {\es@orddot
36.163    \setbox\z@\hbox{8}\dimen@ht\z@
36.164    \csname S@f@size\endcsname
36.165    \edef\@tempa{\def\noexpand\@tempc{#1}%
36.166     \lowercase{\def\noexpand\@tempb{#1}}}\@tempa
36.167    \ifx\@tempb\@tempc
36.168     \fontsize\sf@size\z@
36.169     \selectfont
36.170     \advance\dimen@-1.15ex
36.171    \else
36.172     \fontsize\ssf@size\z@
36.173     \selectfont
36.174     \advance\dimen@-1.5ex
36.175    \fi
36.176    \math@fontsfalse\raise\dimen@\hbox{#1}}}}
36.177 \else
36.178 \let\sptextfont\rm
36.179 \def\es@sptext#1{%
36.180   {\es@orddot
36.181    \setbox\z@\hbox{8}\dimen@ht\z@
36.182    \edef\@tempa{\def\noexpand\@tempc{#1}%
36.183     \lowercase{\def\noexpand\@tempb{#1}}}\@tempa
36.184    \ifx\@tempb\@tempc
36.185     \advance\dimen@-0.75ex
36.186     \raise\dimen@\hbox{\scriptstyle\sptextfont#1}%
36.187    \else
36.188     \advance\dimen@-0.8ex
36.189     \raise\dimen@\hbox{\scriptscriptstyle\sptextfont#1}%
36.190    \fi}}
36.191 \fi

```

Now, lowercase small caps. First, we test if there are actual small caps for the current font. If not, faked small caps are used. The `\selectfont` in `\es@lsc` could seem redundant, but it's not. An intermediate macro allows using an optimized variant for Roman numerals.

```

36.192 \ifes@latex
36.193 \addto\textspanish{\es@sdef\lsc{\protect\es@lsc}}
36.194 \def\es@lsc{\es@xlsc\MakeUppercase\MakeLowercase}
36.195 \def\es@xlsc#1#2#3{%
36.196   \leavevmode
36.197   \hbox{%
36.198     \scshape\selectfont
36.199     \expandafter\ifx\csname\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series
36.200       /n/\f@size\expandafter\endcsname
36.201     \csname\curr@fontshape/\f@size\endcsname
36.202     \csname S@f@size\endcsname
36.203     \fontsize\sf@size\z@\selectfont
36.204     \PackageWarning{spanish}{Replacing ‘\curr@fontshape’ by
36.205       \MessageBreak faked small caps}%
36.206     #1{#3}%
36.207   \else
36.208     #2{#3}%
36.209   \fi}}
36.210 \fi

```

The quoting environment. This part is not available in Plain. Overriding the default `\everypar` is a bit tricky.

```

36.211 \newif\ifes@listquot
36.212
36.213 \ifes@latex
36.214 \csname newtoks\endcsname\es@quottoks

```

```

36.215 \csname newcount\endcsname\es@quotdepth
36.216 \newenvironment{quoting}
36.217 {\leavevmode
36.218 \advance\es@quotdepth\@ne
36.219 \csname lquot\romannumeral\es@quotdepth\endcsname%
36.220 \ifnum\es@quotdepth=\@ne
36.221 \es@listquotfalse
36.222 \let\es@quotpar\everypar
36.223 \let\everypar\es@quottoks
36.224 \everypar\expandafter{\the\es@quotpar}%
36.225 \es@quotpar{\the\everypar
36.226 \ifes@listquot\global\es@listquotfalse\else\es@quotcont\fi}%
36.227 \fi
36.228 \toks@\expandafter{\es@quotcont}%
36.229 \edef\es@quotcont{\the\toks@
36.230 \expandafter\noexpand
36.231 \csname rquot\romannumeral\es@quotdepth\endcsname}}
36.232 {\csname rquot\romannumeral\es@quotdepth\endcsname}
36.233 \def\lquoti{\guillemotleft{}}
36.234 \def\rquoti{\guillemotright{}}
36.235 \def\lquotii{'{'}
36.236 \def\rquotii{'}'}
36.237 \def\lquotiii{'{'}
36.238 \def\rquotiii{'}'}
36.239 \let\es@quotcont\@empty

```

If there is a margin par inside quoting, we don't add the quotes. `\es@listquot` stores the quotes to be used before item labels; otherwise they could appear after the labels.

```

36.240 \addto\@marginparreset{\let\es@quotcont\@empty}
36.241 \DeclareRobustCommand\es@listquot{%
36.242 \csname rquot\romannumeral\es@quotdepth\endcsname
36.243 \global\es@listquottrue}
36.244 \fi

```

Now, the `\frenchspacing`, followed by `\dots` and `\%`.

```

36.245 \addto\textspanish{\bbl@frenchspacing}
36.246 \addto\notextspanish{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
36.247 \addto\textspanish{%
36.248 \let\es@save@dot\.%
36.249 \es@sdef\.\{\@ifnextchar.\{\es@dots}\{\es@save@dot}\}}
36.250 \def\es@dots..\{\leavevmode\hbox{...}\spacefactor\M}
36.251 \def\es@sppercent{\unskip\textormath{\$m@th\,$}\{,\}}
36.252 \def\spanishplainpercent{\let\es@sppercent\@empty}
36.253 \addto\textspanish{%
36.254 \let\percentsign\%%
36.255 \es@sdef\%\{\es@sppercent\percentsign}\}}

```

We follow with the math group. It's not easy to add an accent to an operator. The difficulty is that we must avoid using text (that is, `\mbox`) because we have no control on font and size, and at time we should access `\i`, which is a text command forbidden in math mode. `\dotlessi` must be converted to uppercase if necessary in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>. There are two versions, depending on the format.

```

36.256 \addto\mathspanish{\es@sdef\dotlessi{\protect\es@dotlessi}}
36.257 \let\nomathspanish\relax
36.258
36.259 \ifes@latex
36.260 \def\es@texti{\i}
36.261 \addto\@uclclist{\dotlessi\es@texti}
36.262 \fi
36.263
36.264 \ifes@latex

```

```

36.265 \def\es@dotlessi{%
36.266 \ifmmode
36.267   {\ifnum\mathgroup=\m@ne
36.268     \imath
36.269     \else
36.270       \count@\escapechar \escapechar=\m@ne
36.271       \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
36.272         \split@name\expandafter\string\the\textfont\mathgroup\@nil
36.273         \escapechar=\count@
36.274         \@ifundefined{f@encoding\string\i}%
36.275           {\edef\f@encoding{\string?}}{}}%
36.276       \expandafter\count@\the\csname\f@encoding\string\i\endcsname
36.277       \advance\count@"7000
36.278       \mathchar\count@
36.279       \fi}%
36.280 \else
36.281   \i
36.282   \fi}
36.283 \else
36.284   \def\es@dotlessi{\textormath{\i}{\mathchar"7010}}
36.285 \fi
36.286
36.287 \def\accentedoperators{%
36.288   \def\es@op@ac##1{\acute{\if i##1\dotlessi\else##1\fi}}
36.289 \def\unaccentedoperators{%
36.290   \def\es@op@ac##1{##1}}
36.291 \accentedoperators
36.292 \def\spacedoperators{\let\es@op@sp\,}
36.293 \def\unspacedoperators{\let\es@op@sp@empty}
36.294 \spacedoperators
36.295 \addto\mathspanish{\es@operators}
36.296
36.297 \ifes@latex\else
36.298   \let\operator@font\rm
36.299 \fi

```

The operators are stored in `\es@operators`, which in turn is included in the math group. Since `\operator@font` is defined in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> only, we defined in the plain variant.

```

36.300 \def\es@operators{%
36.301   \es@sdef\bmod{\nonscript\mskip-\medmuskip\mkern5mu
36.302     \mathbin{\operator@font m\es@op@ac od}\penalty900\mkern5mu
36.303     \nonscript\mskip-\medmuskip}%
36.304   \@ifundefined{@amsmath@err}%
36.305     {\es@sdef\pmod##11{\allowbreak\mkern18mu
36.306       ({\operator@font m\es@op@ac od}\,\,\,##11)}}%
36.307     {\es@sdef\mod##11{\allowbreak\if@display\mkern18mu
36.308       \else\mkern12mu\fi{\operator@font m\es@op@ac od}\,\,\,##11}%
36.309     \es@sdef\pmod##11{\pod{{\operator@font m\es@op@ac od}}%
36.310       \mkern6mu##11}}}%
36.311   \def\es@a##1 {%
36.312     \if^##1^% empty? continue
36.313     \bbl@afterelse
36.314     \es@a
36.315   \else
36.316     \bbl@afterfi
36.317     {\if&##1% &? finish
36.318     \else
36.319       \bbl@afterfi
36.320       \begingroup
36.321       \let\,\@empty % ignore when def'ing name
36.322       \let\acute\@firstofone % id
36.323       \edef\es@b{\expandafter\noexpand\csname##1\endcsname}}%

```

```

36.324 \def\,{\noexpand\es@op@sp}%
36.325 \def\acute{\noexpand\es@op@ac}%
36.326 \edef\es@a{\endgroup
36.327 \noexpand\es@sdef\expandafter\noexpand\es@b{%
36.328 \mathop{\noexpand\operator@font##1}\nolimits}}%
36.329 \es@a % restores itself
36.330 \es@a
36.331 \fi}%
36.332 \fi}%
36.333 \let\es@b\spanishoperators
36.334 \addto\es@b{ }%
36.335 \expandafter\es@a\es@b l\acute{m} l\acute{m}\,sup
36.336 l\acute{m}\,inf m\acute{a}x \acute{m}nf m\acute{m}n
36.337 sen tg arc\,sen arc\,cos arc\,tg & }
36.338 \def\spanishoperators{cotg cosec sinh tgh }

```

Now comes the text shorthands. They are grouped in `\shorthandsspanish` and this style performs some operations before the babel shorthands are called. The aims are to allow expression like  $a^x$  and to deactivate shorthands by making them of category ‘other.’ After providing a `\i` shorthand, the new macros are defined.

```

36.339 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\'}{OT1}{i}{\@tabacckludge'\i}
36.340
36.341 \def\es@set@shorthand#1{%
36.342 \expandafter\edef\csname es@savecat\string#1\endcsname
36.343 {\the\catcode'#1}%
36.344 \initiate@active@char{#1}%
36.345 \catcode'#1=\csname es@savecat\string#1\endcsname\relax
36.346 \if.#1\else
36.347 \addto\es@restorelist{\es@restore{#1}}%
36.348 \addto\es@select{\shorthandon{#1}}%
36.349 \addto\shorthandsspanish{\es@activate{#1}}%
36.350 \addto\es@shlist{#1}%
36.351 \fi}
36.352
36.353 \def\es@use@shorthand{%
36.354 \ifx\thepage\relax
36.355 \bbl@afterelse
36.356 \string
36.357 \else
36.358 \bbl@afterfi
36.359 {\ifx\protect\@unexpandable\protect
36.360 \bbl@afterelse
36.361 \noexpand
36.362 \else
36.363 \bbl@afterfi
36.364 \es@use@sh
36.365 \fi}%
36.366 \fi}
36.367
36.368 \def\es@use@sh#1{%
36.369 \if@safe@actives
36.370 \bbl@afterelse
36.371 \string#1%
36.372 \else%
36.373 \bbl@afterfi
36.374 \textormath
36.375 {\csname active@char\string#1\endcsname}%
36.376 {\csname normal@char\string#1\endcsname}%
36.377 \fi}
36.378
36.379 \gdef\es@activate#1{%

```



```

36.380 \begingroup
36.381 \lccode'\~='#1
36.382 \lowercase{%
36.383 \endgroup
36.384 \def~{\es@use@shorthand~}}
36.385
36.386 \def\spanishdeactivate#1{%
36.387 \tfor\@tempa:=#1\do{\expandafter\es@spdeactivate\@tempa}}
36.388
36.389 \def\es@spdeactivate#1{%
36.390 \if.#1%
36.391 \mathcode'\.\=\es@period@code
36.392 \else
36.393 \begingroup
36.394 \lccode'\~='#1
36.395 \lowercase{%
36.396 \endgroup
36.397 \expandafter\let\expandafter~%
36.398 \csname normal@char\string#1\endcsname}%
36.399 \catcode'#1=\csname es@savecat\string#1\endcsname\relax
36.400 \fi}

```

`\es@restore` is used in the list `\es@restorelist`, which in turn restores all shorthands as defined by `babel`. The latter macros also has `\es@quoting`.

```

36.401 \def\es@restore#1{%
36.402 \shorthandon{#1}%
36.403 \begingroup
36.404 \lccode'\~='#1
36.405 \lowercase{%
36.406 \endgroup
36.407 \bbl@deactivate{~}}

```

To selectively define the shorthands we have a couple of macros, which defines a certain combination if the first character has been activated as a shorthand. The second one is intended for a few shorthands with an alternative form.

```

36.408 \def\es@declare#1{%
36.409 \@ifundefined{es@savecat\expandafter\string\@firstoftwo#1}%
36.410 {\@gobble}%
36.411 {\declare@shorthand{spanish}{#1}}}
36.412 \def\es@declarealt#1#2#3{%
36.413 \es@declare{#1}{#3}%
36.414 \es@declare{#2}{#3}}
36.415
36.416 \ifes@latex\else
36.417 \def\@tabacckludge#1{\csname\string#1\endcsname}
36.418 \fi
36.419
36.420 \@ifundefined{add@accent}{\def\add@accent#1#2{\accent#1 #2}}{}

```

Instead of redefining `\'`, we redefine the internal macro for the OT1 encoding.

```

36.421 \ifes@latex
36.422 \def\es@accent#1#2#3{%
36.423 \expandafter\@text@composite
36.424 \csname OT1\string#1\endcsname#3\@empty\@text@composite
36.425 {\bbl@allowhyphens\add@accent{#2}{#3}\bbl@allowhyphens
36.426 \setbox\@tempboxa\hbox{#3%
36.427 \global\mathchardef\accent@spacefactor\spacefactor}%
36.428 \spacefactor\accent@spacefactor}}
36.429 \else
36.430 \def\es@accent#1#2#3{%
36.431 \bbl@allowhyphens\add@accent{#2}{#3}\bbl@allowhyphens
36.432 \spacefactor\sffcode'#3 }
36.433 \fi

```

```

36.434
36.435 \addto\shorthandsspanish{\languageshorthands{spanish}}%
36.436 \es@ifoption{noshorthands}{-}{\es@set@shorthand{}}

    We override the default " of babel, intended for german.

36.437 \def\es@umlaut#1{%
36.438 \bbl@allowhyphens\add@accent{127}#1\bbl@allowhyphens
36.439 \spacefactor\sfcodes#1 }
36.440
36.441 \addto\shorthandsspanish{%
36.442 \babel@save\bbl@umlauta
36.443 \let\bbl@umlauta\es@umlaut}
36.444 \let\noshorthandsspanish\relax
36.445
36.446 \ifes@latex
36.447 \addto\shorthandsspanish{%
36.448 \expandafter\es@sdef\csname OT1\string\~\endcsname{\es@accent\~{126}}%
36.449 \expandafter\es@sdef\csname OT1\string\' \endcsname{\es@accent\'{19}}
36.450 \else
36.451 \addto\shorthandsspanish{%
36.452 \es@sdef\~{\es@accent\~{126}}%
36.453 \es@sdef\'#1{\if#1i\es@accent\'{19}\i\else\es@accent\'{19}{#1}\fi}}
36.454 \fi
36.455
36.456 \def\es@sptext@r#1#2{\es@sptext{#1#2}}
36.457 \es@declare{"a}{\sptext{a}}
36.458 \es@declare{"A}{\sptext{A}}
36.459 \es@declare{"o}{\sptext{o}}
36.460 \es@declare{"0}{\sptext{0}}
36.461 \es@declare{"e}{\protect\es@sptext@r{e}}
36.462 \es@declare{"E}{\protect\es@sptext@r{E}}
36.463 \es@declare{"u}{\u}
36.464 \es@declare{"U}{\U}
36.465 \es@declare{"i}{\i}
36.466 \es@declare{"I}{\I}
36.467 \es@declare{"c}{\c}
36.468 \es@declare{"C}{\C}
36.469 \es@declare{"<}{\guillemotleft}
36.470 \es@declare{">}{\guillemotright}
36.471 \def\es@chf{\char\hyphenchar\font}
36.472 \es@declare{"-}{\bbl@allowhyphens-\bbl@allowhyphens}
36.473 \es@declare{"="}{\bbl@allowhyphens\es@chf\hskip\z@skip}
36.474 \es@declare{"~}
36.475 {\bbl@allowhyphens
36.476 \discretionary{\es@chf}{\es@chf}{\es@chf}%
36.477 \bbl@allowhyphens}
36.478 \es@declare{"r}
36.479 {\bbl@allowhyphens
36.480 \discretionary{\es@chf}{\es@chf}{r}%
36.481 \bbl@allowhyphens}
36.482 \es@declare{"R}
36.483 {\bbl@allowhyphens
36.484 \discretionary{\es@chf}{\es@chf}{R}%
36.485 \bbl@allowhyphens}
36.486 \es@declare{"y}
36.487 {\@ifundefined{scalebox}%
36.488 {\ensuremath{\tau}}%
36.489 {\raisebox{1ex}{\scalebox{-1}{\resizebox{.45em}{1ex}{2}}}}
36.490 \es@declare{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
36.491 \es@declare{"/"}
36.492 {\setbox\z@\hbox{/}%
36.493 \dimen@ht\z@
36.494 \advance\dimen@-1ex

```

```

36.495 \advance\dimen@ \dp \z@
36.496 \dimen@ .31 \dimen@
36.497 \advance\dimen@ - \dp \z@
36.498 \ifdim \dimen@ > 0pt
36.499 \kern .01em \lower \dimen@ \box \z@ \kern .03em
36.500 \else
36.501 \box \z@
36.502 \fi}
36.503 \es@declare{"?}
36.504 {\setbox \z@ \hbox{"? '%}
36.505 \leavevmode \raise \dp \z@ \box \z@}
36.506 \es@declare{"!}
36.507 {\setbox \z@ \hbox{"! '%}
36.508 \leavevmode \raise \dp \z@ \box \z@}
36.509
36.510 \def \spanishdecimal#1{\def \es@decimal{{#1}}}
36.511 \def \decimalcomma{\spanishdecimal{,}}
36.512 \def \decimalpoint{\spanishdecimal{.}}
36.513 \decimalcomma
36.514 \es@ifoption{nodecimaldot}{%
36.515 {\AtBeginDocument{\bgroup \@fileswfalse}%
36.516 \es@set@shorthand{.}%
36.517 \AtBeginDocument{\egroup}%
36.518 \@namedef{normal@char\string.}{%
36.519 \@ifnextchar \egroup
36.520 {\mathchar \es@period@code \relax}%
36.521 {\csname active@char\string.\endcsname}}%
36.522 \declare@shorthand{system}{.}{\mathchar \es@period@code \relax}%
36.523 \addto\shorthandsspanish{%
36.524 \mathchardef \es@period@code \the \mathcode '\.%
36.525 \babel@savevariable{\mathcode '\.%}
36.526 \mathcode '\.="8000 %
36.527 \es@activatef.}}%
36.528 \def \es@a#1{\es@declare{.#1}{\es@decimal#1}}%
36.529 \es@a1 \es@a2 \es@a3 \es@a4 \es@a5 \es@a6 \es@a7 \es@a8 \es@a9 \es@a0}
36.530
36.531 \es@ifoption{notilde}{%}{\es@set@shorthand{~}}
36.532 \def \deactivatetilden{%
36.533 \expandafter \let \csname spanish@sh@\string~@n@ \endcsname \relax
36.534 \expandafter \let \csname spanish@sh@\string~@N@ \endcsname \relax}
36.535 \es@ifoption{tilden}
36.536 {\es@declare{~n}{~n}%
36.537 \es@declare{~N}{~N}}
36.538 {\let \deactivatetilden \relax}
36.539 \es@declarealt{~}{~+}{%
36.540 \leavevmode
36.541 \bgroup
36.542 \let \sptoken \es@dashes % Changes \@ifnextchar behaviour
36.543 \@ifnextchar -%
36.544 {\es@dashes}%
36.545 {\hbox{\es@chf}\egroup}}
36.546 \def \es@dashes -{%
36.547 \@ifnextchar -%
36.548 {\bbl@allowhyphens \hbox{---} \bbl@allowhyphens \egroup \gobble}%
36.549 {\bbl@allowhyphens \hbox{--} \bbl@allowhyphens \egroup}}
36.550
36.551 \es@ifoption{noquoting}%
36.552 {\let \es@quoting \relax
36.553 \let \activatequoting \relax
36.554 \let \deactivatequoting \relax}
36.555 {\@ifundefined{XML@catcodes}%
36.556 {\es@set@shorthand{<}}%

```

```

36.557 \es@set@shorthand{>}%
36.558 \declare@shorthand{system}{<}{\csname normal@char\string<\endcsname}%
36.559 \declare@shorthand{system}{>}{\csname normal@char\string>\endcsname}%
36.560 \addto\es@restorelist{\es@quoting}%
36.561 \addto\es@select{\es@quoting}%
36.562 \if@latex
36.563 \AtBeginDocument{%
36.564 \es@quoting
36.565 \if@filesw
36.566 \immediate\write\@mainaux{\string\@nameuse{es@quoting}}%
36.567 \fi}%
36.568 \fi
36.569 \def\activatequoting{%
36.570 \shorthandon{<>}%
36.571 \let\es@quoting\activatequoting}%
36.572 \def\deactivatequoting{%
36.573 \shorthandoff{<>}%
36.574 \let\es@quoting\deactivatequoting}}{}
36.575
36.576 \es@declarealt{<<}{" '}{\begin{quoting}}
36.577 \es@declarealt{>>}{" '}{\end{quoting}}

```

Acute accent shorthands are stored in a macro. If `activeacute` was set as an option it's executed. If not is not deleted for a possible later use in the `cfg` file. In non L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> formats is always executed.

```

36.578 \begingroup
36.579 \catcode'\'=12
36.580 \gdef\es@activeacute{%
36.581 \es@set@shorthand{'}%
36.582 \def\es@a##1{\es@declare{'##1}{\@tabacckludge'##1}}%
36.583 \es@a a\es@a e\es@a i\es@a o\es@a u%
36.584 \es@a A\es@a E\es@a I\es@a O\es@a U%
36.585 \es@declare{'n}{\~n}%
36.586 \es@declare{'N}{\~N}%

```

But spanish allows two category codes for `'`, so both should be taken into account in `\bbl@pr@m@s`.

```

36.587 \let\es@pr@m@s\bbl@pr@m@s
36.588 \def\bbl@pr@m@s{%
36.589 \ifx'\@let@token
36.590 \bbl@afterelse
36.591 \pr@@@s
36.592 \else
36.593 \bbl@afterfi
36.594 \es@pr@m@s
36.595 \fi}%
36.596 \let\es@activeacute\relax}
36.597 \endgroup
36.598
36.599 \if@latex
36.600 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{\es@activeacute}{}
36.601 \else
36.602 \es@activeacute
36.603 \fi

```

And the customization. By default these macros only store the values and do nothing.

```

36.604 \def\es@enumerate#1#2#3#4{\def\es@enum{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}}
36.605 \def\es@itemize#1#2#3#4{\def\es@item{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}}
36.606
36.607 \if@latex
36.608 \es@enumerate{1.}{a)}{1)}{a'$}
36.609 \def\spanishdashitems{\es@itemize{---}{---}{---}{---}}

```

```

36.610 \def\spanishsybitems{%
36.611 \es@itemize
36.612 {\leavevmode\hbox to 1.2ex
36.613 {\hss\vrule height .9ex width .7ex depth -.2ex\hss}}%
36.614 {\textbullet}%
36.615 {\$@m@th\circ$}%
36.616 {\$@m@th\diamond$}}
36.617 \def\spanishsignitems{%
36.618 \es@itemize{\textbullet}%
36.619 {\$@m@th\circ$}%
36.620 {\$@m@th\diamond$}%
36.621 {\$@m@th\triangleright$}}
36.622 \spanishsybitems
36.623 \def\es@enumdef#1#2#3\@@{%
36.624 \if#21%
36.625 \@namedef{theenum#1}{\arabic{enum#1}}%
36.626 \else\if#2a%
36.627 \@namedef{theenum#1}{\emph{\alph{enum#1}}}%
36.628 \else\if#2A%
36.629 \@namedef{theenum#1}{\Alph{enum#1}}%
36.630 \else\if#2i%
36.631 \@namedef{theenum#1}{\roman{enum#1}}%
36.632 \else\if#2I%
36.633 \@namedef{theenum#1}{\Roman{enum#1}}%
36.634 \else\if#2o%
36.635 \@namedef{theenum#1}{\arabic{enum#1}\sptext{o}}%
36.636 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
36.637 \toks@\expandafter{\csname theenum#1\endcsname}%
36.638 \expandafter\edef\csname labelenum#1\endcsname
36.639 {\noexpand\es@listquot\the\toks@#3}}
36.640 \def\es@guillemot#1#2{%
36.641 \ifmmode#1%
36.642 \else
36.643 \save@sf@q{\penalty\@M
36.644 \leavevmode\hbox{\usefont{U}{lasy}{m}{n}%
36.645 \char#2 \kern-0.19em\char#2 }}%
36.646 \fi}
36.647 \def\layoutspanish{%
36.648 \let\layoutspanish\@empty
36.649 \DeclareTextCommand\guillemotleft{OT1}{\es@guillemot\ll{40}}%
36.650 \DeclareTextCommand\guillemotright{OT1}{\es@guillemot\gg{41}}%
36.651 \def\@fnsymbol##1%
36.652 {\ifcase##1\or*\or**\or***\or****\or
36.653 *****\or*****\else\@ctrerr\fi}%
36.654 \def\@alph##1%
36.655 {\ifcase##1\or a\or b\or c\or d\or e\or f\or g\or h\or i\or j\or
36.656 k\or l\or m\or n\or \~n\or o\or p\or q\or r\or s\or t\or u\or v\or
36.657 w\or x\or y\or z\else\@ctrerr\fi}%
36.658 \def\@Alph##1%
36.659 {\ifcase##1\or A\or B\or C\or D\or E\or F\or G\or H\or I\or J\or
36.660 K\or L\or M\or N\or \~N\or O\or P\or Q\or R\or S\or T\or U\or V\or
36.661 W\or X\or Y\or Z\else\@ctrerr\fi}}
36.662
36.663 \es@optlayout{nolists}{%
36.664 \def\es@enumerate#1#2#3#4{%
36.665 \es@enumdef{i}#1\@empty\@empty\@@
36.666 \es@enumdef{ii}#2\@empty\@empty\@@
36.667 \es@enumdef{iii}#3\@empty\@empty\@@
36.668 \es@enumdef{iv}#4\@empty\@empty\@@}%
36.669 \def\es@itemize#1#2#3#4{%
36.670 \def\labelitemi{\es@listquot#1}%
36.671 \def\labelitemii{\es@listquot#2}%

```

```

36.672 \def\labelitemiii{\es@listquot#3}%
36.673 \def\labelitemiv{\es@listquot#4}%
36.674 \def\p@enumii{\theenumi}%
36.675 \def\p@enumiii{\p@enumii\theenumii}%
36.676 \def\p@enumiv{\p@enumiii\theenumiii}%
36.677 \expandafter\es@enumerate\es@enum
36.678 \expandafter\es@itemize\es@item}
36.679 \let\esromanindex\@secondoftwo
36.680 \es@ifoption{ucroman}
36.681 {\def\es@romandef{%
36.682 \def\esromanindex##1##2{##1{\uppercase{##2}}}%
36.683 \def\@roman{\@Roman}}%
36.684 {\def\es@romandef{%
36.685 \def\esromanindex##1##2{##1{\protect\es@roman{##2}}}%
36.686 \def\@roman##1{\protect\es@roman{\romannumeral##1}}%
36.687 \def\es@roman{\es@xlsc\uppercase{\@firstofone}}%
36.688 \es@optlayout{lcroman}{\es@romandef}
36.689 \newcommand\spanishlcroman{\def\@roman##1{\romannumeral##1}}
36.690 \newcommand\spanishucroman{\def\@roman{\@Roman}}
36.691 \newcommand\spanishscroman{\def\@roman##1{\es@roman{\romannumeral##1}}}
36.692 \es@optlayout{noindentfirst}{%
36.693 \let\@afterindentfalse\@afterindenttrue
36.694 \@afterindenttrue}
36.695 \es@optlayout{nosectiondot}{%
36.696 \def\@secCNTformat#1{\csname the#1\endcsname.\quad}%
36.697 \def\numberline#1{\hb@xt@\@tempdima{#1\if&#1&\else.\fi\hfil}}%
36.698 \es@ifoption{no layout}{\let\layoutspanish\relax}{%
36.699 \es@ifoption{sloppy}{\let\textspanish\relax\let\mathspanish\relax}{%
36.700 \es@ifoption{delayed}{\def\es@layoutspanish{\layoutspanish}}%
36.701 \es@ifoption{preindex}{\AtEndOfPackage{RequirePackage{romanidx}}}{%

```

We need to execute the following code when babel has been run, in order to see if `spanish` is the main language.

```

36.702 \AtEndOfPackage{%
36.703 \let\es@activeacute\@undefined
36.704 \def\bb1@tempa{spanish}%
36.705 \ifx\bb1@main@language\bb1@tempa
36.706 \@nameuse{es@layoutspanish}%
36.707 \addto\es@select{%
36.708 \@ifstar{\PackageError{spanish}%
36.709 {Old syntax--use es-nolayout}%
36.710 {If you don't want changes in layout\MessageBreak
36.711 use the es-nolayout package option}}%
36.712 {}}%
36.713 \AtBeginDocument{\layoutspanish}%
36.714 \fi
36.715 \selectspanish}
36.716 \fi

```

After restoring the catcode of `~` and setting the minimal values for hyphenation, the `.ldf` is finished.

```

36.717 \es@saveditcatcodes
36.718 \providehyphenmins{CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
36.719 \ifes@latex\else
36.720 \es@select
36.721 \fi
36.722 \ldf@finish{spanish}
36.723 \csname activatequoting\endcsname
36.724 </code>

```

That's all in the main file.

The `spanish` option writes a macro in the page field of *MakeIndex* in entries with small caps number, and they are rejected. This program is a preprocessor

which moves this macro to the entry field. It can be called from the main document as a package or with the package option `es-preindex`.

```

36.725 (*indexes)
36.726 \makeatletter
36.727
36.728 \@ifundefined{es@idxfile}
36.729   {\def\spanishindexchars#1#2#3{%
36.730     \edef\es@encap{'\expandafter\noexpand\csname\string#1\endcsname}%
36.731     \edef\es@openrange{'\expandafter\noexpand\csname\string#2\endcsname}%
36.732     \edef\es@closerange{'\expandafter\noexpand\csname\string#3\endcsname}}%
36.733   \spanishindexchars{||}{(}{)}%
36.734   \ifx\documentclass\twoclasseserror
36.735     \edef\es@idxfile{\jobname}%
36.736     \AtEndDocument{%
36.737       \addto\@defaultsubs{%
36.738         \immediate\closeout\@indexfile
36.739         \input{romanidx.sty}}}%
36.740     \expandafter\endinput
36.741   \fi}{}
36.742
36.743 \newcount\es@converted
36.744 \newcount\es@processed
36.745
36.746 \def\es@split@file#1.#2\@@{#1}
36.747 \def\es@split@ext#1.#2\@@{#2}
36.748
36.749 \@ifundefined{es@idxfile}
36.750   {\typein[\answer]{^^JArchivo que convertir^^J%
36.751     (extension por omision .idx):}}
36.752   {\let\answer\es@idxfile}
36.753
36.754 \@expandtwoargs\in@{.}{\answer}
36.755 \ifin@
36.756   \edef\es@input@file{\expandafter\es@split@file\answer\@@}
36.757   \edef\es@input@ext{\expandafter\es@split@ext\answer\@@}
36.758 \else
36.759   \edef\es@input@file{\answer}
36.760   \def\es@input@ext{idx}
36.761 \fi
36.762
36.763 \@ifundefined{es@idxfile}
36.764   {\typein[\answer]{^^JArchivo de destino^^J%
36.765     (archivo por omision: \es@input@file.eix,^^J%
36.766     extension por omision .eix):}}
36.767   {\let\answer\es@idxfile}
36.768 \ifx\answer\@empty
36.769   \edef\es@output{\es@input@file.eix}
36.770 \else
36.771   \@expandtwoargs\in@{.}{\answer}
36.772   \ifin@
36.773     \edef\es@output{\answer}
36.774   \else
36.775     \edef\es@output{\answer.eix}
36.776   \fi
36.777 \fi
36.778
36.779 \@ifundefined{es@idxfile}
36.780   {\typein[\answer]{%
36.781     ^^J?Se ha usado algun esquema especial de controles^^J%
36.782     de MakeIndex para encap, open_range o close_range?^^J%
36.783     [s/n] (n por omision)}}
36.784   {\def\answer{n}}

```

```

36.785
36.786 \if s\answer
36.787 \typein[\answer]{^^JCharacter para 'encap'^^J%
36.788 (\string| por omision)}
36.789 \ifx\answer\@empty\else
36.790 \edef\es@encap{%
36.791 '\expandafter\noexpand\csname\expandafter\string\answer\endcsname}
36.792 \fi
36.793 \typein[\answer]{^^JCharacter para 'open_range'^^J%
36.794 (\string( por omision)}
36.795 \ifx\answer\@empty\else
36.796 \edef\es@openrange{%
36.797 '\expandafter\noexpand\csname\expandafter\string\answer\endcsname}
36.798 \fi
36.799 \typein[\answer]{^^JCharacter para 'close_range'^^J%
36.800 (\string) por omision)}
36.801 \ifx\answer\@empty\else
36.802 \edef\es@closerange{%
36.803 '\expandafter\noexpand\csname\expandafter\string\answer\endcsname}
36.804 \fi
36.805 \fi
36.806
36.807 \newwrite\es@indexfile
36.808 \immediate\openout\es@indexfile=\es@output
36.809
36.810 \newif\ifes@encapsulated
36.811
36.812 \def\es@roman#1{#1}
36.813 \edef\es@slash{\expandafter\@gobble\string\}
36.814
36.815 \def\indexentry{%
36.816 \begingroup
36.817 \@sanitize
36.818 \es@indexentry}
36.819
36.820 \begingroup
36.821
36.822 \catcode'\|=12 \lccode'\|= \es@encap\relax
36.823 \catcode'\(=12 \lccode'\(= \es@openrange\relax
36.824 \catcode'\)=12 \lccode'\)= \es@closerange\relax
36.825
36.826 \lowercase{
36.827 \gdef\es@indexentry#1{%
36.828 \endgroup
36.829 \advance\es@processed\@ne
36.830 \es@encapsulatedfalse
36.831 \es@bar@idx#1|\@@
36.832 \es@idxentry}%
36.833 }
36.834
36.835 \lowercase{
36.836 \gdef\es@idxentry#1{%
36.837 \in@{\es@roman}{#1}%
36.838 \ifin@
36.839 \advance\es@converted\@ne
36.840 \immediate\write\es@indexfile{%
36.841 \string\indexentry{\es@b\ifes@encapsulated\es@p\fi esromanindex%
36.842 {\ifx\es@a\@empty\else\es@slash\es@a\fi}}{#1}}%
36.843 \else
36.844 \immediate\write\es@indexfile{%
36.845 \string\indexentry{\es@b\ifes@encapsulated|\es@p\es@a\fi}{#1}}%
36.846 \fi}

```



```

36.847 }
36.848
36.849 \lowercase{
36.850 \gdef\es@bar@idx#1|#2\@{
36.851 \def\es@b{#1}\def\es@a{#2}%
36.852 \ifx\es@a\empty\else\es@encapsulatedtrue\es@bar@eat#2\fi}
36.853 }
36.854
36.855 \lowercase{
36.856 \gdef\es@bar@eat#1#2|{\def\es@p{#1}\def\es@a{#2}%
36.857 \edef\es@t{()\ifx\es@t\es@p
36.858 \else\edef\es@t{}}\ifx\es@t\es@p
36.859 \else
36.860 \edef\es@a{\es@p\es@a}\let\es@p\empty%
36.861 \fi\fi}
36.862 }
36.863
36.864 \endgroup
36.865
36.866 \input \es@input@file.\es@input@ext
36.867
36.868 \immediate\closeout\es@indexfile
36.869
36.870 \typeout{*****}
36.871 \typeout{Se ha procesado: \es@input@file.\es@input@ext }
36.872 \typeout{Lineas leidas: \the\es@processed}
36.873 \typeout{Lineas convertidas: \the\es@converted}
36.874 \typeout{Resultado en: \es@output}
36.875 \ifnum\es@converted>\z@
36.876 \typeout{Genere el indice a partir de ese archivo}
36.877 \else
36.878 \typeout{No se ha convertido nada. Se puede generar}
36.879 \typeout{el .ind directamente de \es@input@file.\es@input@ext}
36.880 \fi
36.881 \typeout{*****}
36.882
36.883 \@ifundefined{es@sdef}{\@end}{}
36.884 %%
36.885 %% \CharacterTable
36.886 %% {Upper-case \A\B\C\D\E\F\G\H\I\J\K\L\M\N\O\P\Q\R\S\T\U\V\W\X\Y\Z
36.887 %% Lower-case \a\b\c\d\e\f\g|h|i|j|k|l|m\n\o\p\q|r\s\t\u\v\w|x\y\z
36.888 %% Digits \0\1\2\3\4\5\6\7\8\9
36.889 %% Exclamation \! Double quote \" Hash (number) \#
36.890 %% Dollar \$ Percent \% Ampersand \&
36.891 %% Acute accent \' Left paren \( Right paren \)
36.892 %% Asterisk * Plus \+ Comma \,
36.893 %% Minus - Point \. Solidus \/
36.894 %% Colon \: Semicolon \; Less than \<
36.895 %% Equals \= Greater than \> Question mark \?
36.896 %% Commercial at \@ Left bracket \[ Backslash \\
36.897 %% Right bracket \] Circumflex \^ Underscore \_
36.898 %% Grave accent ` Left brace \{ Vertical bar \|
36.899 %% Right brace \} Tilde \~}
36.900 %%
36.901 \endinput
36.902 %%
36.903 %% End of file 'romanidx.tex'.
36.904 </indexes>

```

## 37 The Catalan language

The file `catalan.dtx`<sup>34</sup> defines all the language-specific macro's for the Catalan language.

For this language only the double quote character (") is made active by default. In table 12 an overview is given of the new macros defined and the new meanings of ". Additionally to that, the user can explicitly activate the acute accent or apostrophe (') and/or the grave accent (`) characters by using the `activeacute` and `activegrave` options. In that case, the definitions shown in table 13 also become available<sup>35</sup>.

<code>\l.l</code>	geminated-l digraph (similar to l·l). <code>\L.L</code> produces the uppercase version.
<code>\lgem</code>	geminated-l digraph (similar to l·l). <code>\Lgem</code> produces the uppercase version.
<code>\up</code>	Macro to help typing raised ordinals, like 1 <sup>er</sup> . Takes one argument.
<code>\-</code>	like the old <code>\-</code> , but allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
<code>"i</code>	i with diaeresis, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word. Valid for the following vowels: i, u (both lowercase and uppercase).
<code>"c</code>	c-cedilla (ç). Valid for both uppercase and lowercase c.
<code>"l</code>	geminated-l digraph (similar to l·l). Valid for both uppercase and lowercase l.
<code>"&lt;</code>	French left double quotes (similar to <<).
<code>"&gt;</code>	French right double quotes (similar to >>).
<code>"-</code>	explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
<code>" </code>	disable ligature at this position.

Table 12: Extra definitions made by file `catalan.ldf` (activated by default)

<code>'e</code>	acute accented a, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word. Valid for the following vowels: e, i, o, u (both lowercase and uppercase).
<code>'a</code>	grave accented a, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word. Valid for the following vowels: a, e, o (both lowercase and uppercase).

Table 13: Extra definitions made by file `catalan.ldf` (activated only when using the options `activeacute` and `activegrave`)

These active accents characters behave according to their original definitions if not followed by one of the characters indicated in that table.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

37.1 `{*code}`

37.2 `\LdfInit{catalan}\captionscatalan`

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `catalan` could be an 'unknown' language in which case we have to make it known. So we

<sup>34</sup>The file described in this section has version number v2.2p and was last revised on 2005/03/29.

<sup>35</sup>Please note that if the acute accent character is active, it is necessary to take special care of coding apostrophes in a way which cannot be confounded with accents. Therefore, it is necessary to type `l'{}estri` instead of `l'estri`.

check for the existence of `\l@catalan` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
37.3 \ifx\l@catalan\@undefined
37.4 \@nopatterns{Catalan}
37.5 \adddialect\l@catalan0
37.6 \fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Catalan language.

`\catalanhyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```
37.7 \providehyphenmins{catalan}{\tw@\tw@}
```

`\captionscatalan` The macro `\captionscatalan` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
37.8 \addto\captionscatalan{%
37.9 \def\prefacename{Pr\`oleg}%
37.10 \def\refname{Refer\`encies}%
37.11 \def\abstractname{Resum}%
37.12 \def\bibname{Bibliografia}%
37.13 \def\chaptername{Cap\`{\i}tol}%
37.14 \def\appendixname{Ap\`endix}%
37.15 \def\contentsname{\`Index}%
37.16 \def\listfigurename{\`Index de figures}%
37.17 \def\listtablename{\`Index de taules}%
37.18 \def\indexname{\`Index alfab\`etic}%
37.19 \def\figurename{Figura}%
37.20 \def\tablename{Taula}%
37.21 \def\partname{Part}%
37.22 \def\enclname{Adjunt}%
37.23 \def\ccname{C\`opies a}%
37.24 \def\headtoname{A}%
37.25 \def\pagename{P\`agina}%
37.26 \def\seename{Vegeu}%
37.27 \def\alsoname{Vegeu tamb\`e}%
37.28 \def\proofname{Demostraci\`o}%
37.29 \def\glossaryname{Glossari}%
37.30 }
```

`\datecatalan` The macro `\datecatalan` redefines the command `\today` to produce Catalan dates. Months are written in lowercase<sup>36</sup>.

```
37.31 \def\datecatalan{%
37.32 \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
37.33 de gener\or de febrer\or de mar\c{c}\or d'abril\or de maig\or
37.34 de juny\or de juliol\or d'agost\or de setembre\or d'octubre\or
37.35 de novembre\or de desembre\fi
37.36 \space de~\number\year}}
```

`\extrascatalan` The macro `\extrascatalan` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Catalan language. The macro `\noextrascatalan` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrascatalan`.

To improve hyphenation we give the grave character ( ` ) a non-zero lower case code; when we do that T<sub>E</sub>X will find more breakpoints in words that contain this character in its rôle as apostrophe.

```
37.37 \addto\extrascatalan{%
37.38 \lccode'`='}
37.39 \addto\noextrascatalan{%
37.40 \lccode'`=0}
```

<sup>36</sup>This seems to be the common practice. See for example: E. Coromina, *El 9 Nou: Manual de redacció i estil*, Ed. Eumo, Vic, 1993

For Catalan, some characters are made active or are redefined. In particular, the " character receives a new meaning; this can also happen for the ' character and the ´ character when the options `activegrave` and/or `activeacute` are specified.

```
37.41 \addto\extrascatalan{\languageshorthands{catalan}}
37.42 \initiate@active@char{"}
37.43 \addto\extrascatalan{\bbl@activate{"}}
```

Because the grave character is being used in constructs such as `\catcode‘‘=\active` it needs to have it's original category code" when the auxiliary file is being read. Note that this file is read twice, once at the beginning of the document; then there is no problem; but the second time it is read at the end of the document to check whether any labels changes. It's this second time round that the activated grave character leads to error messages.

```
37.44 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{%
37.45   \AtBeginDocument{%
37.46     \if@filesw\immediate\write\@auxout{\catcode096=12}\fi}
37.47   \initiate@active@char{'}%
37.48   }{}
37.49 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{%
37.50   \addto\extrascatalan{\bbl@activate{'}}%
37.51   }{}
37.52 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
37.53   \initiate@active@char{'}%
37.54   }{}
37.55 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
37.56   \addto\extrascatalan{\bbl@activate{'}}%
37.57   }{}

```

Now make sure that the characters that have been turned into shorthanfd characters expand to 'normal' characters outside the catalan environment.

```
37.58 \addto\noextrascatalan{\bbl@deactivate{"}}
37.59 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{%
37.60   \addto\noextrascatalan{\bbl@deactivate{'}}{}
37.61 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
37.62   \addto\noextrascatalan{\bbl@deactivate{'}}{}

```

Apart from the active characters some other macros get a new definition. Therefore we store the current ones to be able to restore them later. When their current meanings are saved, we can safely redefine them.

We provide new definitions for the accent macros when one or both of the options `activegrave` or `activeacute` were specified.

```
37.63 \addto\extrascatalan{%
37.64   \babel@save\"%
37.65   \def\"{\protect\@umlaut}}%
37.66 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{%
37.67   \babel@save\'%
37.68   \addto\extrascatalan{\def\'{\protect\@grave}}
37.69   }{}
37.70 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
37.71   \babel@save\'%
37.72   \addto\extrascatalan{\def\'{\protect\@acute}}
37.73   }{}

```

All the code above is necessary because we need a few extra active characters. These characters are then used as indicated in tables 12 and 13.

<code>\dieresis</code>	The original definition of \" is stored as <code>\dieresis</code> , because the definition of
<code>\textacute</code>	\" might not be the default plain T <sub>E</sub> X one. If the user uses POSTSCRIPT fonts
<code>\textgrave</code>	with the Adobe font encoding the " character is not in the same position as in
	Knuth's font encoding. In this case \" will not be defined as <code>\accent"7F 1</code> , but
	as <code>\accent'310 #1</code> . Something similar happens when using fonts that follow the

Cork encoding. For this reason we save the definition of `\` and use that in the definition of other macros. We do likewise for `\‘`, and `\’`.

```
37.74 \let\dieresis\"
37.75 \ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{\let\textgrave\'}{}
37.76 \ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{\let\textacute\'}{}
```

`\@umlaut` We check the encoding and if not using T1, we make the accents expand but enabling hyphenation beyond the accent. If this is the case, not all break positions will be found in words that contain accents, but this is a limitation in T<sub>E</sub>X. An unsolved problem here is that the encoding can change at any time. The definitions below are made in such a way that a change between two 256-char encodings are supported, but changes between a 128-char and a 256-char encoding are not properly supported. We check if T1 is in use. If not, we will give a warning and proceed redefining the accent macros so that T<sub>E</sub>X at least finds the breaks that are not too close to the accent. The warning will only be printed to the log file.

```
37.77 \ifx\DeclareFontShape\@undefined
37.78 \wlog{Warning: You are using an old LaTeX}
37.79 \wlog{Some word breaks will not be found.}
37.80 \def\@umlaut#1{\allowhyphens\dieresis{#1}\allowhyphens}
37.81 \ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
37.82 \def\@acute#1{\allowhyphens\textacute{#1}\allowhyphens}}{}
37.83 \ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{%
37.84 \def\@grave#1{\allowhyphens\textgrave{#1}\allowhyphens}}{}
37.85 \else
37.86 \ifx\@encoding\@one
37.87 \let\@umlaut\dieresis
37.88 \ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
37.89 \let\@acute\textacute}{}
37.90 \ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{%
37.91 \let\@grave\textgrave}{}
37.92 \else
37.93 \wlog{Warning: You are using encoding \@encoding\space
37.94 instead of T1.}
37.95 \wlog{Some word breaks will not be found.}
37.96 \def\@umlaut#1{\allowhyphens\dieresis{#1}\allowhyphens}
37.97 \ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
37.98 \def\@acute#1{\allowhyphens\textacute{#1}\allowhyphens}}{}
37.99 \ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{%
37.100 \def\@grave#1{\allowhyphens\textgrave{#1}\allowhyphens}}{}
37.101 \fi
37.102 \fi
```

If the user setup has extended fonts, the Ferguson macros are required to be defined. We check for their existence and, if defined, expand to whatever they are defined to. For instance, `\’a` would check for the existence of a `\@ac@a` macro. It is assumed to expand to the code of the accented letter. If it is not defined, we assume that no extended codes are available and expand to the original definition but enabling hyphenation beyond the accent. This is as best as we can do. It is better if you have extended fonts or ML-T<sub>E</sub>X because the hyphenation algorithm can work on the whole word. The following macros are directly derived from ML-T<sub>E</sub>X.<sup>37</sup>

Now we can define our shorthands: the diaeresis and “*ela geminada*” support,

```
37.103 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{“i”}{\textormath{\@umlaut\i}{\ddot\imath}}
```

<sup>37</sup>A problem is perceived here with these macros when used in a multilingual environment where extended hyphenation patterns are available for some but not all languages. Assume that no extended patterns exist at some site for French and that `french.sty` would adopt this scheme too. In that case, `\’e` in French would produce the combined accented letter, but hyphenation around it would be suppressed. Both language options would need an independent method to know whether they have extended patterns available. The precise impact of this problem and the possible solutions are under study.

```

37.104 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"l"}{\lgem{}}
37.105 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"u"}{\textormath{\@umlaut u}{\ddot u}}
37.106 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"I"}{\textormath{\@umlaut I}{\ddot I}}
37.107 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"L"}{\Lgem{}}
37.108 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"U"}{\textormath{\@umlaut U}{\ddot U}}

cedille,
37.109 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"c"}{\textormath{\c c}{\cprime c}}
37.110 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"C"}{\textormath{\c C}{\cprime C}}

‘french’ quote characters,
37.111 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"<"}{%
37.112 \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
37.113 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{">"}{%
37.114 \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}

grave accents,
37.115 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activegrave}{%
37.116 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'a'}{\textormath{\@grave a}{\grave a}}
37.117 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'e'}{\textormath{\@grave e}{\grave e}}
37.118 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'o'}{\textormath{\@grave o}{\grave o}}
37.119 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'A'}{\textormath{\@grave A}{\grave A}}
37.120 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'E'}{\textormath{\@grave E}{\grave E}}
37.121 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'O'}{\textormath{\@grave O}{\grave O}}
37.122 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'‘'}{\textquotedblleft}%
37.123 }{}

acute accents,
37.124 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
37.125 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'a'}{\textormath{\@acute a}{\acute a}}
37.126 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'e'}{\textormath{\@acute e}{\acute e}}
37.127 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'i'}{\textormath{\@acute i}{\acute i}}
37.128 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'o'}{\textormath{\@acute o}{\acute o}}
37.129 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'u'}{\textormath{\@acute u}{\acute u}}
37.130 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'A'}{\textormath{\@acute A}{\acute A}}
37.131 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'E'}{\textormath{\@acute E}{\acute E}}
37.132 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'I'}{\textormath{\@acute I}{\acute I}}
37.133 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'O'}{\textormath{\@acute O}{\acute O}}
37.134 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'U'}{\textormath{\@acute U}{\acute U}}
37.135 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'|'}{|}%
37.136 \textormath{\csname normal@char\string'\endcsname}{\prime}}

the acute accent,
37.137 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{'’'}{%
37.138 \textormath{\textquotedblright}{\sp\bggroup\prim@s'}}
37.139 }{}

and finally, some support definitions
37.140 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"-"}{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
37.141 \declare@shorthand{catalan}{"}{|}%
37.142 \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
37.143 \allowhyphens}{}}

```

\- All that is left now is the redefinition of \-. The new version of \- should indicate an extra hyphenation position, while allowing other hyphenation positions to be generated automatically. The standard behaviour of T<sub>E</sub>X in this respect is unfortunate for Catalan but not as much as for Dutch or German, where long compound words are quite normal and all one needs is a means to indicate an extra hyphenation position on top of the ones that T<sub>E</sub>X can generate from the hyphenation patterns. However, the average length of words in Catalan makes this desirable and so it is kept here.

```

37.144 \addto\extrascatalan{%
37.145 \babel@save{\-}%
37.146 \def\-\{\bbl@allowhyphens\discretionary{-}{-}{\bbl@allowhyphens}}

```

`\lgem` Here we define a macro for typing the catalan “ela geminada” (geminated l). The macros `\lgem` and `\Lgem` have been chosen for its lowercase and uppercase representation, respectively<sup>38</sup>.

The code used in the actual macro used is a combination of the one proposed by Feruglio and Fuster<sup>39</sup> and the proposal<sup>40</sup> from Valiente presented at the T<sub>E</sub>X Users Group Annual Meeting in 1995. This last proposal has not been fully implemented due to its limitation to CM fonts.

```

37.147 \newdimen\leftllkern \newdimen\rightllkern \newdimen\raiselldim
37.148 \def\lgem{%
37.149   \ifmmode
37.150     \csname normal@char\string"\endcsname l%
37.151   \else
37.152     \leftllkern=0pt\rightllkern=0pt\raiselldim=0pt%
37.153     \setbox0\hbox{1}\setbox1\hbox{1/}\setbox2\hbox{.}%
37.154     \advance\raiselldim by \the\fontdimen5\the\font
37.155     \advance\raiselldim by -\ht2%
37.156     \leftllkern=-.25\wd0%
37.157     \advance\leftllkern by \wd1%
37.158     \advance\leftllkern by -\wd0%
37.159     \rightllkern=-.25\wd0%
37.160     \advance\rightllkern by -\wd1%
37.161     \advance\rightllkern by \wd0%
37.162     \allowhyphens\discretionary{1-}{1}%
37.163     {\hbox{1}\kern\leftllkern\raise\raiselldim\hbox{.}}%
37.164     \kern\rightllkern\hbox{1}}\allowhyphens
37.165   \fi
37.166 }
37.167 \def\Lgem{%
37.168   \ifmmode
37.169     \csname normal@char\string"\endcsname L%
37.170   \else
37.171     \leftllkern=0pt\rightllkern=0pt\raiselldim=0pt%
37.172     \setbox0\hbox{L}\setbox1\hbox{L/}\setbox2\hbox{.}%
37.173     \advance\raiselldim by .5\ht0%
37.174     \advance\raiselldim by -.5\ht2%
37.175     \leftllkern=-.125\wd0%
37.176     \advance\leftllkern by \wd1%
37.177     \advance\leftllkern by -\wd0%
37.178     \rightllkern=-\wd0%
37.179     \divide\rightllkern by 6%
37.180     \advance\rightllkern by -\wd1%
37.181     \advance\rightllkern by \wd0%
37.182     \allowhyphens\discretionary{L-}{L}%
37.183     {\hbox{L}\kern\leftllkern\raise\raiselldim\hbox{.}}%
37.184     \kern\rightllkern\hbox{L}}\allowhyphens
37.185   \fi
37.186 }

```

`\l.1` It seems to be the most natural way of entering the “ela geminda” to use the sequences `\l.1` and `\L.L`. These are not really macro’s by themselves but the macros `\l` and `\L` with delimited arguments. Therefor we define two macros that check if the next character is a period. If not the “polish l” will be typeset, otherwise a “ela geminada” will be typeset and the next two tokens will be ‘eaten’.

```

37.187 \AtBeginDocument{%
37.188   \let\lslash\l
37.189   \let\Lslash\L

```

<sup>38</sup>The macro names `\l1` and `\L1` were not taken because of the fact that `\l1` is already used in mathematical mode.

<sup>39</sup>G. Valiente and R. Fuster, Typesetting Catalan Texts with T<sub>E</sub>X, *TUGboat* 14(3), 1993.

<sup>40</sup>G. Valiente, Modern Catalan Typographical Conventions, *TUGboat* 16(3), 1995.

```
37.190 \DeclareRobustCommand\l{\@ifnextchar.\bbl@l\lslash}
37.191 \DeclareRobustCommand\L{\@ifnextchar.\bbl@L\Lslash}}
37.192 \def\bbl@l#1#2{\lgem}
37.193 \def\bbl@L#1#2{\Lgem}
```

`\up` A macro for typesetting things like  $1^{\text{er}}$  as proposed by Raymon Seroul<sup>41</sup>.

```
37.194 \DeclareRobustCommand*\up}[1]{\textsuperscript{#1}}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
37.195 \ldf@finish{catalan}
37.196 </code>
```

---

<sup>41</sup>This macro has been borrowed from `francais.dtx`



## 38 This file

This file defines all the language-specific macros for the Galician language. The file `galician.dtx` was translated in January 2007 by Javier A. Múgica from `spanish.dtx`. It was given the version number 4.3, based on the version for `spanish.dtx` at those times, that was 4.2b. The original author from v4.0 to 4.2b was Javier Bezos. Previous versions were written by Julio Sánchez.

I decided to make *tabula rasa* of all `\changes` logs. Only changes from `spanish` 4.2b to `galician` 4.3 and thereafter are documented. The change history for the original `spanish.dtx` can be found in that file.

## 39 The Galician language

Customization is made following mainly the books on the subject by José Martínez de Sousa and Xosé Feixó Cid. By typesetting `galician.dtx` directly you will get the full documentation (regrettably is in Galician only, but it is pretty long). References in this part refers to that document. There are several additional features documented in the Galician version only.

This style provides:

- Translations following the International L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X conventions, as well as `\today`.
- Shorthands listed in Table 14. Examples in subsection 3.4 are illustrative. Note that `"~` has a special meaning in `galician` different to other languages, and is used mainly in linguistic contexts.

<code>'a</code>	acute accented a. Also for: e, i, o, u (both lowercase and uppercase).
<code>'n</code>	$\tilde{n}$ (also uppercase).
<code>~n</code>	$\tilde{n}$ (also uppercase). Deprecated.
<code>"u</code>	ü (also uppercase).
<code>"i</code>	ï (also uppercase).
<code>"a</code>	Ordinal numbers (also "A, "o, "O).
<code>"rr</code>	rr, but -r when hyphenated
<code>"-</code>	Like <code>\-</code> , but allowing hyphenation in the rest the word.
<code>"=</code>	Like <code>-</code> , but allowing hyphenation in the rest the word.
<code>"~</code>	The hyphen is repeated at the very beginning of the next line if the word is hyphenated at this point.
<code>""</code>	Like <code>"-</code> but producing no hyphen sign.
<code>~-</code>	Like <code>-</code> but with no break after the hyphen. Also for: en-dashes ( <code>~--</code> ) and em-dashes ( <code>~---</code> ).
<code>"/</code>	A slash slightly lowered, if necessary.
<code>" </code>	disable ligatures at this point.
<code>&lt;&lt;</code>	Left guillemets.
<code>&gt;&gt;</code>	Right guillemets.
<code>"&lt;</code>	<code>\begin{quoting}</code> . (See text.)
<code>"&gt;</code>	<code>\end{quoting}</code> . (See text.)

Table 14: Extra definitions made by file `galician.ldf`

- `\deactivatetilden` deactivates the `~n` and `~N` shorthands.
- *In math mode* a dot followed by a digit is replaced by a decimal comma.
- Galicians ordinals and abbeviations with `\sptext` as, for instance, `1\sptext{o}`. The preceptive dot is included.

- Accented functions: lím, máx, mín, mód. You may globally omit the accents with `\unaccentedoperators`. Spaced functions: arc cos, etc. You may globally kill that space with `\unspacedoperators`. `\dotlessi` is provided for use in math mode.
- A `\quoting` environment and a related pair of shorthands `<<` and `>>`. The command `\deactivatequoting` deactivates these shorthand in case you want to use `<` and `>` in some AMS commands and numerical comparisons.
- The command `\selectgalician` selects the `galician` language *and* its shorthands. (Intended for the preamble.)
- `\frenchspacing` is used.
- `\dots` is redefined. It is now equal to typing tree points in a row (it preserves the space following).
- There is a small space before `\%`.
- `\msc` provides lowercase small caps. (See subsection 3.10.)

Just in case `galician` is the main language, the group `\layoutgalician` is activated, which modifies the standard classes through the whole document (it cannot be deactivated) in the following way:

- Both `enumerate` and `itemize` are adapted to Galician rules.
- Both `\alph` and `\Alph` include  $\tilde{n}$  after  $n$ .
- Symbol footmarks are one, two, three, etc., asteriscs.
- OT1 guillemets are generated with two `lasy` symbols instead of small `\ll` and `\gg`.
- `\roman` is redefined to write small caps roman numerals, since lowercase roman numerals are not allowed. However, *MakeIndex* rejects entries containing pages in that format. The `.idx` file must be preprocessed if the document has this kind of entries with the provided `romanidx.tex` tool—just `TEX` it and follow the instructions.
- There is a dot after section numbers in titles and `toc`.

This group is ignored if you write `\selectgalician*` in the preamble.

Some additional commands are provided to be used in the `galician.cfg` file:

- With `\gl@activeacute` acute accents are always active, overriding the default `babel` behaviour.
- `\gl@enumerate` sets the labels to be used by `enumerate`. The same applies to `\gl@itemize` and `itemize`.
- `\gl@operators` stores the operator commands. All of them are canceled with

```
\let\gl@operators\relax
```

The commands `\deactivatequoting`, `\deactivatetilden` and `\selectgalician` may be used in this file, too.

A subset of these commands is provided for use in Plain `TEX` (with `\input galician.sty`).

## 39.1 The Code

This file provides definition for both L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and non L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> formats. Identify the ldf file.

```
39.1 (*code)
39.2 \ProvidesLanguage{galician.lda}
39.3 [2007/01/29 v4.3 Galician support from the babel system]
```

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc. When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `galician` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@galician` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
39.4 \LdfInit{galician}\captionsgalician
39.5 \ifx\undefined\l@galician
39.6 \@nopatterns{Galician}
39.7 \adddialect\l@galician0
39.8 \fi
```

We define some tools which will be used in that style file: (1) we make sure that `~` is active, (2) `\gl@delayed` delays the expansion of the code in conditionals (in fact, quite similar to `\bbl@afterfi`).

```
39.9 \edef\gl@saveditcodes{%
39.10 \catcode'\noexpand\~=\the\catcode'\~
39.11 \catcode'\noexpand\"=\the\catcode'\"}
39.12 \catcode'\~=\active
39.13 \catcode\"=12
39.14 \long\def\gl@delayed#1\then#2\else#3\fi{%
39.15 #1%
39.16 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
39.17 \else
39.18 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
39.19 \fi
39.20 {#2}{#3}}
```

Two tests are introduced. The first one tells us if the format is L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>, and the second one if the format is Plain or any other. If both are false, the format is L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09.

```
39.21 \gl@delayed
39.22 \expandafter\ifx\csname documentclass\endcsname\relax\then
39.23 \let\ifes@LaTeXe\iffalse
39.24 \else
39.25 \let\ifes@LaTeXe\iftrue
39.26 \fi
39.27 \gl@delayed
39.28 \expandafter\ifx\csname newenvironment\endcsname\relax\then
39.29 \let\ifes@plain\iftrue
39.30 \else
39.31 \let\ifes@plain\iffalse
39.32 \fi
```

Translations for captions.

```
39.33 \addto\captionsgalician{%
39.34 \def\prefacename{Prefacio}%
39.35 \def\refname{Referencias}%
39.36 \def\abstractname{Resumo}%
39.37 \def\bibname{Bibliograf'\{i}a}%
39.38 \def\chaptername{Cap'\{i}tulo}%
39.39 \def\appendixname{Ap'endice}%
39.40 \def\listfigurename{\'Indice de figuras}%
39.41 \def\listtablename{\'Indice de cadros}%
39.42 \def\indexname{\'Indice alfab\`etico}%
39.43 \def\figurename{Figura}%
39.44 \def\tablename{Cadro}%
```

```

39.45 \def\partname{Parte}%
39.46 \def\enclname{Adxunto}%
39.47 \def\ccname{Copia a}%
39.48 \def\headtoname{A}%
39.49 \def\pagename{P\'axina}%
39.50 \def\seenname{v\'exase}%
39.51 \def\alsoname{v\'exase tam\'en}%
39.52 \def\proofname{Demostraci\'on}%
39.53 \def\glossaryname{Glosario}}
39.54
39.55 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
39.56 \addto\captionsgalician{\def\contentsname{\'Indice}}
39.57 \else
39.58 \addto\captionsgalician{\def\contentsname{\'Indice xeral}}
39.59 \fi

```

And the date.

```

39.60 \def\dategalician{%
39.61 \def\today{\the\day~de \ifcase\month\or xaneiro\or febreiro\or
39.62     marzo\or abril\or maio\or xu~no\or xullo\or agosto\or
39.63     setembro\or outubro\or novembro\or decembro\fi
39.64     \ \ifnum\year>1999\gl@yearl\else de\fi~\the\year}}
39.65 \def\galiciandatedo{\def\gl@yearl{do}}
39.66 \def\galiciandatede{\def\gl@yearl{de}}
39.67 \galiciandatedo

```

The basic macros to select the language, in the preamble or the config file.

Use of `\selectlanguage` should be avoided at this early stage because the active chars are not yet active. `\selectgalician` makes them active.

```

39.68 \def\selectgalician{%
39.69 \def\selectgalician{%
39.70 \def\selectgalician{%
39.71 \PackageWarning{galician}{Extra \string\selectgalician ignored}}%
39.72 \gl@select}}
39.73
39.74 \@onlypreamble\selectgalician
39.75
39.76 \def\gl@select{%
39.77 \let\gl@select\@undefined
39.78 \selectlanguage{galician}%
39.79 \catcode'\@active\catcode'\~=\'active}

```

Instead of joining all the extras directly in `\extrasgalician`, we subdivide them in three further groups.

```

39.80 \def\extrasgalician{%
39.81 \textgalician
39.82 \mathgalician
39.83 \ifx\shorthandsgalician\@empty
39.84 \galiciandeactivate{."\'~<>}%
39.85 \languageshorthands{none}%
39.86 \else
39.87 \shorthandsgalician
39.88 \fi}
39.89 \def\noextrasgalician{%
39.90 \ifx\textgalician\@empty\else
39.91 \notextgalician
39.92 \fi
39.93 \ifx\mathgalician\@empty\else
39.94 \nomathgalician
39.95 \fi
39.96 \ifx\shorthandsgalician\@empty\else
39.97 \noshorthandsgalician
39.98 \fi
39.99 \gl@reviveshorthands}

```

And the first of these sub-groups is defined.

```
39.100 \addto\textgalician{%
39.101   \babel@save\sptext
39.102   \def\sptext{\protect\gl@sptext}}
```

The definition of `\sptext` is more elaborated than that of `\textsuperscript`.

With uppercase superscript text the `scriptscriptsize` is used. The mandatory dot is already included. There are two versions, depending on the format.

```
39.103 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.104   \newcommand\gl@sptext[1]{%
39.105     {\setbox\z@\hbox{8}\dimen@ht\z@
39.106       \csname S@f@size\endcsname
39.107       \edef\@tempa{\def\noexpand\@tempc{#1}%
39.108         \lowercase{\def\noexpand\@tempb{#1}}}\@tempa
39.109       \ifx\@tempb\@tempc
39.110         \fontsize\sf@size\z@
39.111         \selectfont
39.112         \advance\dimen@-1.15ex
39.113       \else
39.114         \fontsize\ssf@size\z@
39.115         \selectfont
39.116         \advance\dimen@-1.5ex
39.117       \fi
39.118       \math@fontsfalse\raise\dimen@\hbox{#1}}
39.119 \else %<<<<<<
39.120   \let\sptextfont\rm
39.121   \newcommand\gl@sptext[1]{%
39.122     {\setbox\z@\hbox{8}\dimen@ht\z@
39.123       \edef\@tempa{\def\noexpand\@tempc{#1}%
39.124         \lowercase{\def\noexpand\@tempb{#1}}}\@tempa
39.125       \ifx\@tempb\@tempc
39.126         \advance\dimen@-0.75ex
39.127         \raise\dimen@\hbox{\scriptstyle\sptextfont#1$}%
39.128       \else
39.129         \advance\dimen@-0.8ex
39.130         \raise\dimen@\hbox{\scriptscriptstyle\sptextfont#1$}%
39.131       \fi}}
39.132 \fi %<<<<<<
```

Now, lowercase small caps. First, we test if there are actual small caps for the current font. If not, faked small caps are used. `\msc` tries a slightly larger font. Javier B. wrote: “The `\selectfont` in `\gl@lsc` could seem redundant, but it’s not”. I cannot see how it can’t be redundant (it is the last thing executed by `\scshape`), but I keep it.

```
39.133 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.134   \addto\textgalician{%
39.135     \babel@save\lsc
39.136     \def\lsc{\protect\gl@lsc}
39.137     \babel@save\msc
39.138     \def\msc{\protect\gl@msc}}
39.139
39.140     \def\gl@msc{\expandafter\@tempdima\font@size pt \divide\@tempdima by 200 \multiply\@tempdima by 200 \strip@pt\@tempdima}\selectfont}
39.141
39.142     \def\gl@msc{\let\gl@do@msc\gl@msc\lsc}
39.143     \let\gl@do@msc\relax
39.144
39.145   \def\gl@lsc#1{%
39.146     \leavevmode
39.147     \hbox{\gl@do@msc\scshape\selectfont
39.148       \expandafter\ifx\csname\font@encoding/\font@family/\font@series
39.149         /n/\font@size\expandafter\endcsname
39.150       \csname\curr@fontshape/\font@size\endcsname
39.151       \csname S@f@size\endcsname
```

```

39.152      \fontsize\sf@size\z@\selectfont
39.153      \PackageInfo{galician}{Replacing undefined sc font\MessageBreak
39.154          shape by faked small caps}%
39.155      \MakeUppercase{#1}%
39.156      \else
39.157      \MakeLowercase{#1}%
39.158      \fi}\let\gl@do@msc\relax}
39.159 \fi      %<<<<<<

```

The quoting environment. This part is not available in Plain, hence the test.

Overriding the default `\everypar` is a bit tricky.

```

39.160 \newif\ifgl@listquot
39.161
39.162 \ifes@plain\else %<<<<<<
39.163   \csname newtoks\endcsname\gl@quottoks
39.164   \csname newcount\endcsname\gl@quotdepth
39.165
39.166       \ifx\quoting\c@undefined\def\next{\let\next\relax\newenvironment}
39.167       \else\def\next{\PackageInfo{galician}{Redefining quoting}\let\next\relax\renewenviron
39.168       \fi
39.169 \next{quoting}
39.170 {\leavevmode
39.171   \advance\gl@quotdepth1
39.172   \csname lquot\romannumeral\gl@quotdepth\endcsname%
39.173   \ifnum\gl@quotdepth=\@ne
39.174     \gl@listquotfalse
39.175     \let\gl@quotpar\everypar
39.176     \let\everypar\gl@quottoks
39.177     \everypar\expandafter{\the\gl@quotpar}%
39.178     \gl@quotpar{\the\everypar
39.179     \ifgl@listquot\global\gl@listquotfalse\else\gl@quotcont\fi}%
39.180   \fi
39.181   \toks@\expandafter{\gl@quotcont}%
39.182   \edef\gl@quotcont{\the\toks@
39.183   \expandafter\noexpand
39.184   \csname rquot\romannumeral\gl@quotdepth\endcsname}}
39.185   {\csname rquot\romannumeral\gl@quotdepth\endcsname}
39.186
39.187 \def\lquoti{\guillemotleft{}}
39.188 \def\rquoti{\guillemotright{}}
39.189 \def\lquotii{''}
39.190 \def\rquotii{''}
39.191 \def\lquotiii{''}
39.192 \def\rquotiii{''}
39.193
39.194 \let\gl@quotcont\@empty

```

If there is a margin par inside quoting, we don't add the quotes. `\gl@listquot` stores the quotes to be used before item labels; otherwise they could appear after the labels.

```

39.195   \addto\@marginparreset{\let\gl@quotcont\@empty}
39.196
39.197 \def\gl@listquot{%
39.198   \csname rquot\romannumeral\gl@quotdepth\endcsname
39.199   \global\gl@listquottrue}
39.200 \fi      %<<<<<<

```

Now, the `\frenchspacing`, followed by `\dots` and `\%`. Instead of redefining `\ldots` and `\cdots`, we redefine `\ldotp` and `\cdotp`, so that this is compatible with `amsmath`. In `LaTeX` we also redefine `\textellipsis`, and for plain or other we redefine `\dots`.

```

39.201 \addto\textgalician{\bbl@frenchspacing}
39.202 \addto\notextgalician{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
39.203

```

```

39.204 \mathchardef\gl@cdot="0201
39.205 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.206 \addto\textgalianic{
39.207 \babel@save\textellipsis
39.208 \babel@save\ldotp
39.209 \babel@save\cdotp%
39.210 \def\textellipsis{\hbox{...}\spacefactor\sfcode'.'{}}%
39.211 \mathchardef\ldotp="013A%
39.212 \mathchardef\cdotp="0201%
39.213 }
39.214 \else %<<<<<<
39.215 \addto\textgalianic{
39.216 \babel@save\dots
39.217 \babel@save\ldotp
39.218 \babel@save\cdotp
39.219 \mathchardef\ldotp="013A%
39.220 \mathchardef\cdotp="0201%
39.221 \def\dots{\ifmmode\ldots\else...\spacefactor\sfcode'.'{}} \fi}%
39.222 }
39.223 \fi %<<<<<<
39.224
39.225 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.226 \addto\textgalianic{
39.227 \let\percentsign%%
39.228 \babel@save%%
39.229 \def%\{\unskip\,\percentsign{}}}}
39.230 \else
39.231 \addto\textgalianic{
39.232 \let\percentsign%%
39.233 \babel@save%%
39.234 \def%\{\unskip\ifmmode\,\else$\m@th\,$\fi\percentsign{}}}}
39.235 \fi

```

We follow with the math group. It's not easy to add an accent in an operator. The difficulty is that we must avoid using text (that is, `\mbox`) because we have no control on font and size, and at time we should access `\i`, which is a text command forbidden in math mode. `\dotlessi` must be converted to uppercase if necessary in  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_\epsilon$ . There are two versions, depending on the format.

```

39.236 \addto\mathgalianic{
39.237 \babel@save\dotlessi
39.238 \def\dotlessi{\protect\gl@dotlessi}}
39.239
39.240 \let\nomathgalianic\relax %% Unused, but called
39.241
39.242 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.243 \def\gl@texti{\i}
39.244 \addto\@uclclist{\dotlessi\gl@texti}
39.245 \fi %<<<<<<
39.246
39.247 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.248 \def\gl@dotlessi{%
39.249 \ifmmode
39.250 {\ifnum\mathgroup=\m@ne
39.251 \imath
39.252 \else
39.253 \count@\escapechar \escapechar=\m@ne
39.254 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
39.255 \split@name\expandafter\string\the\textfont\mathgroup\@nil
39.256 \escapechar=\count@
39.257 \@ifundefined{f@encoding\string\i}%
39.258 {\edef\f@encoding{\string?}}{}}}%
39.259 \expandafter\count@\the\csname\f@encoding\string\i\endcsname
39.260 \advance\count@"7000

```

```

39.261         \mathchar\count@
39.262         \fi}%
39.263     \else
39.264         \i
39.265     \fi}
39.266 \else         %<<<<<<
39.267     \def\gl@dotlessi{%
39.268         \ifmmode
39.269             \mathchar"7010
39.270         \else
39.271             \i
39.272         \fi}
39.273 \fi         %<<<<<<

```

The switches for accents and spaces in math.

```

39.274 \def\accentedoperators{%
39.275     \def\gl@op@ac##1{\acute{##1}}%
39.276     \def\gl@op@i{\acute{\dotlessi}}}
39.277 \def\unaccentedoperators{%
39.278     \def\gl@op@ac##1{##1}%
39.279     \def\gl@op@i{i}}
39.280 \accentedoperators
39.281
39.282 \def\spacedoperators{\let\gl@op@sp\,}
39.283 \def\unspacedoperators{\let\gl@op@sp@empty}
39.284 \unspacedoperators

```

The operators are stored in `\gl@operators`, which in turn is included in the math group. Since `\operator@font` is defined in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> only, we need to define them in the plain variant.

```

39.285 \addto\mathgalian{\gl@operators}
39.286 \gl@operators}
39.287
39.288 \ifes@LaTeXe\else %<<<<<<
39.289     \let\operator@font\rm
39.290     \def\@empty{}
39.291 \fi         %<<<<<<
39.292
39.293 \def\gl@operators{%
39.294     \babel@save\lim         \def\lim{\mathop{\operator@font l\protect\gl@op@i m}}%
39.295     \babel@save\limsup     \def\limsup{\mathop{\operator@font l\gl@op@i m\,sup}}%
39.296     \babel@save\liminf     \def\liminf{\mathop{\operator@font l\gl@op@i m\,inf}}%
39.297     \babel@save\max        \def\max{\mathop{\operator@font m\gl@op@ac ax}}%
39.298     \babel@save\inf        \def\inf{\mathop{\operator@font \protect\gl@op@i nf}}%
39.299     \babel@save\min        \def\min{\mathop{\operator@font m\protect\gl@op@i n}}%
39.300     \babel@save\bmod
39.301     \def\bmod{%
39.302         \nonscript\mskip-\medmuskip\mkern5mu%
39.303         \mathbin{\operator@font m\gl@op@ac od}\penalty900\mkern5mu%
39.304         \nonscript\mskip-\medmuskip}%
39.305     \babel@save\pmod
39.306     \def\pmod##1{%
39.307         \allowbreak\mkern18mu({\operator@font m\gl@op@ac od}\,\,\,##1)}%
39.308     \def\gl@a##1 {%
39.309         \gl@delayed
39.310         \if^##1^then % is it empty? do nothing and continue
39.311             \gl@a
39.312         \else
39.313             \gl@delayed
39.314             \if&##1\then % is it &? do nothing and finish
39.315             \else
39.316                 \begingroup
39.317                 \let\,\@empty % \, is ignored when def'ing the macro name
39.318                 \let\acute\@firstofone % same

```



```

39.319     \edef\gl@b{\expandafter\noexpand\csname##1\endcsname}%
39.320     \def\,{\noexpand\gl@op@sp}%
39.321     \def\acute####1{%
39.322         \if i####1%
39.323             \noexpand\gl@op@i
39.324         \else
39.325             \noexpand\gl@op@ac####1%
39.326         \fi}%
39.327     \edef\gl@a{\endgroup
39.328         \babel@save\expandafter\noexpand\gl@b
39.329         \def\expandafter\noexpand\gl@b{%
39.330             \mathop{\noexpand\operator@font##1\nolimits}}%
39.331         \gl@a % It restores itself
39.332     \gl@a
39.333     \fi
39.334     \fi}%
39.335 \let\gl@b\galicianoperators
39.336 \addto\gl@b{ }%
39.337 \expandafter\gl@a\gl@b sen tx cosec arc\,sen arc\,cos arc\,tx senh & %\, will be set to \gl
39.338 %
39.339 \babel@save\sin \let\sin\sen
39.340     \babel@save\arcsin \let\arcsin\arcsen
39.341     \babel@save\sinh \let\sinh\senh
39.342 }
39.343
39.344 \def\galicianoperators{cotx txh}

```

Now comes the text shorthands. They are grouped in `\shorthandsgalician` and this style performs some operations before the babel shortands are called. The goals are to allow espression like  $a^x$  and to deactivate the shorthands making them of category 'other'. After providing a `\i` shorthand, the new macros are defined.

```

39.345 \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\'}{OT1}{i}{\@tabacckludge'\i}
39.346
39.347 \def\gl@set@shorthand#1{%
39.348     \expandafter\edef\csname gl@savecat\string#1\endcsname
39.349         {\the\catcode'#1}%
39.350     \initiate@active@char{#1}%
39.351     \catcode'#1=\csname gl@savecat\string#1\endcsname\relax
39.352     \expandafter\let\csname gl@math\string#1\endcsname\expandafter\endcsname
39.353     \csname normal@char\string#1\endcsname}
39.354
39.355 \def\gl@use@shorthand{%
39.356     \gl@delayed
39.357     \ifx\thepage\relax\then
39.358         \string
39.359     \else{%
39.360         \gl@delayed
39.361         \ifx\protect\@unexpandable@protect\then
39.362             \noexpand
39.363         \else
39.364             \gl@use@sh
39.365         \fi}%
39.366     \fi}
39.367
39.368 \def\gl@text@sh#1{\csname active@char\string#1\endcsname}
39.369 \def\gl@math@sh#1{\csname gl@math\string#1\endcsname}
39.370
39.371 \def\gl@use@sh{%
39.372     \gl@delayed
39.373     \if@safe@actives\then
39.374         \string
39.375     \else{%

```

```

39.376 \gl@delayed
39.377 \ifmmode\then
39.378 \gl@math@sh
39.379 \else
39.380 \gl@text@sh
39.381 \fi}%
39.382 \fi}
39.383
39.384 \gdef\gl@activate#1{%
39.385 \begingroup
39.386 \lccode'\~='#1
39.387 \lowercase{%
39.388 \endgroup
39.389 \def~{\gl@use@shorthand~}}
39.390
39.391 \def\galiciandeactivate#1{%
39.392 \@tfor\@tempa:=#1\do{\expandafter\gl@spdeactivate\@tempa}}
39.393
39.394 \def\gl@spdeactivate#1{%
39.395 \if.#1%
39.396 \mathcode'\.=\gl@period@code
39.397 \else
39.398 \begingroup
39.399 \lccode'\~='#1
39.400 \lowercase{%
39.401 \endgroup
39.402 \expandafter\let\expandafter~%
39.403 \csname normal@char\string#1\endcsname}%
39.404 \catcode'#1\csname gl@savecat\string#1\endcsname\relax
39.405 \fi}
39.406
39.407 \def\gl@reviveshorthands{%
39.408 \gl@restore{"}\gl@restore{~}%
39.409 \gl@restore{<}\gl@restore{>}%
39.410 \gl@quoting}
39.411
39.412 \def\gl@restore#1{%
39.413 \catcode'#1=\active
39.414 \begingroup
39.415 \lccode'\~='#1
39.416 \lowercase{%
39.417 \endgroup
39.418 \bbl@deactivate{~}}

```

But galician allows two category codes for ', so both should be taken into account in \bbl@pr@m@s.

```

39.419 \begingroup
39.420 \catcode'\'=12
39.421 \lccode'\~=' \lccode'\''='
39.422 \lowercase{%
39.423 \gdef\bbl@pr@m@s{%
39.424 \gl@delayed
39.425 \ifx~\@let@token\then
39.426 \pr@@@s
39.427 \else
39.428 {\gl@delayed
39.429 \ifx'\@let@token\then
39.430 \pr@@@s
39.431 \else
39.432 {\gl@delayed
39.433 \ifx~\@let@token\then
39.434 \pr@@@t
39.435 \else

```

```

39.436         \egroup
39.437     \fi}%
39.438 \fi}%
39.439 \fi}}
39.440 \endgroup

39.441 \expandafter\ifx\csname @tabacckludge\endcsname\relax
39.442 \let\gl@tak\a
39.443 \else
39.444 \let\gl@tak\@tabacckludge
39.445 \fi
39.446
39.447 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.448 \def\@tabacckludge#1{\expandafter\gl@tak\string#1}
39.449 \let\a\@tabacckludge
39.450 \else\ifes@plain %<<<<<<
39.451 \def\@tabacckludge#1{\csname\string#1\endcsname}
39.452 \else %<<<<<<
39.453 \def\@tabacckludge#1{\csname a\string#1\endcsname}
39.454 \fi\fi %<<<<<<
39.455
39.456 \expandafter\ifx\csname add@accent\endcsname\relax
39.457 \def\add@accent#1#2{\accent#1 #2}
39.458 \fi

```

Instead of redefining \', we redefine the internal macro for the OT1 encoding.

```

39.459 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.460 \def\gl@accent#1#2#3{%
39.461 \expandafter\@text@composite
39.462 \csname OT1\string#1\endcsname#3\@empty\@text@composite
39.463 {\bbl@allowhyphens\add@accent{#2}{#3}\bbl@allowhyphens
39.464 \setbox\@tempboxa\hbox{#3}
39.465 \global\mathchardef\accent@spacefactor\spacefactor}%
39.466 \spacefactor\accent@spacefactor}}
39.467 \else %<<<<<<
39.468 \def\gl@accent#1#2#3{%
39.469 \bbl@allowhyphens\add@accent{#2}{#3}\bbl@allowhyphens
39.470 \spacefactor\sfcode' #3 }
39.471 \fi %<<<<<<

```

The shorthands are activated in the aux file. Now, we begin the shorthands group.

```

39.472 \addto\shorthandsgalician{\languageshorthands{galician}}
39.473 \let\noshorthandsgalician\relax

First, decimal comma.
39.474 \def\galiciandecimal#1{\def\gl@decimal{{#1}}}
39.475 \def\decimalcomma{\galiciandecimal{,}}
39.476 \def\decimalpoint{\galiciandecimal{.}}
39.477 \decimalcomma
39.478
39.479 \gl@set@shorthand{.}
39.480
39.481 \@namedef{gl@math\string.}{%
39.482 \ifnextchar\egroup
39.483 {\mathchar\gl@period@code\relax}%
39.484 {\gl@text@sh.}}
39.485
39.486 \declare@shorthand{system}{.}{\mathchar\gl@period@code\relax}

39.487 \addto\shorthandsgalician{%
39.488 \mathchardef\gl@period@code\the\mathcode'\.%
39.489 \babel@savevariable{\mathcode'\.}%
39.490 \mathcode'\.= "8000 %
39.491 \gl@activate{.}}

```

```

39.492
39.493 \AtBeginDocument{%
39.494   \catcode'\.=12
39.495   \if@filesw
39.496     \immediate\write\@mainaux{%
39.497     \string\catcode'\string\.=12}%
39.498   \fi}
39.499
39.500 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.1}{\gl@decimal1}
39.501 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.2}{\gl@decimal2}
39.502 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.3}{\gl@decimal3}
39.503 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.4}{\gl@decimal4}
39.504 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.5}{\gl@decimal5}
39.505 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.6}{\gl@decimal6}
39.506 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.7}{\gl@decimal7}
39.507 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.8}{\gl@decimal8}
39.508 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.9}{\gl@decimal9}
39.509 \declare@shorthand{galician}{.0}{\gl@decimal0}

    Now accents and tools
39.510 \gl@set@shorthand{"}
39.511 \def\gl@umlaut#1{%
39.512   \bbl@allowhyphens\add@accent{127}#1\bbl@allowhyphens
39.513   \spacefactor\sfcode'#1 }

    We override the default " of babel, intended for german.
39.514 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.515   \addto\shorthandsgalician{%
39.516     \gl@activate{"}%
39.517     \gl@activate{~}%
39.518     \babel@save\bbl@umlauta
39.519     \let\bbl@umlauta\gl@umlaut
39.520     \expandafter\babel@save\csname OT1\string\~\endcsname
39.521     \expandafter\def\csname OT1\string\~\endcsname{\gl@accent\~{126}}%
39.522     \expandafter\babel@save\csname OT1\string\' \endcsname
39.523     \expandafter\def\csname OT1\string\' \endcsname{\gl@accent\'{19}}
39.524 \else %<<<<<<
39.525   \addto\shorthandsgalician{%
39.526     \gl@activate{"}%
39.527     \gl@activate{~}%
39.528     \babel@save\bbl@umlauta
39.529     \let\bbl@umlauta\gl@umlaut
39.530     \babel@save\~%
39.531     \def\~{\gl@accent\~{126}}%
39.532     \babel@save\'%
39.533     \def\'#1{\if#1i\gl@accent\'{19}\i\else\gl@accent\'{19}#1\fi}}
39.534 \fi %<<<<<<

39.535 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"a}{\protect\gl@sptext{a}}
39.536 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"A}{\protect\gl@sptext{A}}
39.537 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"o}{\protect\gl@sptext{o}}
39.538 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"0}{\protect\gl@sptext{0}}
39.539
39.540 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"u}{\ "u}
39.541 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"U}{\ "U}
39.542 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"i}{\ "i}
39.543 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"I}{\ "I}
39.544
39.545 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"<}{\begin{quoting}}
39.546 \declare@shorthand{galician}{">}{\end{quoting}}
39.547 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"-}{\bbl@allowhyphens\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
39.548 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"=}{=}
39.549 {\bbl@allowhyphens\char\hyphenchar\font\hskip\z@skip}
39.550 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"~}

```

```

39.551 {\bbl@allowhyphens\discretionary{\char\hyphenchar\font}%
39.552     {\char\hyphenchar\font}{\char\hyphenchar\font}\bbl@allowhyphens}
39.553 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"r}
39.554 {\bbl@allowhyphens\discretionary{\char\hyphenchar\font}%
39.555     }{r}\bbl@allowhyphens}
39.556 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"R}
39.557 {\bbl@allowhyphens\discretionary{\char\hyphenchar\font}%
39.558     }{R}\bbl@allowhyphens}
39.559 \declare@shorthand{galician}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
39.560 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"/}
39.561 {\setbox\z@\hbox{/}%
39.562     \dimen@ht\z@
39.563     \advance\dimen@-1ex
39.564     \advance\dimen@\dp\z@
39.565     \dimen@.31\dimen@
39.566     \advance\dimen@-\dp\z@
39.567     \ifdim\dimen@>0pt
39.568         \kern.01em\lower\dimen@\box\z@\kern.03em
39.569     \else
39.570         \box\z@
39.571     \fi}
39.572 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"?}
39.573 {\setbox\z@\hbox{?'}%
39.574     \leavevmode\raise\dp\z@\box\z@}
39.575 \declare@shorthand{galician}{"!}
39.576 {\setbox\z@\hbox{!'}%
39.577     \leavevmode\raise\dp\z@\box\z@}
39.578
39.579 \gl@set@shorthand{~}
39.580 \declare@shorthand{galician}{~n}{\~n}
39.581 \declare@shorthand{galician}{~N}{\~N}
39.582 \declare@shorthand{galician}{~-}{~}%
39.583     \leavevmode
39.584     \bgroup
39.585     \let\@sptoken\gl@dashes % This assignation changes the
39.586     \@ifnextchar-%           \@ifnextchar behaviour
39.587     {\gl@dashes}%
39.588     {\hbox{\char\hyphenchar\font}\egroup}}
39.589 \def\gl@dashes-{%
39.590     \@ifnextchar-%
39.591     {\bbl@allowhyphens\hbox{---}\bbl@allowhyphens\egroup\@gobble}%
39.592     {\bbl@allowhyphens\hbox{--}\bbl@allowhyphens\egroup}}
39.593
39.594 \def\deactivatetilden{%
39.595     \expandafter\let\csname galician@sh@\string~@n\endcsname\relax
39.596     \expandafter\let\csname galician@sh@\string~@N\endcsname\relax}

```

The shorthands for quoting.

```

39.597 \expandafter\ifx\csname XML@catcodes\endcsname\relax
39.598     \addto\gl@select{%
39.599         \catcode'\<\active\catcode'\>=\active
39.600         \gl@quoting}
39.601
39.602 \gl@set@shorthand{<}
39.603 \gl@set@shorthand{>}
39.604
39.605 \declare@shorthand{system}{<}{\csname normal@char\string<\endcsname}
39.606 \declare@shorthand{system}{>}{\csname normal@char\string>\endcsname}
39.607
39.608 \addto\shorthandsgalician{%
39.609     \gl@activate{<}%
39.610     \gl@activate{>}}
39.611 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<

```

```

39.612 \AtBeginDocument{%
39.613 \gl@quoting
39.614 \if@filesw
39.615 \immediate\write\@mainaux{\string\gl@quoting}%
39.616 \fi}%
39.617 \fi %<<<<<<
39.618
39.619 \def\activatequoting{%
39.620 \catcode'>=\active \catcode'<=\active
39.621 \let\gl@quoting\activatequoting}
39.622 \def\deactivatequoting{%
39.623 \catcode'>=12 \catcode'<=12
39.624 \let\gl@quoting\deactivatequoting}
39.625
39.626 \declare@shorthand{galician}{<<}{\guillemotleft{}}
39.627 \declare@shorthand{galician}{>>}{\guillemotright{}}
39.628 \fi
39.629
39.630 \let\gl@quoting\relax
39.631 \let\deactivatequoting\relax
39.632 \let\activatequoting\relax

```

The acute accents are stored in a macro. If `activeacute` was set as an option it's executed. If not is not deleted for a possible later use in the `cfg` file. In non  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  formats is always executed.

```

39.633 \def\gl@activeacute{%
39.634 \gl@set@shorthand{'}%
39.635 \addto\shorthandsgalician{\gl@activate{'}}%
39.636 \addto\gl@reviveshorthands{\gl@restore{'}}%
39.637 \addto\gl@select{\catcode'=\active}%
39.638 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'a}{\@tabacckludge'a}%
39.639 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'A}{\@tabacckludge'A}%
39.640 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'e}{\@tabacckludge'e}%
39.641 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'E}{\@tabacckludge'E}%
39.642 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'i}{\@tabacckludge'i}%
39.643 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'I}{\@tabacckludge'I}%
39.644 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'o}{\@tabacckludge'o}%
39.645 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'O}{\@tabacckludge'O}%
39.646 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'u}{\@tabacckludge'u}%
39.647 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'U}{\@tabacckludge'U}%
39.648 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'n}{\~n}%
39.649 \declare@shorthand{galician}{'N}{\~N}%
39.650 \declare@shorthand{galician}{''}{\textquotedblright}%
39.651 \let\gl@activeacute\relax}
39.652
39.653 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.654 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{\gl@activeacute}{
39.655 \else %<<<<<<
39.656 \gl@activeacute
39.657 \fi %<<<<<<%

```

And the customization. By default these macros only store the values and do nothing.

```

39.658 \def\gl@enumerate#1#2#3#4{%
39.659 \def\gl@enum{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}}
39.660
39.661 \def\gl@itemize#1#2#3#4{%
39.662 \def\gl@item{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}}

```

The part formerly in the `.l1d` file comes here. It performs layout adaptation of  $\LaTeX$  to “orthodox” Galician rules.

```

39.663 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.664
39.665 \gl@enumerate{1.}{a}{1)}{a$'$}

```

```

39.666 \def\galiciandashitems{\gl@itemize{---}{---}{---}{---}}
39.667 \def\galiciansymbitems{%
39.668   \gl@itemize
39.669     {\leavevmode\hbox to 1.2ex
39.670       {\hss\vrule height .9ex width .7ex depth -.2ex\hss}}%
39.671     {\textbullet}%
39.672     {\m@th\circ}%
39.673     {\m@th\diamond}}
39.674 \def\galiciansignitems{%
39.675   \gl@itemize
39.676     {\textbullet}%
39.677     {\m@th\circ}%
39.678     {\m@th\diamond}%
39.679     {\m@th\triangleright}}
39.680 \galiciansymbitems
39.681
39.682 \def\gl@enumdef#1#2#3\@@{%
39.683   \if#2%
39.684     \@namedef{theenum#1}{\arabic{enum#1}}%
39.685   \else\if#2a%
39.686     \@namedef{theenum#1}{\emph{\alph{enum#1}}}%
39.687   \else\if#2A%
39.688     \@namedef{theenum#1}{\Alph{enum#1}}%
39.689   \else\if#2I%
39.690     \@namedef{theenum#1}{\roman{enum#1}}%
39.691   \else\if#2I%
39.692     \@namedef{theenum#1}{\Roman{enum#1}}%
39.693   \else\if#2o%
39.694     \@namedef{theenum#1}{\arabic{enum#1}\protect\gl@sptext{o}}%
39.695   \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
39.696   \toks@%expandafter{\csname theenum#1\endcsname}
39.697   \expandafter\edef\csname labelenum#1\endcsname
39.698     {\noexpand\gl@listquot\the\toks@#3}
39.699
39.700 \addto\layoutgalician{%
39.701   \def\gl@enumerate##1##2##3##4{%
39.702     \gl@enumdef{i}##1\@empty\@empty\@@
39.703     \gl@enumdef{ii}##2\@empty\@empty\@@
39.704     \gl@enumdef{iii}##3\@empty\@empty\@@
39.705     \gl@enumdef{iv}##4\@empty\@empty\@@}%
39.706   \def\gl@itemize##1##2##3##4{%
39.707     \def\labelitemi{\gl@listquot##1}%
39.708     \def\labelitemii{\gl@listquot##2}%
39.709     \def\labelitemiii{\gl@listquot##3}%
39.710     \def\labelitemiv{\gl@listquot##4}}%
39.711   \def\p@enumii{\theenumi}%
39.712   \def\p@enumiii{\theenumi\theenumii}%
39.713   \def\p@enumiv{\p@enumiii\theenumiii}%
39.714   \expandafter\gl@enumerate\gl@enum
39.715   \expandafter\gl@itemize\gl@item
39.716   \DeclareTextCommand{\guillemotleft}{OT1}{%
39.717     \ifmmode\ll
39.718     \else
39.719       \save@sf@q{\penalty\@M
39.720         \leavevmode\hbox{\usefont{U}{lasy}{m}{n}%
39.721           \char40 \kern-0.19em\char40 }}%
39.722     \fi}%
39.723   \DeclareTextCommand{\guillemotright}{OT1}{%
39.724     \ifmmode\gg
39.725     \else
39.726       \save@sf@q{\penalty\@M
39.727         \leavevmode\hbox{\usefont{U}{lasy}{m}{n}}%

```

```

39.728      \char41 \kern-0.19em\char41 }}%
39.729      \fi}%
39.730 \def\@fnsymbol##1%
39.731   {\ifcase##1\or*\or**\or***\or****\or
39.732   *****\or*****\else\@ctrerr\fi}%
39.733 \def\@alph##1%
39.734   {\ifcase##1\or a\or b\or c\or d\or e\or f\or g\or h\or i\or
39.735   l\or m\or n\or \~n\or o\or p\or q\or r\or s\or t\or u\or v\or
39.736   x\or z\else\@ctrerr\fi}%
39.737 \def\@Alph##1%
39.738   {\ifcase##1\or A\or B\or C\or D\or E\or F\or G\or H\or I\or
39.739   L\or M\or N\or \~N\or O\or P\or Q\or R\or S\or T\or U\or V\or
39.740   X\or Z\else\@ctrerr\fi}%
39.741 \let\@afterindentfalse\@afterindenttrue
39.742 \@afterindenttrue
39.743 \def\@secntformat##1{\csname the##1\endcsname.\quad}%
39.744 \def\@numberline##1{\hb@xt@{\tempdima{##1}\if&##1&\else.\fi\hfil}}%
39.745 \def\@roman##1{\protect\gl@roman{\number##1}}%
39.746 \def\gl@roman##1{\protect\gl@msc{\romannumeral##1}}%
39.747 \def\gl@romanindex##1##2{##1{\protect\gl@msc{##2}}}

```

We need to execute the following code when babel has been run, in order to see if galician is the main language.

```

39.748 \AtEndOfPackage{%
39.749   \let\gl@activeacute\@undefined
39.750   \def\@bbl@tempa{galician}%
39.751   \ifx\@bbl@main@language\@bbl@tempa
39.752     \AtBeginDocument{\layoutgalician}%
39.753     \addto\gl@select{%
39.754       \@ifstar{\let\layoutgalician\relax}%
39.755       {\layoutgalician\let\layoutgalician\relax}}%
39.756   \fi
39.757   \selectgalician}
39.758
39.759 \fi           %<<<<<<

```

After restoring the catcode of ~ and setting the minimal values for hyphenation, the .ldf is finished.

```

39.760 \gl@saveditcodes
39.761
39.762 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
39.763
39.764 \ifes@LaTeXe %<<<<<<
39.765   \ldf@finish{galician}
39.766 \else %<<<<<<
39.767   \gl@select
39.768   \ldf@finish{galician}
39.769   \csname activatequoting\endcsname
39.770 \fi %<<<<<<
39.771
39.772 \code

```

That's all in the main file. Now the file with custom-bib macros.

```

39.773 (*bblbst)
39.774 \def\bbland{e}
39.775 \def\bbleditors{directores} \def\bbleds{dirs.\@}
39.776 \def\bbleditor{director} \def\bbled{dir.\@}
39.777 \def\bbledby{dirixido por}
39.778 \def\bbledition{edici\ 'on} \def\bbledn{ed.\@}
39.779 \def\bblletal{e outros}
39.780 \def\bblvolume{volumen} \def\bblvol{vol.\@}
39.781 \def\bbllof{de}
39.782 \def\bblnumber{n\ 'umero} \def\bblno{n\sptext{o}}
39.783 \def\bblin{en}

```



```

39.784 \def\bblpages{p\'axinas}      \def\bblpp{p\'axs.\@}
39.785 \def\bblpage{p\'axina}      \def\bblp{p\'ax.\@}
39.786 \def\bblchapter{cap\'itulo}  \def\bblchap{cap.\@}
39.787 \def\bbltechreport{informe t\'ecnico}
39.788 \def\bbltechrep{inf.\@ t\'ec.\@}
39.789 \def\bblmthesis{proxecto de fin de carreira}
39.790 \def\bblpdthesis{tesis doutoral}
39.791 \def\bblfirst {primeira}      \def\bblfirsto {1\sptext{a}}
39.792 \def\bblsecond{segunda}      \def\bblsecondo {2\sptext{a}}
39.793 \def\bblthird {terceira}      \def\bblthirdo {3\sptext{a}}
39.794 \def\bblfourth{cuarta}       \def\bblfourtho {4\sptext{a}}
39.795 \def\bblfifth {quinta}       \def\bblfiftho {5\sptext{a}}
39.796 \def\bblth{\sptext{a}}
39.797 \let\bblst\bblth \let\bblnd\bblth \let\bblrd\bblth
39.798 \def\bbljan{xaneiro} \def\bblfeb{febreiro} \def\bblmar{marzo}
39.799 \def\bblapr{abril} \def\bblmay{maio} \def\bbljun{xu~no}
39.800 \def\bbljul{xullo} \def\bblaug{agosto} \def\bblsep{setembro}
39.801 \def\bbloct{outubro}\def\bblnov{novembro}\def\bbldec{decembro}
39.802 </bblbst>

```

The galician option writes a macro in the page field of *MakeIndex* in entries with medium caps number, and they are rejected. This program is a preprocessor which moves this macro to the entry field.

```

39.803 (*indexgl)
39.804 \makeatletter
39.805
39.806 \newcount\gl@converted
39.807 \newcount\gl@processed
39.808
39.809 \def\gl@encap{'\|}
39.810 \def\gl@openrange{'\({}
39.811 \def\gl@closrange{'\)}
39.812
39.813 \def\gl@split@file#1.#2\@{#1}
39.814 \def\gl@split@ext#1.#2\@{#2}
39.815
39.816 \typein[\answer]{^^JArchivo que convertir^^J%
39.817 (extension por omission .idx):}
39.818
39.819 \@expandtwoargs\in@{.}{\answer}
39.820 \ifin@
39.821 \edef\gl@input@file{\expandafter\gl@split@file\answer\@}
39.822 \edef\gl@input@ext{\expandafter\gl@split@ext\answer\@}
39.823 \else
39.824 \edef\gl@input@file{\answer}
39.825 \def\gl@input@ext{idx}
39.826 \fi
39.827
39.828 \typein[\answer]{^^JArquivo de destino^^J%
39.829 (arquivo por omission: \gl@input@file.eix,^^J%
39.830 extension por omission .eix):}
39.831 \ifx\answer\@empty
39.832 \edef\gl@output{\gl@input@file.eix}
39.833 \else
39.834 \@expandtwoargs\in@{.}{\answer}
39.835 \ifin@
39.836 \edef\gl@output{\answer}
39.837 \else
39.838 \edef\gl@output{\answer.eix}
39.839 \fi
39.840 \fi
39.841
39.842 \typein[\answer]{%

```

```

39.843 ^^J?Uuse algun esquema especial de controles^^J%
39.844 de MakeIndex para encap, open_range ou close_range?^^J%
39.845 [s/n] (n por omision)}
39.846
39.847 \if s\answer
39.848 \typein[\answer]{^^JCaracter para 'encap'^^J%
39.849 (\string| por omision)}
39.850 \ifx\answer@empty\else
39.851 \edef\gl@encap{%
39.852 '\expandafter\noexpand\csname\expandafter\string\answer\endcsname}
39.853 \fi
39.854 \typein[\answer]{^^JCaracter para 'open_range'^^J%
39.855 (\string( por omision)}
39.856 \ifx\answer@empty\else
39.857 \edef\gl@openrange{%
39.858 '\expandafter\noexpand\csname\expandafter\string\answer\endcsname}
39.859 \fi
39.860 \typein[\answer]{^^JCaracter para 'close_range'^^J%
39.861 (\string) por omision)}
39.862 \ifx\answer@empty\else
39.863 \edef\gl@closerange{%
39.864 '\expandafter\noexpand\csname\expandafter\string\answer\endcsname}
39.865 \fi
39.866 \fi
39.867
39.868 \newwrite\gl@indexfile
39.869 \immediate\openout\gl@indexfile=\gl@output
39.870
39.871 \newif\ifgl@encapsulated
39.872
39.873 \def\gl@roman#1{\romannumeral#1 }
39.874 \edef\gl@slash{\expandafter@gobble\string\\}
39.875
39.876 \def\indexentry{%
39.877 \begingroup
39.878 \@sanitize
39.879 \gl@indexentry}
39.880
39.881 \begingroup
39.882
39.883 \catcode'\|=12 \lccode'\|=\gl@encap\relax
39.884 \catcode'\(=12 \lccode'\(=\gl@openrange\relax
39.885 \catcode'\)=12 \lccode'\)=\gl@closerange\relax
39.886
39.887 \lowercase{
39.888 \gdef\gl@indexentry#1{%
39.889 \endgroup
39.890 \advance\gl@processed@ne
39.891 \gl@encapsulatedfalse
39.892 \gl@bar@idx#1|\@@
39.893 \gl@idxentry}%
39.894 }
39.895
39.896 \lowercase{
39.897 \gdef\gl@idxentry#1{%
39.898 \in@{\gl@roman}{#1}%
39.899 \ifin@
39.900 \advance\gl@converted@ne
39.901 \immediate\write\gl@indexfile{%
39.902 \string\indexentry{\gl@b|\ifgl@encapsulated\gl@p\fi glromanindex%
39.903 {\ifx\gl@a@empty\else\gl@slash\gl@a\fi}}{#1}}%
39.904 \else

```

```

39.905 \immediate\write\gl@indexfile{%
39.906 \string\indexentry{\gl@b\ifgl@encapsulated|\gl@p\gl@a\fi}{#1}}%
39.907 \fi}
39.908 }
39.909
39.910 \lowercase{
39.911 \gdef\gl@bar@idx#1|#2\@@{%
39.912 \def\gl@b{#1}\def\gl@a{#2}%
39.913 \ifx\gl@a\@empty\else\gl@encapsulatedtrue\gl@bar@eat#2\fi}
39.914 }
39.915
39.916 \lowercase{
39.917 \gdef\gl@bar@eat#1#2|{\def\gl@p{#1}\def\gl@a{#2}%
39.918 \edef\gl@t{(\ifx\gl@t\gl@p
39.919 \else\edef\gl@t{)}\ifx\gl@t\gl@p
39.920 \else
39.921 \edef\gl@a{\gl@p\gl@a}\let\gl@p\@empty%
39.922 \fi\fi}
39.923 }
39.924
39.925 \endgroup
39.926
39.927 \input \gl@input@file.\gl@input@ext
39.928
39.929 \immediate\closeout\gl@indexfile
39.930
39.931 \typeout{*****}
39.932 \typeout{procesouse: \gl@input@file.\gl@input@ext }
39.933 \typeout{Li'nas lidas: \the\gl@processed}
39.934 \typeout{Li'nas convertidas: \the\gl@converted}
39.935 \typeout{Resultado en: \gl@output}
39.936 \ifnum\gl@converted>\z@
39.937 \typeout{Xenere o 'indice a partir deste arquivo}
39.938 \else
39.939 \typeout{Non se realizou ning'un tipo de conversi'on}
39.940 \typeout{P'odese xenerar o arquivo directamente^^J%
39.941 de \gl@input@file.\gl@input@ext}
39.942 \fi
39.943 \typeout{*****}
39.944 \@@end
39.945 </indexgl}

```

## 40 The Basque language

The file `basque.dtx`<sup>42</sup> defines all the language definition macro's for the Basque language.

For this language the characters `~` and `"` are made active. In table 15 an overview is given of their purpose. These active accent characters behave according

<code>" </code>	disable ligature at this position.
<code>"-</code>	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
<code>\-</code>	like the old <code>\-</code> , but allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
<code>"&lt;</code>	for French left double quotes (similar to <code>&lt;&lt;</code> ).
<code>"&gt;</code>	for French right double quotes (similar to <code>&gt;&gt;</code> ).
<code>~n</code>	a <code>n</code> with tilde. Works for uppercase too.

Table 15: The extra definitions made by `basque.lfd`

to their original definitions if not followed by one of the characters indicated in that table.

This option includes support for working with extended, 8-bit fonts, if available. Support is based on providing an appropriate definition for the accent macros on entry to the Basque language. This is automatically done by  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  or NFSS2. If T1 encoding is chosen, and provided that adequate hyphenation patterns<sup>43</sup> are available. The easiest way to use the new encoding with  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  is to load the package `tlenc` with `\usepackage`. This must be done before loading `babel`.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
40.1 (*code)
40.2 \LdfInit{basque}\captionsbasque
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `basque` could be an 'unknown' language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@basque` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
40.3 \ifx\l@basque\@undefined
40.4 \@nopatterns{Basque}
40.5 \adddialect\l@basque0
40.6 \fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Basque language.

`\captionsbasque` The macro `\captionsbasque` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with  $\LaTeX$ .

```
40.7 \addto\captionsbasque{%
40.8 \def\prefacename{Hitzaurrea}%
40.9 \def\refname{Erreferentziak}%
40.10 \def\abstractname{Laburpena}%
40.11 \def\bibname{Bibliografia}%
40.12 \def\chaptername{Kapitulua}%
40.13 \def\appendixname{Eranskina}%
40.14 \def\contentsname{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
40.15 \def\listfigurename{Irudien Zerrenda}%
40.16 \def\listtablename{Taulen Zerrenda}%
40.17 \def\indexname{Kontzeptuen Aurkibidea}%
40.18 \def\figurename{Irudia}%
```

<sup>42</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0f and was last revised on 2005/03/29. The original author is Juan M. Aguirregabiria, (`wtpagagj@lg.ehu.es`) and is based on the Spanish file by Julio Sánchez, (`jsanchez@gmv.es`).

<sup>43</sup>One source for such patterns is the archive at `tp.lc.ehu.es` that can be accessed by anonymous FTP or in `http://tp.lc.ehu.es/jma/basque.html`

```

40.19 \def\tablename{Taula}%
40.20 \def\partname{Atala}%
40.21 \def\enclname{Erantsia}%
40.22 \def\ccname{Kopia}%
40.23 \def\headtoname{Nori}%
40.24 \def\pagename{Orria}%
40.25 \def\seenname{Ikusi}%
40.26 \def\alsoname{Ikusi, halaber}%
40.27 \def\proofname{Frogapena}%
40.28 \def\glossaryname{Glosarioa}%
40.29 }%

```

`\datebasque` The macro `\datebasque` redefines the command `\today` to produce Basque

```

40.30 \def\datebasque{%
40.31 \def\today{\number\year.eko\space\ifcase\month\or
40.32 urtarrilaren\or otsailaren\or martxoaren\or apirilaren\or
40.33 maiatzaren\or ekainaren\or uztailaren\or abuztuaren\or
40.34 irailaren\or urriaren\or azaroaren\or
40.35 abenduaren\fi~\number\day}}

```

`\extrasbasque` The macro `\extrasbasque` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Basque language. The macro `\noextrasbasque` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasbasque`. For Basque, some characters are made active or are redefined. In particular, the " character and the ~ character receive new meanings. Therefore these characters have to be treated as 'special' characters.

```

40.36 \addto\extrasbasque{\languageshorthands{basque}}
40.37 \initiate@active@char{"}
40.38 \initiate@active@char{~}
40.39 \addto\extrasbasque{%
40.40 \bbl@activate{"}%
40.41 \bbl@activate{~}}

```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

40.42 \addto\noextrasbasque{
40.43 \bbl@deactivate{"}\bbl@deactivate{~}}

```

Apart from the active characters some other macros get a new definition. Therefore we store the current one to be able to restore them later.

```

40.44 \addto\extrasbasque{%
40.45 \babel@save\}%
40.46 \babel@save\~%
40.47 \def\{"{\protect\@umlaut}%
40.48 \def\~{\protect\@tilde}}

```

`\basquehyphenmins` Basque hyphenation uses `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` both set to 2.

```

40.49 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}

```

`\dieresia` The original definition of \ " is stored as `\dieresia`, because the we do not know what is its definition, since it depends on the encoding we are using or on special macros that the user might have loaded. The expansion of the macro might use the  $\TeX$  `\accent` primitive using some particular accent that the font provides or might check if a combined accent exists in the font. These two cases happen with respectively OT1 and T1 encodings. For this reason we save the definition of \ " and use that in the definition of other macros. We do likewise for \ ' and \ ~. The present coding of this option file is incorrect in that it can break when the encoding changes. We do not use `\tilde` as the macro name because it is already defined as `\mathaccent`.

```

40.50 \let\dieresia\"
40.51 \let\texttilde\~

```

```

\@umlaut We check the encoding and if not using T1, we make the accents expand but
\@tilde  enabling hyphenation beyond the accent. If this is the case, not all break positions
will be found in words that contain accents, but this is a limitation in TEX. An
unsolved problem here is that the encoding can change at any time. The definitions
below are made in such a way that a change between two 256-char encodings
are supported, but changes between a 128-char and a 256-char encoding are not
properly supported. We check if T1 is in use. If not, we will give a warning and
proceed redefining the accent macros so that TEX at least finds the breaks that
are not too close to the accent. The warning will only be printed to the log file.
40.52 \ifx\DeclareFontShape\@undefined
40.53 \wlog{Warning: You are using an old LaTeX}
40.54 \wlog{Some word breaks will not be found.}
40.55 \def\@umlaut#1{\allowhyphens\dieresia{#1}\allowhyphens}
40.56 \def\@tilde#1{\allowhyphens\texttilde{#1}\allowhyphens}
40.57 \else
40.58 \edef\bbl@next{T1}
40.59 \ifx\f@encoding\bbl@next
40.60 \let\@umlaut\dieresia
40.61 \let\@tilde\texttilde
40.62 \else
40.63 \wlog{Warning: You are using encoding \f@encoding\space
40.64 instead of T1.}
40.65 \wlog{Some word breaks will not be found.}
40.66 \def\@umlaut#1{\allowhyphens\dieresia{#1}\allowhyphens}
40.67 \def\@tilde#1{\allowhyphens\texttilde{#1}\allowhyphens}
40.68 \fi
40.69 \fi

```

Now we can define our shorthands: the french quotes,

```

40.70 \declare@shorthand{basque}{<}{%
40.71 \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
40.72 \declare@shorthand{basque}{>}{%
40.73 \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}

```

ordinals<sup>44</sup>,

```

40.74 \declare@shorthand{basque}{' }{%
40.75 \textormath{\textquotedblright}{\sp\bgroup\prim@s'}}

```

tildes,

```

40.76 \declare@shorthand{basque}{~n}{\textormath{\~n}{\@tilde n}}
40.77 \declare@shorthand{basque}{~N}{\textormath{\~N}{\@tilde N}}

```

and some additional commands.

The shorthand "-" should be used in places where a word contains an explicit hyphenation character. According to the Academy of the Basque language, when a word break occurs at an explicit hyphen it must appear *both* at the end of the first line *and* at the beginning of the second line.

```

40.78 \declare@shorthand{basque}{-}{%
40.79 \nobreak\discretionary{-}{-}{-}\bbl@allowhyphens}
40.80 \declare@shorthand{basque}{|}{%
40.81 \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
40.82 \allowhyphens}{}}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

40.83 \ldf@finish{basque}
40.84 </code>

```

---

<sup>44</sup>The code for the ordinals was taken from the answer provided by Raymond Chen (raymond@math.berkeley.edu) to a question by Joseph Gil (yogi@cs.ubc.ca) in `comp.text.tex`.

## 41 The Romanian language

The file `romanian.dtx`<sup>45</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Romanian language.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
41.1 (*code)
41.2 \LdfInit{romanian}\captionsromanian
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `romanian` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@romanian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
41.3 \ifx\l@romanian\@undefined
41.4     \@nopatterns{Romanian}
41.5     \adddialect\l@romanian0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Romanian language.

`\captionsromanian` The macro `\captionsromanian` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
41.6 ls
41.7 \addto\captionsromanian{%
41.8     \def\prefacename{Prefa\c{t}\u{a}}%
41.9     \def\refname{Bibliografie}%
41.10    \def\abstractname{Rezumat}%
41.11    \def\bibname{Bibliografie}%
41.12    \def\chaptername{Capitolul}%
41.13    \def\appendixname{Anexa}%
41.14    \def\contentsname{Cuprins}%
41.15    \def\listfigurename{List\u{a} de figuri}%
41.16    \def\listtablename{List\u{a} de tabele}%
41.17    \def\indexname{Glosar}%
41.18    \def\figurename{Figura}%      % sau Plan\c{s}a
41.19    \def\tablename{Tabela}%
41.20    \def\partname{Partea}%
41.21    \def\enclname{Anex\u{a}}%    % sau Anexe
41.22    \def\ccname{Copie}%
41.23    \def\headtoname{Pentru}%
41.24    \def\pagename{Pagina}%
41.25    \def\seename{Vezi}%
41.26    \def\alsoname{Vezi de asemenea}%
41.27    \def\proofname{Demonstra\c{t}ie} %
41.28    \def\glossaryname{Glosar}%
41.29    }%
```

`\dateromanian` The macro `\dateromanian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Romanian dates.

```
41.30 \def\dateromanian{%
41.31     \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
41.32         ianuarie\or februarie\or martie\or aprilie\or mai\or
41.33         iunie\or iulie\or august\or septembrie\or octombrie\or
41.34         noiembrie\or decembrie\fi
41.35         \space \number\year}}
```

`\extrasromanian` The macro `\extrasromanian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Romanian language. The macro `\noextrasromanian` is used to cancel the actions

---

<sup>45</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.2l and was last revised on 2005/03/31. A contribution was made by Umstatter Horst (`hhu@cernvm.cern.ch`).

of `\extrasromanian` For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

```
41.36 \addto\extrasromanian{}  
41.37 \addto\noextrasromanian{}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
41.38 \ldf@finish{romanian}  
41.39 </code>
```



## 42 The Danish language

The file `danish.dtx`<sup>46</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Danish language.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 16 an overview is given of its purpose.

"	disable ligature at this position.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for words that should break at some sign such as "entrada/salida.")
"‘	lowered double left quotes (looks like „)
"’	normal double right quotes
"<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).
\-	like the old \-, but allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.

Table 16: The extra definitions made by `danish.ldf`

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
42.1 (*code)
```

```
42.2 \LdfInit{danish}\captionsdanish
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `danish` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@danish` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
42.3 \ifx\l@danish\@undefined
```

```
42.4     \nopatterns{Danish}
```

```
42.5     \adddialect\l@danish0\fi
```

`\englishhyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```
42.6 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@tw@}
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Danish language.

`\captionsdanish` The macro `\captionsdanish` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
42.7 \addto\captionsdanish{%
```

```
42.8   \def\prefacename{Forord}%
```

```
42.9   \def\refname{Litteratur}%
```

```
42.10  \def\abstractname{Resum\’e}%
```

```
42.11  \def\bibname{Litteratur}%
```

```
42.12  \def\chaptername{Kapitel}%
```

```
42.13  \def\appendixname{Bilag}%
```

```
42.14  \def\contentsname{Indhold}%
```

```
42.15  \def\listfigurename{Figurer}%
```

```
42.16  \def\listtablename{Tabeller}%
```

```
42.17  \def\indexname{Indeks}%
```

```
42.18  \def\figurename{Figur}%
```

```
42.19  \def\tablename{Tabel}%
```

```
42.20  \def\partname{Del}%
```

```
42.21  \def\enclname{Vedlagt}%
```

```
42.22  \def\ccname{Kopi til}%   or   Kopi sendt til
```

<sup>46</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.3q and was last revised on 2008/03/17. A contribution was made by Henning Larsen ([larsen@cernvm.cern.ch](mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch))

```

42.23 \def\headtoname{Til}% in letter
42.24 \def\pagename{Side}%
42.25 \def\seename{Se}%
42.26 \def\alsoname{Se ogs{\aa}}%
42.27 \def\proofname{Bevis}%
42.28 \def\glossaryname{Gloسلسته}%
42.29 }%

```

`\datedanish` The macro `\datedanish` redefines the command `\today` to produce Danish dates.

```

42.30 \def\datedanish{%
42.31 \def\today{\number\day.~\ifcase\month\or
42.32 januar\or februar\or marts\or april\or maj\or juni\or
42.33 juli\or august\or september\or oktober\or november\or december\fi
42.34 \space\number\year}}

```

`\extrasdanish` The macro `\extrasdanish` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Danish language. The macro `\noextrasdanish` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasdanish`.

Danish typesetting requires `\frenchspacing` to be in effect.

```

42.35 \addto\extrasdanish{\bbl@frenchspacing}
42.36 \addto\noextrasdanish{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}

```

For Danish the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary. Other languages in the same document may also use the " character for shorthands; we specify that the danish group of shorthands should be used.

```

42.37 \initiate@active@char{"}
42.38 \addto\extrasdanish{\languageshorthands{danish}}
42.39 \addto\extrasdanish{\bbl@activate{}}

```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

42.40 \addto\noextrasdanish{\bbl@deactivate{}}

```

First we define access to the low opening double quote and guillemets for quotations,

```

42.41 \declare@shorthand{danish}{"'}{%
42.42 \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
42.43 \declare@shorthand{danish}{"'}{%
42.44 \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}
42.45 \declare@shorthand{danish}{"<}{%
42.46 \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
42.47 \declare@shorthand{danish}{">}{%
42.48 \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}

```

then we define commands to be able to specify hyphenation breakpoints that behave a little different from `\-`.

```

42.49 \declare@shorthand{danish}{"-}{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
42.50 \declare@shorthand{danish}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
42.51 \declare@shorthand{danish}{"~}{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}}{-}}
42.52 \declare@shorthand{danish}{"=}{\nobreak-\hskip\z@skip}

```

And we want to have a shorthand for disabling a ligature.

```

42.53 \declare@shorthand{danish}{"|}{%
42.54 \textormath{\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}}{}}

```

To enable hyphenation in two words, written together but separated by a slash, as in 'uitdrukking/opmerking' we define the command `"/`.

```

42.55 \declare@shorthand{dutch}{"/}{\textormath
42.56 {\bbl@allowhyphens\discretionary{/}{/}{\bbl@allowhyphens}}{}}

```

`\-` All that is left now is the redefinition of `\-`. The new version of `\-` should indicate an extra hyphenation position, while allowing other hyphenation positions to be

generated automatically. The standard behaviour of T<sub>E</sub>X in this respect is very unfortunate for languages such as Dutch and German, where long compound words are quite normal and all one needs is a means to indicate an extra hyphenation position on top of the ones that T<sub>E</sub>X can generate from the hyphenation patterns.

```
42.57 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%  
42.58   \babel@save\-\}  
42.59 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%  
42.60   \def\-\{\bb1@allowhyphens\discretionary{-}{-}{\bb1@allowhyphens}}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
42.61 \ldf@finish{danish}  
42.62 \code
```

## 43 The Icelandic language

### 43.1 Overview

The file `iceland.dtx`<sup>47</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Icelandic language

Customization for the Icelandic language was made following several official and semiofficial publications [2, 3, 1, 6, 5]. These publications do not always agree and we indicate those instances.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 17 an overview is given of its purpose. The shorthands in table 17 can also be typeset by using the

"	disable ligature at this position.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. x-""y).
"~	for a compound word mark without a breakpoint.
"=	for a compound word mark with a breakpoint, allowing hyphenation in the composing words.
"‘	for Icelandic left double quotes (looks like „).
"’	for Icelandic right double quotes.
">	for Icelandic ‘french’ left double quotes (similar to >>).
"<	for Icelandic ‘french’ right double quotes (similar to <<).
"o	for old Icelandic o
"O	for old Icelandic O
"ó	for old Icelandic ó
"Ó	for old Icelandic Ó
"e	for old Icelandic e
"E	for old Icelandic E
"é	for old Icelandic é
"É	for old Icelandic É
\tala	for typesetting numbers
\grada	for the ‘degree’ symbol
\gradur	for ‘degrees’, e.g. 5 °C
\upp	for textsuperscript

Table 17: The shorthands and extra definitions made by `icelandic.ldf`

commands in table 18.

### 43.2 References

- [1] Alþingi. *Reglur um frágang þingskjala og prentun umræðna*, 1988.
- [2] Auglýsing um greinarmerkjasetningu. Stj.tíð B, nr. 133/1974, 1974.
- [3] Auglýsing um breyting auglýsingu nr. 132/1974 um íslenska stafsetningu. Stj.tíð B, nr. 261/1977, 1977.
- [4] Einar Haugen, editor. *First Grammatical Treatise*. Longman, London, 2 edition, 1972.
- [5] Staðlaráð Íslands og Fagráð í upplýsingatækni, Reykjavík. *Forstaðall FS 130:1997*, 1997.
- [6] STRÍ Staðlaráð Íslands. *SI - kerfið*, 2 edition, 1994.

<sup>47</sup>The file described in this section has version number ? and was last revised on ?.

<code>\ilqq</code>	for Icelandic left double quotes (looks like „).
<code>\irqq</code>	for Icelandic right double quotes (looks like “).
<code>\ilq</code>	for Icelandic left single quotes (looks like ,).
<code>\irq</code>	for Icelandic right single quotes (looks like ‘).
<code>\iflqq</code>	for Icelandic ‘french’ left double quotes (similar to >>).
<code>\ifrqq</code>	for Icelandic ‘french’ right double quotes (similar to <<).
<code>\ifrlq</code>	for Icelandic ‘french’ left single quotes (similar to >).
<code>\dq</code>	the original quotes character (“).
<code>\oob</code>	for old Icelandic o
<code>\Oob</code>	for old Icelandic O
<code>\oob</code>	for old Icelandic ó
<code>\OOb</code>	for old Icelandic Ó
<code>\eob</code>	for old Icelandic e
<code>\Eob</code>	for old Icelandic E
<code>\eeob</code>	for old Icelandic é
<code>\EEob</code>	for old Icelandic É

Table 18: Commands which produce quotes and old Icelandic diacritics, defined by `icelandic.ldf`

### 43.3 T<sub>E</sub>Xnical details

When this file was read through the option `icelandic` we make it behave as if `icelandic` was specified.

```

43.1 \def\bb1@tempa{icelandic}
43.2 \ifx\CurrentOption\bb1@tempa
43.3 \def\CurrentOption{icelandic}
43.4 \fi

```

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```

43.5 (*code)
43.6 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{captions\CurrentOption}

```

When this file is read as an option, i.e., by the `\usepackage` command, `icelandic` will be an ‘unknown’ language, so we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@icelandic` to see whether we have to do something here.

```

43.7 \ifx\l@icelandic\@undefined
43.8 \@nopatterns{Icelandic}
43.9 \adddialect\l@icelandic0
43.10 \fi

```

`\if@Two@E` We will need a new ‘if’: `\if@Two@E` is true if and only if L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> is running *not* in compatibility mode. It is used in the definitions of the command `\tala` and `\upp`. The definition is somewhat complicated, due to the fact that `\if@compatibility` is not recognized as a `\if` in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X-2.09 based formats.

```

43.11 \newif\if@Two@E \@Two@Etrue
43.12 \def\@FI@{\fi}
43.13 \ifx\@compatibilitytrue\@undefined
43.14 \@Two@Efalse \def\@FI@{\relax}
43.15 \else
43.16 \if@compatibility \@Two@Efalse \fi
43.17 \@FI@

```

`\extrasicelandic` The macro `\extrasicelandic` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Icelandic language. The macro `\noextrasicelandic` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasicelandic`.

For Icelandic the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary.

```
43.18 \initiate@active@char{"}
43.19 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{%
43.20 \languageshorthands{icelandic}}
43.21 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
43.22 \bbl@activate{"}}
```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```
43.23 \addto\noextrasicelandic{\bbl@deactivate{"}}
```

The icelandic hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
43.24 \providehyphenmins{CurrentOption}{\tw@tw@}
```

The code above is necessary because we need an extra active character. This character is then used as indicated in table 18.

To be able to define the function of ", we first define a couple of 'support' macros.

## 43.4 Captionnames and date

The next step consists of defining the Icelandic equivalents for the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X captionnames.

`\captionsicelandic` The macro `\captionsicelandic` will define all strings used used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
43.25 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
43.26 \def\prefacename{Form\'}{a}li}%
43.27 \def\refname{Heimildir}%
43.28 \def\abstractname{\'}{U}tdr\'}{a}ttur}%
43.29 \def\bibname{Heimildir}%
43.30 \def\chaptername{Kafli}%
43.31 \def\appendixname{Vi\'}{dh}auki}%
43.32 \def\contentsname{Efnisyfirlit}%
43.33 \def\listfigurename{Myndaskr\'}{a}}%
43.34 \def\listtablename{T\'}{o}fluskr\'}{a}}%
43.35 \def\indexname{Atri\'}{dh}isor\'}{dh}askr\'}{a}}%
43.36 \def\figurename{Mynd}%
43.37 \def\tablename{Tafla}%
43.38 \def\partname{Hluti}%
43.39 \def\enclname{Hj\'}{a}lagt}%
43.40 \def\ccname{Samrit}%
43.41 \def\headtoname{Til:}% in letter
43.42 \def\pagename{Bla\'}{dh}s\'}{i}{\'}{dh}a}%
43.43 \def\seename{Sj\'}{a}}%
43.44 \def\alsoname{Sj\'}{a} einnig}%
43.45 \def\proofname{S\'}{o}nnun}%
43.46 \def\glossaryname{Or\'}{dh}alisti}%
43.47 }
```

`\dateicelandic` The macro `\dateicelandic` redefines the command `\today` to produce Icelandic dates.

```
43.48 \def\dateicelandic{%
43.49 \def\today{\number\day.\~\ifcase\month\or
43.50 jan\'}{u}ar\or febr\'}{u}ar\or mars\or apr\'}{i}1\or ma\'}{i}\or
43.51 j\'}{u}n\'}{i}\or j\'}{u}1\'}{i}\or \'}{a}g\'}{u}st\or september\or
43.52 okt\'}{o}ber\or n\'}{o}vember\or desember\fi
43.53 \space\number\year}}
```

## 43.5 Icelandic quotation marks

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent `\"` can now be typed as `"`.

```
43.54 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
43.55 \def\x{\endgroup
43.56 \def\@SS{\mathchar"7019 }
43.57 \def\dq{"}}
43.58 \x
```

Now we can define the icelandic and icelandic ‘french’ quotes. The icelandic ‘french’ guillemets are the reverse of french guillemets. We define single icelandic ‘french’ quotes for compatibility. Shorthands are provided for a number of different quotation marks, which make them useable both outside and inside mathmode.

```
43.59 \let\ilq\grq
43.60 \let\irq\grq
43.61 \let\iflq\frq
43.62 \let\ifrq\flq
43.63 \let\ilqq\glqq
43.64 \let\irqq\grqq
43.65 \let\iflqq\frqq
43.66 \let\ifrqq\flqq

43.67 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"}{\glqq}
43.68 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{''}{\grqq}
43.69 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{">}{\frqq}
43.70 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"<}{\flqq}
```

and some additional commands:

```
43.71 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"-}{\nobreak\-\bb1@allowhyphens}
43.72 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"}{|}{%
43.73 \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
43.74 \bb1@allowhyphens}{}}
43.75 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
43.76 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"~}{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}{-}}{-}}
43.77 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"=}{\nobreak-\hskip\z@skip}
```

## 43.6 Old Icelandic

In old Icelandic some letters have special diacritical marks, described for example in *First Grammatical Treatise* [4, 5]. We provide these in the T1 encoding with the ‘ogonek’. The ogonek is placed with the letters ‘o’, and ‘O’, ‘ó’ and ‘Ó’, ‘e’ and ‘E’, and ‘é’ and ‘É’. Shorthands are provided for these as well.

The following code by Leszek Holenderski lifted from `polish.dtx` is designed to position the diacritics correctly for every font in every size. These macros need a few extra dimension variables.

```
43.78 \newdimen\pl@left
43.79 \newdimen\pl@down
43.80 \newdimen\pl@right
43.81 \newdimen\pl@temp
```

`\sob` The macro `\sob` is used to put the ‘ogonek’ in the right place.

```
43.82 \def\sob#1#2#3#4#5{%parameters: letter and fractions hl,ho,vl,vo
43.83 \setbox0\hbox{#1}\setbox1\hbox{\k{}}\setbox2\hbox{p}%
43.84 \pl@right=#2\wd0 \advance\pl@right by-#3\wd1
43.85 \pl@down=#5\ht1 \advance\pl@down by-#4\ht0
43.86 \pl@left=\pl@right \advance\pl@left by\wd1
43.87 \pl@temp=-\pl@down \advance\pl@temp by\dp2 \dp1=\pl@temp
43.88 \leavevmode
43.89 \kern\pl@right\lower\pl@down\box1\kern-\pl@left #1}
```

```

\oob
\Ob 43.90 \DeclareTextCommand{\oob}{T1}{\sob {o}{.85}{0}{.04}{0}}
\oob 43.91 \DeclareTextCommand{\Ob}{T1}{\sob {0}{.7}{0}{0}{0}}
\OOob 43.92 \DeclareTextCommand{\ooob}{T1}{\sob {ó}{.85}{0}{.04}{0}}
\eob 43.93 \DeclareTextCommand{\OOob}{T1}{\sob {Ó}{.7}{0}{0}{0}}
\Eob 43.94 \DeclareTextCommand{\eob}{T1}{\sob {e}{1}{0}{.04}{0}}
\eeob 43.95 \DeclareTextCommand{\Eob}{T1}{\sob {E}{1}{0}{.04}{0}}
\EEob 43.96 \DeclareTextCommand{\eeob}{T1}{\sob {é}{1}{0}{.04}{0}}
\EEob 43.97 \DeclareTextCommand{\EEob}{T1}{\sob {É}{1}{0}{.04}{0}}

43.98 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"o}{\oob}
43.99 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"0}{\Ob}
43.100 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"ó}{\ooob}
43.101 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"Ó}{\OOob}
43.102 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"e}{\eob}
43.103 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"E}{\Eob}
43.104 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"é}{\eeob}
43.105 \declare@shorthand{icelandic}{"É}{\EEob}

```

### 43.7 Formatting numbers

This section is lifted from `frenchb.dtx` by D. Flipo. In English the decimal part starts with a point and thousands should be separated by a comma: an approximation of  $1000\pi$  should be inputed as `$3{,}141.592{,}653$` in math-mode and as `3,141.592,653` in text.

In Icelandic the decimal part starts with a comma and thousands should be separated by a space [1] or by a period [5]; we have the space. The above approximation of  $1000\pi$  should be inputed as `$3\;141{,}592\;653$` in math-mode and as something like `3~141,592~653` in text. Braces are mandatory around the comma in math-mode, the reason is mentioned in the `TEXbook` p. 134: the comma is of type `\mathpunct` (thus normally followed by a space) while the point is of type `\mathord` (no space added).

Thierry Bouche suggested that a second type of comma, of type `\mathord` would be useful in math-mode, and proposed to introduce a command (named `\decimalsep` in this package), the expansion of which would depend on the current language.

Vincent Jalby suggested a command `\nombre` to conveniently typeset numbers: inputting `\nombre{3141,592653}` either in text or in math-mode will format this number properly according to the current language (Icelandic or non-Icelandic). We use `\nombre` to define command `\tala` in Icelandic.

`\tala` accepts an optional argument which happens to be useful with the extension ‘`dcolumn`’, it specifies the decimal separator used in the *source code*:

```

\newcolumntype{d}{D{,}\decimalsep}{-1}
\begin{tabular}{d}\hline
3,14 \\\
\tala[,]{123,4567} \\\
\tala[,]{9876,543}\\\hline
\end{tabular}

```

will print a column of numbers aligned on the decimal point (comma or point depending on the current language), each slice of 3 digits being separated by a space or a comma according to the current language.

`\decimalsep` We need an internal definition, valid in both text and math-mode, for the comma  
`\thousandsep` (`\@comma@`) and another one for the unbreakable fixed length space (no glue) used in Icelandic (`\f@thousandsep`).

The commands `\decimalsep` and `\thousandsep` get default definitions (for the English language) when `icelandic` is loaded; these definitions will be updated when the current language is switched to or from Icelandic.

```
43.106 \mathchardef\m@comma="013B \def\@comma@{\ifmmode\m@comma\else,\fi}
```



```

43.107 \def\ftousandsep{\ifmode\mskip5.5mu\else\penalty\M\kern.3em\fi}
43.108 \newcommand{\decimalsep}{.} \newcommand{\thousandsep}{\@comma}
43.109 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
43.110     \def\decimalsep{\@comma}%
43.111     \def\thousandsep{\ftousandsep}}
43.112 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
43.113     \def\decimalsep{.}%
43.114     \def\thousandsep{\@comma}}

```

`\tala` The decimal separator used when *inputing* a number with `\tala` has to be a *comma*. `\tala` splits the inputed number into two parts: what comes before the first comma will be formatted by `\@integerpart` while the rest (if not empty) will be formatted by `\@decimalpart`. Both parts, once formatted separately will be merged together with between them, either the decimal separator `\decimalsep` or (in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> *only*) the optional argument of `\tala`.

```

43.115 \if@Two@E
43.116 \newcommand{\tala}[2][\decimalsep]{%
43.117     \def\@decimalsep{#1}\@tala#2\@empty,\@empty,\@nil}
43.118 \else
43.119 \newcommand{\tala}[1]{%
43.120     \def\@decimalsep{\decimalsep}\@tala#1\@empty,\@empty,\@nil}
43.121 \fi
43.122 \def\@tala#1,#2,#3\@nil{%
43.123     \ifx\@empty#2%
43.124         \@integerpart{#1}%
43.125     \else
43.126         \@integerpart{#1}\@decimalsep\@decimalpart{#2}%
43.127     \fi}

```

The easiest bit is the decimal part: We attempt to read the first four digits of the decimal part, if it has less than 4 digits, we just have to print them, otherwise `\thousandsep` has to be appended after the third digit, and the algorithm is applied recursively to the rest of the decimal part.

```

43.128 \def\@decimalpart#1{\@@decimalpart#1\@empty\@empty\@empty}
43.129 \def\@@decimalpart#1#2#3#4{#1#2#3%
43.130 \ifx\@empty#4%
43.131 \else
43.132 \thousandsep\expandafter\@@decimalpart\expandafter#4%
43.133 \fi}

```

Formatting the integer part is more difficult because the slices of 3 digits start from the *bottom* while the number is read from the top! This (tricky) code is borrowed from David Carlisle's `comma.sty`.

```

43.134 \def\@integerpart#1{\@integerpart{#1}\@empty\@empty\@empty}
43.135 \def\@integerpart#1#2#3#4{%
43.136 \ifx\@empty#2%
43.137 \@addthousandsep#1\relax
43.138 \else
43.139 \ifx\@empty#3%
43.140 \@addthousandsep\@empty\@empty#1#2\relax
43.141 \else
43.142 \ifx\@empty#4%
43.143 \@addthousandsep\@empty#1#2#3\relax
43.144 \else
43.145 \@integerpartafterfi{#1#2#3#4}%
43.146 \fi
43.147 \fi
43.148 \fi}
43.149 \def\@integerpartafterfi#1\fi\fi\fi{\fi\fi\fi\@integerpart{#1}}
43.150 \def\@addthousandsep#1#2#3#4{#1#2#3%
43.151 \if#4\relax
43.152 \else

```

```

43.153 \thousandsep\expandafter\@addthousandsep\expandafter#4%
43.154 \fi}

```

## 43.8 Extra utilities

We now provide the Icelandic user with some extra utilities.

`\upp` `\upp` is for typesetting superscripts. `\upp` relies on

`\upp@size` The internal macro `\upp@size` holds the size at which the superscript will be typeset. The reason for this is that we have to specify it differently for different formats.

```

43.155 \ifx\sevenrm\@undefined
43.156 \ifx\@ptsize\@undefined
43.157 \let\upp@size\small
43.158 \else
43.159 \ifx\selectfont\@undefined

```

In this case the format is the original L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X-2.09:

```

43.160 \ifcase\@ptsize
43.161 \let\upp@size\ixpt\or
43.162 \let\upp@size\xpt\or
43.163 \let\upp@size\xipt
43.164 \fi

```

When `\selectfont` is defined we probably have NFSS available:

```

43.165 \else
43.166 \ifcase\@ptsize
43.167 \def\upp@size{\fontsize\@ixpt{10pt}\selectfont}\or
43.168 \def\upp@size{\fontsize\@xpt{11pt}\selectfont}\or
43.169 \def\upp@size{\fontsize\@xipt{12pt}\selectfont}
43.170 \fi
43.171 \fi
43.172 \fi
43.173 \else

```

If we end up here it must be a plain based T<sub>E</sub>X format, so:

```

43.174 \let\upp@size\sevenrm
43.175 \fi

```

Now we can define `\upp`. When L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> runs in compatibility mode (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X-2.09 emulation), `\textsuperscript` is also defined, but does no good job, so we give two different definitions for `\upp` using `\if@Two@E`.

```

43.176 \if@Two@E
43.177 \DeclareRobustCommand*\upp}[1]{\textsuperscript{#1}}
43.178 \else
43.179 \DeclareRobustCommand*\upp}[1]{%
43.180 \leavevmode\raise1ex\hbox{\upp@size#1}}
43.181 \fi

```

Some definitions for special characters. `\grada` needs a special treatment: it is `\char6` in T1-encoding and `\char23` in OT1-encoding.

```

43.182 \ifx\fmtname\LaTeXeFmtName
43.183 \DeclareTextSymbol{\grada}{T1}{6}
43.184 \DeclareTextSymbol{\grada}{OT1}{23}
43.185 \else
43.186 \def\T@one{T1}
43.187 \ifx\fontencoding\T@one
43.188 \newcommand{\grada}{\char6}
43.189 \else
43.190 \newcommand{\grada}{\char23}
43.191 \fi
43.192 \fi

```

`\gradur` Macro for typesetting the abbreviation for ‘degrees’ (as in ‘degrees Celsius’). As the bounding box of the character ‘degree’ has *very* different widths in CMR/DC and PostScript fonts, we fix the width of the bounding box of `\gradur` to 0.3em, this lets the symbol ‘degree’ stick to the preceding (e.g., 45`\gradur`) or following character (e.g., 20`\gradur` C).

```
43.193 \DeclareRobustCommand*\gradur}{%  
43.194 \leavevmode\hbox to 0.3em{\hss\grada\hss}}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
43.195 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption  
43.196 </code>
```

## 44 The Norwegian language

The file `norsk.dtx`<sup>48</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Norwegian language as well as for an alternative variant ‘nynorsk’ of this language.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 19 an overview is given of its purpose.

"ff	for ff to be hyphenated as ff-f, this is also implemented for b, d, f, g, l, m, n, p, r, s, and t. ( <code>o"ppussing</code> )
"ee	Hyphenate "ee as \’e-e. ( <code>komit"een</code> )
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the composing words. Use this for compound words when the hyphenation patterns fail to hyphenate properly. ( <code>alpin"-anlegg</code> )
"	Like "-", but inserts 0.03em space. Use it if the compound point is spanned by a ligature. ( <code>hoff" intriger</code> )
""	Like "-", but producing no hyphen sign. ( <code>i""g{aa}{r}</code> )
"~	Like -, but allows no hyphenation at all. ( <code>E""~cup</code> )
"=	Like -, but allowing hyphenation in the composing words. ( <code>marksistisk"=leninistisk</code> )
"<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).

Table 19: The extra definitions made by `norsk.sty`

Rune Kleveland distributes a Norwegian dictionary for `ispell` (570000 words). It can be found at <http://www.uio.no/~runekl/dictionary.html>.

This dictionary supports the spellings `spi"sslede` for ‘spisslede’ (hyphenated `spiss-slede`) and other such words, and also suggest the spelling `spi"sslede` for ‘spisslede’ and ‘spisslede’.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
44.1 (*code)
44.2 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{captions\CurrentOption}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `norsk` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@norsk` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
44.3 \ifx\l@norsk\@undefined
44.4   \@nopatterns{Norsk}
44.5   \adddialect\l@norsk0\fi
```

`\norskhyphenmins` Some sets of Norwegian hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` set to 1 and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2, but the most common set `nohyph.tex` can’t. So we use `\lefthyphenmin=2` by default.

```
44.6 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
```

Now we have to decide which version of the captions should be made available. This can be done by checking the contents of `\CurrentOption`.

```
44.7 \def\bbl@tempa{norsk}
44.8 \ifx\CurrentOption\bbl@tempa
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Norwegian language.

<sup>48</sup>The file described in this section has version number v2.0h and was last revised on 2005/03/30. Contributions were made by Haavard Helstrup (`HAAVARD@CERNVM`) and Alv Kjetil Holme (`HOLMEA@CERNVM`); the ‘nynorsk’ variant has been supplied by Per Steinar Iversen (`iversen@vxcern.cern.ch`) and Terje Engeset Petherst (`TERJEEP@VSFYS1.FI.UIB.NO`); the short-hand definitions were provided by Rune Kleveland (`runekl@math.uio.no`).

`\captionsnorsk` The macro `\captionsnorsk` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

44.9  \def\captionsnorsk{%
44.10  \def\prefacename{Forord}%
44.11  \def\refname{Referanser}%
44.12  \def\abstractname{Sammendrag}%
44.13  \def\bibName{Bibliografi}%      or Litteraturoversikt
44.14  %                               or Litteratur or Referanser
44.15  \def\chaptername{Kapittel}%
44.16  \def\appendixname{Tillegg}%    or Appendiks
44.17  \def\contentsname{Innhold}%
44.18  \def\listfigurename{Figurer}%  or Figurliste
44.19  \def\listtablename{Tabeller}%   or Tabelliste
44.20  \def\indexname{Register}%
44.21  \def\figurename{Figur}%
44.22  \def\tablename{Tabell}%
44.23  \def\partname{Del}%
44.24  \def\enclname{Vedlegg}%
44.25  \def\ccname{Kopi sendt}%
44.26  \def\headtoname{Til}% in letter
44.27  \def\pagename{Side}%
44.28  \def\seename{Se}%
44.29  \def\alsoname{Se ogs\aa{}}%
44.30  \def\proofname{Bevis}%
44.31  \def\glossaryname{Ordliste}%
44.32  }
44.33 \else

```

For the ‘nynorsk’ version of these definitions we just add a “dialect”.

```

44.34  \adddialect\l@nynorsk\l@norsk

```

`\captionsnynorsk` The macro `\captionsnynorsk` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, but using a different spelling than in the command `\captionsnorsk`.

```

44.35  \def\captionsnynorsk{%
44.36  \def\prefacename{Forord}%
44.37  \def\refname{Referansar}%
44.38  \def\abstractname{Samandrag}%
44.39  \def\bibName{Litteratur}%      or Litteraturoversyn
44.40  %                               or Referansar
44.41  \def\chaptername{Kapittel}%
44.42  \def\appendixname{Tillegg}%   or Appendiks
44.43  \def\contentsname{Innhald}%
44.44  \def\listfigurename{Figurar}%  or Figurliste
44.45  \def\listtablename{Tabellar}%  or Tabelliste
44.46  \def\indexname{Register}%
44.47  \def\figurename{Figur}%
44.48  \def\tablename{Tabell}%
44.49  \def\partname{Del}%
44.50  \def\enclname{Vedlegg}%
44.51  \def\ccname{Kopi til}%
44.52  \def\headtoname{Til}% in letter
44.53  \def\pagename{Side}%
44.54  \def\seename{Sj\aa{}}%
44.55  \def\alsoname{Sj\aa{} \‘{o}g}%
44.56  \def\proofname{Bevis}%
44.57  \def\glossaryname{Ordliste}%
44.58  }
44.59 \fi

```

`\datenorsk` The macro `\datenorsk` redefines the command `\today` to produce Norwegian dates.

```

44.60 \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
44.61   \def\today{\number\day.\~\ifcase\month\or
44.62     januar\or februar\or mars\or april\or mai\or juni\or
44.63     juli\or august\or september\or oktober\or november\or desember
44.64     \fi
44.65     \space\number\year}}

```

`\extrasnorsk` The macro `\extrasnorsk` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Norwegian language. The macro `\noextrasnorsk` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasnorsk`.

Norwegian typesetting requires `\frenchspacing` to be in effect.

```

44.66 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{\bbl@frenchspacing}
44.67 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}

```

For Norsk the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary.

```

44.68 \initiate@active@char{"}
44.69 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
44.70   \languageshorthands{norsk}}
44.71 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
44.72   \bbl@activate{"}}

```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

44.73 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
44.74   \bbl@deactivate{"}}

```

The code above is necessary because we need to define a number of shorthand commands. These shorthand commands are then used as indicated in table 19.

To be able to define the function of ", we first define a couple of 'support' macros.

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent `\"` can now be typed as `"`.

```

44.75 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
44.76 \def\x{\endgroup
44.77   \def\SS{\mathchar"7019 }
44.78   \def\dq{"}}
44.79 \x

```

Now we can define the discretionary shorthand commands. The number of words where such hyphenation is required is for each character

b	d	f	g	k	l	n	p	r	s	t
4	4	15	3	43	30	8	12	1	33	35

taken from a list of 83000 ispell-roots.

```

44.80 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{b}{\textormath{\bbl@disc b{bb}}{b}}
44.81 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{B}{\textormath{\bbl@disc B{BB}}{B}}
44.82 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{d}{\textormath{\bbl@disc d{dd}}{d}}
44.83 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{D}{\textormath{\bbl@disc D{DD}}{D}}
44.84 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{e}{\textormath{\bbl@disc e{\'e}}{}}
44.85 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{E}{\textormath{\bbl@disc E{\'E}}{}}
44.86 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{F}{\textormath{\bbl@disc F{FF}}{F}}
44.87 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{g}{\textormath{\bbl@disc g{gg}}{g}}
44.88 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{G}{\textormath{\bbl@disc G{GG}}{G}}
44.89 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{k}{\textormath{\bbl@disc k{kk}}{k}}
44.90 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{K}{\textormath{\bbl@disc K{KK}}{K}}
44.91 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{l}{\textormath{\bbl@disc l{ll}}{l}}
44.92 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{L}{\textormath{\bbl@disc L{LL}}{L}}
44.93 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{n}{\textormath{\bbl@disc n{nn}}{n}}
44.94 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{N}{\textormath{\bbl@disc N{NN}}{N}}
44.95 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{p}{\textormath{\bbl@disc p{pp}}{p}}
44.96 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{P}{\textormath{\bbl@disc P{PP}}{P}}

```

```

44.97 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"r"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc r{rr}}{r}}
44.98 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"R"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc R{RR}}{R}}
44.99 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"s"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc s{ss}}{s}}
44.100 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"S"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc S{SS}}{S}}
44.101 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"t"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc t{tt}}{t}}
44.102 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"T"}{\textormath{\bbl@disc T{TT}}{T}}

```

We need to treat "f a bit differently in order to preserve the ff-ligature.

```

44.103 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"f"}{\textormath{\bbl@discff}{f}}
44.104 \def\bbl@discff{\penalty\M
44.105   \afterassignment\bbl@insertff \let\bbl@nextff= }
44.106 \def\bbl@insertff{%
44.107   \if f\bbl@nextff
44.108     \expandafter\@firstoftwo\else\expandafter\@secondoftwo\fi
44.109   {\relax\discretionary{ff-}{f}{ff}\allowhyphens}{f\bbl@nextff}}
44.110 \let\bbl@nextff=f

```

We now define the French double quotes and some commands concerning hyphenation:

```

44.111 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"<}{\flqq}
44.112 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{">}{\frqq}
44.113 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"-"}{\penalty\M-\bbl@allowhyphens}
44.114 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"|"}{%
44.115   \textormath{\penalty\M\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
44.116     \allowhyphens}{}}
44.117 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
44.118 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"~"}{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}}{-}}
44.119 \declare@shorthand{norsk}{"="}{\penalty\M-\hskip\z@skip}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

44.120 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
44.121 </code>

```

## 45 The Swedish language

The file `swedish.dtx`<sup>49</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Swedish language. This file has borrowed heavily from `finnish.dtx` and `germanb.dtx`.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 20 an overview is given of its purpose. The vertical placement of the "umlaut" in some letters can be controlled this way.

"a	Gives ä, also implemented for "A, "o and "O.
"w, "W	gives å and Å.
"ff	for ff to be hyphenated as ff-f. Used for compound words, such as <code>stra"ffånge</code> , which should be hyphenated as <code>straff-fånge</code> . This is also implemented for b, d, f, g, l, m, n, p, r, s, and t.
"	disable ligature at this position. This should be used for compound words, such as " <code>stra"ffinrättning</code> ", which should not have the ligature "ffi".
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word, such as e. g. in "x"-axeln".
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for words that should break at some sign such as <code>och/"eller</code> ).
"~	for an explicit hyphen without a breakpoint; useful for expressions such as "2"~3 veckor" where no line-break is desirable.
"=	an explicit hyphen sign allowing subsequent hyphenation, for expressions such as "studiebidrag och -lån".
\-	like the old \-, but allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.

Table 20: The extra definitions made by `swedish.sty`

Two variations for formatting of dates are added. `\datesymd` makes `\today` output dates formatted as YYYY-MM-DD, which is commonly used in Sweden today. `\datesdmy` formats the date as D/M YYYY, which is also very common in Sweden. These commands should be issued after `\begindocument`.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

45.1 `(*code)`

45.2 `\LdfInit{swedish}\captionsswedish`

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `swedish` will be an 'unknown' language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@swedish` to see whether we have to do something here.

45.3 `\ifx\l@swedish\undefined`

45.4 `\nopatterns{Swedish}`

45.5 `\adddialect\l@swedish0\fi`

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to the Swedish language. The reason for this is that a user might want to switch back and forth between languages.

`\captionsswedish` The macro `\captionsswedish` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

<sup>49</sup>The file described in this section has version number v2.3d and was last revised on 2005/03/31. Contributions were made by Sten Hellman (`HELLMAN@CERNVM.CERN.CH`) and Erik Östhols (`erik_osthols@yahoo.com`).



```

45.6 \addto\captionsswedish{%
45.7   \def\prefacename{F"orord}%
45.8   \def\refname{Referenser}%
45.9   \def\abstractname{Sammanfattning}%
45.10  \def\bibname{Litteraturf\orteckning}%
45.11  \def\chaptername{Kapitel}%
45.12  \def\appendixname{Bilaga}%
45.13  \def\contentsname{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
45.14  \def\listfigurename{Figurer}%
45.15  \def\listtablename{Tabeller}%
45.16  \def\indexname{Sakregister}%
45.17  \def\figurename{Figur}%
45.18  \def\tablename{Tabell}%
45.19  \def\partname{Del}%

45.20  \def\enclname{Bil.}%
45.21  \def\ccname{Kopia f"or k"annedom}%
45.22  \def\headtoname{Till}% in letter
45.23  \def\pagename{Sida}%
45.24  \def\seename{se}%

45.25  \def\alsoname{se "aven}%

45.26  \def\proofname{Bevis}%
45.27  \def\glossaryname{Ordlista}%
45.28  }%

```

`\dateswedish` The macro `\dateswedish` redefines the command `\today` to produce Swedish dates.

```

45.29 \def\dateswedish{%
45.30   \def\today{%
45.31     \number\day~\ifcase\month\or
45.32     januari\or februari\or mars\or april\or maj\or juni\or
45.33     juli\or augusti\or september\or oktober\or november\or
45.34     december\fi
45.35     \space\number\year}}

```

`\datesymd` The macro `\datesymd` redefines the command `\today` to produce dates in the format YYYY-MM-DD, common in Sweden.

```

45.36 \def\datesymd{%
45.37   \def\today{\number\year-\two@digits\month-\two@digits\day}%
45.38   }

```

`\datesdmy` The macro `\datesdmy` redefines the command `\today` to produce Swedish dates in the format DD/MM YYYY, also common in Sweden.

```

45.39 \def\datesdmy{%
45.40   \def\today{\number\day/\number\month\space\number\year}%
45.41   }

```

`\swedishhyphenmins` The swedish hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` set to 2 and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```

45.42 \providehyphenmins{swedish}{\tw@\tw@}

```

`\extrasswedish` The macro `\extrasswedish` performs all the extra definitions needed for the Swedish language. The macro `\noextrasswedish` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasswedish`.

For Swedish texts `\frenchspacing` should be in effect. We make sure this is the case and reset it if necessary.

```

45.43 \addto\extrasswedish{\bbl@frenchspacing}
45.44 \addto\noextrasswedish{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}

```

For Swedish the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary.

```
45.45 \initiate@active@char{"}
45.46 \addto\extrasswedish{\languageshorthands{swedish}}
45.47 \addto\extrasswedish{\bbl@activate{"}}
```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```
45.48 \addto\noextrasswedish{\bbl@deactivate{"}}
```

The “umlaut” accent macro \ " is changed to lower the “umlaut” dots. The redefinition is done with the help of \umlautlow.

```
45.49 \addto\extrasswedish{\babel@save"\umlautlow}
45.50 \addto\noextrasswedish{\umlauthigh}
```

The code above is necessary because we need an extra active character. This character is then used as indicated in table 20.

To be able to define the function of ", we first define a couple of ‘support’ macros.

\dq We save the original double quote character in \dq to keep it available, the math accent \ " can now be typed as ".

```
45.51 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
45.52 \def\x{\endgroup
45.53 \def\SS{\mathchar"7019 }
45.54 \def\dq{"}
45.55 \x
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: the umlauts and å.

```
45.56 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"w}{\textormath{\aa}\allowhyphens}{\ddot w}}
45.57 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"a}{\textormath{\ "a}\allowhyphens}{\ddot a}}
45.58 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"o}{\textormath{\ "o}\allowhyphens}{\ddot o}}
45.59 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"W}{\textormath{\AA}\allowhyphens}{\ddot W}}
45.60 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"A}{\textormath{\ "A}\allowhyphens}{\ddot A}}
45.61 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"O}{\textormath{\ "O}\allowhyphens}{\ddot O}}
```

discretionary commands

```
45.62 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"b}{\textormath{\bbl@disc b{bb}}{b}}
45.63 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"B}{\textormath{\bbl@disc B{BB}}{B}}
45.64 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"d}{\textormath{\bbl@disc d{dd}}{d}}
45.65 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"D}{\textormath{\bbl@disc D{DD}}{D}}
45.66 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"f}{\textormath{\bbl@disc f{ff}}{f}}
45.67 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"F}{\textormath{\bbl@disc F{FF}}{F}}
45.68 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"g}{\textormath{\bbl@disc g{gg}}{g}}
45.69 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"G}{\textormath{\bbl@disc G{GG}}{G}}
45.70 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"l}{\textormath{\bbl@disc l{ll}}{l}}
45.71 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"L}{\textormath{\bbl@disc L{LL}}{L}}
45.72 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"m}{\textormath{\bbl@disc m{mm}}{m}}
45.73 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"M}{\textormath{\bbl@disc M{MM}}{M}}
45.74 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"n}{\textormath{\bbl@disc n{nn}}{n}}
45.75 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"N}{\textormath{\bbl@disc N{NN}}{N}}
45.76 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"p}{\textormath{\bbl@disc p{pp}}{p}}
45.77 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"P}{\textormath{\bbl@disc P{PP}}{P}}
45.78 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"r}{\textormath{\bbl@disc r{rr}}{r}}
45.79 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"R}{\textormath{\bbl@disc R{RR}}{R}}
45.80 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"s}{\textormath{\bbl@disc s{ss}}{s}}
45.81 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"S}{\textormath{\bbl@disc S{SS}}{S}}
45.82 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"t}{\textormath{\bbl@disc t{tt}}{t}}
45.83 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"T}{\textormath{\bbl@disc T{TT}}{T}}
```

and some additional commands:

```
45.84 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"-}{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
45.85 \declare@shorthand{swedish>{"|}{%
45.86 \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{}{\kern.03em}%
```

```

45.87          \bbl@allowhyphens}{}}
45.88 \declare@shorthand{swedish}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
45.89 \declare@shorthand{swedish}{"~"}{%
45.90   \textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}\bbl@allowhyphens}{-}}
45.91 \declare@shorthand{swedish}{"="}{\hbox{-}\allowhyphens}

```

- \- Redefinition of \-. The new version of \- should indicate an extra hyphenation position, while allowing other hyphenation positions to be generated automatically. The standard behaviour of T<sub>E</sub>X in this respect is very unfortunate for languages such as Dutch, Finnish, German and Swedish, where long compound words are quite normal and all one needs is a means to indicate an extra hyphenation position on top of the ones that T<sub>E</sub>X can generate from the hyphenation patterns.

```

45.92 \addto\extrasswedish{\babel@save\-\}
45.93 \addto\extrasswedish{\def\-\{\allowhyphens
45.94          \discretionary{-}{-}\allowhyphens}}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

45.95 \ldf@finish{swedish}
45.96 \code>

```

## 46 The North Sami language

The file `samin.dtx`<sup>50</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the North Sami language.

Several Sami dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more `.dtx` files for e.g. Lule and South Sami. Hence the name `samin.dtx` (and not `sami.dtx` or the like) in the North Sami case.

There are currently no hyphenation patterns available for the North Sami language, but you might consider using the patterns for Finnish (`fi8hyph.tex`), Norwegian (`nohyph.tex`) or Swedish (`sehyph.tex`). Add a line for the `samin` language to the `language.dat` file, and rebuild the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X format file. See the documentation for your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X distribution.

A note on writing North Sami in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: The TI encoding and EC fonts do not include the T WITH STROKE letter, which you will need a workaround for. My suggestion is to place the lines

```
\newcommand{\tx}{\mbox{t\hspace{- .35em}-}}
\newcommand{\txx}{\mbox{T\hspace{- .5em}-}}
in the preamble of your documents. They define the commands
\txx{} for LATIN CAPITAL LETTER T WITH STROKE and
\tx{} for LATIN SMALL LETTER T WITH STROKE.
```

### 46.1 The code of `samin.dtx`

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
46.1 (*code)
46.2 \LdfInit{samin}{captionssamin}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `samin` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@samin` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
46.3 \ifx\undefined\l@samin
46.4 \nopatterns{Samin}
46.5 \adddialect\l@samin0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the North Sami language.

`\saminhyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`.

```
46.6 \providehyphenmins{samin}{\tw@\tw@}
```

`\captionssamin` The macro `\captionssamin` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
46.7 \def\captionssamin{%
46.8 \def\prefacename{Ovdas\'atni}%
46.9 \def\refname{\v Cujhusat}%
46.10 \def\abstractname{\v Coahkk\'aigeassu}%
46.11 \def\bibname{Girjj\'ala\v svuohta}%
46.12 \def\chaptername{Kapihttal}%
46.13 \def\appendixname{\v Cuovus}%
46.14 \def\contentsname{Sisdoallu}%
46.15 \def\listfigurename{Govvosat}%
46.16 \def\listtablename{Tabeallat}%
46.17 \def\indexname{Registtar}%
46.18 \def\figurename{Govus}%
```

---

<sup>50</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0c and was last revised on 2004/02/20. It was written by Regnor Jernsletten, (`Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no`) or (`Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no`).

```

46.19 \def\tablename{Tabealla}%
46.20 \def\partname{Oassi}%
46.21 \def\enclname{Mielddus}%
46.22 \def\ccname{Kopia s\'addejuvvon}%
46.23 \def\headtoname{Vuost\'aiv\'aldi}%
46.24 \def\pagename{Siidu}%
46.25 \def\seenname{geah\v ca}%
46.26 \def\alsoname{geah\v ca maidd\'ai}%
46.27 \def\proofname{Duo\dj{a}\v stus}%
46.28 \def\glossaryname{S\'atnelistu}%
46.29 }%

```

`\datesamin` The macro `\datesamin` redefines the command `\today` to produce North Sami dates.

```

46.30 \def\datesamin{%
46.31 \def\today{\ifcase\month\or
46.32 o\dj{ }\dj{ }ajagem\'anu\or
46.33 guovvam\'anu\or
46.34 njuk\v cam\'anu\or
46.35 cuo\ng{ }om\'anu\or
46.36 miessem\'anu\or
46.37 geassem\'anu\or
46.38 suoidnem\'anu\or
46.39 borgem\'anu\or
46.40 \v cak\v cam\'anu\or
46.41 golggotm\'anu\or
46.42 sk\'abmam\'anu\or
46.43 juovlam\'anu\fi
46.44 \space\number\day.\~b.\space\number\year}%
46.45 }%

```

`\extrassamin` The macro `\extrassamin` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the North Sami language. The macro `\noextrassamin` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrassamin`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

```

46.46 \addto\extrassamin{}
46.47 \addto\noextrassamin{}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

46.48 \ldf@finish{samin}
46.49 </code>

```

## 47 The Finnish language

The file `finnish.dtx`<sup>51</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Finnish language.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 21 an overview is given of its purpose.

"	disable ligature at this position.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
"=	an explicit hyphen sign for expressions such as "pakastekaapit ja -arkut".
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for words that should break at some sign such as "entrada/salida."
"‘	lowered double left quotes (looks like „)
"’	normal double right quotes
"<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).
\-	like the old \-, but allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.

Table 21: The extra definitions made by `finnish.ldf`

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
47.1 (*code)
47.2 \LdfInit{finnish}\captionsofinnish
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `finnish` will be an 'unknown' language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@finnish` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
47.3 \ifx\l@finnish\@undefined
47.4   \@nopatterns{Finnish}
47.5   \adddialect\l@finnish0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to the Finnish language. The reason for this is that a user might want to switch back and forth between languages.

`\captionsofinnish` The macro `\captionsofinnish` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
47.6 \addto\captionsofinnish{%
47.7   \def\prefacename{Esipuhe}%
47.8   \def\refname{Viitteet}%
47.9   \def\abstractname{Tiivistelmä}
47.10  \def\bibname{Kirjallisuutta}%
47.11  \def\chaptername{Luku}%
47.12  \def\appendixname{Liite}%
47.13  \def\contentsname{Sisältö} /* Could be "Sisällys" as well */
47.14  \def\listfigurename{Kuvat}%
47.15  \def\listtablename{Taulukot}%
47.16  \def\indexname{Hakemistö}%
47.17  \def\figurename{Kuva}%
47.18  \def\tablename{Taulukko}%
47.19  \def\partname{Osa}%
47.20  \def\enclname{Liitteet}%
```

<sup>51</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.3q and was last revised on 2007/10/20. A contribution was made by Mikko KANERVA (KANERVA@CERNVM) and Keranen Reino (KERANEN@CERNVM).

```

47.21 \def\ccname{Jakelu}%
47.22 \def\headtoname{Vastaanottaja}%
47.23 \def\pagename{Sivu}%
47.24 \def\seename{katso}%
47.25 \def\alsoname{katso my\"os}%
47.26 \def\proofname{Todistus}%
47.27 \def\glossaryname{Sanasto}%
47.28 }%

```

`\datefinnish` The macro `\datefinnish` redefines the command `\today` to produce Finnish dates.

```

47.29 \def\datefinnish{%
47.30 \def\today{\number\day.\~\ifcase\month\or
47.31 tammikuuta\or helmikuuta\or maaliskuuta\or huhtikuuta\or
47.32 toukokuuta\or kes\"akuuta\or hein\"akuuta\or elokuuta\or
47.33 syyskuuta\or lokakuuta\or marraskuuta\or joulukuuta\fi
47.34 \space\number\year}}

```

`\extrasfinnish` Finnish has many long words (some of them compound, some not). For this reason hyphenation is very often the only solution in line breaking. For this reason the values of `\hyphenpenalty`, `\exhyphenpenalty` and `\doublehyphendemerits` should be decreased. (In one of the manuals of style Matti Rintala noticed a paragraph with ten lines, eight of which ended in a hyphen!)

Matti Rintala noticed that with these changes  $\TeX$  handles Finnish very well, although sometimes the values of `\tolerance` and `\emergencystretch` must be increased. However, I don't think changing these values in `finnish.ldf` is appropriate, as the looseness of the font (and the line width) affect the correct choice of these parameters.

```

47.35 \addto\extrasfinnish{%
47.36 \babel@savevariable\hyphenpenalty\hyphenpenalty=30%
47.37 \babel@savevariable\exhyphenpenalty\exhyphenpenalty=30%
47.38 \babel@savevariable\doublehyphendemerits\doublehyphendemerits=5000%
47.39 \babel@savevariable\finalhyphendemerits\finalhyphendemerits=5000%
47.40 }
47.41 \addto\noextrasfinnish{}

```

Another thing `\extrasfinnish` needs to do is to ensure that `\frenchspacing` is in effect. If this is not the case the execution of `\noextrasfinnish` will switch it of again.

```

47.42 \addto\extrasfinnish{\bbl@frenchspacing}
47.43 \addto\noextrasfinnish{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}

```

For Finnish the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary. Other languages in the same document may also use the " character for shorthands; we specify that the finnish group of shorthands should be used.

```

47.44 \initiate@active@char{"}
47.45 \addto\extrasfinnish{\languageshorthands{finnish}}

```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

47.46 \addto\extrasfinnish{\bbl@activate{}}
47.47 \addto\noextrasfinnish{\bbl@deactivate{}}

```

The 'umlaut' character should be positioned lower on *all* vowels in Finnish texts.

```

47.48 \addto\extrasfinnish{\umlautlow\umlautelaw}
47.49 \addto\noextrasfinnish{\umlauthigh}

```

First we define access to the low opening double quote and guillemets for quotations,

```

47.50 \declare@shorthand{finnish}{"' }{%
47.51 \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
47.52 \declare@shorthand{finnish}{"' }{%

```

```

47.53 \textormath{\textquotedblright}{\mbox{\textquotedblright}}
47.54 \declare@shorthand{finnish}{"<"}{%
47.55 \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}
47.56 \declare@shorthand{finnish}{">"}{%
47.57 \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}

```

then we define two shorthands to be able to specify hyphenation breakpoints that behave a little different from \-.

```

47.58 \declare@shorthand{finnish}{"-"}{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
47.59 \declare@shorthand{finnish}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
47.60 \declare@shorthand{finnish}{"="}{\hbox{-}\bbl@allowhyphens}

```

And we want to have a shorthand for disabling a ligature.

```

47.61 \declare@shorthand{finnish}{"|"}{%
47.62 \textormath{\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}}{}}

```

- \- All that is left now is the redefinition of \-. The new version of \- should indicate an extra hyphenation position, while allowing other hyphenation positions to be generated automatically. The standard behaviour of T<sub>E</sub>X in this respect is very unfortunate for languages such as Dutch, Finnish and German, where long compound words are quite normal and all one needs is a means to indicate an extra hyphenation position on top of the ones that T<sub>E</sub>X can generate from the hyphenation patterns.

```

47.63 \addto\extrasfinnish{\babel@save\-\}
47.64 \addto\extrasfinnish{\def\-\{\bbl@allowhyphens
47.65 \discretionary{-}{-}{\bbl@allowhyphens}}

```

\finishhyphenmins The finnish hyphenation patterns can be used with \lefthyphenmin set to 2 and \righthyphenmin set to 2.

```

47.66 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}

```

The macro \ldf@finish takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at \begin{document} and resetting the category code of @ to its original value.

```

47.67 \ldf@finish{finnish}
47.68 \code

```



## 48 The Hungarian language

The file option `magyar.dtx` defines all the language definition macros for the Hungarian language.

The `babel` support for the Hungarian language until file version 1.3i was essentially changing the English document elements to Hungarian ones, but because of the differences between these two languages this was actually unusable (‘Part I’ was transferred to ‘Rész I’ which is not usable instead of ‘I. rész’). To enhance the typesetting facilities for Hungarian the following should be considered:

- In Hungarian documents there is a period after the part, section, subsection etc. numbers.
- In the part, chapter, appendix name the number (or letter) goes before the name, so ‘Part I’ translates to ‘I. rész’.
- The same is true with captions (‘Table 2.1’ goes to ‘2.1. táblázat’).
- There is a period after the caption name instead of a colon. (‘Table 2.1:’ goes to ‘2.1. táblázat.’)
- There is a period at the end of the title in a run-in head (when `afterskip<0` in `\@startsection`).
- Special hyphenation rules must be applied for the so-called long double consonants (`ccs`, `ssz`, ...).
- The opening quotation mark is like the German one (the closing is the same as in English).
- In Hungarian figure, table, etc. referencing a definite article is also incorporated. The Hungarian definite articles behave like the English indefinite ones (‘a/an’). ‘a’ is used for words beginning with a consonant and ‘az’ goes for a vowel. Since some numbers begin with a vowel some others with a consonant some commands should be provided for automatic definite article generation.

Until file version 1.3i<sup>52</sup> the special typesetting rules of the Hungarian language mentioned above were not taken into consideration. This version (v1.4j)<sup>53</sup> enables `babel` to typeset ‘good-looking’ Hungarian texts.

<code>\ontoday</code>	The <code>\ontoday</code> command works like <code>\today</code> but produces a slightly different date format used in expressions such as ‘on February 10th’.
<code>\Az</code>	The commands <code>\Az#1</code> and <code>\az#1</code> write the correct definite article for the argument and the argument itself (separated with a <code>~</code> ). The star-forms ( <code>\Az*</code> and <code>\az*</code> ) produce the article only.
<code>\Azr</code>	<code>\Azr#1</code> and <code>\azr#1</code> treat the argument as a label so expand it then write the definite article for <code>\r@#1</code> , a non-breakable space then the label expansion. The star-forms do not print the label expansion. <code>\Azr(#1</code> and <code>\azr(#1</code> are used for equation referencing with the syntax <code>\azr{label}</code> .
<code>\Aref</code>	There are two aliases <code>\Aref</code> and <code>\aref</code> for <code>\Azr</code> and <code>\azr</code> , respectively. During the preparation of a document it is not known in general, if the code ‘ <code>a~\ref{label}</code> ’ or the code ‘ <code>az~\ref{label}</code> ’ is the grammatically correct one. Writing ‘ <code>\aref{label}</code> ’ instead of the previous ones solves the problem.
<code>\Azp</code>	<code>\Azp#1</code> and <code>\azp#1</code> also treat the argument as a label but use the label’s page for definite article determination. There are star-forms giving only the definite article without the page number.
<code>\Apageref</code>	There are aliases <code>\Apageref</code> and <code>\apageref</code> for <code>\Azp</code> and <code>\azp</code> , respec-

<sup>52</sup>That file was last revised on 1996/12/23 with a contribution by the next authors: Attila Koppányi (`attila@cernvm.cern.ch`), Árpád Btró (`JZP1104@HUSZEG11.bitnet`), István Hamecz (`hami@ursus.bke.hu`) and Dezső Horváth (`horvath@pisa.infn.it`).

<sup>53</sup>It was written by József Bérces (`jozsi@docs4.mht.bme.hu`) with some help from Ferenc Wettl (`wettl@math.bme.hu`) and an idea from David Carlisle (`david@dcarlisle.demon.co.uk`).

shortcut	explanation	example
‘	same as <code>\glqq</code> in <code>babel</code> , or <code>\quotedblbase</code> in T1 (opening quotation mark, like „)	<code>‘‘id\’ezet’’</code> → „idézet”
‘c, ‘C	ccs is hyphenated as cs-cs	lo‘ccsan → locs-csan
‘d, ‘D	ddz is hyphenated as dz-dz	e‘ddz\“unk → edz-dzünk
‘g, ‘G	ggy is hyphenated as gy-gy	po‘ggy\’asz → pogy-gyász
‘l, ‘L	lly is hyphenated as ly-ly	Kod\’a‘llyal → Kodály-lyal
‘n, ‘N	nny is hyphenated as ny-ny	me‘nnyei → meny-nyei
‘s, ‘S	ssz is hyphenated as sz-sz	vi‘ssza → visz-sza
‘t, ‘T	tty is hyphenated as ty-ty	po‘ttyan → poty-tyan
‘z, ‘Z	zsz is hyphenated as zs-zs	ri‘zzsel → rizs-zsel

Table 22: The shortcuts defined in `magyar.ldf`

tively. The code `\apageref{label}` is equivalent either to `a~\pageref{label}` or to `az~\pageref{label}`.

`\Azc` `\Azc` and `\azc` work like the `\cite` command but (of course) they insert the definite article. There can be several comma separated cite labels and in that case the definite article is given for the first one. They accept `\cite`’s optional argument. There are star-forms giving the definite article only.

`\Acite` There are aliases `\Acite` and `\acite` for `\Azc` and `\azc`, respectively. For this language the character ‘ is made active. Table 22 shows the shortcuts. The main reason for the activation of the ‘ character is to handle the special hyphenation of the long double consonants.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
48.1 (*code)
48.2 \LdfInit{magyar}{caption\CurrentOption}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `magyar` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@magyar` or `\l@hungarian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
48.3 \ifx\l@magyar\@undefined
48.4 \ifx\l@hungarian\@undefined
48.5 \nopatterns{Magyar}
48.6 \adddialect\l@magyar0
48.7 \else
48.8 \let\l@magyar\l@hungarian
48.9 \fi
48.10 \fi
```

The statement above makes sure that `\l@magyar` is always defined; if `\l@hungarian` is still undefined we make it equal to `\l@magyar`.

```
48.11 \ifx\l@hungarian\@undefined
48.12 \let\l@hungarian\l@magyar
48.13 \fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Hungarian language.

`\captionsmagyar` The macro `\captionsmagyar` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
48.14 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
48.15 \def\prefacename{E1\H osz\’o}%
```

For the list of references at the end of an article we have a choice between two words, ‘Referenciák’ (a Hungarian version of the English word) and ‘Hivatkozások’. The latter seems to be in more widespread use.

48.16 `\def\refname{Hivatkoz\`asok}%`

If you have a document with a summary instead of an abstract you might want to replace the word ‘Kivonat’ with ‘Összefoglaló’.

48.17 `\def\abstractname{Kivonat}%`

The Hungarian version of ‘Bibliography’ is ‘Bibliográfia’, but a more natural word to use is ‘Irodalomjegyzék’.

48.18 `\def\bibname{Irodalomjegyz\`ek}%`

48.19 `\def\chaptername{fejezet}%`

48.20 `\def\appendixname{F\`uggel\`ek}%`

48.21 `\def\contentsname{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%`

48.22 `\def\listfigurename{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%`

48.23 `\def\listtablename{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%`

48.24 `\def\indexname{T\`argymutat\`o}%`

48.25 `\def\figurename{\`abra}%`

48.26 `\def\tablename{t\`abl\`azat}%`

48.27 `\def\partname{r\`esz}%`

48.28 `\def\enclname{Mell\`eklet}%`

48.29 `\def\ccname{K\`orlev\`el--c\`i mzetek}%`

48.30 `\def\headtoname{C\`i mzett}%`

48.31 `\def\pagename{oldal}%`

48.32 `\def\seenname{l\`asd}%`

48.33 `\def\alsiname{l\`asd m\`eg}%`

Besides the Hungarian word for Proof, ‘Bizonyítás’ we can also name Corollary (Következmény), Theorem (Tétel) and Lemma (Lemma).

48.34 `\def\proofname{Bizony\`i t\`as}%`

48.35 `\def\glossaryname{Sz\`ojegyz\`ek}%`

48.36 `}%`

`\datemagyar` The macro `\datemagyar` redefines the command `\today` to produce Hungarian dates.

48.37 `\@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%`

48.38 `\def\today{%`

48.39 `\number\year.\nobreakspace\ifcase\month\or`

48.40 `janu\`ar\or febru\`ar\or m\`arcius\or`

48.41 `\`aprilis\or m\`ajus\or j\`unius\or`

48.42 `j\`ulius\or augusztus\or szeptember\or`

48.43 `okt\`ober\or november\or december\fi`

48.44 `\space\number\day.}}`

`\onatemagyar` The macro `\onatemagyar` produces Hungarian dates which have the meaning ‘*on this day*’. It does not redefine the command `\today`.

48.45 `\@namedef{ondate\CurrentOption}{%`

48.46 `\number\year.\nobreakspace\ifcase\month\or`

48.47 `janu\`ar\or febru\`ar\or m\`arcius\or`

48.48 `\`aprilis\or m\`ajus\or j\`unius\or`

48.49 `j\`ulius\or augusztus\or szeptember\or`

48.50 `okt\`ober\or november\or december\fi`

48.51 `\space\ifcase\day\or`

48.52 `1-j\`en\or 2-\`an\or 3-\`an\or 4-\`en\or 5-\`en\or`

48.53 `6-\`an\or 7-\`en\or 8-\`an\or 9-\`en\or 10-\`en\or`

48.54 `11-\`en\or 12-\`en\or 13-\`an\or 14-\`en\or 15-\`en\or`

48.55 `16-\`an\or 17-\`en\or 18-\`an\or 19-\`en\or 20-\`an\or`

48.56 `21-\`en\or 22-\`en\or 23-\`an\or 24-\`en\or 25-\`en\or`

48.57 `26-\`an\or 27-\`en\or 28-\`an\or 29-\`en\or 30-\`an\or`

48.58 `31-\`en\fi}}`

`\extrasmagyar` The macro `\extrasmagyar` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Hungarian language. The macro `\noextrasmagyar` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasmagyar`.

48.59 `\@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{%`

```

48.60 \expandafter\let\expandafter\ontoday
48.61 \csname ondate\CurrentOption\endcsname}
48.62 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{\let\ontoday\@undefined}

```

Now we redefine some commands included into `latex.ltx`. The original form of a command is always saved with `\babel@save` and the changes are added to `\extrasmagyar`. This ensures that the Hungarian version of a macro is alive *only* if the Hungarian language is active.

`\fnum@figure` In figure and table captions the order of the figure/table number and `\figurename`  
`\fnum@table` `/\tablename` must be changed. To achieve this `\fnum@figure` and `\fnum@table` are redefined and added to `\extrasmagyar`.

```

48.63 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.64 \babel@save\fnum@figure
48.65 \def\fnum@figure{\thefigure.\nobreakspace\figurename}}
48.66 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.67 \babel@save\fnum@table
48.68 \def\fnum@table{\thetable.\nobreakspace\tablename}}

```

`\@makecaption` The colon in a figure/table caption must be replaced by a dot by redefining `\@makecaption`.

```

48.69 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.70 \babel@save\@makecaption
48.71 \def\@makecaption#1#2{%
48.72 \vskip\abovecaptionskip
48.73 \sbox\@tempboxa{#1. #2}%
48.74 \ifdim \wd\@tempboxa >\hsize
48.75 {#1. #2\csname par\endcsname}
48.76 \else
48.77 \global \@minipagefalse
48.78 \hb@xt@\hsize{\hfil\box\@tempboxa\hfil}%
48.79 \fi
48.80 \vskip\belowcaptionskip}}

```

`\@caption` There should be a dot after the figure/table number in `lof/lot`, so `\@caption` is redefined.

```

48.81 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.82 \babel@save\@caption
48.83 \long\def\@caption#1[#2]#3{%
48.84 \csname par\endcsname
48.85 \addcontentsline{\csname ext@#1\endcsname}{#1}%
48.86 {\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname.}{\ignorespaces #2}}%
48.87 \begingroup
48.88 \@parboxrestore
48.89 \if@minipage
48.90 \setminipage
48.91 \fi
48.92 \normalsize
48.93 \@makecaption{\csname fnum@#1\endcsname}%
48.94 {\ignorespaces #3}\csname par\endcsname
48.95 \endgroup}}

```

`\@secntformat` In order to have a dot after the section number `\@secntformat` is redefined.

```

48.96 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.97 \babel@save\@secntformat
48.98 \def\@secntformat#1{\csname the#1\endcsname.\quad}}

```

`\@sect` Alas, `\@sect` must also be redefined to have that dot in `toc` too. On the other hand, we include a dot after a run-in head.

```

48.99 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.100 \babel@save\@sect

```

```

48.101 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
48.102   \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth
48.103     \let\@svsec\@empty
48.104   \else
48.105     \refstepcounter{#1}%
48.106     \protected@edef\@svsec{\@secntformat{#1}\relax}%
48.107   \fi
48.108   \@tempskipa #5\relax
48.109   \ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@
48.110     \begingroup
48.111       #6{%
48.112         \@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%
48.113         \interlinepenalty \@M #8\@par}%
48.114     \endgroup
48.115     \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}%
48.116     \addcontentsline{toc}{#1}{%
48.117       \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth \else
48.118         \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname.}%
48.119       \fi
48.120       #7}%
48.121   \else
48.122     \def\@svsechd{%
48.123       #6{\hskip #3\relax
48.124       \@svsec #8.}%
48.125       \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}%
48.126       \addcontentsline{toc}{#1}{%
48.127         \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth \else
48.128           \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname.}%
48.129         \fi
48.130         #7}}%
48.131   \fi
48.132   \@xsect{#5}}

```

`\@ssect` In order to have that dot after a run-in head when the star form of the sectioning commands is used, we have to redefine `\@ssect`.

```

48.133 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.134   \babel@save\@ssect
48.135   \def\@ssect#1#2#3#4#5{%
48.136     \@tempskipa #3\relax
48.137     \ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@
48.138       \begingroup
48.139         #4{%
48.140           \@hangfrom{\hskip #1}%
48.141           \interlinepenalty \@M #5\@par}%
48.142       \endgroup
48.143     \else
48.144       \def\@svsechd{#4{\hskip #1\relax #5.}}%
48.145     \fi
48.146     \@xsect{#3}}

```

`\@begintheorem` Order changing and dot insertion in theorem by redefining `\@begintheorem` and `\@opargbegintheorem`

```

48.147 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.148   \babel@save\@begintheorem
48.149   \def\@begintheorem#1#2{\trivlist
48.150     \item[\hskip \labelsep{\bfseries #2.\ #1.}]{\itshape}%
48.151   \babel@save\@opargbegintheorem
48.152   \def\@opargbegintheorem#1#2#3{\trivlist
48.153     \item[\hskip \labelsep{\bfseries #2.\ #1\ (#3).}]{\itshape}}

```

The next step is to redefine some macros included into the class files. It is determined which class file is loaded then the original form of the macro is saved and the changes are added to `\extrasmagyar`.

First we check if the book.cls is loaded.

```
48.154 \@ifclassloaded{book}{%
```

`\ps@headings` The look of the headings is changed: we have to insert some dots and change the order of chapter number and `\chaptername`.

```
48.155 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.156   \babel@save\ps@headings}
48.157 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.158   \if@twoside
48.159     \def\ps@headings{%
48.160       \let\@oddfoot\@empty\let\@evenfoot\@empty
48.161       \def\@evenhead{\thepage\hfil\slshape\leftmark}%
48.162       \def\@oddhead{\slshape\rightmark}\hfil\thepage}%
48.163       \let\@mkboth\markboth
48.164     \def\chaptermark##1{%
48.165       \markboth {\MakeUppercase{%
48.166         \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.167           \if@mainmatter
48.168             \thechapter. \@chapapp. \ %
48.169           \fi
48.170         \fi
48.171         ##1}}{}}%
48.172     \def\sectionmark##1{%
48.173       \markright {\MakeUppercase{%
48.174         \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\z@
48.175           \thesection. \ %
48.176         \fi
48.177         ##1}}}}%
48.178   \else
48.179     \def\ps@headings{%
48.180       \let\@oddfoot\@empty
48.181       \def\@oddhead{\slshape\rightmark}\hfil\thepage}%
48.182       \let\@mkboth\markboth
48.183     \def\chaptermark##1{%
48.184       \markright {\MakeUppercase{%
48.185         \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.186           \if@mainmatter
48.187             \thechapter. \@chapapp. \ %
48.188           \fi
48.189         \fi
48.190         ##1}}}}%
48.191     \fi}
```

`\@part` At the beginning of a part we need eg. ‘I. rész’ instead of ‘Part I’ (in toc too). To achieve this `\@part` is redefined.

```
48.192 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.193   \babel@save\@part
48.194   \def\@part[#1]#2{%
48.195     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
48.196       \refstepcounter{part}%
48.197       \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\thepart.\hspace{1em}#1}%
48.198     \else
48.199       \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
48.200     \fi
48.201     \markboth{}{}%
48.202     {\centering
48.203       \interlinepenalty \@M
48.204       \normalfont
48.205       \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
48.206         \huge\bfseries \thepart.\nobreakspace\partname
48.207         \csname par\endcsname
48.208         \vskip 20\p@
```

```

48.209         \fi
48.210         \Huge \bfseries #2\csname par\endcsname}%
48.211         \@endpart}}

```

`\@chapter` The same changes are made to chapter. First the screen typeout and the toc are changed by redefining `\@chapter`.

```

48.212 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.213   \babel@save\@chapter
48.214   \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.215     \if@mainmatter
48.216       \refstepcounter{chapter}%
48.217       \typeout{\thechapter.\space\@chapapp.}%
48.218       \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}%
48.219         {\protect\numberline{\thechapter.}#1}%
48.220     \else
48.221       \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
48.222     \fi
48.223   \else
48.224     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
48.225   \fi
48.226   \chaptermark{#1}%
48.227   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\advspace{10\p@}}%
48.228   \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\advspace{10\p@}}%
48.229   \if@twocolumn
48.230     \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
48.231   \else
48.232     \@makechapterhead{#2}%
48.233     \@afterheading
48.234   \fi}}

```

`\@makechapterhead` Then the look of the chapter-start is modified by redefining `\@makechapterhead`.

```

48.235 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.236   \babel@save\@makechapterhead
48.237   \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
48.238     \vspace*{50\p@}%
48.239     {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
48.240     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.241       \if@mainmatter
48.242         \huge\bfseries \thechapter.\nobreakspace\@chapapp{}
48.243         \csname par\endcsname\nobreak
48.244         \vskip 20\p@
48.245       \fi
48.246     \fi
48.247     \interlinepenalty\@M
48.248     \Huge \bfseries #1\csname par\endcsname\nobreak
48.249     \vskip 40\p@
48.250   }}}%

```

This is the end of the book class modification.

```
48.251 }{}
```

Now we check if `report.cls` is loaded.

```
48.252 \@ifclassloaded{report}{%
```

`\ps@headings` First the headings are modified just in case of the book class.

```

48.253 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.254   \babel@save\ps@headings}
48.255 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.256   \if@twoside
48.257     \def\ps@headings{%
48.258       \let\@oddfont\@empty\let\@evenfont\@empty
48.259       \def\@evenhead{\thepage\hfil\slshape\leftmark}%

```

```

48.260         \def\@oddhead{\slshape\rightmark}\hfil\thepage}%
48.261         \let\@mkboth\markboth
48.262     \def\chaptermark##1{%
48.263         \markboth {\MakeUppercase{%
48.264             \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.265                 \thechapter. \@chapapp. \ %
48.266             \fi
48.267             ##1}}{}}%
48.268     \def\sectionmark##1{%
48.269         \markright {\MakeUppercase{%
48.270             \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\z@
48.271                 \thesection. \ %
48.272             \fi
48.273             ##1}}}%
48.274     \else
48.275         \def\ps@headings{%
48.276             \let\@oddfoot\@empty
48.277             \def\@oddhead{\slshape\rightmark}\hfil\thepage}%
48.278             \let\@mkboth\markboth
48.279             \def\chaptermark##1{%
48.280                 \markright {\MakeUppercase{%
48.281                     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.282                         \thechapter. \@chapapp. \ %
48.283                     \fi
48.284                     ##1}}}%
48.285             \fi}

```

`\@chapter` Chapter-start modification with `\@chapter`

```

48.286     \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.287         \babel@save\@chapter
48.288         \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.289             \refstepcounter{chapter}%
48.290             \typeout{\thechapter. \space\@chapapp.}%
48.291             \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}%
48.292                 {\protect\numberline{\thechapter.}#1}%
48.293             \else
48.294                 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
48.295             \fi
48.296             \chaptermark{#1}%
48.297             \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\addvspace{10\p@}}%
48.298             \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\addvspace{10\p@}}%
48.299             \if@twocolumn
48.300                 \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
48.301             \else
48.302                 \@makechapterhead{#2}%
48.303                 \@afterheading
48.304             \fi}}

```

`\@makechapterhead` and `\@makechapterhead.`

```

48.305     \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.306         \babel@save\@makechapterhead
48.307         \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
48.308             \vspace*{50\p@}%
48.309             {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
48.310                 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.311                     \huge\bfseries \thechapter.\nobreakspace\@chapapp{}
48.312                     \csname par\endcsname\nobreak
48.313                     \vskip 20\p@
48.314                 \fi
48.315                 \interlinepenalty\@M
48.316                 \Huge \bfseries #1\csname par\endcsname\nobreak
48.317                 \vskip 40\p@
48.318             }}}%

```



End of report class modification.

48.319 }{}

Checking if `article.cls` is loaded.

48.320 \ifclassloaded{article}{%

`\ps@headings` Changing headings by redefining `\ps@headings`.

```
48.321 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.322   \babel@save\ps@headings}
48.323 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.324   \if@twoside
48.325     \def\ps@headings{%
48.326       \let\@oddfoot\@empty\let\@evenfoot\@empty
48.327       \def\@evenhead{\thepage\hfil\slshape\leftmark}%
48.328       \def\@oddhead{\slshape\rightmark}\hfil\thepage}%
48.329       \let\@mkboth\markboth
48.330       \def\sectionmark##1{%
48.331         \markboth {\MakeUppercase{%
48.332           \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\z@
48.333             \thesection.\quad
48.334           \fi
48.335           ##1}}{}}%
48.336       \def\subsectionmark##1{%
48.337         \markright {%
48.338           \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\@ne
48.339             \thesubsection.\quad
48.340           \fi
48.341           ##1}}}%
48.342     \else
48.343       \def\ps@headings{%
48.344         \let\@oddfoot\@empty
48.345         \def\@oddhead{\slshape\rightmark}\hfil\thepage}%
48.346         \let\@mkboth\markboth
48.347         \def\sectionmark##1{%
48.348           \markright {\MakeUppercase{%
48.349             \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
48.350               \thesection.\quad
48.351             \fi
48.352             ##1}}}%
48.353         \fi}%
```

No more necessary changes specific to the article class.

48.354 }{}

And now this is the turn of `letter.cls`.

48.355 \ifclassloaded{letter}{%

`\ps@headings` In the headings the page number must be followed by a dot and then `\pagename`.

```
48.356 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.357   \babel@save\ps@headings}
48.358 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.359   \if@twoside
48.360     \def\ps@headings{%
48.361       \let\@oddfoot\@empty\let\@evenfoot\@empty
48.362       \def\@oddhead{\slshape\headtoname{:} \ignorespaces\toname
48.363         \hfil \@date
48.364         \hfil \thepage.\nobreakspace\pagename}%
48.365       \let\@evenhead\@oddhead}
48.366     \else
48.367       \def\ps@headings{%
48.368         \let\@oddfoot\@empty
48.369         \def\@oddhead{\slshape\headtoname{:} \ignorespaces\toname
48.370         \hfil \@date
```

```
48.371 \hfil \thepage.\nobreakspace\pagename}}
48.372 \fi}%
```

End of letter class.

```
48.373 }-{}
```

After making the changes to the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macros we define some new ones to handle the problem with definite articles.

`\az` `\az` is a user-level command which decides if the next character is a star. `\@az` is called for `\az*` and `\az@` for `\az`.

```
48.374 \def\az{a\@ifstar{\@az}{\az@}}
```

`\Az` `\Az` is used at the beginning of a sentence. Otherwise it behaves the same as `\az`.

```
48.375 \def\Az{A\@ifstar{\@az}{\az@}}
```

`\az@` `\az@` is called if there is no star after `\az` or `\Az`. It calls `\@az` and writes #1 separating with a non-breakable space.

```
48.376 \def\az@#1{\@az{#1}\nobreakspace#1}
```

`\@az` This macro calls `\hun@tempadef` to remove the accents from the argument then calls `\@@az` that determines if a ‘z’ should be written after a/A (written by `\az/\Az`).

```
48.377 \def\@az#1{%
```

```
48.378 \hun@tempadef{relax}{relax}{#1}%
```

```
48.379 \edef\@tempb{\noexpand\@@az\@tempa\hbox!}%
```

```
48.380 \@tempb}
```

`\hun@tempadef` The macro `\hun@tempadef` has three tasks:

- Accent removal. Accented letters confuse `\@@az`, the main definite article determinator macro, so they must be changed to their non-accented counterparts. Special letters must also be changed, eg. œ → o.
- Labels must be expanded.
- To handle Roman numerals correctly, commands starting with `\hun@` are defined for labels containing Roman numbers with the Roman numerals replaced by their Arabic representation. This macro can check if there is a `\hun@` command.

There are three arguments:

1. The primary command that should be expanded if it exists. This is usually the `\hun@` command for a label.
2. The secondary command which is used if the first one is `\relax`. This is usually the original L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X command for a label.
3. This is used if the first two is `\relax`. For this one no expansion is carried out but the accents are still removed and special letters are changed.

```
48.381 \def\hun@tempadef#1#2#3{%
```

```
48.382 \begingroup
```

```
48.383 \def\@safe@activesfalse{}%
```

```
48.384 \def\setbox #1{ }% to get rid of accents and special letters
```

```
48.385 \def\hbox #1{ }%
```

```
48.386 \def\accent ##1 ##2{##2}%
```

```
48.387 \def\add@accent ##1##2{##2}%
```

```
48.388 \def\@text@composite@x ##1##2{##2}%
```

```
48.389 \def\i{i}\def\j{j}%
```

```
48.390 \def\ae{a}\def\AE{A}\def\oe{o}\def\OE{O}%
```

```
48.391 \def\ss{s}\def\L{L}%
```

```

48.392 \def\d{}\def\b{}\def\c{}\def\t{}%
48.393 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\relax
48.394 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2\endcsname\relax
48.395 \xdef\@tempa{#3}%
48.396 \else
48.397 \xdef\@tempa{\csname #2\endcsname}%
48.398 \fi
48.399 \else
48.400 \xdef\@tempa{\csname #1\endcsname}%
48.401 \fi
48.402 \endgroup}

```

The following macros are used to determine the definite article for a label's expansion.

`\aref` `\aref` is an alias for `\azr`.

```
48.403 \def\aref{\azr}
```

`\Aref` `\Aref` is an alias for `\Azr`.

```
48.404 \def\Aref{\Azr}
```

`\azr` `\azr` calls `\@azr` if the next character is a star, otherwise it calls `\azr@`.

```
48.405 \def\azr{a@ifstar{\@azr}{\azr@}}
```

`\Azr` `\Azr` is the same as `\azr` except that it writes 'A' instead of 'a'.

```
48.406 \def\Azr{A@ifstar{\@azr}{\azr@}}
```

`\azr@` `\azr@` decides if the next character is ( and in that case it calls `\azr@@@` which writes an extra ( for equation referencing. Otherwise `\azr@@` is called.

```
48.407 \def\azr@{\@ifnextchar ({\azr@@@}{\azr@@}}
```

`\azr@@` Calls `\@azr` then writes the label's expansion preceded by a non-breakable space.

```
48.408 \def\azr@@#1{\@azr{#1}\nobreakspace\ref{#1}}
```

`\azr@@@` Same as `\azr@@` but inserts a ( between the non-breakable space and the label expansion.

```
48.409 \def\azr@@@(#1{\@azr{#1}\nobreakspace(\ref{#1}}
```

`\@azr` Calls `\hun@tempadef` to choose between the label's `\hun@` or original L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X command and to expand it with accent removal and special letter substitution. Then calls `\@az`, the core macro of definite article handling.

```

48.410 \def\@azr#1{%
48.411 \hun@tempadef{hun@r#1}{r#1}{}%
48.412 \ifx\@tempa\empty
48.413 \else
48.414 \edef\@tempb{\noexpand\@az\expandafter\@firstoftwo\@tempa\hbox!}%
48.415 \@tempb
48.416 \fi
48.417 }

```

The following commands are used to generate the definite article for the page number of a label.

`\apageref` `\apageref` is an alias for `\azp`.

```
48.418 \def\apageref{\azp}
```

`\Apageref` `\Apageref` is an alias for `\Azp`.

```
48.419 \def\Apageref{\Azp}
```

`\azp` Checks if the next character is \* and calls `\@azp` or `\azp@`.

```
48.420 \def\azp{a@ifstar{\@azp}{\azp@}}
```

`\Azp` Same as `\azp` except that it writes ‘A’ instead of ‘a’.

```
48.421 \def\Azp{A\@ifstar{\@azp}{\azp@}}
```

`\azp@` Calls `\@azp` then writes the label’s page preceded by a non-breakable space.

```
48.422 \def\azp@#1{\@azp{#1}\nobreakspace\pageref{#1}}
```

`\@azp` Calls `\hun@tempadef` then takes the label’s page and passes it to `\@@az`.

```
48.423 \def\@azp#1{%
48.424   \hun@tempadef{hun@r@#1}{r@#1}{}%
48.425   \ifx\@tempa\empty
48.426   \else
48.427     \edef\@tempb{\noexpand\@@az\expandafter\@secondoftwo\@tempa\hbox!}%
48.428     \@tempb
48.429   \fi
48.430 }
```

The following macros are used to give the definite article to citations.

`\acite` This is an alias for `\azc`.

```
48.431 \def\acite{\azc}
```

`\Acite` This is an alias for `\Azc`.

```
48.432 \def\Acite{\Azc}
```

`\azc` Checks if the next character is a star and calls `\@azc` or `\azc@`.

```
48.433 \def\azc{a\@ifstar{\@azc}{\azc@}}
```

`\Azc` Same as `\azc` but used at the beginning of sentences.

```
48.434 \def\Azc{A\@ifstar{\@azc}{\azc@}}
```

`\azc@` If there is no star we accept an optional argument, just like the `\cite` command.

```
48.435 \def\azc@{\@ifnextchar [{\azc@@}{\azc@@[]}}
```

`\azc@@` First calls `\@azc` then `\cite`.

```
48.436 \def\azc@@#1#2{%
48.437   \@azc{#2}\nobreakspace\def\@tempa{#1}%
48.438   \ifx\@tempa\empty\cite{#2}\else\cite[#1]{#2}\fi}
```

`\@azc` This is an auxiliary macro to get the first cite label from a comma-separated list.

```
48.439 \def\@azc#1{\@@azc#1,\hbox!}
```

`\@@azc` This one uses only the first argument, that is the first element of the comma-separated list of cite labels. Calls `\hun@tempadef` to expand the cite label with accent removal and special letter replacement. Then `\@@az`, the core macro, is called.

```
48.440 \def\@@azc#1,#2\hbox#3!{%
48.441   \hun@tempadef{hun@b@#1}{b@#1}{}%
48.442   \ifx\@tempa\empty
48.443   \else
48.444     \edef\@tempb{\noexpand\@@az\@tempa\hbox!}%
48.445     \@tempb
48.446   \fi}
```

`\hun@number@length` This macro is used to count the number of digits in its argument until a non-digit character is found or the end of the argument is reached. It must be called as `\hun@number@lengtharg\hbox\hbox!` and `\count@` must be zeroed. It is called by `\@@az`.

```
48.447 \def\hun@number@length#1#2\hbox#3!{%
48.448   \ifcat\noexpand#1%
48.449     \ifnum\expandafter'\csname#1\endcsname>47
48.450     \ifnum\expandafter'\csname#1\endcsname<58
48.451       \advance\count@ by \@ne
48.452       \hun@number@length#2\hbox\hbox!\fi\fi\fi}
```

`\hun@alph@lehgth` This is used to count the number of letters until a non-letter is found or the end of the argument is reached. It must be called as `\hun@alph@lehgtharg\hbox\hbox!` and `\count@` must be set to zero. It is called by `\@@az@string`.

```
48.453 \def\hun@alph@lehgth#1#2\hbox#3!{%
48.454   \ifcat\noexpand#1A%
48.455     \advance\count@ by \@ne
48.456     \hun@alph@lehgth#2\hbox\hbox!\fi}
```

`\@@az@string` This macro is called by `\@@az` if the argument begins with a letter. The task of `\@@az@string` is to determine if the argument starts with a vowel and in that case `\let\@tempa\@tempb`. After checking if the first letter is A, E, I, O, or U, `\hun@alph@lehgth` is called to determine the length of the argument. If it gives 1 (that is the argument is a single-letter one or the second character is not letter) then the letters L, M, N, R, S, X, and Y are also considered as a vowel since their Hungarian pronounced name starts with a vowel.

```
48.457 \def\@@az@string#1#2{%
48.458   \ifx#1A%
48.459     \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.460   \else\ifx#1E%
48.461     \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.462   \else\ifx#1I%
48.463     \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.464   \else\ifx#1O%
48.465     \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.466   \else\ifx#1U%
48.467     \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.468   \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
48.469   \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
48.470   \else
48.471     \count@\z@
48.472     \hun@alph@lehgth#1#2\hbox\hbox!%
48.473     \ifnum\count@=\@ne
48.474       \ifx#1F%
48.475         \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.476       \else\ifx#1L%
48.477         \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.478       \else\ifx#1M%
48.479         \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.480       \else\ifx#1N%
48.481         \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.482       \else\ifx#1R%
48.483         \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.484       \else\ifx#1S%
48.485         \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.486       \else\ifx#1X%
48.487         \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.488       \else\ifx#1Y%
48.489         \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.490       \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
48.491       \fi
48.492     \fi}
```

`\@@az` This macro is the core of definite article handling. It determines if the argument needs ‘az’ or ‘a’ definite article by setting `\@tempa` to ‘z’ or `\@empty`. It sets `\@tempa` to ‘z’ if

- the first character of the argument is 5; or
- the first character of the argument is 1 and the *length of the number* (mod 3) = 1 (one–egy, thousand–ezer, million–egymillió, ...); or
- the first character of the argument is a, A, e, E, i, I, o, O, u, or U; or

- the first character of the argument is l, L, m, M, n, N, r, R, s, S, x, X, y, or Y and the length of the argument is 1 or the second character is a non-letter.

At the end it calls `\@tempa`, that is, it either typesets a ‘z’ or nothing.

```

48.493 \def\@az#1#2\hbox#3!{%
48.494   \let\@tempa\@empty
48.495   \def\@tempb{z}%
48.496   \uppercase{%
48.497     \ifx#1%
48.498       \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.499     \else\ifx1#1%
48.500       \count@\@ne
48.501       \hun@number@length#2\hbox\hbox!%
48.502     \loop
48.503       \ifnum\count@>\thr@@
48.504         \advance\count@-\thr@@
48.505       \repeat
48.506     \ifnum\count@=\@ne
48.507       \let\@tempa\@tempb
48.508     \fi
48.509   \else
48.510     \@az@string{#1}{#2}%
48.511   \fi\fi
48.512 }%
48.513 \@tempa}

```

`\refstepcounter` `\refstepcounter` must be redefined in order to keep `\@currentlabel` unexpanded. This is necessary to enable the `\label` command to write a `\hunnewlabel` command to the aux file with the Roman numerals substituted by their Arabic representations. Of course, the original definition of `\refstepcounter` is saved and restored if the Hungarian language is switched off.

```

48.514 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.515   \babel@save\refstepcounter
48.516   \def\refstepcounter#1{\stepcounter{#1}}%
48.517   \def\@currentlabel{\csname p#1\endcsname\csname the#1\endcsname}}%
48.518 }

```

`\label` `\label` is redefined to write another line into the aux file: `\hunnewlabel{ }{ }` where the Roman numerals are replaced their Arabic representations. The original definition of `\label` is saved into `\old@label` and it is also called by `\label`. On leaving the Hungarian typesetting mode `\label`’s original is restored since it is added to `\noextrasmagyar`.

```

48.519 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.520   \let\old@label\label
48.521   \def\label#1{\@bsphack
48.522     \old@label{#1}%
48.523   \begingroup
48.524     \let\romannumeral\number
48.525     \def\@roman##1{\number ##1}%
48.526     \def\@Roman##1{\number ##1}%
48.527     {\toks0={\noexpand\noexpand\noexpand\number}}%
48.528     \def\number##1{\the\toks0 ##1}\xdef\tempb@{\thepage}}%
48.529     \edef\@tempa##1{\noexpand\protected@write\@auxout{}%
48.530       {\noexpand\string\noexpand\hunnewlabel
48.531         {##1}{\@currentlabel}{\tempb@}}}%
48.532     \@tempa{#1}%
48.533   \endgroup
48.534   \@esphack}%
48.535 }
48.536 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.537   \let\label\old@label
48.538 }

```

`\hunnewlabel` Finally, `\hunnewlabel` is defined. It checks if the label's expansion (#2) differs from that one given in the `\newlabel` command. If yes (that is, the label contains some Roman numerals), it defines the macro `\hun@r@label`, otherwise it does nothing.

```
48.539 \def\hunnewlabel#1#2{%
48.540   \def\@tempa{#2}%
48.541   \expandafter\ifx\csname r@#1\endcsname\@tempa
48.542     \relax% \message{No need for def: #1}%
48.543   \else
48.544     \global\expandafter\let\csname hun@r@#1\endcsname\@tempa%
48.545   \fi
48.546 }
```

For Hungarian the ‘ character is made active.

```
48.547 \AtBeginDocument{%
48.548   \if@filesw\immediate\write\@auxout{\catcode096=12}\fi}
48.549 \initiate@active@char{‘}
48.550 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.551   \languageshorthands{magyar}%
48.552   \bbl@activate{‘}}
48.553 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
48.554   \bbl@deactivate{‘}}
```

The character sequence ‘ is declared as a shorthand in order to produce the opening quotation sign appropriate for Hungarian.

```
48.555 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘}{\glqq}
```

In Hungarian there are some long double consonants which must be hyphenated specially. For all these long double consonants (except dzzs, that is extremely very-very rare) a shortcut is defined.

```
48.556 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘c}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{c}{cs}}{c}}
48.557 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘C}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{C}{CS}}{C}}
48.558 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘d}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{d}{dz}}{d}}
48.559 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘D}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{D}{DZ}}{D}}
48.560 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘g}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{g}{gy}}{g}}
48.561 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘G}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{G}{GY}}{G}}
48.562 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘l}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{l}{ly}}{l}}
48.563 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘L}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{L}{LY}}{L}}
48.564 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘n}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{n}{ny}}{n}}
48.565 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘N}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{N}{NY}}{N}}
48.566 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘s}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{s}{sz}}{s}}
48.567 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘S}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{S}{SZ}}{S}}
48.568 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘t}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{t}{ty}}{t}}
48.569 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘T}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{T}{TY}}{T}}
48.570 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘z}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{z}{zs}}{z}}
48.571 \declare@shorthand{magyar}{‘Z}{\textormath{\bbl@disc{Z}{ZS}}{Z}}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
48.572 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
48.573 /code}
```

## 49 The Estonian language

The file `estonian.dtx`<sup>54</sup> defines the language definition macro's for the Estonian language.

This file was written as part of the TWGML project, and borrows heavily from the `babel` German and Spanish language files `germanb.ldf` and `spanish.ldf`.

Estonian has the same umlauts as German (ä, ö, ü), but in addition to this, we have also õ, and two recent characters š and ž, so we need at least two active characters. We shall use " and ~ to type Estonian accents on ASCII keyboards (in the 7-bit character world). Their use is given in table 23. These active accent

~o	\~o, (and uppercase);
"a	\"a, (and uppercase);
"o	\"o, (and uppercase);
"u	\"u, (and uppercase);
~s	\v s, (and uppercase);
~z	\v z, (and uppercase);
"	disable ligature at this position;
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word;
\-	like the old \-, but allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word;
"“	for Estonian low left double quotes (same as German);
"’	for Estonian right double quotes;
"<	for French left double quotes (also rather popular)
">	for French right double quotes.

Table 23: The extra definitions made by `estonian.ldf`

characters behave according to their original definitions if not followed by one of the characters indicated in that table; the original quote character can be typed using the macro `\dq`.

We support also the T1 output encoding (and Cork-encoded text input). You can choose the T1 encoding by the command `\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}`. This package must be loaded before `babel`. As the standard Estonian hyphenation file `eehyph.tex` is in the Cork encoding, choosing this encoding will give you better hyphenation.

As mentioned in the Spanish style file, it may happen that some packages fail (usually in a `\message`). In this case you should change the order of the `\usepackage` declarations or the order of the style options in `\documentclass`.

### 49.1 Implementation

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

49.1 `\*code`

49.2 `\LdfInit{estonian}\captionsestonian`

If Estonian is not included in the format file (does not have hyphenation patterns), we shall use English hyphenation.

49.3 `\ifx\l@estonian\@undefined`

49.4 `\@nopatterns{Estonian}`

49.5 `\adddialect\l@estonian0`

49.6 `\fi`

---

<sup>54</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0h and was last revised on 2005/03/30. The original author is Enn Saar, ([saar@aai.ee](mailto:saar@aai.ee)).



Now come the commands to switch to (and from) Estonian.

`\captionsestonian` The macro `\captionsestonian` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
49.7 \addto\captionsestonian{%
49.8   \def\prefacename{Sissejuhatus}%
49.9   \def\refname{Viited}%
49.10  \def\bibName{Kirjandus}%
49.11  \def\appendixname{Lisa}%
49.12  \def\contentsname{Sisukord}%
49.13  \def\listfigurename{Joonised}%
49.14  \def\listtablename{Tabelid}%
49.15  \def\indexname{Indeks}%
49.16  \def\figurename{Joonis}%
49.17  \def\tablename{Tabel}%
49.18  \def\partname{Osa}%
49.19  \def\enclname{Lisa(d)}%
49.20  \def\ccname{Koopia(d)}%
49.21  \def\headtoname{}%
49.22  \def\pagename{Lk.}%
49.23  \def\seenname{vt.}%
49.24  \def\alsoname{vt. ka}%
49.25  \def\proofname{Korrektuur}%
49.26  \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
49.27 }
```

These captions contain accented characters.

```
49.28 \begingroup \catcode'\\"active
49.29 \def\x{\endgroup
49.30 \addto\captionsestonian{%
49.31   \def\abstractname{Kokkuvõte}%
49.32   \def\chaptername{Peatukk}}
49.33 \x
```

`\dateestonian` The macro `\dateestonian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Estonian dates.

```
49.34 \begingroup \catcode'\\"active
49.35 \def\x{\endgroup
49.36   \def\month@estonian{\ifcase\month\or
49.37     jaanuar\or veebruar\or marts\or aprill\or mai\or juuni\or
49.38     juuli\or august\or september\or oktoober\or november\or
49.39     detsember\fi}}
49.40 \x
49.41 \def\dateestonian{%
49.42   \def\today{\number\day.\space\month@estonian
49.43     \space\number\year.\space a.}}
```

`\extrasestonian` The macro `\extrasestonian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for Estonian. The macro `\noextrasestonian` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasestonian`. For Estonian, " is made active and has to be treated as 'special' (~ is active already).

```
49.44 \initiate@active@char{"}
49.45 \initiate@active@char{~}
49.46 \addto\extrasestonian{\languageshorthands{estonian}}
49.47 \addto\extrasestonian{\bbl@activate{"}\bbl@activate{~}}
```

Store the original macros, and redefine accents.

```
49.48 \addto\extrasestonian{\babel@save"\umlaulow\babel@save~\tildelow}
```

Estonian does not use extra spaces after sentences.

```
49.49 \addto\extrasestonian{\bbl@frenchspacing}
49.50 \addto\noextrasestonian{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
```

`\estonianhyphenmins` For Estonian, `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` are both 2.

```
49.51 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
```

`\tildelow` The standard T<sub>E</sub>X accents are too high for Estonian typography, we have to lower them (following the babel German style). For a detailed explanation see the file `glyphs.dtx`.

```
\newcheck 49.52 \def\tildelow{\def\~{\protect\gentilde}}
49.53 \def\gentilde#1{\if#1o\newtilde{#1}\else\if#10\newtilde{#1}%
49.54   \else\newcheck{#1}%
49.55   \fi\fi}
49.56 \def\newtilde#1{\leavevmode\allowhyphens
49.57   {\U@D 1ex%
49.58   {\setbox\z@\hbox{\char126}\dimen@ -.45ex\advance\dimen@\ht\z@
49.59   \ifdim 1ex<\dimen@ \fontdimen5\font\dimen@ \fi}%
49.60   \accent126\fontdimen5\font\U@D #1}\allowhyphens}
49.61 \def\newcheck#1{\leavevmode\allowhyphens
49.62   {\U@D 1ex%
49.63   {\setbox\z@\hbox{\char20}\dimen@ -.45ex\advance\dimen@\ht\z@
49.64   \ifdim 1ex<\dimen@ \fontdimen5\font\dimen@ \fi}%
49.65   \accent20\fontdimen5\font\U@D #1}\allowhyphens}
```

We save the double quote character in `\dq`, and tilde in `\til`, and store the original definitions of `\` and `\~` as `\dieresis` and `\texttilde`.

```
49.66 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
49.67 \edef\x{\endgroup
49.68   \def\noexpand\dq{"}
49.69   \def\noexpand\til{~}}
49.70 \x
49.71 \let\dieresis\"
49.72 \let\texttilde\~
```

This part follows closely `spanish.ldf`. We check the encoding and if it is T1, we have to tell T<sub>E</sub>X about our redefined accents.

```
49.73 \ifx\fontencoding\bb1@t@one
49.74   \let\@umlaut\dieresis
49.75   \let\@tilde\texttilde
49.76   \DeclareTextComposite{\~}{T1}{s}{178}
49.77   \DeclareTextComposite{\~}{T1}{S}{146}
49.78   \DeclareTextComposite{\~}{T1}{z}{186}
49.79   \DeclareTextComposite{\~}{T1}{Z}{154}
49.80   \DeclareTextComposite{\"}{T1}{'}{17}
49.81   \DeclareTextComposite{\"}{T1}{'}{18}
49.82   \DeclareTextComposite{\"}{T1}{<}{19}
49.83   \DeclareTextComposite{\"}{T1}{>}{20}
```

If the encoding differs from T1, we expand the accents, enabling hyphenation beyond the accent. In this case T<sub>E</sub>X will not find all possible breaks, and we have to warn people.

```
49.84 \else
49.85   \wlog{Warning: Hyphenation would work better for the T1 encoding.}
49.86   \let\@umlaut\newumlaut
49.87   \let\@tilde\gentilde
49.88 \fi
```

Now we define the shorthands.

```
49.89 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{a}{\textormath{"a}{\ddot a}}
49.90 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{A}{\textormath{"A}{\ddot A}}
49.91 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{o}{\textormath{"o}{\ddot o}}
49.92 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{O}{\textormath{"O}{\ddot O}}
49.93 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{u}{\textormath{"u}{\ddot u}}
49.94 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{U}{\textormath{"U}{\ddot U}}
```

german and french quotes,

```
49.95 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{"'}{%
49.96   \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
49.97 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{"'}{%
49.98   \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}
49.99 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{"<"}{%
49.100  \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
49.101 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{">"}{%
49.102  \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}

49.103 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{~o}{\textormath{@tilde o}{\tilde o}}
49.104 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{~O}{\textormath{@tilde O}{\tilde O}}
49.105 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{~s}{\textormath{@tilde s}{\check s}}
49.106 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{~S}{\textormath{@tilde S}{\check S}}
49.107 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{~z}{\textormath{@tilde z}{\check z}}
49.108 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{~Z}{\textormath{@tilde Z}{\check Z}}
```

and some additional commands:

```
49.109 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{"-}{\nobreak\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
49.110 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{"|"}{%
49.111   \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{}{\kern.03em}%
49.112     \allowhyphens}{}}
49.113 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{""}{\dq}
49.114 \declare@shorthand{estonian}{~}{\til}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
49.115 \ldf@finish{estonian}
49.116 </code>
```

## 50 The Albanian language

The file `albanian.dtx`<sup>55</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Albanian language.

Albanian is written in a latin script, but it has 36 letters, 9 which are diletters (dh, gj, ll, nj, rr, sh, th, xh, zh), and two extra special characters.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 24 an overview is given of its purpose.

"c	\c, also implemented for the uppercase
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
"	disable ligature at this position
" "	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. x-"y).
"‘	for Albanian left double quotes (looks like „).
"’	for Albanian right double quotes.
"<<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">>	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).

Table 24: The extra definitions made by `albanian.ldf`

Apart from defining shorthands we need to make sure that the first paragraph of each section is intended. Furthermore the following new math operators are defined (`\tg`, `\ctg`, `\arctg`, `\arcctg`, `\sh`, `\ch`, `\th`, `\cth`, `\arsh`, `\arch`, `\arth`, `\arcth`, `\Prob`, `\Expect`, `\Variance`).

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
50.1 (*code)
50.2 \LdfInit{albanian}\captionسالbanian
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `albanian` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@albanian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
50.3 \ifx\l@albanian@undefined
50.4   \nopatterns{Albanian}
50.5   \adddialect\l@albanian0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Albanian language.

`\captionسالbanian` The macro `\captionسالbanian` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
50.6 \addto\captionسالbanian{%
50.7   \def\prefacename{Parathenia}%
50.8   \def\refname{Referencat}%
50.9   \def\abstractname{P\ "erbledhja}%
50.10  \def\bibname{Bibliografia}%
50.11  \def\chaptername{Kapitulli}%
50.12  \def\appendixname{Shtesa}%
50.13  \def\contentsname{P\ "ermbajta}%
50.14  \def\listfigurename{Figurat}%
50.15  \def\listtablename{Tabelat}%
50.16  \def\indexname{Indeksi}%
50.17  \def\figurename{Figura}%
50.18  \def\tablename{Tabela}%
50.19  \def\partname{Pjesa}%
```

---

<sup>55</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0c and was last revised on 2007/10/20



```

50.57             \@afterindenttrue}
50.58 \def\bbl@nonfrenchindent{\let\@afterindentfalse\@aifORI
50.59             \@afterindentfalse}
50.60 \addto\extrasalbanian{\bbl@frenchindent}
50.61 \addto\noextrasalbanian{\bbl@nonfrenchindent}
50.62 \fi

```

`\mathalbanian` Some math functions in Albanian math books have other names: e.g. `\sinh` in Albanian is written as `sh` etc. So we define a number of new math operators.

```

50.63 \def\sh{\mathop{\operator@font sh}\nolimits} % same as \sinh
50.64 \def\ch{\mathop{\operator@font ch}\nolimits} % same as \cosh
50.65 \def\th{\mathop{\operator@font th}\nolimits} % same as \tanh
50.66 \def\cth{\mathop{\operator@font cth}\nolimits} % same as \coth
50.67 \def\arsh{\mathop{\operator@font arsh}\nolimits}
50.68 \def\arch{\mathop{\operator@font arch}\nolimits}
50.69 \def\arth{\mathop{\operator@font arth}\nolimits}
50.70 \def\arcth{\mathop{\operator@font arcth}\nolimits}
50.71 \def\tg{\mathop{\operator@font tg}\nolimits} % same as \tan
50.72 \def\ctg{\mathop{\operator@font ctg}\nolimits} % same as \cot
50.73 \def\arctg{\mathop{\operator@font arctg}\nolimits} % same as \arctan
50.74 \def\arcctg{\mathop{\operator@font arcctg}\nolimits}
50.75 \def\Prob{\mathop{\mathsf P\hskip0pt}\nolimits}
50.76 \def\Expect{\mathop{\mathsf E\hskip0pt}\nolimits}
50.77 \def\Variance{\mathop{\mathsf D\hskip0pt}\nolimits}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

50.78 \ldf@finish{albanian}
50.79 </code>

```

## 51 The Croatian language

The file `croatian.dtx`<sup>56</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Croatian language.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
51.1 (*code)
51.2 \LdfInit{croatian}\captionscroatian
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `croatian` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@croatian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
51.3 \ifx\l@croatian\@undefined
51.4     \nopatterns{Croatian}
51.5     \adddialect\l@croatian0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Croatian language.

`\captionscroatian` The macro `\captionscroatian` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
51.6 \addto\captionscroatian{%
51.7   \def\prefacename{Predgovor}%
51.8   \def\refname{Literatura}%
51.9   \def\abstractname{Sa\v{z}etak}%
51.10  \def\bibname{Bibliografija}%
51.11  \def\chaptername{Poglavlje}%
51.12  \def\appendixname{Dodatak}%
51.13  \def\contentsname{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
51.14  \def\listfigurename{Popis slika}%
51.15  \def\listtablename{Popis tablica}%
51.16  \def\indexname{Indeks}%
51.17  \def\figurename{Slika}%
51.18  \def\tablename{Tablica}%
51.19  \def\partname{Dio}%
51.20  \def\enclname{Prilozi}%
51.21  \def\ccname{Kopije}%
51.22  \def\headtoname{Prima}%
51.23  \def\pagename{Stranica}%
51.24  \def\seenname{Vidjeti}%
51.25  \def\alsoname{Vidjeti i}%
51.26  \def\proofname{Dokaz}%
51.27  \def\glossaryname{Kazalo}%
51.28  }%
```

`\datecroatian` The macro `\datecroatian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Croatian dates.

```
51.29 \def\datecroatian{%
51.30   \def\today{\number\day.~\ifcase\month\or
51.31     sije\v{c}nja\or velja\v{c}e\or o\v{z}ujka\or travnja\or svibnja\or
51.32     lipnja\or srpnja\or kolovoza\or rujna\or listopada\or studenog\or
51.33     prosinca\fi \space \number\year.}}
```

`\extrascroatian` The macro `\extrascroatian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Croatian language. The macro `\noextrascroatian` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrascroatian`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

---

<sup>56</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.3l and was last revised on 2005/03/29. A contribution was made by Alan Paić (`paica@cernvm.cern.ch`).

51.34 `\addto\extrascroatian{}`  
51.35 `\addto\noextrascroatian{}`

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

51.36 `\ldf@finish{croatian}`  
51.37 `\code`



## 52 The Czech language

The file `czech.dtx`<sup>57</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Czech language.

For this language `\frenchspacing` is set and two macros `\q` and `\w` for easy access to two accents are defined.

The command `\q` is used with the letters (t, d, l, and L) and adds a ' to them to simulate a 'hook' that should be there. The result looks like `ť`. The command `\w` is used to put the ring-accent which appears in ångström over the letters u and U.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
52.1 (*code)
52.2 \LdfInit{czech}\captionsczech
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `czech` will be an 'unknown' language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@czec` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
52.3 \ifx\l@czec\@undefined
52.4     \nopatterns{Czech}
52.5     \adddialect\l@czec0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Czech language.

`\captionsczech` The macro `\captionsczech` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
52.6 \addto\captionsczech{%
52.7   \def\prefacename{P\v redmluva}%
52.8   \def\refname{Reference}%
52.9   \def\abstractname{Abstrakt}%
52.10  \def\bibname{Literatura}%
52.11  \def\chaptername{Kapitola}%
52.12  \def\appendixname{Dodatek}%
52.13  \def\contentsname{Obsah}%
52.14  \def\listfigurename{Seznam obr\'azk\u}%
52.15  \def\listtablename{Seznam tabulek}%
52.16  \def\indexname{Index}%
52.17  \def\figurename{Obr\'azek}%
52.18  \def\tablename{Tabulka}%
52.19  \def\partname{\v{C}\'}ast}%
52.20  \def\enclname{P\v{r}\'}{i}loha}%
52.21  \def\ccname{Na v\v{e}dom\'}{i}:}%
52.22  \def\headtoname{Komu}%
52.23  \def\pagename{Strana}%
52.24  \def\seename{viz}%
52.25  \def\alsoname{viz tak\'}e}%
52.26  \def\proofname{D\ukaz}%
52.27  \def\glossaryname{Glos\'}a\v r}%
52.28  }%
```

`\dateczech` The macro `\dateczech` redefines the command `\today` to produce Czech dates.

```
52.29 \def\dateczech{%
52.30   \def\today{\number\day.~\ifcase\month\or
52.31     ledna\or \'}unora\or b\v{r}ezna\or dubna\or kv\v{e}tna\or
52.32     \v{c}ervna\or \v{c}ervence\or srpna\or z\'}a\v{r}\'}{i}\or
52.33     \v{r}\'}{i}jna\or listopadu\or prosince\fi
52.34     \space \number\year}}
```

<sup>57</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.3k and was last revised on 2005/03/29. Contributions were made by Milos Lokajicek (LOKAJICK@CERNVM).

`\extrasczech` The macro `\extrasczech` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Czech language. The macro `\noextrasczech` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasczech`. This means saving the meaning of two one-letter control sequences before defining them.

```
52.35 \addto\extrasczech{\babel@save\q\let\q\v}
52.36 \addto\extrasczech{\babel@save\w\let\w\r}
```

For Czech texts `\frenchspacing` should be in effect. We make sure this is the case and reset it if necessary.

```
52.37 \addto\extrasczech{\bbl@frenchspacing}
52.38 \addto\noextrasczech{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
```

`\v` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's normal `\v` accent places a caron over the letter that follows it (ř). This is not what we want for the letters d, t, l and L; for those the accent should change shape. This is achieved by the following.

```
52.39 \AtBeginDocument{%
52.40   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\v}{OT1}{t}{t}%
52.41   t\kern-.23em\raise.24ex\hbox{'}}
52.42   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\v}{OT1}{d}{d}%
52.43   d\kern-.13em\raise.24ex\hbox{'}}
52.44   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\v}{OT1}{l}{\lcaron{}}
52.45   \DeclareTextCompositeCommand{\v}{OT1}{L}{\Lcaron{}}
```

`\lcaron` For the letters l and L we want to distinguish between normal fonts and monospaced fonts.

```
52.46 \def\lcaron{%
52.47   \setbox0\hbox{M}\setbox\tw@\hbox{i}%
52.48   \ifdim\wd0>\wd\tw@\relax
52.49     l\kern-.13em\raise.24ex\hbox{'}\kern-.11em%
52.50   \else
52.51     l\raise.45ex\hbox to\z@{\kern-.35em '\hss}%
52.52   \fi}
52.53 \def\Lcaron{%
52.54   \setbox0\hbox{M}\setbox\tw@\hbox{i}%
52.55   \ifdim\wd0>\wd\tw@\relax
52.56     L\raise.24ex\hbox to\z@{\kern-.28em'\hss}%
52.57   \else
52.58     L\raise.45ex\hbox to\z@{\kern-.40em '\hss}%
52.59   \fi}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
52.60 \ldf@finish{czech}
52.61 \code}
```

## 53 The Polish language

The file `polish.dtx`<sup>58</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Polish language.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 25 an overview is given of its purpose.

"a	or \aob, for tailed-a (like ą)
"A	or \Aob, for tailed-A (like Ą)
"e	or \eob, for tailed-e (like ę)
"E	or \Eob, for tailed-E (like Ę)
"c	or \'c, for accented c (like ć), same with uppercase letters and n,o,s
"l	or \lpb{ }, for l with stroke (like ł)
"L	or \Lpb{ }, for L with stroke (like Ł)
"r	or \zkb{ }, for pointed z (like ź), cf. pronunciation
"R	or \Zkb{ }, for pointed Z (like Ź)
"z	or \'z, for accented z
"Z	or \'Z, for accented Z
"	disable ligature at this position.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. x-"y).
"“	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
"”	for German right double quotes.
"<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).

Table 25: The extra definitions made by `polish.sty`

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
53.1 (*code)
```

```
53.2 \LdfInit{polish}\captionspolish
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `polish` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@polish` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
53.3 \ifx\l@polish\@undefined
```

```
53.4 \@nopatterns{Polish}
```

```
53.5 \adddialect\l@polish0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Polish language.

`\captionspolish` The macro `\captionspolish` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
53.6 \addto\captionspolish{%
```

```
53.7 \def\prefacename{Przedmowa}%
```

```
53.8 \def\refname{Literatura}%
```

```
53.9 \def\abstractname{Streszczenie}%
```

```
53.10 \def\bibname{Bibliografia}%
```

```
53.11 \def\chaptername{Rozdział}
```

```
53.12 \def\appendixname{Dodatek}%
```

```
53.13 \def\contentsname{Spis treści}
```

```
53.14 \def\listfigurename{Spis rysunków}%
```

```
53.15 \def\listtablename{Spis tabel}%
```

<sup>58</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.2l and was last revised on 2005/03/31.

```

53.16 \def\indexname{Indeks}%
53.17 \def\figurename{Rysunek}%
53.18 \def\tablename{Tablica}%
53.19 \def\partname{Cz\eob{}}\s'c}%
53.20 \def\enclname{Za\l\ao{b}cznik}%
53.21 \def\ccname{Kopie:}%
53.22 \def\headtoname{Do}%
53.23 \def\pagename{Strona}%
53.24 \def\seename{Por\ownaj}%
53.25 \def\alsoname{Por\ownaj tak\ze}%
53.26 \def\proofname{Dow\od}%
53.27 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
53.28 }

```

`\datepolish` The macro `\datepolish` redefines the command `\today` to produce Polish dates.

```

53.29 \def\datepolish{%
53.30 \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
53.31 stycznia\or lutego\or marca\or kwietnia\or maja\or czerwca\or lipca\or
53.32 sierpnia\or wrze\'snia\or pa\'zdziernika\or listopada\or grudnia\fi
53.33 \space\number\year}%
53.34 }

```

`\extrapolish` The macro `\extrapolish` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Polish language. The macro `\noextrapolish` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrapolish`.

For Polish the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary. Other languages in the same document may also use the " character for shorthands; we specify that the polish group of shorthands should be used.

```

53.35 \initiate@active@char{"}
53.36 \addto\extrapolish{\languageshorthands{polish}}
53.37 \addto\extrapolish{\bbl@activate{}}

```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

53.38 \addto\noextrapolish{\bbl@deactivate{}}

```

The code above is necessary because we need an extra active character. This character is then used as indicated in table 25.

If you have problems at the end of a word with a linebreak, use the other version without hyphenation tricks. Some TeX wizard may produce a better solution with forecasting another token to decide whether the character after the double quote is the last in a word. Do it and let us know.

In Polish texts some letters get special diacritical marks. Leszek Holenderski designed the following code to position the diacritics correctly for every font in every size. These macros need a few extra dimension variables.

```

53.39 \newdimen\pl@left
53.40 \newdimen\pl@down
53.41 \newdimen\pl@right
53.42 \newdimen\pl@temp

```

`\sob` The macro `\sob` is used to put the 'ogonek' in the right place.

```

53.43 \def\sob#1#2#3#4#5{%,parameters: letter and fractions hl,ho,vl,vo
53.44 \setbox0\hbox{#1}\setbox1\hbox{$_\mathchar'454$}\setbox2\hbox{p}%
53.45 \pl@right=#2\wd0 \advance\pl@right by-#3\wd1
53.46 \pl@down=#5\ht1 \advance\pl@down by-#4\ht0
53.47 \pl@left=\pl@right \advance\pl@left by\wd1
53.48 \pl@temp=-\pl@down \advance\pl@temp by\dp2 \dp1=\pl@temp
53.49 \leavevmode
53.50 \kern\pl@right\lower\pl@down\box1\kern-\pl@left #1}

```

`\aob` The ogonek is placed with the letters ‘a’, ‘A’, ‘e’, and ‘E’.

```

53.51 \DeclareTextCommand{\aob}{OT1}{\sob a{.66}{.20}{0}{.90}}
53.52 \DeclareTextCommand{\Aob}{OT1}{\sob A{.80}{.50}{0}{.90}}
53.53 \DeclareTextCommand{\eob}{OT1}{\sob e{.50}{.35}{0}{.93}}
53.54 \DeclareTextCommand{\Eob}{OT1}{\sob E{.60}{.35}{0}{.90}}

```

For the ‘new’ T1 encoding we can provide simpler definitions.

```

53.55 \DeclareTextCommand{\aob}{T1}{\k a}
53.56 \DeclareTextCommand{\Aob}{T1}{\k A}
53.57 \DeclareTextCommand{\eob}{T1}{\k e}
53.58 \DeclareTextCommand{\Eob}{T1}{\k E}

```

Construct the characters by default from the OT1 encoding.

```

53.59 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\aob}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\aob}}
53.60 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\Aob}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\Aob}}
53.61 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\eob}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\eob}}
53.62 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\Eob}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}{\Eob}}

```

`\spb` The macro `\spb` is used to put the ‘poprzeczka’ in the right place.

```

53.63 \def\spb#1#2#3#4#5{%
53.64 \setbox0\hbox{#1}\setbox1\hbox{\char'023}%
53.65 \pl@right=#2\wd0 \advance\pl@right by-#3\wd1
53.66 \pl@down=#5\ht1 \advance\pl@down by-#4\ht0
53.67 \pl@left=\pl@right \advance\pl@left by\wd1
53.68 \ht1=\pl@down \dp1=-\pl@down
53.69 \leavevmode
53.70 \kern\pl@right\lower\pl@down\box1\kern-\pl@left #1}

```

`\skb` The macro `\skb` is used to put the ‘kropka’ in the right place.

```

53.71 \def\skb#1#2#3#4#5{%
53.72 \setbox0\hbox{#1}\setbox1\hbox{\char'056}%
53.73 \pl@right=#2\wd0 \advance\pl@right by-#3\wd1
53.74 \pl@down=#5\ht1 \advance\pl@down by-#4\ht0
53.75 \pl@left=\pl@right \advance\pl@left by\wd1
53.76 \leavevmode
53.77 \kern\pl@right\lower\pl@down\box1\kern-\pl@left #1}

```

`\textpl` For the ‘poprzeczka’ and the ‘kropka’ in text fonts we don’t need any special coding, but we can (almost) use what is already available.

```

53.78 \def\textpl{%
53.79 \def\lpb{\p111}%
53.80 \def\Lpb{\pLLL}%
53.81 \def\zkb{\.z}%
53.82 \def\Zkb{\.Z}}

```

Initially we assume that typesetting is done with text fonts.

```

53.83 \textpl
53.84 \let\111=\1 \let\LLL=\L
53.85 \def\p111{\111}
53.86 \def\pLLL{\LLL}

```

`\telepl` But for the ‘teletype’ font in ‘OT1’ encoding we have to take some special actions, involving the macros defined above.

```

53.87 \def\telepl{%
53.88 \def\lpb{\spb 1{.45}{.5}{.4}{.8}}%
53.89 \def\Lpb{\spb L{.23}{.5}{.4}{.8}}%
53.90 \def\zkb{\skb z{.5}{.5}{1.2}{0}}%
53.91 \def\Zkb{\skb Z{.5}{.5}{1.1}{0}}

```

To activate these codes the font changing commands as they are defined in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X are modified. The same is done for plain T<sub>E</sub>X's font changing commands.

When `\selectfont` is undefined the current format is supposed to be either plain (based) or L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09.

```
53.92 \ifx\selectfont\undefined
53.93 \ifx\prml\undefined \addto\rm{\textpl}\else \addto\prml{\textpl}\fi
53.94 \ifx\pit\undefined \addto\it{\textpl}\else \addto\pit{\textpl}\fi
53.95 \ifx\pbf\undefined \addto\bf{\textpl}\else \addto\pbf{\textpl}\fi
53.96 \ifx\psl\undefined \addto\sl{\textpl}\else \addto\psl{\textpl}\fi
53.97 \ifx\psf\undefined \else \addto\psf{\textpl}\fi
53.98 \ifx\psc\undefined \else \addto\psc{\textpl}\fi
53.99 \ifx\ptt\undefined \addto\tt{\telepl}\else \addto\ptt{\telepl}\fi
53.100 \else
```

When `\selectfont` exists we assume L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>.

```
53.101 \expandafter\addto\csname selectfont \endcsname{%
53.102 \csname\fontencoding @pl\endcsname}
53.103 \fi
```

Currently we support the OT1 and T1 encodings. For T1 we don't have to make a difference between typewriter fonts and other fonts, they all have the same glyphs.

```
53.104 \expandafter\let\csname T1@pl\endcsname\textpl
```

For OT1 we need to check the current font family, stored in `\fontfamily`. Unfortunately we need a hack as `\ttdefault` is defined as a `\long` macro, while `\fontfamily` is not.

```
53.105 \expandafter\def\csname OT1@pl\endcsname{%
53.106 \long\edef\curr@family{\fontfamily}%
53.107 \ifx\curr@family\ttdefault
53.108 \telepl
53.109 \else
53.110 \textpl
53.111 \fi}
```

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent `\'` can now be typed as `"`.

```
53.112 \begingroup \catcode'\''12
53.113 \def\x{\endgroup
53.114 \def\dq{"}}
53.115 \x
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros for diacritics,

```
53.116 \declare@shorthand{polish}{a}{\textormath{\aob}{\ddot a}}
53.117 \declare@shorthand{polish}{A}{\textormath{\Aob}{\ddot A}}
53.118 \declare@shorthand{polish}{c}{\textormath{'c}{\acute c}}
53.119 \declare@shorthand{polish}{C}{\textormath{'C}{\acute C}}
53.120 \declare@shorthand{polish}{e}{\textormath{\eob}{\ddot e}}
53.121 \declare@shorthand{polish}{E}{\textormath{\Eob}{\ddot E}}
53.122 \declare@shorthand{polish}{l}{\textormath{\lpb}{\ddot l}}
53.123 \declare@shorthand{polish}{L}{\textormath{\Lpb}{\ddot L}}
53.124 \declare@shorthand{polish}{n}{\textormath{'n}{\acute n}}
53.125 \declare@shorthand{polish}{N}{\textormath{'N}{\acute N}}
53.126 \declare@shorthand{polish}{o}{\textormath{'o}{\acute o}}
53.127 \declare@shorthand{polish}{O}{\textormath{'O}{\acute O}}
53.128 \declare@shorthand{polish}{s}{\textormath{'s}{\acute s}}
53.129 \declare@shorthand{polish}{S}{\textormath{'S}{\acute S}}
```

`\polishrz` The command `\polishrz` defines the shorthands `"r`, `"z` and `"x` to produce pointed `z`, accented `z` and `"x`. This is the default as these shorthands were defined by this language definition file for quite some time.

```
53.130 \newcommand*{\polishrz}{%
53.131 \declare@shorthand{polish}{r}{\textormath{\zkb}{\ddot r}}%
```

```

53.132 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"R}{\textormath{\Zkb}{\ddot R}}%
53.133 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"z}{\textormath{\'z}{\acute z}}%
53.134 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"Z}{\textormath{\'Z}{\acute Z}}%
53.135 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"x}{\dq x}%
53.136 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"X}{\dq X}%
53.137 }
53.138 \polishrz

```

The command `\polishzx` switches to a different set of shorthands, "z, "x and "r to produce pointed z, accented z and "r; a different shorthand notation also in use.

```

53.139 \newcommand*{\polishzx}{%
53.140 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"z}{\textormath{\zkb}{\ddot z}}%
53.141 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"Z}{\textormath{\Zkb}{\ddot Z}}%
53.142 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"x}{\textormath{\'z}{\acute x}}%
53.143 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"X}{\textormath{\'Z}{\acute X}}%
53.144 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"r}{\dq r}%
53.145 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"R}{\dq R}%
53.146 }

```

Then we define access to two forms of quotation marks, similar to the german and french quotation marks.

```

53.147 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"‘}{%
53.148 \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
53.149 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"’}{%
53.150 \textormath{\textquotedblright}{\mbox{\textquotedblright}}}
53.151 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"<}{%
53.152 \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
53.153 \declare@shorthand{polish}{">}{%
53.154 \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}

```

then we define two shorthands to be able to specify hyphenation breakpoints that behave a little different from `\-`.

```

53.155 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"-}{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
53.156 \declare@shorthand{polish}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}

```

And we want to have a shorthand for disabling a ligature.

```

53.157 \declare@shorthand{polish}{"|}{%
53.158 \textormath{\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}}{}}

```

`\mdqon` All that's left to do now is to define a couple of commands for reasons of compatibility with `polish.tex`.

```

53.159 \def\mdqon{\shorthandon{}}
53.160 \def\mdqoff{\shorthandoff{}}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

53.161 \ldf@finish{polish}
53.162 </code>

```

## 54 The Serbocroatian language

The file `serbian.dtx`<sup>59</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Serbian language, typeset in a latin script. In a future version support for typesetting in a cyrillic script may be added.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 26 an overview is given of its purpose. One of the reasons for this is that in the Serbian language some special characters are used.

"c	\c, also implemented for the lowercase and uppercase s and z.
"d	\dj, also implemented for "D
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
"	disable ligature at this position
"	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. x-"y).
"‘	for Serbian left double quotes (looks like „).
"’	for Serbian right double quotes.
"<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).

Table 26: The extra definitions made by `serbian.ldf`

Apart from defining shorthands we need to make sure taht the first paragraph of each section is intended. Furthermore the following new math operators are defined (`\tg`, `\ctg`, `\arctg`, `\arcctg`, `\sh`, `\ch`, `\th`, `\cth`, `\arsh`, `\arch`, `\arth`, `\arcth`, `\Prob`, `\Expect`, `\Variance`).

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
54.1 (*code)
54.2 \LdfInit{serbian}\captionsserbian
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `serbian` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@serbian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
54.3 \ifx\l@serbian\@undefined
54.4   \nopatterns{Serbian}
54.5   \adddialect\l@serbian0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Serbocroatian language.

`\captionsserbian` The macro `\captionsserbian` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
54.6 \addto\captionsserbian{%
54.7   \def\prefacename{Predgovor}%
54.8   \def\refname{Literatura}%
54.9   \def\abstractname{Sa\v{z}etak}%
54.10  \def\bibname{Bibliografija}%
54.11  \def\chaptername{Glava}%
54.12  \def\appendixname{Dodatak}%
54.13  \def\contentsname{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
54.14  \def\listfigurename{Slike}%
54.15  \def\listtablename{Tabele}%
54.16  \def\indexname{Indeks}%
```

<sup>59</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0d and was last revised on 2005/03/31. A contribution was made by Dejan Muhamedagić ([dejan@yunix.com](mailto:dejan@yunix.com)).



```

54.17 \def\figurename{Slika}%
54.18 \def\tablename{Tabela}%
54.19 \def\partname{Deo}%
54.20 \def\enclname{Prilozi}%
54.21 \def\ccname{Kopije}%
54.22 \def\headtoname{Prima}%
54.23 \def\pagename{Strana}%
54.24 \def\seename{Vidi}%
54.25 \def\alsoname{Vidi tako\dj e}%
54.26 \def\proofname{Dokaz}%
54.27 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
54.28 }%

```

`\dateserbian` The macro `\dateserbian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Serbocroatian dates.

```

54.29 \def\dateserbian{%
54.30 \def\today{\number\day .~\ifcase\month\or
54.31 januar\or februar\or mart\or april\or maj\or
54.32 juni\or juli\or avgust\or septembar\or oktobar\or novembar\or
54.33 decembar\fi \space \number\year}}

```

`\extrasserbian` The macro `\extrasserbian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Serbocroatian language. The macro `\noextrasserbian` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasserbian`.

For Serbian the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary. Other languages in the same document may also use the " character for shorthands; we specify that the serbian group of shorthands should be used.

```

54.34 \initiate@active@char{"}
54.35 \addto\extrasserbian{\languageshorthands{serbian}}
54.36 \addto\extrasserbian{\bbl@activate{}}

```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

54.37 \addto\noextrasserbian{\bbl@deactivate{}}

```

First we define shorthands to facilitate the occurrence of letters such as č.

```

54.38 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"c}{\textormath{\v c}{\check c}}
54.39 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"d}{\textormath{\dj}{\check dj}}%
54.40 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"s}{\textormath{\v s}{\check s}}
54.41 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"z}{\textormath{\v z}{\check z}}
54.42 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"C}{\textormath{\v C}{\check C}}
54.43 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"D}{\textormath{\DJ}{\check DJ}}%
54.44 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"S}{\textormath{\v S}{\check S}}
54.45 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"Z}{\textormath{\v Z}{\check Z}}

```

Then we define access to two forms of quotation marks, similar to the german and french quotation marks.

```

54.46 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"' }{%
54.47 \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}
54.48 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"' }{%
54.49 \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}
54.50 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"< }{%
54.51 \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}
54.52 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"> }{%
54.53 \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}

```

then we define two shorthands to be able to specify hyphenation breakpoints that behave a little different from \-.

```

54.54 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{"- }{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
54.55 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{" " }{\hspace\zskip}

```

And we want to have a shorthand for disabling a ligature.

```

54.56 \declare@shorthand{serbian}{" | }{%
54.57 \textormath{\discretionary{-}{ }\kern.03em}{ }}

```

`\bbl@frenchindent` In Serbian the first paragraph of each section should be indented. Add this code  
`\bbl@nonfrenchindent` only in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

54.58 \ifx\fmtname plain \else
54.59   \let\@aifORI\@afterindentfalse
54.60   \def\bbl@frenchindent{\let\@afterindentfalse\@afterindenttrue
54.61     \@afterindenttrue}
54.62   \def\bbl@nonfrenchindent{\let\@afterindentfalse\@aifORI
54.63     \@afterindentfalse}
54.64   \addto\extrasserbian{\bbl@frenchindent}
54.65   \addto\noextrasserbian{\bbl@nonfrenchindent}
54.66 \fi

```

`\mathserbian` Some math functions in Serbian math books have other names: e.g. `\sinh` in Serbian is written as `sh` etc. So we define a number of new math operators.

```

54.67 \def\sh{\mathop{\operator@font sh}\nolimits} % same as \sinh
54.68 \def\ch{\mathop{\operator@font ch}\nolimits} % same as \cosh
54.69 \def\th{\mathop{\operator@font th}\nolimits} % same as \tanh
54.70 \def\cth{\mathop{\operator@font cth}\nolimits} % same as \coth
54.71 \def\arsh{\mathop{\operator@font arsh}\nolimits}
54.72 \def\arch{\mathop{\operator@font arch}\nolimits}
54.73 \def\arth{\mathop{\operator@font arth}\nolimits}
54.74 \def\arcth{\mathop{\operator@font arcth}\nolimits}
54.75 \def\tg{\mathop{\operator@font tg}\nolimits} % same as \tan
54.76 \def\ctg{\mathop{\operator@font ctg}\nolimits} % same as \cot
54.77 \def\arctg{\mathop{\operator@font arctg}\nolimits} % same as \arctan
54.78 \def\arcctg{\mathop{\operator@font arcctg}\nolimits}
54.79 \def\Prob{\mathop{\mathsf P\hskip0pt}\nolimits}
54.80 \def\Expect{\mathop{\mathsf E\hskip0pt}\nolimits}
54.81 \def\Variance{\mathop{\mathsf D\hskip0pt}\nolimits}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

54.82 \ldf@finish{serbian}
54.83 \code

```

## 55 The Slovak language

The file `slovak.dtx`<sup>60</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Slovak language.

For this language the macro `\q` is defined. It was used with the letters (`ṭ`, `d`, `l`, and `L`) and adds a `'` to them to simulate a ‘hook’ that should be there. The result looks like `ť`. Since the the T1 font encoding has the corresponding characters it is mapped to `\v`. Therefore we recommend using T1 font encoding. If you don’t want to use this encoding, please, feel free to redefine `\q` in your file. I think babel will honour this ;-).

For this language the characters `"`, `'` and `ˆ` are active. In table 27 an overview is given of its purpose. Also the vertical placement of the umlaut can be controlled this way.

<code>"a</code>	<code>\"a</code> , also implemented for the other lowercase and uppercase vowels.
<code>ˆd</code>	<code>\q d</code> , also implemented for <code>l</code> , <code>t</code> and <code>L</code> .
<code>ˆc</code>	<code>\v c</code> , also implemented for <code>C</code> , <code>D</code> , <code>N</code> , <code>n</code> , <code>T</code> , <code>Z</code> and <code>z</code> .
<code>ˆo</code>	<code>\ˆo</code> , also implemented for <code>O</code> .
<code>'a</code>	<code>\'a</code> , also implemented for the other lowercase and uppercase <code>l</code> , <code>r</code> , <code>y</code> and vowels.
<code>" </code>	disable ligature at this position.
<code>"-</code>	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
<code>""</code>	like <code>"-</code> , but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. <code>x-"y</code> ).
<code>"~</code>	for a compound word mark without a breakpoint.
<code>"=</code>	for a compound word mark with a breakpoint, allowing hyphenation in the composing words.
<code>"‘</code>	for German left double quotes (looks like <code>„</code> ).
<code>"’</code>	for German right double quotes.
<code>"&lt;</code>	for French left double quotes (similar to <code>&lt;&lt;</code> ).
<code>"&gt;</code>	for French right double quotes (similar to <code>&gt;&gt;</code> ).

Table 27: The extra definitions made by `slovak.ldf`

The quotes in table 27 can also be typeset by using the commands in table 28.

<code>\glqq</code>	for German left double quotes (looks like <code>„</code> ).
<code>\grqq</code>	for German right double quotes (looks like <code>“</code> ).
<code>\glq</code>	for German left single quotes (looks like <code>„</code> ).
<code>\grq</code>	for German right single quotes (looks like <code>‘</code> ).
<code>\flqq</code>	for French left double quotes (similar to <code>&lt;&lt;</code> ).
<code>\frqq</code>	for French right double quotes (similar to <code>&gt;&gt;</code> ).
<code>\flq</code>	for (French) left single quotes (similar to <code>&lt;</code> ).
<code>\frq</code>	for (French) right single quotes (similar to <code>&gt;</code> ).
<code>\dq</code>	the original quotes character ( <code>"</code> ).
<code>\sq</code>	the original single quote ( <code>'</code> ).

Table 28: More commands which produce quotes, defined by `slovak.ldf`

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

---

<sup>60</sup>The file described in this section has version number `v1.3a` and was last revised on 2005/03/31. It was written by Jana Chlebikova (`chlebik@euromath.dk`) and modified by Tobias Schlemmer (`Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de`).

```
55.1 (*code)
55.2 \LdfInit{slovak}\captionsslovak
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `slovak` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@slovak` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
55.3 \ifx\l@slovak\undefined
55.4     \nopatterns{Slovak}
55.5     \addialect\l@slovak0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Slovak language.

`\captionsslovak` The macro `\captionsslovak` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
55.6 \addto\captionsslovak{%
55.7     \def\prefacename{\'Uvod}%
55.8     \def\refname{Referencie}%
55.9     \def\abstractname{Abstrakt}%
55.10    \def\bibName{Literat\'ura}%
55.11    \def\chaptername{Kapitola}%
55.12    \def\appendixname{Dodatok}%
55.13    \def\contentsname{Obsah}%
55.14    \def\listfigurename{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
55.15    \def\listtablename{Zoznam tabuliek}%
55.16    \def\indexname{Index}%
55.17    \def\figurename{Obr\'azok}%
55.18    \def\tablename{Tabu\q lka}%% special letter l with hook
55.19    \def\partname{\v{C}as\q t}%% special letter t with hook
55.20    \def\enclname{Pr\'{\i}lohy}%
55.21    \def\ccname{CC}%
55.22    \def\headtoname{Komu}%
55.23    \def\pagename{Strana}%
55.24    \def\seenname{vi\q d}%% Special letter d with hook
55.25    \def\alsoname{vi\q d tie\v z}%% Special letter d with hook
55.26    \def\proofname{D\'okaz}%
55.27    \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
55.28 }
```

`\dateslovak` The macro `\dateslovak` redefines the command `\today` to produce Slovak dates.

```
55.29 \def\dateslovak{%
55.30     \def\today{\number\day.~\ifcase\month\or
55.31         janu\'ara\or febru\'ara\or marca\or apr\'{\i}la\or m\'aja\or
55.32         j\'una\or j\'ula\or augusta\or septembra\or okt\'obra\or
55.33         novembra\or decembra\fi
55.34     \space \number\year}}
```

`\extrasslovak` The macro `\extrasslovak` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Slovak language. The macro `\noextrasslovak` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasslovak`. For Slovak three characters are used to define shorthands, they need to be made active.

```
55.35 \addto\extrasslovak{\languageshorthands{slovak}}
55.36 \initiate@active@char{~}
55.37 \addto\extrasslovak{\bbl@activate{~}}
55.38 \addto\noextrasslovak{\bbl@deactivate{~}}
55.39 \initiate@active@char{"}
55.40 \addto\extrasslovak{\bbl@activate{"}\umlautlow}
55.41 \addto\noextrasslovak{\bbl@deactivate{"}\umlauthigh}
55.42 \initiate@active@char{'}
55.43 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
55.44     \addto\extrasslovak{\bbl@activate{'}}}
```

```
55.45 \addto\noextrasslovak{\bbl@deactivate'}%
55.46 }{}
```

```
55.47 \addto\extrasslovak{\babel@save\q\let\q\v}
```

The slovak hyphenation patterns should be used with `\lefthyphenmin` set to 2 and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
55.48 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
```

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent `\"` can now be typed as `"`.

```
55.49 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
55.50 \def\x{endgroup
55.51 \def\sq{'}
55.52 \def\dq{"}}
55.53 \x
```

In order to prevent problems with the active `^` we add a shorthand on system level which expands to a ‘normal `^`’.

```
55.54 \declare@shorthand{system}{^}{\csname normal@char\string^ \endcsname}
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: the umlauts,

```
55.55 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"a}{\textormath{"{a}\allowhyphens}{\ddot a}}
55.56 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"o}{\textormath{"{o}\allowhyphens}{\ddot o}}
55.57 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"u}{\textormath{"{u}\allowhyphens}{\ddot u}}
55.58 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"A}{\textormath{"{A}\allowhyphens}{\ddot A}}
55.59 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"O}{\textormath{"{O}\allowhyphens}{\ddot O}}
55.60 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"U}{\textormath{"{U}\allowhyphens}{\ddot U}}
```

tremas,

```
55.61 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"e}{\textormath{"{e}\allowhyphens}{\ddot e}}
55.62 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"E}{\textormath{"{E}\allowhyphens}{\ddot E}}
55.63 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"i}{\textormath{"{\i}\allowhyphens}{%
55.64 \ddot\imath}}
55.65 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"I}{\textormath{"{I}\allowhyphens}{\ddot I}}
```

other slovak characters

```
55.66 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^c}{\textormath{\v{c}\allowhyphens}{\check{c}}}
55.67 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^d}{\textormath{\v{d}\allowhyphens}{\check{d}}}
55.68 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^l}{\textormath{\v{l}\allowhyphens}{\check{l}}}
55.69 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^n}{\textormath{\v{n}\allowhyphens}{\check{n}}}
55.70 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^o}{\textormath{\v{o}\allowhyphens}{\hat{o}}}
55.71 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^s}{\textormath{\v{s}\allowhyphens}{\check{s}}}
55.72 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^t}{\textormath{\v{t}\allowhyphens}{\check{t}}}
55.73 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^z}{\textormath{\v{z}\allowhyphens}{\check{z}}}
55.74 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^C}{\textormath{\v{C}\allowhyphens}{\check{C}}}
55.75 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^D}{\textormath{\v{D}\allowhyphens}{\check{D}}}
55.76 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^L}{\textormath{\v{L}\allowhyphens}{\check{L}}}
55.77 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^N}{\textormath{\v{N}\allowhyphens}{\check{N}}}
55.78 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^O}{\textormath{\v{O}\allowhyphens}{\hat{O}}}
55.79 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^S}{\textormath{\v{S}\allowhyphens}{\check{S}}}
55.80 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^T}{\textormath{\v{T}\allowhyphens}{\check{T}}}
55.81 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{^Z}{\textormath{\v{Z}\allowhyphens}{\check{Z}}}
```

acute accents,

```
55.82 \@ifpackagewith{babel}{activeacute}{%
55.83 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'a}{\textormath{'a\allowhyphens}{\prime a}}
55.84 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'e}{\textormath{'e\allowhyphens}{\prime e}}
55.85 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'i}{\textormath{'i\allowhyphens}{\prime i}}
55.86 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'l}{\textormath{'l\allowhyphens}{\prime l}}
55.87 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'o}{\textormath{'o\allowhyphens}{\prime o}}
55.88 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'r}{\textormath{'r\allowhyphens}{\prime r}}
55.89 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'u}{\textormath{'u\allowhyphens}{\prime u}}
55.90 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'y}{\textormath{'y\allowhyphens}{\prime y}}
```

```

55.91 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'A'}{\textormath{'A\allowhyphens}'^{\prime}A}}
55.92 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'E'}{\textormath{'E\allowhyphens}'^{\prime}E}}
55.93 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'I'}{\textormath{'I\allowhyphens}'^{\prime}I}}
55.94 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'L'}{\textormath{'L\allowhyphens}'^{\prime}l}}
55.95 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'O'}{\textormath{'O\allowhyphens}'^{\prime}O}}
55.96 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'R'}{\textormath{'R\allowhyphens}'^{\prime}R}}
55.97 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'U'}{\textormath{'U\allowhyphens}'^{\prime}U}}
55.98 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'Y'}{\textormath{'Y\allowhyphens}'^{\prime}Y}}
55.99 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{'''}{%
55.100 \textormath{\textquotedblright}{\sp\bgroup\prim@s'}}
55.101 }{}

```

german and french quotes,

```

55.102 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"'}{\glqq}
55.103 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"''}{\grqq}
55.104 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"<}{\flqq}
55.105 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{">}{\frqq}

```

and some additional commands:

```

55.106 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"-}{\nobreak\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
55.107 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"|}{%
55.108 \textormath{\penalty\@M\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
55.109 \bbl@allowhyphens}{}}
55.110 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
55.111 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"~}{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}}{-}}
55.112 \declare@shorthand{slovak}{"=}{\nobreak-\hskip\z@skip}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

55.113 \ldf@finish{slovak}
55.114 </code>

```

## 56 The Slovenian language

The file `slovene.dtx`<sup>61</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Slovenian language.

For this language the character " is made active. In table 29 an overview is given of its purpose. One of the reasons for this is that in the Slovene language some special characters are used.

"c	\c, also implemented for the lowercase and uppercase s and z.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. x-"y).
"‘	for Slovene left double quotes (looks like „).
"’	for Slovene right double quotes.
"<	for French left double quotes (similar to <<).
">	for French right double quotes (similar to >>).

Table 29: The extra definitions made by `slovene.lfd`

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
56.1 (*code)
56.2 \LdfInit{slovene}\captionsslovene
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `slovene` will be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@slovene` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
56.3 \ifx\l@slovene\undefined
56.4     \nopatterns{Slovene}
56.5     \adddialect\l@slovene0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to the Slovenian language. The reason for this is that a user might want to switch back and forth between languages.

`\captionsslovene` The macro `\captionsslovene` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
56.6 \addto\captionsslovene{%
56.7   \def\prefacename{Predgovor}%
56.8   \def\refname{Literatura}%
56.9   \def\abstractname{Povzetek}%
56.10  \def\bibname{Literatura}%
56.11  \def\chaptername{Poglavje}%
56.12  \def\appendixname{Dodatek}%
56.13  \def\contentsname{Kazalo}%
56.14  \def\listfigurename{Slike}%
56.15  \def\listtablename{Tabele}%
56.16  \def\indexname{Stvarno kazalo}% used to be Indeks
56.17  \def\figurename{Slika}%
56.18  \def\tablename{Tabela}%
56.19  \def\partname{Del}%
56.20  \def\enclname{Priloge}%
56.21  \def\ccname{Kopije}%
56.22  \def\headtoname{Prejme}%
```

---

<sup>61</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.2m and was last revised on 2005/03/31. Contributions were made by Danilo Zavrtanik, University of Ljubljana (YU) and Leon Žlajpah (leon.zlajpah@ijs.si).

```

56.23 \def\pagename{Stran}%
56.24 \def\seename{glej}%
56.25 \def\alsoname{glej tudi}%
56.26 \def\proofname{Dokaz}%
56.27 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
56.28 }%

```

`\dateslovene` The macro `\dateslovene` redefines the command `\today` to produce Slovenian dates.

```

56.29 \def\dateslovene{%
56.30 \def\today{\number\day.\~\ifcase\month\or
56.31 januar\or februar\or marec\or april\or maj\or junij\or
56.32 julij\or avgust\or september\or oktober\or november\or december\fi
56.33 \space \number\year}}

```

`\extrasslovene` The macro `\extrasslovene` performs all the extra definitions needed for the Slovenian language. The macro `\noextrasslovene` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasslovene`.

For Slovene the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary. Other languages in the same document may also use the " character for shorthands; we specify that the slovenian group of shorthands should be used.

```

56.34 \initiate@active@char{"}
56.35 \addto\extrasslovene{\languageshorthands{slovene}}
56.36 \addto\extrasslovene{\bbl@activate{}}

```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

56.37 \addto\noextrasslovene{\bbl@deactivate{}}

```

First we define shorthands to facilitate the occurrence of letters such as č.

```

56.38 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"c}{\textormath{\v c}{\check c}}
56.39 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"s}{\textormath{\v s}{\check s}}
56.40 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"z}{\textormath{\v z}{\check z}}
56.41 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"C}{\textormath{\v C}{\check C}}
56.42 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"S}{\textormath{\v S}{\check S}}
56.43 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"Z}{\textormath{\v Z}{\check Z}}

```

Then we define access to two forms of quotation marks, similar to the german and french quotation marks.

```

56.44 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"' }{%
56.45 \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
56.46 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"' }{%
56.47 \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}
56.48 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"< }{%
56.49 \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
56.50 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"> }{%
56.51 \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}

```

then we define two shorthands to be able to specify hyphenation breakpoints that behave a little different from `\-`.

```

56.52 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"- }{\nobreak-\bbl@allowhyphens}
56.53 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"- }{\hskip\z@skip}

```

And we want to have a shorthand for disabling a ligature.

```

56.54 \declare@shorthand{slovene}{"| }{%
56.55 \textormath{\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}}{}}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

56.56 \ldf@finish{slovene}
56.57 </code>

```



## 57 The Russian language

The file `russianb.dtx`<sup>62</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Russian language. It needs the file `cyrnod` for success documentation with Russian encodings (see below).

For this language the character `"` is made active. In table 30 an overview is given of its purpose.

<code>" </code>	disable ligature at this position.
<code>"-</code>	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
<code>"---</code>	Cyrillic emdash in plain text.
<code>"--~</code>	Cyrillic emdash in compound names (surnames).
<code>"--*</code>	Cyrillic emdash for denoting direct speech.
<code>"</code>	like <code>"-</code> , but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. <code>x-"y</code> or some other signs as “disable/enable”).
<code>"~</code>	for a compound word mark without a breakpoint.
<code>"=</code>	for a compound word mark with a breakpoint, allowing hyphenation in the composing words.
<code>" ,</code>	thinspace for initials with a breakpoint in following surname.
<code>"‘</code>	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
<code>"’</code>	for German right double quotes (looks like “).
<code>"&lt;</code>	for French left double quotes (looks like <<).
<code>"&gt;</code>	for French right double quotes (looks like >>).

Table 30: The extra definitions made by `russianb`

The quotes in table 30 can also be typeset by using the commands in table 31.

<code>\cdash---</code>	Cyrillic emdash in plain text.
<code>\cdash--~</code>	Cyrillic emdash in compound names (surnames).
<code>\cdash--*</code>	Cyrillic emdash for denoting direct speech.
<code>\glqq</code>	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
<code>\grqq</code>	for German right double quotes (looks like “).
<code>\flqq</code>	for French left double quotes (looks like <<).
<code>\frqq</code>	for French right double quotes (looks like >>).
<code>\dq</code>	the original quotes character ( <code>"</code> ).

Table 31: More commands which produce quotes, defined by `babel`

The French quotes are also available as ligatures `<<` and `>>` in 8-bit Cyrillic font encodings (`LCY`, `X2`, `T2*`) and as `<` and `>` characters in 7-bit Cyrillic font encodings (`OT2` and `LWN`).

The quotation marks traditionally used in Russian were borrowed from other languages (e.g., French and German) so they keep their original names.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

57.1 `{*code}`

57.2 `\LdfInit{russian}{captionsrussian}`

When this file is read as an option, i.e., by the `\usepackage` command, `russianb` will be an ‘unknown’ language, in which case we have to make it known.

---

<sup>62</sup>The file described in this section has version number ? and was last revised on ?. This file was initially derived from the original version of `german.sty`, which has some definitions for Russian. Later the definitions from `russian.sty` version 1.0b (for  $\LaTeX$  2.09), `russian.sty` version v2.5c (for  $\LaTeX$  2<sub>ε</sub>) and `français.sty` version 4.5c and `germanb.sty` version 2.5c were added.

So we check for the existence of `\l@russian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
57.3 \ifx\l@russian\@undefined
57.4 \@nopatterns{Russian}
57.5 \adddialect\l@russian0
57.6 \fi
```

`\latinencoding` We need to know the encoding for text that is supposed to be which is active at the end of the `babel` package. If the `fontenc` package is loaded later, then... too bad!

```
57.7 \let\latinencoding\cf@encoding
```

The user may choose between different available Cyrillic encodings—e.g., `X2`, `LCY`, or `LWN`. Hopefully, `X2` will eventually replace the two latter encodings (`LCY` and `LWN`). If the user wants to use another font encoding than the default (`T2A`), he has to load the corresponding file *before* `russianb.sty`. This may be done in the following way:

```
% override the default X2 encoding used in Babel
\usepackage[LCY,OT1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[english,russian]{babel}
```

Note: for the Russian language, the `T2A` encoding is better than `X2`, because `X2` does not contain Latin letters, and users should be very careful to switch the language every time they want to typeset a Latin word inside a Russian phrase or vice versa.

We parse the `\cdp@list` containing the encodings known to  $\text{\LaTeX}$  in the order they were loaded. We set the `\cyrillicencoding` to the *last* loaded encoding in the list of supported Cyrillic encodings: `OT2`, `LWN`, `LCY`, `X2`, `T2C`, `T2B`, `T2A`, if any.

```
57.8 \def\reserved@a#1#2{%
57.9 \edef\reserved@b{#1}%
57.10 \edef\reserved@c{#2}%
57.11 \ifx\reserved@b\reserved@c
57.12 \let\cyrillicencoding\reserved@c
57.13 \fi}
57.14 \def\cdp@elt#1#2#3#4{%
57.15 \reserved@a{#1}{OT2}%
57.16 \reserved@a{#1}{LWN}%
57.17 \reserved@a{#1}{LCY}%
57.18 \reserved@a{#1}{X2}%
57.19 \reserved@a{#1}{T2C}%
57.20 \reserved@a{#1}{T2B}%
57.21 \reserved@a{#1}{T2A}}
57.22 \cdp@list
```

Now, if `\cyrillicencoding` is undefined, then the user did not load any of supported encodings. So, we have to set `\cyrillicencoding` to some default value. We test the presence of the encoding definition files in the order from less preferable to more preferable encodings. We use the lowercase names (i.e., `lcyenc.def` instead of `LCYenc.def`).

```
57.23 \ifx\cyrillicencoding\undefined
57.24 \IfFileExists{ot2enc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{OT2}}\relax
57.25 \IfFileExists{lwnenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{LWN}}\relax
57.26 \IfFileExists{lcyenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{LCY}}\relax
57.27 \IfFileExists{x2enc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{X2}}\relax
57.28 \IfFileExists{t2cenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2C}}\relax
57.29 \IfFileExists{t2benc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2B}}\relax
57.30 \IfFileExists{t2aenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2A}}\relax
```

If `\cyrillicencoding` is still undefined, then the user seems not to have a properly installed distribution. A fatal error.

```

57.31 \ifx\cyrillicencoding\undefined
57.32   \PackageError{babel}%
57.33     {No Cyrillic encoding definition files were found}%
57.34     {Your installation is incomplete.\MessageBreak
57.35     You need at least one of the following files:\MessageBreak
57.36     \space\space
57.37     x2enc.def, t2aenc.def, t2benc.def, t2cenc.def,\MessageBreak
57.38     \space\space
57.39     lcyenc.def, lwnenc.def, ot2enc.def.}%
57.40 \else

```

We avoid `\usepackage[\cyrillicencoding]{fontenc}` because we don't want to force the switch of `\encodingdefault`.

```

57.41   \lowercase
57.42   \expandafter{\expandafter\input\cyrillicencoding enc.def\relax}%
57.43 \fi
57.44 \fi

```

```

\PackageInfo{babel}
  {Using ‘\cyrillicencoding’ as a default Cyrillic encoding}%

```

```

57.45 \DeclareRobustCommand{\Russian}{%
57.46   \fontencoding\cyrillicencoding\selectfont
57.47   \let\encodingdefault\cyrillicencoding
57.48   \expandafter\set@hyphenmins\russianhyphenmins
57.49   \language\l@russian}%
57.50 \DeclareRobustCommand{\English}{%
57.51   \fontencoding\latinencoding\selectfont
57.52   \let\encodingdefault\latinencoding
57.53   \expandafter\set@hyphenmins\englishhyphenmins
57.54   \language\l@english}%
57.55 \let\Rus\Russian
57.56 \let\Eng\English
57.57 \let\cyrillictext\Russian
57.58 \let\cyr\Russian

```

Since the X2 encoding does not contain Latin letters, we should make some redefinitions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macros which implicitly produce Latin letters.

```

57.59 \expandafter\ifx\csname T@X2\endcsname\relax\else

```

We put `\latinencoding` in braces to avoid problems with `\@alph` inside minipages (e.g., footnotes inside minipages) where `\@alph` is expanded and we get for example ‘`\fontencoding OT1`’ (`\fontencoding` is robust).

```

57.60 \def\@alph#1{\fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
57.61   \ifcase#1\or
57.62     a\or b\or c\or d\or e\or f\or g\or h\or
57.63     i\or j\or k\or l\or m\or n\or o\or p\or
57.64     q\or r\or s\or t\or u\or v\or w\or x\or
57.65     y\or z\else@ctrerr\fi}%
57.66 \def\@Alph#1{\fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
57.67   \ifcase#1\or
57.68     A\or B\or C\or D\or E\or F\or G\or H\or
57.69     I\or J\or K\or L\or M\or N\or O\or P\or
57.70     Q\or R\or S\or T\or U\or V\or W\or X\or
57.71     Y\or Z\else@ctrerr\fi}%

```

Unfortunately, the commands `\AA` and `\aa` are not encoding dependent in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (unlike e.g., `\oe` or `\DH`). They are defined as `\r{A}` and `\r{a}`. This leads to unpredictable results when the font encoding does not contain the Latin letters ‘A’ and ‘a’ (like X2).

```

57.72 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\AA}{OT1}
57.73 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\aa}{OT1}
57.74 \DeclareTextCommand{\aa}{OT1}{\r a}
57.75 \DeclareTextCommand{\AA}{OT1}{\r A}
57.76 \fi

```

The following block redefines the character class of uppercase Greek letters and some accents, if it is equal to 7 (variable family), to avoid incorrect results if the font encoding in some math family does not contain these characters in places of OT1 encoding. The code was taken from `amsmath.dtx`. See comments and further explanation there.

```

57.77 % \begingroup\catcode'\=12
57.78 % % uppercase greek letters:
57.79 % \def\@tempa#1{\expandafter\@tempb\meaning#1\relax\relax\relax
57.80 % "0000\@nil#1}
57.81 % \def\@tempb#1"#2#3#4#5#6\@nil#7{%
57.82 % \ifnum"#2=7 \count@"1#3#4#5\relax
57.83 % \ifnum\count@<"1000 \else \global\mathchardef#7="0#3#4#5\relax \fi
57.84 % \fi}
57.85 % \@tempa\Gamma\@tempa\Delta\@tempa\Theta\@tempa\Lambda\@tempa\Xi
57.86 % \@tempa\Pi\@tempa\Sigma\@tempa\Upsilon\@tempa\Phi\@tempa\Psi
57.87 % \@tempa\Omega
57.88 % % some accents:
57.89 % \def\@tempa#1#2\@nil{\def\@tempc{#1}}\def\@tempb{\mathaccent}
57.90 % \expandafter\@tempa\hat\relax\relax\@nil
57.91 % \ifx\@tempb\@tempc
57.92 % \def\@tempa#1\@nil{#1}%
57.93 % \def\@tempb#1{\afterassignment\@tempa\mathchardef\@tempc=}
57.94 % \def\do#1"#2{
57.95 % \def\@tempd#1{\expandafter\@tempb#1\@nil
57.96 % \ifnum\@tempc>"FFF
57.97 % \xdef#1{\mathaccent"\expandafter\do\meaning\@tempc\space}%
57.98 % \fi}
57.99 % \@tempd\hat\@tempd\check\@tempd\tilde\@tempd\acute\@tempd\grave
57.100 % \@tempd\dot\@tempd\ddot\@tempd\breve\@tempd\bar
57.101 % \fi
57.102 % \endgroup

```

The user should use the `inputenc` package when any 8-bit Cyrillic font encoding is used, selecting one of the Cyrillic input encodings. We do not assume any default input encoding, so the user should explicitly call the `inputenc` package by `\usepackage{inputenc}`. We also removed `\AtBeginDocument`, so `inputenc` should be used before `babel`.

```

57.103 \@ifpackageloaded{inputenc}{}{%
57.104 \def\reserved@a{LWN}%
57.105 \ifx\reserved@a\cyrillicencoding\else
57.106 \def\reserved@a{OT2}%
57.107 \ifx\reserved@a\cyrillicencoding\else
57.108 \PackageWarning{babel}%
57.109 {No input encoding specified for Russian language}
57.110 \fi\fi}

```

Now we define two commands that offer the possibility to switch between Cyrillic and Roman encodings.

`\cyrillictext` The command `\cyrillictext` will switch from Latin font encoding to the Cyrillic font encoding, the command `\latintext` switches back. This assumes that the ‘normal’ font encoding is a Latin one. These commands are *declarations*, for shorter peaces of text the commands `\textlatin` and `\textcyrillic` can be used.

```

57.111 %\DeclareRobustCommand{\latintext}{%
57.112 % \fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont

```

```
57.113 % \def\encodingdefault{\latinencoding}}
57.114 \let\lat\latintext
```

`\textcyrillic` These commands take an argument which is then typeset using the requested font  
`\textlatin` encoding.

```
57.115 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textcyrillic}{\cyrillictext}
57.116 %\DeclareTextFontCommand{\textlatin}{\latintext}
```

We make the T<sub>E</sub>X

```
57.117 %\ifx\ltxTeX\undefined\let\ltxTeX\TeX\fi
57.118 %\ProvideTextCommandDefault{\TeX}{\textlatin{\ltxTeX}}
```

and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X logos encoding independent.

```
57.119 %\ifx\ltxLaTeX\undefined\let\ltxLaTeX\LaTeX\fi
57.120 %\ProvideTextCommandDefault{\LaTeX}{\textlatin{\ltxLaTeX}}
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Russian language.

`\captionsrussian` The macro `\captionsrussian` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. The two commands `\cyr` and `\lat` activate Cyrillic resp. Latin encoding.

```
57.121 \addto\captionsrussian{%
57.122 %   FIXME: Where is the \prefacename used?
57.123 \def\prefacename{%
57.124   {\cyr\CYRP\cyrr\cyre\cyrd\cyri\cyrs\cyr\cyro\cyrv\cyri\cyre}}%
57.125 %   {\cyr\CYRV\cyrv\cyre\cyrd\cyre\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
57.126 \def\refname{%
57.127   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyro\cyrk
57.128     \ \cyr\cyri\cyrt\cyre\cyrr\cyra\cyrt\cyru\cyrr\cyrery}}%
57.129 % \def\refname{%
57.130 %   {\cyr\CYRL\cyri\cyrt\cyre\cyrr\cyra\cyrt\cyru\cyrr\cyra}}%
57.131 \def\abstractname{%
57.132   {\cyr\CYRA\cyrn\cyrn\cyro\cyrt\cyra\cyrc\cyri\cyrya}}%
57.133 \def\bibname{%
57.134   {\cyr\CYRL\cyri\cyrt\cyre\cyrr\cyra\cyrt\cyru\cyrr\cyra}}%
57.135 % \def\bibname{%
57.136 %   {\cyr\CYRB\cyri\cyrb\cyr\cyri\cyro
57.137 %     \cyr\cyrr\cyra\cyrf\cyri\cyrya}}%
57.138 % for reports according to GOST:
57.139 % \def\bibname{%
57.140 %   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyro\cyrk
57.141 %     \ \cyri\cyrs\cyrp\cyro\cyr\cyrs\cyrt\cyro\cyrv\cyra\cyrn
57.142 %     \ \cyrn\cyrery\cyrh\ \cyri\cyrs\cyrt\cyro\cyrch\cyrn\cyri
57.143 %     \ \cyrk\cyro\cyrv}}%
57.144 \def\chaptername{{\cyr\CYRG\cyr\cyra\cyrv\cyra}}%
57.145 % \@ifundefined{chapter}{-}{-}%
57.146 % \def\chaptername{{\cyr\CYRG\cyr\cyra\cyrv\cyra}}%
57.147 \def\appendixname{%
57.148   {\cyr\CYRP\cyrr\cyri\cyr\cyro\cyrz\cyre\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
```

There are two names for the Table of Contents that are used in Russian publications. For books (and reports) the second variant is appropriate, but for proceedings the first variant is preferred:

```
57.149 \@ifundefined{thechapter}%
57.150   {\def\contentsname{%
57.151     {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrz\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}}%
57.152   {\def\contentsname{%
57.153     {\cyr\CYRO\cyrg\cyr\cyra\cyrv\cyr\cyre\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}}%
57.154 \def\listfigurename{%
57.155   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyro\cyrk
57.156     \ \cyri\cyr\cyr\cyru\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyri\cyrishrt}}%
57.157 % \def\listfigurename{%
```

```

57.158 %   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyro\cyrk
57.159 %     \ \cyrr\cyri\cyrs\cyru\cyrn\cyrk\cyro\cyrv}}%
57.160 \def\listtablename{%
57.161   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyro\cyrk
57.162     \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc}}%
57.163 \def\indexname{%
57.164   {\cyr\CYRP\cyrr\cyre\cyrd\cyrm\cyre\cyrt\cyrn\cyrery\cyrishrt
57.165     \ \cyru\cyrk\cyra\cyrz\cyra\cyrt\cyre\cyrl\cyrsftsn}}%
57.166 \def\authorname{%
57.167   {\cyr\CYRI\cyrm\cyre\cyrn\cyrn\cyro\cyrishrt
57.168     \ \cyru\cyrk\cyra\cyrz\cyra\cyrt\cyre\cyrl\cyrsftsn}}%
57.169 \def\figurename{{\cyr\CYRR\cyri\cyrs.}}%
57.170 \def\tablename{{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyra}}%
57.171 \def\partname{{\cyr\CYRCH\cyra\cyrs\cyrt\cyrsftsn}}%
57.172 \def\enclname{{\cyr\cyrv\cyrk\cyrl.}}%
57.173 \def\ccname{{\cyr\cyri\cyrs\cyrh.}}%
57.174 % \def\ccname{{\cyr\cyri\cyrz}}%
57.175 \def\headtoname{{\cyr\cyrv\cyrh.}}%
57.176 % \def\headtoname{{\cyr\cyrv}}%
57.177 \def\pagename{{\cyr\cyrs.}}%
57.178 % \def\pagename{{\cyr\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr.}}%
57.179 \def\seename{{\cyr\cyrs\cyrm.}}%
57.180 \def\alsoname{{\cyr\cyrs\cyrm.\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrk\cyrz\cyre}}%

57.181 \def\proofname{{\cyr\CYRD\cyro\cyrk\cyra\cyrz\cyra\cyrt
57.182   \cyre\cyrl\cyrsftsn\cyrs\cyrt\cyrv\cyro}}%
57.183 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
57.184 }

```

`\daterussian` The macro `\daterussian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Russian dates.

```

57.185 \def\daterussian{%
57.186   \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
57.187     \cyrya\cyrn\cyrv\cyra\cyrr\cyrya\or
57.188     \cyrf\cyre\cyrv\cyrr\cyra\cyrl\cyrya\or
57.189     \cyrm\cyra\cyrr\cyrt\cyra\or
57.190     \cyra\cyrp\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrya\or
57.191     \cyrm\cyra\cyrya\or
57.192     \cyri\cyryu\cyrn\cyrya\or
57.193     \cyri\cyryu\cyrl\cyrya\or
57.194     \cyra\cyrv\cyrg\cyru\cyrs\cyrt\cyra\or
57.195     \cyrs\cyre\cyrn\cyrt\cyrya\cyrb\cyrr\cyrya\or
57.196     \cyro\cyrk\cyrt\cyrya\cyrb\cyrr\cyrya\or
57.197     \cyrn\cyro\cyrya\cyrb\cyrr\cyrya\or
57.198     \cyrd\cyre\cyrk\cyra\cyrb\cyrr\cyrya\fi
57.199     \ \number\year~\cyrg.}}

```

`\extrasrussian` The macro `\extrasrussian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Russian language. The macro `\noextrasrussian` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasrussian`.

The first action we define is to switch on the selected Cyrillic encoding whenever we enter ‘russian’.

```

57.200 \addto\extrasrussian{\cyrillictext}

```

When the encoding definition file was processed by  $\LaTeX$  the current font encoding is stored in `\latinencoding`, assuming that  $\LaTeX$  uses T1 or OT1 as default. Therefore we switch back to `\latinencoding` whenever the Russian language is no longer ‘active’.

```

57.201 \addto\noextrasrussian{\latintext}

```

`\verbatim@font` In order to get both Latin and Cyrillic letters in verbatim text we need to change the definition of an internal  $\LaTeX$  command somewhat:

```

57.202 %\def\verbatim@font{%
57.203 % \let\encodingdefault\latinencoding
57.204 % \normalfont\ttfamily
57.205 % \expandafter\def\csname\cyrillicencoding-cmd\endcsname##1##2{%
57.206 % \ifx\protect@typeset@protect
57.207 % \begingroup\UseTextSymbol\cyrillicencoding##1\endgroup
57.208 % \else\noexpand##1\fi}}

```

The category code of the characters ‘:’, ‘;’, ‘!’, and ‘?’ is made `\active` to insert a little white space.

For Russian (as well as for German) the " character also is made active.

Note: It is *very* questionable whether the Russian typesetting tradition requires additional spacing before those punctuation signs. Therefore, we make the corresponding code optional. If you need it, then define the `frenchpunct` docstrip option in `babel.ins`.

Borrowed from french. Some users dislike automatic insertion of a space before ‘double punctuation’, and prefer to decide themselves whether a space should be added or not; so a hook `\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP` is provided: if this command is added (in file `russianb.cfg`, or anywhere in a document) `russianb` will respect your typing, and introduce a suitable space before ‘double punctuation’ *if and only if* a space is typed in the source file before those signs.

The command `\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP` switches back to the default behavior of `russianb`.

```

57.209 (*frenchpunct)
57.210 \initiate@active@char{:}
57.211 \initiate@active@char{;}
57.212 \frenchpunct
57.213 (*frenchpunct | spanishlig)
57.214 \initiate@active@char{!}
57.215 \initiate@active@char{?}
57.216 \frenchpunct | spanishlig)
57.217 \initiate@active@char{"}

```

The code above is necessary because we need extra active characters. The character " is used as indicated in table 30.

We specify that the Russian group of shorthands should be used.

```

57.218 \addto\extrarussian{\languageshorthands{russian}}

```

These characters are ‘turned on’ once, later their definition may vary.

```

57.219 \addto\extrarussian{%
57.220 (frenchpunct) \bbl@activate{:}\bbl@activate{;}%
57.221 (frenchpunct | spanishlig) \bbl@activate{!}\bbl@activate{?}%
57.222 \bbl@activate{"}}
57.223 \addto\noextrarussian{%
57.224 (frenchpunct) \bbl@deactivate{:}\bbl@deactivate{;}%
57.225 (frenchpunct | spanishlig) \bbl@deactivate{!}\bbl@deactivate{?}%
57.226 \bbl@deactivate{"}}

```

The X2 and T2\* encodings do not contain `spanish_shriek` and `spanish_query` symbols; as a consequence, the ligatures ‘?’ and ‘!’ do not work with them (these characters are useless for Cyrillic texts anyway). But we define the shorthands to emulate these ligatures (optionally).

We do not use `\latinencoding` here (but instead explicitly use OT1) because the user may choose T2A to be the primary encoding, but it does not contain these characters.

```

57.227 (*spanishlig)
57.228 \declare@shorthand{russian}{?}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\textquestiondown}
57.229 \declare@shorthand{russian}{!}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\textexclamdown}
57.230 \spanishlig)

```

`\russian@sh@;` We have to reduce the amount of white space before `;`, `:` and `!`. This should only happen in horizontal mode, hence the test with `\ifhmode`.

```
\russian@sh@!@57.231 (*frenchpunct)
\russian@sh@?@57.232 \declare@shorthand{russian}{;}{;%
57.233 \ifhmode
```

In horizontal mode we check for the presence of a ‘space’, ‘unskip’ if it exists and place a 0.1em kerning.

```
57.234 \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
57.235 \unskip\nobreak\kern.1em
57.236 \else
```

If no space has been typed, we add `\FDP@thinspace` which will be defined, up to the user’s wishes, as an automatic added thinspace, or as `\@empty`.

```
57.237 \FDP@thinspace
57.238 \fi
57.239 \fi
```

Now we can insert a ‘;’ character.

```
57.240 \string;}
```

The other definitions are very similar.

```
57.241 \declare@shorthand{russian}{:}{;%
57.242 \ifhmode
57.243 \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
57.244 \unskip\nobreak\kern.1em
57.245 \else
57.246 \FDP@thinspace
57.247 \fi
57.248 \fi
57.249 \string:}

57.250 \declare@shorthand{russian}{!}{;%
57.251 \ifhmode
57.252 \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
57.253 \unskip\nobreak\kern.1em
57.254 \else
57.255 \FDP@thinspace
57.256 \fi
57.257 \fi
57.258 \string!}

57.259 \declare@shorthand{russian}{?}{;%
57.260 \ifhmode
57.261 \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
57.262 \unskip\nobreak\kern.1em
57.263 \else
57.264 \FDP@thinspace
57.265 \fi
57.266 \fi
57.267 \string?}
```

`\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP` `\FDP@thinspace` is defined as unbreakable spaces if `\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP` is activated or as `\@empty` if `\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP` is in use. The default is `\FDP@thinspace` `\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP`.

```
57.268 \def\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP{%
57.269 \def\FDP@thinspace{\nobreak\kern.1em}}
57.270 \def\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP{\let\FDP@thinspace\@empty}
57.271 \AutoSpaceBeforeFDP
```



`\FDPon` The next macros allow to switch on/off activeness of double punctuation signs.

```
\FDPoff 57.272 \def\FDPon{\bbl@activate{;}%
57.273         \bbl@activate{;}%
57.274         \bbl@activate{?}%
57.275         \bbl@activate{!}}
57.276 \def\FDPoff{\bbl@deactivate{;}%
57.277         \bbl@deactivate{;}%
57.278         \bbl@deactivate{?}%
57.279         \bbl@deactivate{!}}
```

`\system@sh@:` When the active characters appear in an environment where their Russian behaviour is not wanted they should give an ‘expected’ result. Therefore we define shorthands at system level as well.

```
\system@sh@; 57.280 \declare@shorthand{system}{:}{\string;}
57.281 \declare@shorthand{system}{;}{\string;}
57.282 \frenchpunct
57.283 (*frenchpunct&!spanishlig)
57.284 \declare@shorthand{system}{!}{\string!}
57.285 \declare@shorthand{system}{?}{\string?}
57.286 \frenchpunct&!spanishlig)
```

To be able to define the function of “, we first define a couple of ‘support’ macros.

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent “ can now be typed as “.

```
57.287 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
57.288 \def\reserved@a{\endgroup
57.289 \def\SS{\mathchar"7019 }
57.290 \def\dq{"}
57.291 \reserved@a
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: german and french quotes. We use definitions of these quotes made in `babel.sty`. The french quotes are contained in the T2\* encodings.

```
57.292 \declare@shorthand{russian}{"'}{\glqq}
57.293 \declare@shorthand{russian}{"'}{\grqq}
57.294 \declare@shorthand{russian}{"<"}{\flqq}
57.295 \declare@shorthand{russian}{">"}{\frqq}
```

Some additional commands:

```
57.296 \declare@shorthand{russian}{""}{\hskip\z@skip}
57.297 \declare@shorthand{russian}{"~"}{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}}{-}}
57.298 \declare@shorthand{russian}{"="}{\nobreak-\hskip\z@skip}
57.299 \declare@shorthand{russian}{"|"}{%
57.300 \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}}{\kern.03em}%
57.301 \allowhyphens}{}}
```

The next two macros for “- and “--- are somewhat different. We must check whether the second token is a hyphen character:

```
57.302 \declare@shorthand{russian}{"-}{%
```

If the next token is ‘-’, we typeset an emdash, otherwise a hyphen sign:

```
57.303 \def\russian@sh@tmp{%
57.304 \if\russian@sh@next-\expandafter\russian@sh@emdash
57.305 \else\expandafter\russian@sh@hyphen\fi
57.306 }%
```

TEX looks for the next token after the first ‘-’: the meaning of this token is written to `\russian@sh@next` and `\russian@sh@tmp` is called.

```
57.307 \futurelet\russian@sh@next\russian@sh@tmp}
```

Here are the definitions of hyphen and emdash. First the hyphen:

```
57.308 \def\russian@sh@hyphen{%
57.309 \nobreak\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
```

For the emdash definition, there are the two parameters: we must ‘eat’ two last hyphen signs of our emdash. . . :

```
57.310 \def\russian@sh@emdash#1#2{\cdash-#1#2}
```

`\cdash` . . . these two parameters are useful for another macro: `\cdash`:

```
57.311 %\ifx\cdash\undefined % should be defined earlier
57.312 \def\cdash#1#2#3{\def\tempx@{#3}%
57.313 \def\tempa@{-}\def\tempb@{~}\def\tempc@{*}%
57.314 \ifx\tempx@\tempa@\@Acdash\else
57.315 \ifx\tempx@\tempb@\@Bcdash\else
57.316 \ifx\tempx@\tempc@\@Ccdash\else
57.317 \errmessage{Wrong usage of cdash}\fi\fi\fi}
```

second parameter (or third for `\cdash`) shows what kind of emdash to create in next step

"--- ordinary (plain) Cyrillic emdash inside text: an unbreakable thinspace will be inserted before only in case of a *space* before the dash (it is necessary for dashes after display maths formulae: there could be lists, enumerations etc. started with “— where *a* is ...” i.e., the dash starts a line). (Firstly there were planned rather soft rules for user: he may put a space before the dash or not. But it is difficult to place this thinspace automatically, i.e., by checking modes because after display formulae  $\TeX$  uses horizontal mode. Maybe there is a misunderstanding? Maybe there is another way?) After a dash a breakable thinspace is always placed;

```
57.318 % What is more grammatically: .2em or .2\fontdimen6\font ?
57.319 \def\@Acdash{\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\nobreak\hskip.2em\fi
57.320 \cyrdash\hskip.2em\ignorespaces}%
```

"--~ emdash in compound names or surnames (like Mendeleev–Klapeiron); this dash has no space characters around; after the dash some space is added `\exhyphenalty`

```
57.321 \def\@Bcdash{\leavevmode\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\fi
57.322 \nobreak\cyrdash\penalty\exhyphenpenalty\hskip\z@skip\ignorespaces}%
```

"--\* for denoting direct speech (a space like `\enskip` must follow the emdash);

```
57.323 \def\@Ccdash{\leavevmode
57.324 \nobreak\cyrdash\nobreak\hskip.35em\ignorespaces}%
57.325 %\fi
```

`\cyrdash` Finally the macro for “body” of the Cyrillic emdash. The `\cyrdash` macro will be defined in case this macro hasn’t been defined in a fontenc file. For T2\* fonts, `cyrdash` will be placed in the code of the English emdash thus it uses ligature ---.

```
57.326 % Is there an IF necessary?
57.327 \ifx\cyrdash\undefined
57.328 \def\cyrdash{\hbox to.8em{--\hss--}}
57.329 \fi
```

Here a really new macro—to place thinspace between initials. This macro used instead of `\`, allows hyphenation in the following surname.

```
57.330 \declare@shorthand{russian}{\nobreak\hskip.2em\ignorespaces}
```

`\mdqon` All that’s left to do now is to define a couple of commands for “.

```
\mdqoff57.331 \def\mdqon{\bbl@activate{}}
57.332 \def\mdqoff{\bbl@deactivate{}}
```

The Russian hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
57.333 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@}
57.334 % temporary hack:
57.335 \ifx\englishhyphenmins\undefined
57.336 \def\englishhyphenmins{\tw@\thr@@}
57.337 \fi
```

Now the action `\extrarussian` has to execute is to make sure that the command `\frenchspacing` is in effect. If this is not the case the execution of `\noextrarussian` will switch it off again.

```
57.338 \addto\extrarussian{\bbl@frenchspacing}
57.339 \addto\noextrarussian{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
```

Next we add a new enumeration style for Russian manuscripts with Cyrillic letters, and later on we define some math operator names in accordance with Russian typesetting traditions.

`\Asbuk` We begin by defining `\Asbuk` which works like `\Alph`, but produces (uppercase) Cyrillic letters instead of Latin ones. The letters YO, ISHRT, HRDSN, ERY, and SFTSN are skipped, as usual for such enumeration.

```
57.340 \def\Asbuk#1{\expandafter\@Asbuk\csname c@#1\endcsname}
57.341 \def\@Asbuk#1{\ifcase#1\or
57.342 \CYRA\or\CYRB\or\CYRV\or\CYRG\or\CYRD\or\CYRE\or\CYRZH\or
57.343 \CYRZ\or\CYRI\or\CYRK\or\CYRL\or\CYRM\or\CYRN\or\CYRO\or
57.344 \CYRP\or\CYRR\or\CYRS\or\CYRT\or\CYRU\or\CYRF\or\CYRH\or
57.345 \CYRC\or\CYRCH\or\CYRSH\or\CYRSHCH\or\CYREREV\or\CYRYU\or
57.346 \CYRYA\else\@ctrerr\fi}
```

`\asbuk` The macro `\asbuk` is similar to `\alph`; it produces lowercase Russian letters.

```
57.347 \def\asbuk#1{\expandafter\@asbuk\csname c@#1\endcsname}
57.348 \def\@asbuk#1{\ifcase#1\or
57.349 \cyra\or\cyrb\or\cyrv\or\cyrg\or\cyrd\or\cyre\or\cyrz\or
57.350 \cyrz\or\cyri\or\cyrk\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or
57.351 \cyrp\or\cyrr\or\cyrs\or\cyrt\or\cyru\or\cyrf\or\cyrh\or
57.352 \cyr\or\cyrch\or\cyrsh\or\cyrshch\or\cyrerev\or\cyr\or
57.353 \cyr\else\@ctrerr\fi}
```

Set up default Cyrillic math alphabets. To use Cyrillic letters in math mode user should load the `textmath` package *before* loading `fontenc` package (or `babel`). Note, that by default Cyrillic letters are taken from upright font in math mode (unlike Latin letters).

```
57.354 %\RequirePackage{textmath}
57.355 \ifundefined{sym\cyrillicencoding letters}{\%
57.356 \SetSymbolFont{\cyrillicencoding letters}{bold}\cyrillicencoding
57.357 \rmdefault\bfdefault\updefault
57.358 \DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet\cyrmathrm{\cyrillicencoding letters}}
```

And we need a few commands to be able to switch to different variants.

```
57.359 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathbf\cyrillicencoding
57.360 \rmdefault\bfdefault\updefault
57.361 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathsf\cyrillicencoding
57.362 \sfdefault\mddefault\updefault
57.363 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathit\cyrillicencoding
57.364 \rmdefault\mddefault\itdefault
57.365 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathtt\cyrillicencoding
57.366 \ttdefault\mddefault\updefault
57.367 %
57.368 \SetMathAlphabet\cyrmathsf{bold}\cyrillicencoding
57.369 \sfdefault\bfdefault\updefault
57.370 \SetMathAlphabet\cyrmathit{bold}\cyrillicencoding
57.371 \rmdefault\bfdefault\itdefault
57.372 }
```

Some math functions in Russian math books have other names: e.g., `\sinh` in Russian is written as `\sh` etc. So we define a number of new math operators.

```

\sinh:
57.373 \def\sh{\mathop{\operator@font sh}\nolimits}
\cosh:
57.374 \def\ch{\mathop{\operator@font ch}\nolimits}
\tan:
57.375 \def\tg{\mathop{\operator@font tg}\nolimits}
\arctan:
57.376 \def\arctg{\mathop{\operator@font arctg}\nolimits}
arcctg:
57.377 \def\arcctg{\mathop{\operator@font arcctg}\nolimits}
The following macro conflicts with \th defined in Latin 1 encoding:
\tanh:
57.378 \addto\extrasrussian{%
57.379 \babel@save{\th}%
57.380 \let\ltx@th\th
57.381 \def\th{\textormath{\ltx@th}%
57.382 {\mathop{\operator@font th}\nolimits}}%
57.383 }
\cot:
57.384 \def\ctg{\mathop{\operator@font ctg}\nolimits}
\coth:
57.385 \def\cth{\mathop{\operator@font cth}\nolimits}
\csc:
57.386 \def\cosec{\mathop{\operator@font cosec}\nolimits}
And finally some other Russian mathematical symbols:
57.387 \def\Prob{\mathop{\kern\z@\mathsf{P}}\nolimits}
57.388 \def\Variance{\mathop{\kern\z@\mathsf{D}}\nolimits}
57.389 \def\nod{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\cyrn.\cyro.\cyrd.}}\nolimits}
57.390 \def\nok{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\cyrn.\cyro.\cyrk.}}\nolimits}
57.391 \def\NOD{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\CYRN\CYRO\CYRD}}\nolimits}
57.392 \def\NOK{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\CYRN\CYRO\CYRK}}\nolimits}
57.393 \def\Proj{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\CYRP\cyrr}}\nolimits}
This is for compatibility with older Russian packages.
57.394 \DeclareRobustCommand{\No}{%
57.395 \ifmode{\nfss@text{\textnumero}}\else\textnumero\fi}
The macro \ldf@finish takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting
the main language to be switched on at \begin{document} and resetting the
category code of @ to its original value.
57.396 \ldf@finish{russian}
57.397 \code

```

## 58 The Bulgarian language

The file `bulgarian.dtx`<sup>63</sup> provides the language-specific macros for the Bulgarian language.

Users should take note of the various “cyrillic” dashes available now (see below). These should remove many causes of headache. Also, although by default the Bulgarian quotation marks will appear automatically when typesetting in Bulgarian, it is better to use the new commands `\''` and `\>` which explicitly typeset them. Note: automatic switch to Bulgarian quotation is withdrawn for the moment and may not be reintroduced at all.

For this language the character `"` is made active. In table 32 an overview is given of its purpose.

<code>" </code>	disable ligature at this position.
<code>"-</code>	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
<code>"---</code>	Cyrillic emdash in plain text.
<code>"--~</code>	Cyrillic emdash in compound names (surnames).
<code>"--*</code>	Cyrillic emdash for denoting direct speech.
<code>""</code>	like <code>"-</code> , but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. <code>x-"y</code> or some other signs as “disable/enable”).
<code>"~</code>	for a compound word mark without a breakpoint.
<code>"=</code>	for a compound word mark with a breakpoint, allowing hyphenation in the composing words.
<code>" ,</code>	thinspace for initials with a breakpoint in following surname.
<code>"‘</code>	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
<code>"’</code>	for German right double quotes (looks like “).
<code>"&lt;</code>	for French left double quotes (looks like <<).
<code>"&gt;</code>	for French right double quotes (looks like >>).

Table 32: The extra definitions made by `bulgarian`

The quotes in table 32 can also be typeset by using the commands in table 33.

<code>\cdash---</code>	Cyrillic emdash in plain text.
<code>\cdash--~</code>	Cyrillic emdash in compound names (surnames).
<code>\cdash--*</code>	Cyrillic emdash for denoting direct speech.
<code>\glqq</code>	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
<code>\grqq</code>	for German right double quotes (looks like “).
<code>\flqq</code>	for French left double quotes (looks like <<).
<code>\frqq</code>	for French right double quotes (looks like >>).
<code>\dq</code>	the original quotes character ( <code>"</code> ).

Table 33: More commands which produce quotes, defined by `babel`

The French quotes are also available as ligatures `'<<'` and `'>>'` in 8-bit Cyrillic font encodings (LCY, X2, T2\*) and as `'<'` and `'>'` characters in 7-bit Cyrillic font encodings (OT2 and LWN).

The quotation marks traditionally used in Bulgarian were borrowed from German or they keep their original names. French quotation marks may be seen as well in older books.

<sup>63</sup>The file described in this section has version number ? and was last revised on ?. This file was initially derived from the August-1998 version of `russianb.dtx`.

It is (reasonably) backward compatible with the 1994/1996 (non-`babel`) `bulgarian` style (`bulgaria.sty`) by Georgi Boshnakov—files prepared for that style should compile successfully (with vastly improved appearance due to usage of standard fonts).

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
58.1 (*code)
58.2 \LdfInit{bulgarian}{captionsbulgarian}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e., by the `\usepackage` command, `bulgarian` will be an ‘unknown’ language, in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@bulgarian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
58.3 \ifx\l@bulgarian\@undefined
58.4 \@nopatterns{Bulgarian}
58.5 \adddialect\l@bulgarian0
58.6 \fi
```

`\latinencoding` We need to know the encoding for text that is supposed to be which is active at the end of the `babel` package. If the `fontenc` package is loaded later, then ... too bad!

```
58.7 \let\latinencoding\cf@encoding
```

The user may choose between different available Cyrillic encodings—e.g., `X2`, `LCY`, or `LWN`. If the user wants to use a font encoding other than the default (`T2A`), he has to load the corresponding file *before* `bulgarian.sty`. This may be done in the following way:

```
\usepackage[LCY,OT1]{fontenc} %overwrite the default encoding;
\usepackage[english,bulgarian]{babel}
```

Note: most people would prefer the `T2A` to `X2`, because `X2` does not contain Latin letters, and users should be very careful to switch the language every time they want to typeset a Latin word inside a Bulgarian phrase or vice versa. On the other hand, switching the language is a good practice anyway. With a decent text processing program it does not involve more work than switching between the Bulgarian and English keyboard. Moreover that the far most common disruption occurs as a result of forgetting to switch back to cyrillic keyboard.

We parse the `\cdp@list` containing the encodings known to  $\LaTeX$  in the order they were loaded. We set the `\cyrillicencoding` to the *last* loaded encoding in the list of supported Cyrillic encodings: `OT2`, `LWN`, `LCY`, `X2`, `T2C`, `T2B`, `T2A`, if any.

```
58.8 \def\reserved@a#1#2{%
58.9 \edef\reserved@b{#1}%
58.10 \edef\reserved@c{#2}%
58.11 \ifx\reserved@b\reserved@c
58.12 \let\cyrillicencoding\reserved@c
58.13 \fi}
58.14 \def\cdp@elt#1#2#3#4{%
58.15 \reserved@a{#1}{OT2}%
58.16 \reserved@a{#1}{LWN}%
58.17 \reserved@a{#1}{LCY}%
58.18 \reserved@a{#1}{X2}%
58.19 \reserved@a{#1}{T2C}%
58.20 \reserved@a{#1}{T2B}%
58.21 \reserved@a{#1}{T2A}}
58.22 \cdp@list
```

Now, if `\cyrillicencoding` is undefined, then the user did not load any of supported encodings. So, we have to set `\cyrillicencoding` to some default value. We test the presence of the encoding definition files in the order from less preferable to more preferable encodings. We use the lowercase names (i.e., `lcyenc.def` instead of `LCYenc.def`).

```
58.23 \ifx\cyrillicencoding\undefined
58.24 \IfFileExists{ot2enc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{OT2}}\relax
```

```

58.25 \IfFileExists{lnwnc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{LWN}}\relax
58.26 \IfFileExists{lcync.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{LCY}}\relax
58.27 \IfFileExists{x2enc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{X2}}\relax
58.28 \IfFileExists{t2cenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2C}}\relax
58.29 \IfFileExists{t2benc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2B}}\relax
58.30 \IfFileExists{t2aenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2A}}\relax

```

If `\cyrillicencoding` is still undefined, then the user seems not to have a properly installed distribution. A fatal error.

```

58.31 \ifx\cyrillicencoding\undefined
58.32   \PackageError{babel}%
58.33     {No Cyrillic encoding definition files were found}%
58.34     {Your installation is incomplete. \MessageBreak
58.35     You need at least one of the following files: \MessageBreak
58.36     \space\space
58.37     x2enc.def, t2aenc.def, t2benc.def, t2cenc.def, \MessageBreak
58.38     \space\space
58.39     lcync.def, lnwnc.def, ot2enc.def.}%
58.40 \else

```

We avoid `\usepackage[\cyrillicencoding]{fontenc}` because we don't want to force the switch of `\encodingdefault`.

```

58.41   \lowercase
58.42     \expandafter{\expandafter\input\cyrillicencoding enc.def\relax}%
58.43 \fi
58.44 \fi

```

```

\PackageInfo{babel}
  {Using '\cyrillicencoding' as a default Cyrillic encoding}%

```

```

58.45 \DeclareRobustCommand{\Bulgarian}{%
58.46   \fontencoding\cyrillicencoding\selectfont
58.47   \let\encodingdefault\cyrillicencoding
58.48   \expandafter\set@hyphenmins\bulgarianhyphenmins
58.49   \language\l@bulgarian}
58.50 \DeclareRobustCommand{\English}{%
58.51   \fontencoding\latinencoding\selectfont
58.52   \let\encodingdefault\latinencoding
58.53   \expandafter\set@hyphenmins\englishhyphenmins
58.54   \language\l@english}
58.55 \let\Bul\Bulgarian
58.56 \let\Bg\Bulgarian
58.57 \let\cyrillictext\Bulgarian
58.58 \let\cyr\Bulgarian
58.59 \let\Eng\English
58.60 \def\selectengl@language{\selectlanguage{english}}
58.61 \def\selectbgl@language{\selectlanguage{bulgarian}}

```

Since the X2 encoding does not contain Latin letters, we should make some redefinitions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macros which implicitly produce Latin letters.

```

58.62 \expandafter\ifx\csname T@X2\endcsname\relax\else

```

We put `\latinencoding` in braces to avoid problems with `\@alph` inside minipages (e.g., footnotes inside minipages) where `\@alph` is expanded and we get for example `'\fontencoding OT1'` (`\fontencoding` is robust).

```

58.63 \def\@Alph@eng#1{{\fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
58.64   \ifcase#1\or A\or B\or C\or D\or E\or F\or G\or H\or I\or J\or
58.65   K\or L\or M\or N\or O\or P\or Q\or R\or S\or T\or U\or V\or W\or
58.66   X\or Y\or Z\else \ctrerr\fi}}%
58.67 \def\@alph@eng#1{{\fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
58.68   \ifcase#1\or a\or b\or c\or d\or e\or f\or g\or h\or i\or j\or
58.69   k\or l\or m\or n\or o\or p\or q\or r\or s\or t\or u\or v\or w\or

```

```

58.70      x\or y\or z\else \@ctrerr\fi}}%
58.71 \let\@Alph\@Alph@eng
58.72 \let\@alph\@alph@eng

```

Unfortunately, the commands `\AA` and `\aa` are not encoding dependent in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (unlike e.g., `\oe` or `\DH`). They are defined as `\r{A}` and `\r{a}`. This leads to unpredictable results when the font encoding does not contain the Latin letters ‘A’ and ‘a’ (like X2).

```

58.73 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\AA}{OT1}
58.74 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\aa}{OT1}
58.75 \DeclareTextCommand{\AA}{OT1}{\r A}
58.76 \DeclareTextCommand{\aa}{OT1}{\r a}
58.77 \fi

```

The following block redefines the character class of uppercase Greek letters and some accents, if it is equal to 7 (variable family), to avoid incorrect results if the font encoding in some math family does not contain these characters in places of OT1 encoding. The code was taken from `amsmath.dtx`. See comments and further explanation there.

```

58.78 \begingroup\catcode'\="=12
58.79 % uppercase greek letters:
58.80 \def\@tempa#1{\expandafter\@tempb\meaning#1\relax\relax\relax\relax
58.81 "0000\@nil#1}
58.82 \def\@tempb#1"#2#3#4#5#6\@nil#7{%
58.83 \ifnum"#2=7 \count@"1#3#4#5\relax
58.84 \ifnum\count@<"1000 \else \global\mathchardef#7="0#3#4#5\relax \fi
58.85 \fi}
58.86 \@tempa\Gamma\@tempa\Delta\@tempa\Theta\@tempa\Lambda\@tempa\Xi
58.87 \@tempa\Pi\@tempa\Sigma\@tempa\Upsilon\@tempa\Phi\@tempa\Psi
58.88 \@tempa\Omega
58.89 % some accents:
58.90 \def\@tempa#1#2\@nil{\def\@tempc{#1}}\def\@tempb{\mathaccent}
58.91 \expandafter\@tempa\hat\relax\relax\@nil
58.92 \ifx\@tempb\@tempc
58.93 \def\@tempa#1\@nil{#1}%
58.94 \def\@tempb#1{\afterassignment\@tempa\mathchardef\@tempc=}
58.95 \def\do#1"#2{}
58.96 \def\@tempd#1{\expandafter\@tempb#1\@nil
58.97 \ifnum\@tempc>"FFF
58.98 \xdef#1{\mathaccent"\expandafter\do\meaning\@tempc\space}%
58.99 \fi}
58.100 \@tempd\hat\@tempd\check\@tempd\tilde\@tempd\acute\@tempd\grave
58.101 \@tempd\dot\@tempd\ddot\@tempd\breve\@tempd\bar
58.102 \fi
58.103 \endgroup

```

The user should use the `inputenc` package when any 8-bit Cyrillic font encoding is used, selecting one of the Cyrillic input encodings. We do not assume any default input encoding, so the user should explicitly call the `inputenc` package by `\usepackage{inputenc}`. We also removed `\AtBeginDocument`, so `inputenc` should be used before `babel`.

```

58.104 \@ifpackageloaded{inputenc}{}{%
58.105 \def\reserved@a{LWN}%
58.106 \ifx\reserved@a\cyrillicencoding\else
58.107 \def\reserved@a{OT2}%
58.108 \ifx\reserved@a\cyrillicencoding\else
58.109 \PackageWarning{babel}%
58.110 {No input encoding specified for Bulgarian language}\fi\fi}

```

Now we define two commands that offer the possibility to switch between Cyrillic and Roman encodings.



`\cyrillictext` The command `\cyrillictext` will switch from Latin font encoding to the Cyrillic font encoding, the command `\latintext` switches back. This assumes that the ‘normal’ font encoding is a Latin one. These commands are *declarations*, for shorter peaces of text the commands `\textlatin` and `\textcyrillic` can be used.

We comment out `\latintext` since it is defined in the core of babel (babel.def). We add the shorthand `\lat` for `\latintext`. Note that `\cyrillictext` has been defined above.

```
58.111 % \DeclareRobustCommand{\latintext}{%
58.112 % \fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
58.113 % \def\encodingdefault{\latinencoding}}
58.114 \let\lat\latintext
```

`\textcyrillic` These commands take an argument which is then typeset using the requested font encoding. `\textlatin` is commented out since it is defined in the core of babel. (It is defined there with `\DeclareRobustCommand` instead.)

```
58.115 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textcyrillic}{\cyrillictext}
58.116 % \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textlatin}{\latintext}
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Bulgarian language.

`\captionsbulgarian` The macro `\captionsbulgarian` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. The two commands `\cyr` and `\lat` activate Cyrillic resp. Latin encoding.

```
58.117 \addto\captionsbulgarian{%
58.118 \def\prefacename{%
58.119   {\cyr\CYRP\cyrr\cyre\cyrd\cyrg\cyro\cyrv\cyro\cyrr}}%
58.120 \def\refname{%
58.121   {\cyr\CYRL\cyri\cyrt\cyre\cyrr\cyra\cyrt\cyru\cyrr\cyra}}%
58.122 \def\abstractname{%
58.123   {\cyr\CYRA\cyrb\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrk\cyrt}}%
58.124 \def\bibname{%
58.125   {\cyr\CYRB\cyri\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyro\cyrg\cyrr\cyra\cyrf\cyri\cyrya}}%
58.126 \def\chaptername{%
58.127   {\cyr\CYRG\cyrl\cyra\cyrv\cyra}}%
58.128 \def\appendixname{%
58.129   {\cyr\CYRP\cyrr\cyri\cyrl\cyro\cyrzh\cyre\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
58.130 \def\contentsname{%
58.131   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhdsn\cyrd\cyrhdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
58.132 \def\listfigurename{%
58.133   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrhdsn\cyrk\ \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt}}%
58.134 \def\listtablename{%
58.135   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyrs\cyrhdsn\cyrk\ \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
58.136 \def\indexname{%
58.137   {\cyr\CYRA\cyrz\cyrb\cyru\cyrch\cyre\cyrn\ \cyru\cyrk\cyra\cyrz\cyra\cyrt\cyre\cyrl}}%
58.138 \def\authorname{%
58.139   {\cyr\CYRI\cyrm\cyre\cyrn\cyre\cyrn\ \cyru\cyrk\cyra\cyrz\cyra\cyrt\cyre\cyrl}}%
58.140 \def\figurename{%
58.141   {\cyr\CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyra}}%
58.142 \def\tablename{%
58.143   {\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyra}}%
58.144 \def\partname{%
58.145   {\cyr\CYRCH\cyra\cyrs\cyrt}}%
58.146 \def\enclname{%
58.147   {\cyr\CYRP\cyrr\cyri\cyrl\cyro\cyrzh\cyre\cyrn\cyri\cyrya}}%
58.148 \def\ccname{%
58.149   {\cyr\cyrk\cyro\cyrp\cyri\cyrya}}%
58.150 \def\headtoname{%
58.151   {\cyr\CYRZ\cyra}}%
58.152 \def\pagename{%
```

```

58.153   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrt\cyrr.}}%
58.154 \def\seename{%
58.155   {\cyr\cyrv\cyrz.}}%
58.156 \def\alsoname{%
58.157   {\cyr\cyrv\cyrz.\ \cyr\cyrrhsn\cyrrshch\cyro\ \cyri}}%
58.158 \def\proofname{Proof}% <-- Needs translation
58.159 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
58.160 }

```

`\datebulgarian` The macro `\datebulgarian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Bulgarian dates. It also provides the command `\todayRoman` which produces the date with the month in capital roman numerals, a popular format for dates in Bulgarian.

```

58.161 \def\datebulgarian{%
58.162   \def\month@bulgarian{\ifcase\month\or
58.163     \cyrya\cyrn\cyru\cyra\cyrr\cyri\or
58.164     \cyrf\cyre\cyrv\cyrr\cyru\cyra\cyrr\cyri\or
58.165     \cyrm\cyra\cyrr\cyrt\or
58.166     \cyra\cyrp\cyrr\cyri\cyrl\or
58.167     \cyrm\cyra\cyrishrt\or
58.168     \cyryu\cyrn\cyri\or
58.169     \cyryu\cyrl\cyri\or
58.170     \cyra\cyrv\cyrg\cyru\cyr\cyrt\or
58.171     \cyr\cyre\cyrp\cyrt\cyre\cyrm\cyrv\cyrr\cyri\or
58.172     \cyro\cyrk\cyrt\cyro\cyrm\cyrv\cyrr\cyri\or
58.173     \cyrn\cyro\cyre\cyrm\cyrv\cyrr\cyri\or
58.174     \cyrd\cyre\cyrk\cyre\cyrm\cyrv\cyrr\cyri\fi}%
58.175   \def\month@Roman{\expandafter\@Roman\month}%
58.176   \def\today{\number\day\month@bulgarian\ \number\year\cyrg.}%
58.177   \def\todayRoman{\number\day.\ \month@Roman.\ \number\year\cyrg.}%
58.178 }

```

`\todayRoman` The month is often written with roman numbers in Bulgarian dates. Here we define date in this format:

```

58.179 \def\Romannumeral#1{\uppercase\expandafter\romannumeral #1}
58.180 \def\todayRoman{\number\day.\Romannumeral{\month}.\number\year\cyrg.}

```

`\extrasbulgarian` The macro `\extrasbulgarian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Bulgarian language. The macro `\noextrasbulgarian` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasbulgarian`.

The first action we define is to switch on the selected Cyrillic encoding whenever we enter ‘bulgarian’.

```

58.181 \addto\extrasbulgarian{\cyrillictext}

```

When the encoding definition file was processed by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X the current font encoding is stored in `\latinencoding`, assuming that L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X uses T1 or OT1 as default. Therefore we switch back to `\latinencoding` whenever the Bulgarian language is no longer ‘active’.

```

58.182 \addto\noextrasbulgarian{\latintext}

```

For Bulgarian the " character also is made active.

```

58.183 \initiate@active@char{"}

```

The code above is necessary because we need extra active characters. The character " is used as indicated in table 32. We specify that the Bulgarian group of shorthands should be used.

```

58.184 \addto\extrasbulgarian{\languageshorthands{bulgarian}}

```

These characters are ‘turned on’ once, later their definition may vary.

```

58.185 \addto\extrasbulgarian{%
58.186   \bbl@activate{"}}
58.187 \addto\noextrasbulgarian{%
58.188   \bbl@deactivate{"}}

```

The X2 and T2\* encodings do not contain `spanish_shriek` and `spanish_query` symbols; as a consequence, the ligatures ‘?’ and ‘!’ do not work with them (these characters are useless for Cyrillic texts anyway). But we define the shorthands to emulate these ligatures (optionally).

We do not use `\latinencoding` here (but instead explicitly use OT1) because the user may choose T2A to be the primary encoding, but it does not contain these characters.

```
58.189 (*spanishligs)
58.190 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{?'}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\textquestiondown}
58.191 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{!'}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\textexclamdown}
58.192 </spanishligs>
```

To be able to define the function of “”, we first define a couple of ‘support’ macros.

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent “ can now be typed as “.

```
58.193 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
58.194 \def\reserved@a{\endgroup
58.195 \def\@SS{\mathchar"7019}
58.196 \def\dq{"}
58.197 \reserved@a
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: german and french quotes. We use definitions of these quotes made in `babel.sty`. The french quotes are contained in the T2\* encodings.

```
58.198 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{"}{\glqq}
58.199 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{"}{\grqq}
58.200 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{"<}{\flqq}
58.201 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{">}{\frqq}
```

Some additional commands:

```
58.202 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{"}{\hskip\z@skip}
58.203 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{"}{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}}{-}}
58.204 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{"}={}\nobreak-\hskip\z@skip}
58.205 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{"}|}{%
58.206 \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}}{\kern.03em}%
58.207 \allowhyphens}{}}
```

The next two macros for “- and “--- are somewhat different. We must check whether the second token is a hyphen character:

```
58.208 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{"-}{%
```

If the next token is ‘-’, we typeset an emdash, otherwise a hyphen sign:

```
58.209 \def\bulgarian@sh@tmp{%
58.210 \if\bulgarian@sh@next-\expandafter\bulgarian@sh@emdash
58.211 \else\expandafter\bulgarian@sh@hyphen\fi
58.212 }%
```

TeX looks for the next token after the first ‘-’: the meaning of this token is written to `\bulgarian@sh@next` and `\bulgarian@sh@tmp` is called.

```
58.213 \futurelet\bulgarian@sh@next\bulgarian@sh@tmp}
```

Here are the definitions of hyphen and emdash. First the hyphen:

```
58.214 \def\bulgarian@sh@hyphen{\nobreak\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
```

For the emdash definition, there are the two parameters: we must ‘eat’ two last hyphen signs of our emdash . . . :

```
58.215 \def\bulgarian@sh@emdash#1#2{\cdash-#1#2}
```

`\cdash` ... these two parameters are useful for another macro: `\cdash`:

```
58.216 \ifx\cdash\undefined % should be defined earlier
58.217 \def\cdash#1#2#3{\def\tempx@{#3}%
58.218 \def\tempa@{-}\def\tempb@{~}\def\tempc@{*}%
58.219 \ifx\tempx@\tempa@\@Acdash\else
58.220 \ifx\tempx@\tempb@\@Bcdash\else
58.221 \ifx\tempx@\tempc@\@Ccdash\else
58.222 \errmessage{Wrong usage of cdash}\fi\fi\fi}
```

second parameter (or third for `\cdash`) shows what kind of emdash to create in next step

"--- ordinary (plain) Cyrillic emdash inside text: an unbreakable thinspace will be inserted before only in case of a *space* before the dash (it is necessary for dashes after display maths formulae: there could be lists, enumerations etc. started with “—where *a* is ...” i.e., the dash starts a line). (Firstly there were planned rather soft rules for user:he may put a space before the dash or not. But it is difficult to place this thinspace automatically, i.e., by checking modes because after display formulae T<sub>E</sub>X uses horizontal mode. Maybe there is a misunderstanding? Maybe there is another way?) After a dash a breakable thinspace is always placed;

```
58.223 % What is more grammatically: .2em or .2\fontdimen6\font?
58.224 \def\@Acdash{\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\nobreak\hskip.2em\fi
58.225 \cyrdash\hskip.2em\ignorespaces}%
```

"--~ emdash in compound names or surnames (like Mendeleev–Klapeiron); this dash has no space characters around; after the dash some space is added `\exhyphenalty`

```
58.226 \def\@Bcdash{\leavevmode\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\fi
58.227 \nobreak\cyrdash\penalty\exhyphenpenalty\hskip\z@skip\ignorespaces}%
```

"--\* for denoting direct speech (a space like `\enskip` must follow the emdash);

```
58.228 \def\@Ccdash{\leavevmode
58.229 \nobreak\cyrdash\nobreak\hskip.35em\ignorespaces}%
58.230 %\fi
```

`\cyrdash` Finally the macro for “body” of the Cyrillic emdash. The `\cyrdash` macro will be defined in case this macro hasn’t been defined in a fontenc file. For T2\*fonts, `cyrdash` will be placed in the code of the English emdash thus it uses ligature ---.

```
58.231 % Is there an IF necessary?
58.232 \ifx\cyrdash\undefined
58.233 \def\cyrdash{\hbox to.8em{--\hss--}}
58.234 \fi
```

Here a really new macro—to place thinspace between initials. This macro used instead of `\,` allows hyphenation in the following surname.

```
58.235 \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{",}{\nobreak\hskip.2em\ignorespaces}
```

The Bulgarian hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
58.236 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
58.237 \fi
```

Now the action `\extrasbulgarian` has to execute is to make sure that the command `\frenchspacing` is in effect. If this is not the case the execution of `\noextrasbulgarian` will switch it off again.

```
58.238 \addto\extrasbulgarian{\bbl@frenchspacing}
58.239 \addto\noextrasbulgarian{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
```

Make the double quotes produce the traditional quotes used in Bulgarian texts (these are the German quotes).

```

58.240 % \initiate@active@char{'}
58.241 % \initiate@active@char{'}
58.242 % \addto\extrasbulgarian{%
58.243 %   \bbl@activate{'}}
58.244 % \addto\extrasbulgarian{%
58.245 %   \bbl@activate{'}}
58.246 % \addto\noextrasbulgarian{%
58.247 %   \bbl@deactivate{'}}
58.248 % \addto\noextrasbulgarian{%
58.249 %   \bbl@deactivate{'}}
58.250 % \def\mlron{\bbl@activate{'}\bbl@activate{'}}
58.251 % \def\mlroff{\bbl@deactivate{'}\bbl@deactivate{'}}
58.252 % \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{'}{\glqq}
58.253 % \declare@shorthand{bulgarian}{'}{\grqq}

```

Next we add a new enumeration style for Bulgarian manuscripts with Cyrillic letters, and later on we define some math operator names in accordance with Bulgarian typesetting traditions.

`\@Alph@bul` We begin by defining `\@Alph@bul` which works like `\@Alph`, but produces (uppercase) Cyrillic letters instead of Latin ones. The letters ISHRT, HRDSN and SFTSN are skipped, as usual for such enumeration.

```

58.254 \def\enumBul{\let\@Alph\@Alph@bul \let\@alph\@alph@bul}
58.255 \def\enumEng{\let\@Alph\@Alph@eng \let\@alph\@alph@eng}
58.256 \def\enumLat{\let\@Alph\@Alph@eng \let\@alph\@alph@eng}
58.257 \addto\extrasbulgarian{\enumBul}
58.258 \addto\noextrasbulgarian{\enumLat}
58.259 \def\@Alph@bul#1{%
58.260   \ifcase#1\or
58.261   \CYRA\or \CYRB\or \CYRV\or \CYRG\or \CYRD\or \CYRE\or \CYRZH\or
58.262   \CYRZ\or \CYRI\or \CYRK\or \CYRL\or \CYRM\or \CYRN\or \CYRO\or
58.263   \CYRP\or \CYRR\or \CYRS\or \CYRT\or \CYRU\or \CYRF\or \CYRH\or
58.264   \CYRC\or \CYRCH\or \CYRSH\or \CYRSHCH\or \CYRYU\or \CYRYA\else
58.265   \@ctrerr\fi
58.266 }
58.267 \def\@Alph@eng#1{%
58.268   \ifcase#1\or
58.269   A\or B\or C\or D\or E\or F\or G\or H\or I\or J\or K\or L\or M\or
58.270   N\or O\or P\or Q\or R\or S\or T\or U\or V\or W\or X\or Y\or Z\else
58.271   \@ctrerr\fi
58.272 }

```

`\@alph@bul` The macro `\@alph@bul` is similar to `\@Alph@bul`; it produces lowercase Bulgarian letters.

```

58.273 \def\@alph@bul#1{%
58.274   \ifcase#1\or
58.275   \cyra\or \cyrb\or \cyrv\or \cyrg\or \cyrd\or \cyre\or \cyrzh\or
58.276   \cyrz\or \cyri\or \cyrk\or \cyrl\or \cyrm\or \cyrn\or \cyro\or
58.277   \cyrp\or \cyrr\or \cyrs\or \cyrt\or \cyru\or \cyrf\or \cyrh\or
58.278   \cyrc\or \cyrch\or \cyrsh\or \cyrshch\or \cyryu\or \cyrya\else
58.279   \@ctrerr\fi
58.280 }
58.281 \def\@alph@eng#1{%
58.282   \ifcase#1\or
58.283   a\or b\or c\or d\or e\or f\or g\or h\or i\or j\or k\or l\or m\or
58.284   n\or o\or p\or q\or r\or s\or t\or u\or v\or w\or x\or y\or z\else
58.285   \@ctrerr\fi
58.286 }

```

Set up default Cyrillic math alphabets. To use Cyrillic letters in math mode user should load the `textmath` package *before* loading fontenc package (or babel). Note, that by default Cyrillic letters are taken from upright font in math mode (unlike Latin letters).

```
58.287 %\RequirePackage{textmath}
58.288 \ifundefined{sym\cyrillicencoding letters}{-}{%
58.289 \SetSymbolFont{\cyrillicencoding letters}{bold}\cyrillicencoding
58.290 \rmdefault\bfdefault\updefault
58.291 \DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet\cyrmathrm{\cyrillicencoding letters}
```

And we need a few commands to be able to switch to different variants.

```
58.292 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathbf\cyrillicencoding
58.293 \rmdefault\bfdefault\updefault
58.294 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathsf\cyrillicencoding
58.295 \sfdefault\mddefault\updefault
58.296 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathit\cyrillicencoding
58.297 \rmdefault\mddefault\itdefault
58.298 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathtt\cyrillicencoding
58.299 \ttdefault\mddefault\updefault
58.300 \SetMathAlphabet\cyrmathsf{bold}\cyrillicencoding
58.301 \sfdefault\bfdefault\updefault
58.302 \SetMathAlphabet\cyrmathit{bold}\cyrillicencoding
58.303 \rmdefault\bfdefault\itdefault
58.304 }
```

Some math functions in Bulgarian math books have other names: e.g., `sinh` in Bulgarian is written as `sh` etc. So we define a number of new math operators.

```
\sinh:
58.305 \def\sh{\mathop{\operator@font sh}\nolimits}
\cosh:
58.306 \def\ch{\mathop{\operator@font ch}\nolimits}
\tan:
58.307 \def\tg{\mathop{\operator@font tg}\nolimits}
\arctan:
58.308 \def\arctg{\mathop{\operator@font arctg}\nolimits}
\arccot:
58.309 \def\arcctg{\mathop{\operator@font arcctg}\nolimits}
```

The following macro conflicts with `\th` defined in Latin 1 encoding: `\tanh`:

```
58.310 \addto\extrasrussian{%
58.311 \babel@save{\th}%
58.312 \let\ltx@th\th
58.313 \def\th{\textormath{\ltx@th}%
58.314 \mathop{\operator@font th}\nolimits}}%
58.315 }
```

```
\cot:
58.316 \def\ctg{\mathop{\operator@font ctg}\nolimits}
\coth:
58.317 \def\cth{\mathop{\operator@font cth}\nolimits}
\csc:
58.318 \def\cosec{\mathop{\operator@font cosec}\nolimits}
```

This is for compatibility with older Bulgarian packages.

```
58.319 \DeclareRobustCommand{\No}{%
58.320 \ifmmode{\nfss@text{\textnumero}}\else\textnumero\fi}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
58.321 \ldf@finish{bulgarian}  
58.322 \endcode
```

## 59 The Ukrainian language

The file `ukraineb.dtx`<sup>64</sup> defines all the language-specific macros for the Ukrainian language. It needs the file `cyrnod` for success documentation with Ukrainian encodings (see below).

For this language the character " is made active. In table 34 an overview is given of its purpose.

"	disable ligature at this position.
"-	an explicit hyphen sign, allowing hyphenation in the rest of the word.
"---	Cyrillic emdash in plain text.
"--~	Cyrillic emdash in compound names (surnames).
"--*	Cyrillic emdash for denoting direct speech.
""	like "-", but producing no hyphen sign (for compound words with hyphen, e.g. x-"y or some other signs as "disable/enable").
"~	for a compound word mark without a breakpoint.
"=	for a compound word mark with a breakpoint, allowing hyphenation in the composing words.
" ,	thinspace for initials with a breakpoint in following surname.
"‘	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
"’	for German right double quotes (looks like “).
"<	for French left double quotes (looks like <<).
">	for French right double quotes (looks like >>).

Table 34: The extra definitions made by `ukraineb`

The quotes in table 34 (see, also table 30) can also be typeset by using the commands in table 35 (see, also table 31).

<code>\cdash---</code>	Cyrillic emdash in plain text.
<code>\cdash--~</code>	Cyrillic emdash in compound names (surnames).
<code>\cdash--*</code>	Cyrillic emdash for denoting direct speech.
<code>\glqq</code>	for German left double quotes (looks like „).
<code>\grqq</code>	for German right double quotes (looks like “).
<code>\flqq</code>	for French left double quotes (looks like <<).
<code>\frqq</code>	for French right double quotes (looks like >>).
<code>\dq</code>	the original quotes character (").

Table 35: More commands which produce quotes, defined by `babel`

The French quotes are also available as ligatures ‘<<’ and ‘>>’ in 8-bit Cyrillic font encodings (LCY, X2, T2\*) and as ‘<’ and ‘>’ characters in 7-bit Cyrillic font encodings (OT2 and LWN).

The quotation marks traditionally used in Ukrainian and Russian languages were borrowed from other languages (e.g. French and German) so they keep their original names.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

59.1 (\*code)

59.2 `\LdfInit{ukrainian}{captionsukrainian}`

<sup>64</sup>The file described in this section has version number ?. This file was derived from the `russianb.dtx` version 1.1g.



When this file is read as an option, i.e., by the `\usepackage` command, `ukraineb` will be an ‘unknown’ language, in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@ukrainian` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
59.3 \ifx\l@ukrainian\@undefined
59.4 \@nopatterns{Ukrainian}
59.5 \adddialect\l@ukrainian0
59.6 \fi
```

`\latinencoding` We need to know the encoding for text that is supposed to be which is active at the end of the `babel` package. If the `fontenc` package is loaded later, then... too bad!

```
59.7 \let\latinencoding\cf@encoding
```

The user may choose between different available Cyrillic encodings—e.g., `X2`, `LCY`, or `LWN`. Hopefully, `X2` will eventually replace the two latter encodings (`LCY` and `LWN`). If the user wants to use another font encoding than the default (`T2A`), he has to load the corresponding file *before* `ukraineb.sty`. This may be done in the following way:

```
% override the default X2 encoding used in Babel
\usepackage[LCY,OT1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[english,ukrainian]{babel}
```

Note: for the Ukrainian language, the `T2A` encoding is better than `X2`, because `X2` does not contain Latin letters, and users should be very careful to switch the language every time they want to typeset a Latin word inside a Ukrainian phrase or vice versa.

We parse the `\cdp@list` containing the encodings known to  $\text{\LaTeX}$  in the order they were loaded. We set the `\cyrillicencoding` to the *last* loaded encoding in the list of supported Cyrillic encodings: `OT2`, `LWN`, `LCY`, `X2`, `T2C`, `T2B`, `T2A`, if any.

```
59.8 \def\reserved@a#1#2{%
59.9 \edef\reserved@b{#1}%
59.10 \edef\reserved@c{#2}%
59.11 \ifx\reserved@b\reserved@c
59.12 \let\cyrillicencoding\reserved@c
59.13 \fi}
59.14 \def\cdp@elt#1#2#3#4{%
59.15 \reserved@a{#1}{OT2}%
59.16 \reserved@a{#1}{LWN}%
59.17 \reserved@a{#1}{LCY}%
59.18 \reserved@a{#1}{X2}%
59.19 \reserved@a{#1}{T2C}%
59.20 \reserved@a{#1}{T2B}%
59.21 \reserved@a{#1}{T2A}}
59.22 \cdp@list
```

Now, if `\cyrillicencoding` is undefined, then the user did not load any of supported encodings. So, we have to set `\cyrillicencoding` to some default value. We test the presence of the encoding definition files in the order from less preferable to more preferable encodings. We use the lowercase names (i.e., `lcyenc.def` instead of `LCYenc.def`).

```
59.23 \ifx\cyrillicencoding\undefined
59.24 \IfFileExists{ot2enc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{OT2}}\relax
59.25 \IfFileExists{lwnenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{LWN}}\relax
59.26 \IfFileExists{lcyenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{LCY}}\relax
59.27 \IfFileExists{x2enc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{X2}}\relax
59.28 \IfFileExists{t2cenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2C}}\relax
59.29 \IfFileExists{t2benc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2B}}\relax
59.30 \IfFileExists{t2aenc.def}{\def\cyrillicencoding{T2A}}\relax
```

If `\cyrillicencoding` is still undefined, then the user seems not to have a properly installed distribution. A fatal error.

```

59.31 \ifx\cyrillicencoding\undefined
59.32   \PackageError{babel}%
59.33     {No Cyrillic encoding definition files were found}%
59.34     {Your installation is incomplete.\MessageBreak
59.35     You need at least one of the following files:\MessageBreak
59.36     \space\space
59.37     x2enc.def, t2aenc.def, t2benc.def, t2cenc.def,\MessageBreak
59.38     \space\space
59.39     lcyenc.def, lwnenc.def, ot2enc.def.}%
59.40 \else

```

We avoid `\usepackage[\cyrillicencoding]{fontenc}` because we don't want to force the switch of `\encodingdefault`.

```

59.41   \lowercase
59.42   \expandafter{\expandafter\input\cyrillicencoding enc.def\relax}%
59.43 \fi
59.44 \fi

```

```

\PackageInfo{babel}
  {Using ‘\cyrillicencoding’ as a default Cyrillic encoding}%

```

```

59.45 \DeclareRobustCommand{\Ukrainian}{%
59.46   \fontencoding\cyrillicencoding\selectfont
59.47   \let\encodingdefault\cyrillicencoding
59.48   \expandafter\set@hyphenmins\ukrainianhyphenmins
59.49   \language\l@ukrainian}%
59.50 \DeclareRobustCommand{\English}{%
59.51   \fontencoding\latinencoding\selectfont
59.52   \let\encodingdefault\latinencoding
59.53   \expandafter\set@hyphenmins\englishhyphenmins
59.54   \language\l@english}%
59.55 \let\Ukr\Ukrainian
59.56 \let\Eng\English
59.57 \let\cyrillictext\Ukrainian
59.58 \let\cyr\Ukrainian

```

Since the X2 encoding does not contain Latin letters, we should make some redefinitions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macros which implicitly produce Latin letters.

```

59.59 \expandafter\ifx\csname T@X2\endcsname\relax\else

```

We put `\latinencoding` in braces to avoid problems with `\@alph` inside minipages (e.g., footnotes inside minipages) where `\@alph` is expanded and we get for example `'\fontencoding OT1'` (`\fontencoding` is robust).

```

59.60 \def\@alph#1{\fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
59.61   \ifcase#1\or
59.62     a\or b\or c\or d\or e\or f\or g\or h\or
59.63     i\or j\or k\or l\or m\or n\or o\or p\or
59.64     q\or r\or s\or t\or u\or v\or w\or x\or
59.65     y\or z\else\@ctrerr\fi}%
59.66 \def\@Alph#1{\fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont
59.67   \ifcase#1\or
59.68     A\or B\or C\or D\or E\or F\or G\or H\or
59.69     I\or J\or K\or L\or M\or N\or O\or P\or
59.70     Q\or R\or S\or T\or U\or V\or W\or X\or
59.71     Y\or Z\else\@ctrerr\fi}%

```

Unfortunately, the commands `\AA` and `\aa` are not encoding dependent in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (unlike e.g., `\oe` or `\DH`). They are defined as `\r{A}` and `\r{a}`. This leads to unpredictable results when the font encoding does not contain the Latin letters ‘A’ and ‘a’ (like X2).

```

59.72 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\AA}{OT1}
59.73 \DeclareTextSymbolDefault{\aa}{OT1}
59.74 \DeclareTextCommand{\aa}{OT1}{\r a}
59.75 \DeclareTextCommand{\AA}{OT1}{\r A}
59.76 \fi

```

The following block redefines the character class of uppercase Greek letters and some accents, if it is equal to 7 (variable family), to avoid incorrect results if the font encoding in some math family does not contain these characters in places of OT1 encoding. The code was taken from `amsmath.dtx`. See comments and further explanation there.

```

59.77 % \begingroup\catcode'\=12
59.78 % % uppercase greek letters:
59.79 % \def\@tempa#1{\expandafter\@tempb\meaning#1\relax\relax\relax
59.80 % "0000\@nil#1}
59.81 % \def\@tempb#1"#2#3#4#5#6\@nil#7{%
59.82 % \ifnum"#2=7 \count@"1#3#4#5\relax
59.83 % \ifnum\count@<"1000 \else \global\mathchardef#7="0#3#4#5\relax \fi
59.84 % \fi}
59.85 % \@tempa\Gamma\@tempa\Delta\@tempa\Theta\@tempa\Lambda\@tempa\Xi
59.86 % \@tempa\Pi\@tempa\Sigma\@tempa\Upsilon\@tempa\Phi\@tempa\Psi
59.87 % \@tempa\Omega
59.88 % % some accents:
59.89 % \def\@tempa#1#2\@nil{\def\@tempc{#1}}\def\@tempb{\mathaccent}
59.90 % \expandafter\@tempa\hat\relax\relax\@nil
59.91 % \ifx\@tempb\@tempc
59.92 % \def\@tempa#1\@nil{#1}%
59.93 % \def\@tempb#1{\afterassignment\@tempa\mathchardef\@tempc=}
59.94 % \def\do#1"#2{
59.95 % \def\@tempd#1{\expandafter\@tempb#1\@nil
59.96 % \ifnum\@tempc>"FFF
59.97 % \xdef#1{\mathaccent"\expandafter\do\meaning\@tempc\space}%
59.98 % \fi}
59.99 % \@tempd\hat\@tempd\check\@tempd\tilde\@tempd\acute\@tempd\grave
59.100 % \@tempd\dot\@tempd\ddot\@tempd\breve\@tempd\bar
59.101 % \fi
59.102 % \endgroup

```

The user must use the `inputenc` package when any 8-bit Cyrillic font encoding is used, selecting one of the Cyrillic input encodings. We do not assume any default input encoding, so the user should explicitly call the `inputenc` package by `\usepackage{inputenc}`. We also removed `\AtBeginDocument`, so `inputenc` should be used before `babel`.

```

59.103 \@ifpackageloaded{inputenc}{}{%
59.104 \def\reserved@a{LWN}%
59.105 \ifx\reserved@a\cyrillicencoding\else
59.106 \def\reserved@a{OT2}%
59.107 \ifx\reserved@a\cyrillicencoding\else
59.108 \PackageWarning{babel}%
59.109 {No input encoding specified for Ukrainian language}
59.110 \fi\fi}

```

Now we define two commands that offer the possibility to switch between Cyrillic and Roman encodings.

`\cyrillictext` The command `\cyrillictext` will switch from Latin font encoding to the Cyrillic font encoding, the command `\latintext` switches back. This assumes that the ‘normal’ font encoding is a Latin one. These commands are *declarations*, for shorter peaces of text the commands `\textlatin` and `\textcyrillic` can be used.

```

59.111 %\DeclareRobustCommand{\latintext}{%
59.112 % \fontencoding{\latinencoding}\selectfont

```

```
59.113 % \def\encodingdefault{\latinencoding}}
59.114 \let\lat\latintext
```

`\textcyrillic` These commands take an argument which is then typeset using the requested font encoding.

```
\textlatin
59.115 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textcyrillic}{\cyrillictext}
59.116 %\DeclareTextFontCommand{\textlatin}{\latintext}
```

We make the T<sub>E</sub>X

```
59.117 %\ifx\ltxTeX\undefined\let\ltxTeX\TeX\fi
59.118 %\ProvideTextCommandDefault{\TeX}{\textlatin{\ltxTeX}}
```

and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X logos encoding independent.

```
59.119 %\ifx\ltxLaTeX\undefined\let\ltxLaTeX\LaTeX\fi
59.120 %\ProvideTextCommandDefault{\LaTeX}{\textlatin{\ltxLaTeX}}
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Ukrainian language.

`\captionsukrainian` The macro `\captionsukrainian` defines all strings used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. The two commands `\cyr` and `\lat` activate Cyrillic resp. Latin encoding.

```
59.121 \addto\captionsukrainian{%
59.122 \def\prefacename{\cyr\CYRV\cyrs\cyrt\cyru\cyrp}}%
59.123 % \def\prefacename{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrd\cyrm\cyro\cyrv\cyra}}%
59.124 \def\refname{%
59.125 {\cyr\CYRL\cyrii\cyrt\cyre\cyrr\cyra\cyrt\cyru\cyrr\cyra}}%
59.126 % \def\refname{%
59.127 % {\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
59.128 % \ \cyrp\cyro\cyrs\cyri\cyrl\cyra\cyrn\cyrsftsn}}%
59.129 \def\abstractname{%
59.130 {\cyr\CYRA\cyrn\cyro\cyrt\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrya}}%
59.131 % \def\abstractname{\cyr\CYRR\cyre\cyrf\cyre\cyrr\cyra\cyrt}}%
59.132 \def\bibname{%
59.133 {\cyr\CYRB\cyrii\cyrb\cyrl\cyrii\cyro\cyrgup\cyrr\cyra\cyrf\cyrii\cyrya}}%
59.134 % \def\bibname{\cyr\CYRL\cyrii\cyrt\cyre\cyrr\cyra\cyrt\cyru\cyrr\cyra}}%
59.135 \def\chaptername{\cyr\CYRR\cyro\cyrz\cyrd\cyrii\cyrl}}%
59.136 % \def\chaptername{\cyr\CYRG\cyrl\cyra\cyrv\cyra}}%
59.137 \def\appendixname{\cyr\CYRD\cyro\cyrd\cyra\cyrt\cyro\cyrk}}%
59.138 \def\contentsname{\cyr\CYRZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
59.139 \def\listfigurename{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
59.140 \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
59.141 \def\listtablename{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
59.142 \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
59.143 \def\indexname{\cyr\CYRP\cyro\cyrk\cyra\cyrz\cyrch\cyri\cyrk}}%
59.144 \def\authorname{\cyr\CYRII\cyrm\cyre\cyrn\cyrn\cyri\cyrishrt
59.145 \ \cyrp\cyro\cyrk\cyra\cyrz\cyrch\cyri\cyrk}}%
59.146 \def\figurename{\cyr\CYRR\cyri\cyrs.}}%
59.147 % \def\figurename{\cyr\CYRR\cyri\cyrs\cyru\cyrn\cyro\cyrk}}%
59.148 \def\tablename{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl.}}%
59.149 % \def\tablename{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrya}}%
59.150 \def\partname{\cyr\CYRCH\cyra\cyrs\cyrt\cyri\cyrn\cyra}}%
59.151 \def\enclname{\cyr\cyrv\cyrk\cyrl\cyra\cyrd\cyrk\cyra}}%
59.152 \def\ccname{\cyr\cyrk\cyro\cyrp\cyrii\cyrya}}%
59.153 \def\headtoname{\cyr\CYRD\cyro}}%
59.154 \def\pagename{\cyr\cyrs.}}%
59.155 % \def\pagename{\cyr\cyrs\cyrt\cyro\cyrr\cyrii\cyrn\cyrk\cyra}}%
59.156 \def\seename{\cyr\cyrd\cyri\cyrv.}}%
59.157 \def\alsoname{\cyr\cyrd\cyri\cyrv. \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrk\cyro\cyrz}}%
59.158 \def\proofname{\cyr\CYRD\cyro\cyrv\cyre\cyrd\cyre\cyrn\cyrn\cyrya}}%
59.159 \def\glossaryname{\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyro\cyrv\cyrn\cyri\cyrk \
59.160 \ \cyrt\cyre\cyrr\cyrm\cyrii\cyrn\cyrii\cyrv}}%
59.161 }
```

`\dateukrainian` The macro `\dateukrainian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Ukrainian dates.

```
59.162 \def\dateukrainian{%
59.163   \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
59.164     \cyr\cyrii\cyrch\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.165     \cyr\cyryu\cyrt\cyro\cyrg\cyro\or
59.166     \cyrb\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrz\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.167     \cyrk\cyrv\cyrii\cyrt\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.168     \cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrv\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.169     \cyrch\cyre\cyrr\cyrv\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.170     \cyr\cyri\cyrp\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.171     \cyr\cyre\cyrr\cyrp\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.172     \cyrv\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyr\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.173     \cyrz\cyro\cyrv\cyrt\cyrn\cyrya\or
59.174     \cyr\cyri\cyr\cyrt\cyro\cyrp\cyra\cyrd\cyra\or
59.175     \cyrg\cyrr\cyru\cyrd\cyrn\cyrya\fi
59.176     \space\number\year~\cyr.}}
```

`\extrasukrainian` The macro `\extrasukrainian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Ukrainian language. The macro `\noextrasukrainian` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasukrainian`.

The first action we define is to switch on the selected Cyrillic encoding whenever we enter ‘ukrainian’.

```
59.177 \addto\extrasukrainian{\cyrillictext}
```

When the encoding definition file was processed by  $\text{\LaTeX}$  the current font encoding is stored in `\latinencoding`, assuming that  $\text{\LaTeX}$  uses T1 or OT1 as default. Therefore we switch back to `\latinencoding` whenever the Ukrainian language is no longer ‘active’.

```
59.178 \addto\noextrasukrainian{\latintext}
```

Next we must allow hyphenation in the Ukrainian words with apostrophe whenever we enter ‘ukrainian’. This solution was proposed by Vladimir Volovich <vvv@vvv.vsu.ru>

```
59.179 \addto\extrasukrainian{\lccode‘\’=‘\’}
59.180 \addto\noextrasukrainian{\lccode‘\’=0}
```

`\verbatim@font` In order to get both Latin and Cyrillic letters in verbatim text we need to change the definition of an internal  $\text{\LaTeX}$  command somewhat:

```
59.181 %\def\verbatim@font{%
59.182 %  \let\encodingdefault\latinencoding
59.183 %  \normalfont\ttfamily
59.184 %  \expandafter\def\csname\cyrillicencoding-cmd\endcsname##1##2{%
59.185 %    \ifx\protect@typeset@protect
59.186 %      \begingroup\UseTextSymbol\cyrillicencoding##1\endgroup
59.187 %    \else\noexpand##1\fi}}
```

The category code of the characters ‘:’, ‘;’, ‘!’, and ‘?’ is made `\active` to insert a little white space.

For Ukrainian (as well as for Russian and German) the " character also is made active.

Note: It is *very* questionable whether the Russian typesetting tradition requires additional spacing before those punctuation signs. Therefore, we make the corresponding code optional. If you need it, then define the `frenchpunct` docstrip option in `babel.ins`.

Borrowed from french. Some users dislike automatic insertion of a space before ‘double punctuation’, and prefer to decide themselves whether a space should be added or not; so a hook `\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP` is provided: if this command is added (in file `ukraineb.cfg`, or anywhere in a document) `ukraineb` will respect

your typing, and introduce a suitable space before ‘double punctuation’ *if and only if* a space is typed in the source file before those signs.

The command `\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP` switches back to the default behavior of `ukraineb`.

```
59.188 (*frenchpunct)
59.189 \initiate@active@char{:}
59.190 \initiate@active@char{;}
59.191 /frenchpunct)
59.192 (*frenchpunct | spanishlig)
59.193 \initiate@active@char{!}
59.194 \initiate@active@char{?}
59.195 /frenchpunct | spanishlig)
59.196 \initiate@active@char{"}
```

The code above is necessary because we need extra active characters. The character " is used as indicated in table 34.

We specify that the Ukrainian group of shorthands should be used.

```
59.197 \addto\extrasukrainian{\languageshorthands{ukrainian}}
```

These characters are ‘turned on’ once, later their definition may vary.

```
59.198 \addto\extrasukrainian{%
59.199 (frenchpunct) \bbl@activate{:}\bbl@activate{;}%
59.200 (frenchpunct | spanishlig) \bbl@activate{!}\bbl@activate{?}%
59.201 \bbl@activate{"}}
59.202 \addto\noextrasukrainian{%
59.203 (frenchpunct) \bbl@deactivate{:}\bbl@deactivate{;}%
59.204 (frenchpunct | spanishlig) \bbl@deactivate{!}\bbl@deactivate{?}%
59.205 \bbl@deactivate{"}}
```

The X2 and T2\* encodings do not contain `spanish_shriek` and `spanish_query` symbols; as a consequence, the ligatures ‘?’ and ‘!’ do not work with them (these characters are useless for Cyrillic texts anyway). But we define the shorthands to emulate these ligatures (optionally).

We do not use `\latinencoding` here (but instead explicitly use OT1) because the user may choose T2A to be the primary encoding, but it does not contain these characters.

```
59.206 (*spanishlig)
59.207 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{?}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\textquestiondown}
59.208 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{!}{\UseTextSymbol{OT1}\textexclamdown}
59.209 /spanishlig)
```

`\ukrainian@sh@;` We have to reduce the amount of white space before ;, : and !. This should only happen in horizontal mode, hence the test with `\ifhmode`.

```
\ukrainian@sh@!@59.210 (*frenchpunct)
\ukrainian@sh@?@59.211 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{;}%
59.212 \ifhmode
```

In horizontal mode we check for the presence of a ‘space’, ‘unskip’ if it exists and place a 0.1em kerning.

```
59.213 \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
59.214 \unskip\nobreak\kern.1em
59.215 \else
```

If no space has been typed, we add `\FDP@thinspace` which will be defined, up to the user’s wishes, as an automatic added thinspace, or as `\empty`.

```
59.216 \FDP@thinspace
59.217 \fi
59.218 \fi
```

Now we can insert a ‘;’ character.

```
59.219 \string;}
```

The other definitions are very similar.

```

59.220 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{:}{%
59.221   \ifhmode
59.222     \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
59.223       \unskip\nobreak\kern.1em
59.224     \else
59.225       \FDP@thinspace
59.226     \fi
59.227   \fi
59.228 \string:}

59.229 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{!}{%
59.230   \ifhmode
59.231     \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
59.232       \unskip\nobreak\kern.1em
59.233     \else
59.234       \FDP@thinspace
59.235     \fi
59.236   \fi
59.237 \string!}

59.238 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{?}{%
59.239   \ifhmode
59.240     \ifdim\lastskip>\z@
59.241       \unskip\nobreak\kern.1em
59.242     \else
59.243       \FDP@thinspace
59.244     \fi
59.245   \fi
59.246 \string?}

```

`\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP` `\FDP@thinspace` is defined as unbreakable spaces if `\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP` is activated or as `\empty` if `\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP` is in use. The default is `\FDP@thinspace` `\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP`.

```

59.247 \def\AutoSpaceBeforeFDP{%
59.248   \def\FDP@thinspace{\nobreak\kern.1em}}
59.249 \def\NoAutoSpaceBeforeFDP{\let\FDP@thinspace\empty}
59.250 \AutoSpaceBeforeFDP

```

`\FDPon` The next macros allow to switch on/off activeness of double punctuation signs.

```

\FDPoff59.251 \def\FDPon{\bbl@activate{:}}%
59.252   \bbl@activate{;}%
59.253   \bbl@activate{?}%
59.254   \bbl@activate{!}}
59.255 \def\FDPoff{\bbl@deactivate{:}}%
59.256   \bbl@deactivate{;}%
59.257   \bbl@deactivate{?}%
59.258   \bbl@deactivate{!}}

```

`\system@sh@:` When the active characters appear in an environment where their Ukrainian behaviour is not wanted they should give an ‘expected’ result. Therefore we define `\system@sh@!` shorthands at system level as well.

```

\system@sh@;59.259 \declare@shorthand{system}{:}{\string:}
59.260 \declare@shorthand{system}{;}{\string;}
59.261 \frenchpunct)
59.262 (*frenchpunct&!spanishlig)
59.263 \declare@shorthand{system}{!}{\string!}
59.264 \declare@shorthand{system}{?}{\string?}
59.265 \frenchpunct&!spanishlig)

```

To be able to define the function of ‘”’, we first define a couple of ‘support’ macros.

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent `\"` can now be typed as `"`.

```
59.266 \begingroup \catcode'\ "12
59.267 \def\reserved@a{\endgroup
59.268 \def\@SS{\mathchar"7019 }
59.269 \def\dq{"}}
59.270 \reserved@a
```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: german and french quotes. We use definitions of these quotes made in `babel.sty`. The french quotes are contained in the T2\* encodings.

```
59.271 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{"'}{\glqq}
59.272 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{"''}{\grqq}
59.273 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{"<}{\flqq}
59.274 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{">}{\frqq}
```

Some additional commands:

```
59.275 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{""}{\hskip\v@skip}
59.276 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{"~}{\textormath{\leavevmode\hbox{-}{-}}{}}
59.277 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{"=}{\nobreak-\hskip\v@skip}
59.278 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{"|}{%
59.279 \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
59.280 \allowhyphens}{}}
```

The next two macros for `"-` and `"---` are somewhat different. We must check whether the second token is a hyphen character:

```
59.281 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{"-}{%
```

If the next token is `'-`, we typeset an emdash, otherwise a hyphen sign:

```
59.282 \def\ukrainian@sh@tmp{%
59.283 \if\ukrainian@sh@next-\expandafter\ukrainian@sh@emdash
59.284 \else\expandafter\ukrainian@sh@hyphen\fi
59.285 }%
```

TeX looks for the next token after the first `'-`: the meaning of this token is written to `\ukrainian@sh@next` and `\ukrainian@sh@tmp` is called.

```
59.286 \futurelet\ukrainian@sh@next\ukrainian@sh@tmp}
```

Here are the definitions of hyphen and emdash. First the hyphen:

```
59.287 \def\ukrainian@sh@hyphen{%
59.288 \nobreak\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
```

For the emdash definition, there are the two parameters: we must `'eat'` two last hyphen signs of our emdash. . . :

```
59.289 \def\ukrainian@sh@emdash#1#2{\cdash-#1#2}
```

`\cdash` . . . these two parameters are useful for another macro: `\cdash`:

```
59.290 %\ifx\cdash\undefined % should be defined earlier
59.291 \def\cdash#1#2#3{\def\tempx@{#3}%
59.292 \def\tempa@{-}\def\tempb@{~}\def\tempc@{*}%
59.293 \ifx\tempx@\tempa@\@Acdash\else
59.294 \ifx\tempx@\tempb@\@Bcdash\else
59.295 \ifx\tempx@\tempc@\@Ccdash\else
59.296 \errmessage{Wrong usage of cdash}\fi\fi\fi}
```

second parameter (or third for `\cdash`) shows what kind of emdash to create in next step



"--- ordinary (plain) Cyrillic emdash inside text: an unbreakable thinspace will be inserted before only in case of a *space* before the dash (it is necessary for dashes after display maths formulae: there could be lists, enumerations etc. started with “— where *a* is ...” i.e., the dash starts a line). (Firstly there were planned rather soft rules for user: he may put a space before the dash or not. But it is difficult to place this thinspace automatically, i.e., by checking modes because after display formulae T<sub>E</sub>X uses horizontal mode. Maybe there is a misunderstanding? Maybe there is another way?) After a dash a breakable thinspace is always placed;

```
59.297 % What is more grammatically: .2em or .2\fontdimen6\font ?
59.298 \def\@Acdash{\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\nobreak\hskip.2em\fi
59.299 \cyrdash\hskip.2em\ignorespaces}%
```

"--~ emdash in compound names or surnames (like Mendeleev–Klapeiron); this dash has no space characters around; after the dash some space is added  
`\exhyphenalty`

```
59.300 \def\@Bcdash{\leavevmode\ifdim\lastskip>\z@\unskip\fi
59.301 \nobreak\cyrdash\penalty\exhyphenpenalty\hskip\z@skip\ignorespaces}%
```

"--\* for denoting direct speech (a space like `\enskip` must follow the emdash);

```
59.302 \def\@Ccdash{\leavevmode
59.303 \nobreak\cyrdash\nobreak\hskip.35em\ignorespaces}%
59.304 %\fi
```

`\cyrdash` Finally the macro for “body” of the Cyrillic emdash. The `\cyrdash` macro will be defined in case this macro hasn’t been defined in a fontenc file. For T2\* fonts, `cyrdash` will be placed in the code of the English emdash thus it uses ligature ---.

```
59.305 % Is there an IF necessary?
59.306 \ifx\cyrdash\undefined
59.307 \def\cyrdash{\hbox to.8em{--\hss--}}
59.308 \fi
```

Here a really new macro—to place thinspace between initials. This macro used instead of `\`, allows hyphenation in the following surname.

```
59.309 \declare@shorthand{ukrainian}{",}{\nobreak\hskip.2em\ignorespaces}
```

`\mdqon` All that’s left to do now is to define a couple of commands for “.

```
\mdqoff59.310 \def\mdqon{\bbl@activate{}}
59.311 \def\mdqoff{\bbl@deactivate{}}
```

The Ukrainian hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
59.312 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
59.313 % temporary hack:
59.314 \ifx\englishhyphenmins\undefined
59.315 \def\englishhyphenmins{\tw@\thr@@}
59.316 \fi
```

Now the action `\extrasukrainian` has to execute is to make sure that the command `\frenchspacing` is in effect. If this is not the case the execution of `\noextrasukrainian` will switch it off again.

```
59.317 \addto\extrasukrainian{\bbl@frenchspacing}
59.318 \addto\noextrasukrainian{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}
```

Next we add a new enumeration style for Ukrainian manuscripts with Cyrillic letters, and later on we define some math operator names in accordance with Ukrainian and Russian typesetting traditions.

`\Asbuk` We begin by defining `\Asbuk` which works like `\Alph`, but produces (uppercase) Cyrillic letters instead of Latin ones. The letters CYRGUP, and SFTSN are skipped, as usual for such enumeration.

```
59.319 \def\Asbuk#1{\expandafter\@Asbuk\csname c@#1\endcsname}
59.320 \def\@Asbuk#1{\ifcase#1\or
59.321 \CYRA\or\CYRB\or\CYRV\or\CYRG\or\CYRD\or\CYRE\or\CYRIE\or
59.322 \CYRZH\or\CYRZ\or\CYRI\or\CYRII\or\CYRYI\or\CYRISHRT\or
59.323 \CYRK\or\CYRL\or\CYRM\or\CYRN\or\CYRO\or\CYRP\or\CYRR\or
59.324 \CYRS\or\CYRT\or\CYRU\or\CYRF\or\CYRH\or\CYRC\or\CYRCH\or
59.325 \CYRSH\or\CYRSHCH\or\CYRYU\or\CYRYA\else\@ctrerr\fi}
```

`\asbuk` The macro `\asbuk` is similar to `\alph`; it produces lowercase Ukrainian letters.

```
59.326 \def\asbuk#1{\expandafter\@asbuk\csname c@#1\endcsname}
59.327 \def\@asbuk#1{\ifcase#1\or
59.328 \cyra\or\cyrb\or\cyrv\or\cyrg\or\cyrd\or\cyre\or\cyr\or
59.329 \cyrzh\or\cyrz\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or
59.330 \cyrk\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or
59.331 \cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\cyr\or
59.332 \cyrsh\or\cyrshch\or\cyr\or\cyr\or\else\@ctrerr\fi}
```

Set up default Cyrillic math alphabets. The math groups for Cyrillic letters are defined in the encoding definition files. First, declare a new alphabet for symbols, `\cyrmathrm`, based on the symbol font for Cyrillic letters defined in the encoding definition file. Note, that by default Cyrillic letters are taken from upright font in math mode (unlike Latin letters).

```
59.333 %\RequirePackage{textmath}
59.334 \@ifundefined{sym\cyrillicencoding letters}{-}{%
59.335 \SetSymbolFont{cyrillicencoding letters}{bold}\cyrillicencoding
59.336 \rmdefault\bfdefault\updefault
59.337 \DeclareSymbolFontAlphabet\cyrmathrm{cyrillicencoding letters}}
```

And we need a few commands to be able to switch to different variants.

```
59.338 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathbf\cyrillicencoding
59.339 \rmdefault\bfdefault\updefault
59.340 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathsf\cyrillicencoding
59.341 \sfdefault\mddefault\updefault
59.342 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmathit\cyrillicencoding
59.343 \rmdefault\mddefault\itdefault
59.344 \DeclareMathAlphabet\cyrmath\cyrillicencoding
59.345 \ttdefault\mddefault\updefault
59.346 %
59.347 \SetMathAlphabet\cyrmathsf{bold}\cyrillicencoding
59.348 \sfdefault\bfdefault\updefault
59.349 \SetMathAlphabet\cyrmathit{bold}\cyrillicencoding
59.350 \rmdefault\bfdefault\itdefault
59.351 }
```

Some math functions in Ukrainian and Russian math books have other names: e.g., `\sinh` in Russian is written as `\sh` etc. So we define a number of new math operators.

```
\sinh:
59.352 \def\sh{\mathop{\operator@font sh}\nolimits}
\cosh:
59.353 \def\ch{\mathop{\operator@font ch}\nolimits}
\tan:
59.354 \def\tg{\mathop{\operator@font tg}\nolimits}
\arctan:
59.355 \def\arctg{\mathop{\operator@font arctg}\nolimits}
arcctg:
59.356 \def\arcctg{\mathop{\operator@font arcctg}\nolimits}
```

The following macro conflicts with `\th` defined in Latin 1 encoding:

```
\tanh:
59.357 \addto\extrasrussian{%
59.358   \babel@save{\th}%
59.359   \let\ltx@th\th
59.360   \def\th{\textormath{\ltx@th}%
59.361     {\mathop{\operator@font th}\nolimits}}%
59.362 }

\cot:
59.363 \def\ctg{\mathop{\operator@font ctg}\nolimits}
\coth:
59.364 \def\cth{\mathop{\operator@font cth}\nolimits}

\csc:
59.365 \def\cosec{\mathop{\operator@font cosec}\nolimits}

And finally some other Ukrainian and Russian mathematical symbols:
59.366 \def\Prob{\mathop{\kern\z@\mathsf{P}}\nolimits}
59.367 \def\Variance{\mathop{\kern\z@\mathsf{D}}\nolimits}
59.368 \def\nsd{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.}}\nolimits}
59.369 \def\nsk{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.}}\nolimits}
59.370 \def\NSD{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\CYRN\CYRS\CYRD}}\nolimits}
59.371 \def\NSK{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\CYRN\CYRS\CYRK}}\nolimits}
59.372 \def\nod{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.}}\nolimits} % ??????
59.373 \def\nok{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.\cyrn.}}\nolimits} % ??????
59.374 \def\NOD{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\CYRN\CYRO\CYRD}}\nolimits} % ??????
59.375 \def\NOK{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\CYRN\CYRO\CYRK}}\nolimits} % ??????
59.376 \def\Proj{\mathop{\cyrmathrm{\CYRP\cyrn}}\nolimits}

This is for compatibility with older Ukrainian packages.
59.377 \DeclareRobustCommand{\No}{%
59.378   \ifmode{\nfss@text{\textnumero}}\else\textnumero\fi}

The macro \ldf@finish takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting
the main language to be switched on at \begin{document} and resetting the
category code of @ to its original value.

59.379 \ldf@finish{ukrainian}
59.380 \code
```

## 60 The Lower Sorbian language

The file `lsorbian.dtx`<sup>65</sup> It defines all the language-specific macros for Lower Sorbian.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
60.1 (*code)
60.2 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{date\CurrentOption}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `lsorbian` will be an ‘unknown’ language, in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@lsorbian` to see whether we have to do something here. As `babel` also knows the option `lowersorbian` we have to check that as well.

```
60.3 \ifx\l@lowersorbian\@undefined
60.4 \ifx\l@lsorbian\@undefined
60.5 \nopatterns{Lsorbian}
60.6 \adddialect\l@lsorbian\z@
60.7 \let\l@lowersorbian\l@lsorbian
60.8 \else
60.9 \let\l@lowersorbian\l@lsorbian
60.10 \fi
60.11 \else
60.12 \let\l@lsorbian\l@lowersorbian
60.13 \fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Lower Sorbian language.

`\captionlsorbian` The macro `\captionlsorbian` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
60.14 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
60.15 \def\prefacename{Zawod}%
60.16 \def\refname{Referency}%
60.17 \def\abstractname{Abstrakt}%
60.18 \def\bibname{Literatura}%
60.19 \def\chaptername{Kapitl}%
60.20 \def\appendixname{Dodawki}%
60.21 \def\contentsname{Wop\`simje\`se}%
60.22 \def\listfigurename{Zapis wobrazow}%
60.23 \def\listtablename{Zapis tabulkow}%
60.24 \def\indexname{Indeks}%
60.25 \def\figurename{Wobraz}%
60.26 \def\tablename{Tabulka}%
60.27 \def\partname{\`Z\`v el}%
60.28 \def\enclname{P\`si\`l oga}%
60.29 \def\ccname{CC}%
60.30 \def\headtoname{Komu}%
60.31 \def\pagename{Strona}%
60.32 \def\seename{gl.}%
60.33 \def\alsiname{gl.~teke}%
60.34 \def\proofname{Proof}% <-- needs translation
60.35 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
60.36 }%
```

`\newdatelsorbian` The macro `\newdatelsorbian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Lower Sorbian dates.

```
60.37 \@namedef{newdate\CurrentOption}{%
60.38 \def\today{\number\day.~\ifcase\month\or
```

---

<sup>65</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0g and was last revised on 2008/03/17. It was written by Eduard Werner ([edi@kaihh.hanse.de](mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de)).

```

60.39   januara\or februara\or m\or v erca\or apryla\or maja\or
60.40   junija\or julija\or awgusta\or septembra\or oktobra\or
60.41   nowembra\or decembra\fi
60.42   \space \number\year}}

```

`\olddatelsorbian` The macro `\olddatelsorbian` redefines the command `\today` to produce old-style Lower Sorbian dates.

```

60.43 \@namedef{olddate\CurrentOption}{%
60.44   \def\today{\number\day.\~\ifcase\month\or
60.45     wjelikego ro\or v zka\or
60.46     ma\l ego ro\or v zka\or
60.47     nal\or v etnika\or
60.48     jat\or v sownika\or
60.49     ro\or v zownika\or
60.50     sma\or v znika\or
60.51     pra\or v znika\or
60.52     \or v znje\'nca\or
60.53     po\or v znje\'nca\or
60.54     winowca\or
60.55     nazymnika\or
60.56     godownika\fi \space \number\year}}

```

The default will be the new-style dates.

```

60.57 \expandafter\let\csname date\CurrentOption\expandafter\endcsname
60.58     \csname newdate\CurrentOption\endcsname

```

`\extraslsorbian` The macro `\extraslsorbian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the `lsorbian` language. The macro `\noextraslsorbian` is used to cancel the actions of `\extraslsorbian`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

```

60.59 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{}
60.60 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

60.61 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
60.62 \code

```

## 61 The Upper Sorbian language

The file `usorbian.dtx`<sup>66</sup> It defines all the language-specific macros for Upper Sorbian.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
61.1 (*code)
```

```
61.2 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{date\CurrentOption}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `usorbian` will be an ‘unknown’ language, in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@usorbian` to see whether we have to do something here. As `babel` also knows the option `uppersorbian` we have to check that as well.

```
61.3 \ifx\l@uppersorbian\@undefined
```

```
61.4 \ifx\l@usorbian\@undefined
```

```
61.5 \nopatterns{Usorbian}
```

```
61.6 \adddialect\l@usorbian\z@
```

```
61.7 \let\l@uppersorbian\l@usorbian
```

```
61.8 \else
```

```
61.9 \let\l@uppersorbian\l@usorbian
```

```
61.10 \fi
```

```
61.11 \else
```

```
61.12 \let\l@usorbian\l@uppersorbian
```

```
61.13 \fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Upper Sorbian language.

`\captionsusorbian` The macro `\captionsusorbian` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
61.14 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
```

```
61.15 \def\prefacename{Zawod}%
```

```
61.16 \def\refname{Referency}%
```

```
61.17 \def\abstractname{Abstrakt}%
```

```
61.18 \def\bibname{Literatura}%
```

```
61.19 \def\chaptername{Kapitl}%
```

```
61.20 \def\appendixname{Dodawki}%
```

```
61.21 \def\contentsname{Wobsah}%
```

```
61.22 \def\listfigurename{Zapis wobrazow}%
```

```
61.23 \def\listtablename{Zapis tabulkow}%
```

```
61.24 \def\indexname{Indeks}%
```

```
61.25 \def\figurename{Wobraz}%
```

```
61.26 \def\tablename{Tabulka}%
```

```
61.27 \def\partname{D'z\ v el}%
```

```
61.28 \def\enclname{P\ v r\ l oha}%
```

```
61.29 \def\ccname{CC}%
```

```
61.30 \def\headtoname{Komu}%
```

```
61.31 \def\pagename{Strona}%
```

```
61.32 \def\seename{hl.}%
```

```
61.33 \def\alsiname{hl.~te\ v z}
```

```
61.34 \def\proofname{Proof}% <-- needs translation
```

```
61.35 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
```

```
61.36 }%
```

`\newdateusorbian` The macro `\newdateusorbian` redefines the command `\today` to produce Upper Sorbian dates.

```
61.37 \@namedef{newdate\CurrentOption}{%
```

```
61.38 \def\today{\number\day.~\ifcase\month\or
```

---

<sup>66</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0k and was last revised on 2008/03/17. It was written by Eduard Werner (`edi@kaihh.hanse.de`).

```

61.39   januara\or februara\or m\o\erca\or apryla\or meje\or junija\or
61.40   julija\or awgusta\or septembra\or oktobra\or
61.41   nowembra\or decembra\fi
61.42   \space \number\year}}

```

`\olddateusorbian` The macro `\olddateusorbian` redefines the command `\today` to produce old-style Upper Sorbian dates.

```

61.43 \namedef{olddate\CurrentOption}{%
61.44   \def\today{\number\day.\~\ifcase\month\or
61.45     wulkeho r\o\o\zka\or ma\l eho r\o\o\zka\or nal\o\o\etnika\or
61.46     jutrownika\or r\o\o\zownika\or sma\o\o\znika\or pra\o\o\znika\or
61.47     \o\o\znjenca\or po\o\o\znjenca\or winowca\or nazymnika\or
61.48     hodownika\fi \space \number\year}}

```

The default will be the new-style dates.

```

61.49 \expandafter\let\csname date\CurrentOption\expandafter\endcsname
61.50     \csname newdate\CurrentOption\endcsname

```

`\extrasusorbian` The macro `\extrasusorbian` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Upper Sorbian language. It's pirated from `germanb.sty`. The macro `\noextrasusorbian` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasusorbian`.

Because for Upper Sorbian (as well as for Dutch) the " character is made active. This is done once, later on its definition may vary.

```

61.51 \initiate@active@char{"}
61.52 \namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{\languageshorthands{usorbian}}
61.53 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
61.54   \bbl@activate{"}}

```

Don't forget to turn the shorthands off again.

```

61.55 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
61.56   \bbl@deactivate{"}}

```

In order for  $\TeX$  to be able to hyphenate German Upper Sorbian words which contain 'ß' we have to give the character a nonzero `\lccode` (see Appendix H, the  $\TeX$ book). As some of the other language definitions turn the character `~` into a shorthand we need to make sure that it has its original definition here.

```

61.57 \begingroup \catcode'\~7
61.58 \def\x{\endgroup
61.59   \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
61.60     \babel@savevariable{\lccode'\~Y}%
61.61     \lccode'\~Y'\~Y}}
61.62 \x

```

The umlaut accent macro `\"`  is changed to lower the umlaut dots. The redefinition is done with the help of `\umlautlow`.

```

61.63 \expandafter\addto\csname extras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
61.64   \babel@save\"umlautlow}
61.65 \expandafter\addto\csname noextras\CurrentOption\endcsname{%
61.66   \umlauthigh}

```

The Upper Sorbian hyphenation patterns can be used with `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```

61.67 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}

```

`\dq` We save the original double quote character in `\dq` to keep it available, the math accent `\"`  can now be typed as `"`. Also we store the original meaning of the command `\"`  for future use.

```

61.68 \begingroup \catcode\"12
61.69 \def\x{\endgroup
61.70   \def\@SS{\mathchar"7019 }
61.71   \def\dq{"}}
61.72 \x

```

Now we can define the doublequote macros: the umlauts,

```

61.73 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{a}{\textormath{\{a}\{\ddot a}\}}
61.74 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{o}{\textormath{\{o}\{\ddot o}\}}
61.75 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{u}{\textormath{\{u}\{\ddot u}\}}
61.76 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{A}{\textormath{\{A}\{\ddot A}\}}
61.77 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{O}{\textormath{\{O}\{\ddot O}\}}
61.78 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{U}{\textormath{\{U}\{\ddot U}\}}

tremas,

61.79 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{e}{\textormath{\{e}\{\ddot e}\}}
61.80 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{E}{\textormath{\{E}\{\ddot E}\}}
61.81 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{i}{\textormath{\{i}\{\ddot i}\{\imath}\}}
61.82 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{I}{\textormath{\{I}\{\ddot I}\}}

usorbian es-zet (sharp s),

61.83 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{s}{\textormath{\ss}}{\@SS}}
61.84 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{S}{SS}

german and french quotes,

61.85 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{‘}{%
61.86 \textormath{\quotedblbase}{\mbox{\quotedblbase}}}
61.87 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{’}{%
61.88 \textormath{\textquotedblleft}{\mbox{\textquotedblleft}}}
61.89 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{<}{%
61.90 \textormath{\guillemotleft}{\mbox{\guillemotleft}}}
61.91 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{>}{%
61.92 \textormath{\guillemotright}{\mbox{\guillemotright}}}

discretionary commands

61.93 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{c}{\textormath{\bbl@disc ck}{c}}
61.94 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{C}{\textormath{\bbl@disc CK}{C}}
61.95 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{f}{\textormath{\bbl@disc f{ff}}{f}}
61.96 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{F}{\textormath{\bbl@disc F{FF}}{F}}
61.97 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{l}{\textormath{\bbl@disc l{ll}}{l}}
61.98 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{L}{\textormath{\bbl@disc L{LL}}{L}}
61.99 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{m}{\textormath{\bbl@disc m{mm}}{m}}
61.100 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{M}{\textormath{\bbl@disc M{MM}}{M}}
61.101 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{n}{\textormath{\bbl@disc n{nn}}{n}}
61.102 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{N}{\textormath{\bbl@disc N{NN}}{N}}
61.103 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{p}{\textormath{\bbl@disc p{pp}}{p}}
61.104 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{P}{\textormath{\bbl@disc P{PP}}{P}}
61.105 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{t}{\textormath{\bbl@disc t{tt}}{t}}
61.106 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{T}{\textormath{\bbl@disc T{TT}}{T}}

and some additional commands:

61.107 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{-}{\nobreak\-\bbl@allowhyphens}
61.108 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{|}{%
61.109 \textormath{\nobreak\discretionary{-}{-}{\kern.03em}%
61.110 \allowhyphens}{}}
61.111 \declare@shorthand{usorbian}{"}{\hskip\z@skip}

```

`\mdqon` All that’s left to do now is to define a couple of commands for reasons of compatibility with `german.sty`.

```

\ck61.112 \def\mdqon{\shorthandon{}}
61.113 \def\mdqoff{\shorthandoff{}}
61.114 \def\ck{\allowhyphens\discretionary{k-}{k}{ck}\allowhyphens}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

61.115 \ldf@finish\CurrentOption
61.116 </code>

```



## 62 The Turkish language

The file `turkish.dtx`<sup>67</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Turkish language<sup>68</sup>.

Turkish typographic rules specify that a little ‘white space’ should be added before the characters ‘:’, ‘!’ and ‘=’. In order to insert this white space automatically these characters are made ‘active’. Also `\frenhsparing` is set.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the @ sign, etc.

```
62.1 (*code)
62.2 \LdfInit{turkish}\captionsturkish
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `turkish` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@turkish` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
62.3 \ifx\l@turkish\@undefined
62.4 \@nopatterns{Turkish}
62.5 \adddialect\l@turkish0\fi
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Turkish language.

`\captionsturkish` The macro `\captionsturkish` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
62.6 \addto\captionsturkish{%
62.7 \def\prefacename{"0ns"oz}%
62.8 \def\refname{Kaynaklar}%
62.9 \def\abstractname{"Ozet"%
62.10 \def\bibname{Kaynak\c ca}%
62.11 \def\chaptername{B"ol"um}%
62.12 \def\appendixname{Ek}%
62.13 \def\contentsname{.I\c cindekiler}%
62.14 \def\listfigurename{\c Sekil Listesi}%
62.15 \def\listtablename{Tablo Listesi}%
62.16 \def\indexname{Dizin}%
62.17 \def\figurename{\c Sekil}%
62.18 \def\tablename{Tablo}%
62.19 \def\partname{K\i s\i m}%
62.20 \def\enclname{.Ili\c sik}%
62.21 \def\ccname{Di\u ger Al\i c\i lar}%
62.22 \def\headtoname{Al\i c\i}%
62.23 \def\pagename{Sayfa}%
62.24 \def\subjectname{.Ilgili}%
62.25 \def\seename{bkz.}%
62.26 \def\alsoname{ayr\i ca bkz.}%
62.27 \def\proofname{Kan\i t}%
62.28 \def\glossaryname{Glossary}% <-- Needs translation
62.29 }%
```

`\dateturkish` The macro `\dateturkish` redefines the command `\today` to produce Turkish dates.

```
62.30 \def\dateturkish{%
62.31 \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
62.32 Ocak\or \c Subat\or Mart\or Nisan\or May\i{s}\or Haziran\or
62.33 Temmuz\or A\u gustos\or Eyl"ul\or Ekim\or Kas\i{m}\or
62.34 Aral\i{k}\fi
```

<sup>67</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.2m and was last revised on 2005/03/31.

<sup>68</sup>Mustafa Burc, `z6001@rziris01.rrz.uni-hamburg.de` provided the code for this file. It is based on the work by Pierre Mackay; Turgut Uyar, `uyar@cs.itu.edu.tr` supplied additional translations in version 1.2j and later

62.35 `\space\number\year}}`

`\extrasturkish` The macro `\extrasturkish` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Turkish language. The macro `\noextrasturkish` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasturkish`.

Turkish typographic rules specify that a little ‘white space’ should be added before the characters ‘:’, ‘!’ and ‘=’. In order to insert this white space automatically these characters are made `\active`, so they have to be treated in a special way.

62.36 `\initiate@active@char{:}`

62.37 `\initiate@active@char{!}`

62.38 `\initiate@active@char{=}`

We specify that the turkish group of shorthands should be used.

62.39 `\addto\extrasturkish{\languageshorthands{turkish}}`

These characters are ‘turned on’ once, later their definition may vary.

62.40 `\addto\extrasturkish{%`

62.41 `\bbl@activate{:}\bbl@activate{!}\bbl@activate{=}}`

For Turkish texts `\frenchspacing` should be in effect. We make sure this is the case and reset it if necessary.

62.42 `\addto\extrasturkish{\bbl@frenchspacing}`

62.43 `\addto\noextrasturkish{\bbl@nonfrenchspacing}`

`\turkish@sh@!@` The definitions for the three active characters were made using intermediate macros. These are defined now. The insertion of extra ‘white space’ should only happen outside math mode, hence the check `\ifmmode` in the macros.

62.44 `\declare@shorthand{turkish}{:}{%`

62.45 `\ifmmode`

62.46 `\string:%`

62.47 `\else\relax`

62.48 `\ifhmode`

62.49 `\ifdim\lastskip>\z@`

62.50 `\unskip\penalty\@M\thinspace`

62.51 `\fi`

62.52 `\fi`

62.53 `\string:%`

62.54 `\fi}`

62.55 `\declare@shorthand{turkish}{!}{%`

62.56 `\ifmmode`

62.57 `\string!%`

62.58 `\else\relax`

62.59 `\ifhmode`

62.60 `\ifdim\lastskip>\z@`

62.61 `\unskip\penalty\@M\thinspace`

62.62 `\fi`

62.63 `\fi`

62.64 `\string!%`

62.65 `\fi}`

62.66 `\declare@shorthand{turkish}{=}{%`

62.67 `\ifmmode`

62.68 `\string=%`

62.69 `\else\relax`

62.70 `\ifhmode`

62.71 `\ifdim\lastskip>\z@`

62.72 `\unskip\kern\fontdimen2\font`

62.73 `\kern-1.4\fontdimen3\font`

62.74 `\fi`

62.75 `\fi`

62.76 `\string=%`

62.77 `\fi}`

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
62.78 \ldf@finish{turkish}
```

```
62.79 </code>
```

## 63 The Hebrew language

The file `hebrew.dtx`<sup>69</sup> provides the following packages and files for Hebrew language support:

`hebrew.ldf` file defines all the language-specific macros for the Hebrew language.

`rlbabel.def` file is used by `hebrew.ldf` for bidirectional versions of the major  $\LaTeX$  commands and environments. It is designed to be used with other right-to-left languages, not only with Hebrew.

`hebcals.sty` package defines a set of macros for computing Hebrew date from Gregorian one.

Additional Hebrew input and font encoding definition files that should be included and used with `hebrew.ldf` are:

`hebinp.dtx` provides Hebrew input encodings, such as ISO 8859-8, MS Windows codepage 1255 or IBM PC codepage 862 (see Section 64 on page 345).

`hebrew.fdd` contains Hebrew font encodings, related font definition files and `hebfont` package that provides Hebrew font switching commands (see Section 65 on page 351 for further details).

$\LaTeX$  2.09 compatibility files are included with `heb209.dtx` and gives possibility to compile existing  $\LaTeX$  2.09 Hebrew documents with small (if any) changes (see Section 66 on page 366 for details).

Finally, optional document class `hebtech` may be useful for writing theses and dissertations in both Hebrew and English (and any other languages included with `babel`). It designed to meet requirements of the Graduate School of the Technion — Israel Institute of Technology.

*As of version 2.3e hebtech is no longer distributed together with heblatex. It should be part of a new "hebclasses" package*

### 63.1 Acknowledgement

The following people have contributed to Hebrew package in one way or another, knowingly or unknowingly. In alphabetical order: Irina Abramovici, Yaniv Bargury, Yael Dubinsky, Sergio Fogel, Dan Haran, Rama Porrat, Michail Rozman, Alon Ziv.

Tatiana Samoilov and Vitaly Surazhsky found a number of serious bugs in preliminary version of Hebrew package.

A number of other people have contributed comments and information. Specific contributions are acknowledged within the document.

I want to thank my wife, Vita, and son, Mishka, for their infinite love and patience.

If you made a contribution and I haven't mentioned it, don't worry, it was an accident. I'm sorry. Just tell me and I will add you to the next version.

### 63.2 The DOCSTRIP modules

The following modules are used in the implementation to direct DOCSTRIP in generating external files:

<code>driver</code>	produce a documentation driver file
<code>hebrew</code>	produce Hebrew language support file
<code>rightleft</code>	create right-to-left support file
<code>calendar</code>	create Hebrew calendar package

---

<sup>69</sup>The Hebrew language support files described in this section have version number v2.3h and were last revised on 2005/03/30.

A typical DOCSTRIP command file would then have entries like:

```
\generateFile{hebrew.ldf}{t}{\from{hebrew.dtx}{hebrew}}
```

### 63.3 Hebrew language definitions

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
63.1 (*hebrew)
```

```
63.2 \LdfInit{hebrew}{captionshebrew}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e., by the `\usepackage` command, `hebrew` will be an ‘unknown’ language, in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@hebrew` to see whether we have to do something here.

```
63.3 \ifx\l@hebrew\@undefined
```

```
63.4 \@nopatterns{Hebrew}%
```

```
63.5 \adddialect\l@hebrew0
```

```
63.6 \fi
```

```
\hebrewencoding FIX DOCS REGARDING 8BIT
```

Typesetting Hebrew texts implies that a special input and output encoding needs to be used. Generally, the user may choose between different available Hebrew encodings provided. The current support for Hebrew uses all available fonts from the Hebrew University of Jerusalem encoded in ‘old-code’ 7-bit encoding also known as Israeli Standard SI-960. We define for these fonts the Local Hebrew Encoding LHE (see the file `hebrew.fdd` for more details), and the LHE encoding definition file should be loaded by default.

Other fonts are available in `windows-cp1255` (a superset of ISO-8859-8 with nikud). For those, the encoding `HE8` should be used. Such fonts are, e.g., `windows’ TrueType` fonts (once converted to `Type1` or `MetaFont`) and IBM’s `Type1` fonts.

However, if an user wants to use another font encoding, for example, cyrillic encoding `T2` and extended latin encoding `T1`, — he/she has to load the corresponding file *before* the `hebrew` package. This may be done in the following way:

```
\usepackage[LHE,T2,T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[hebrew,russian,english]{babel}
```

We make sure that the LHE encoding is known to  $\text{\LaTeX}$  at end of this package.

Also note that if you want to use the encoding `HE8`, you should define the following in your document, *before loading babel*:

```
\def\HeblatexEncoding{HE8}
\def\HeblatexEncodingFile{he8enc}
```

```
63.7 \providecommand{\HeblatexEncoding}{LHE}%
```

```
63.8 \providecommand{\HeblatexEncodingFile}{lheenc}%
```

```
63.9 \newcommand{\heblatex@set@encoding}[2]{
```

```
63.10 }
```

```
63.11 \AtEndOfPackage{%
```

```
63.12 \ifpackageloaded{fontenc}{%
```

```
63.13 \@ifl@aded{def}{%
```

```
63.14 \HeblatexEncodingFile}{\def\hebrewencoding{\HeblatexEncoding}}{%
```

```
63.15 }{%
```

```
63.16 \input{\HeblatexEncodingFile.def}%
```

```
63.17 \def\hebrewencoding{\HeblatexEncoding}%
```

```
63.18 }}
```

We also need to load `inputenc` package with one of the Hebrew input encodings. By default, we set up the `8859-8` codepage. If an user wants to use many input encodings in the same document, for example, the MS Windows Hebrew codepage `cp1255` and the standard IBM PC Russian codepage `cp866`, he/she has to load the corresponding file *before* the `hebrew` package too. This may be done in the following way:

```

\usepackage[cp1255,cp866]{inputenc}
\usepackage[hebrew,russian,english]{babel}

```

An user can switch input encodings in the document using the command `\inputencoding`, for example, to use the cp1255:

```
\inputencoding{cp1255}
```

```

63.19 \AtEndOfPackage{%
63.20 \ifpackageloaded{inputenc}{\RequirePackage[8859-8]{inputenc}}

```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Hebrew language.

`\hebrewhyphenmins` This macro is used to store the correct values of the hyphenation parameters `\lefthyphenmin` and `\righthyphenmin`. They are set to 2.

```
63.21 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
```

`\captionshebrew` The macro `\captionshebrew` replaces all captions used in the four standard document classes provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> with their Hebrew equivalents.

```

63.22 \addto\captionshebrew{%
63.23 \def\prefacename{\@ensure@R{\hebmem\hebbet\hebvav\hebalef}}%
63.24 \def\refname{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\
63.25 \hebmem\hehqof\hebvav\hebresh\hebvav\hebtav}}%
63.26 \def\abstractname{\@ensure@R{\hebtav\hehqof\hebtsadi\hebyod\hebresh}}%
63.27 \def\bibname{\@ensure@R{\hebbet\hebyod\hebbet\heblamed\hebyod\hebvav\
63.28 \hebgimel\hebresh\hebpe\hebyod\hebhe}}%
63.29 \def\chaptername{\@ensure@R{\hebpe\hebresh\hehqof}}%
63.30 \def\appendixname{\@ensure@R{\hebnun\hebsamekh\hebpe\hebbet}}%
63.31 \def\contentsname{\@ensure@R{%
63.32 \hebtav\hebvav\hebkaf\hebfinalnun\
63.33 \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
63.34 \def\listfigurename{\@ensure@R{%
63.35 \hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\
63.36 \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
63.37 \def\listtablename{\@ensure@R{%
63.38 \hebresh\hebshin\hebyod\hebmem\hebtav\
63.39 \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
63.40 \def\indexname{\@ensure@R{\hebmem\hebpe\hebtav\hebbet}}%
63.41 \def\figurename{\@ensure@R{\hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebresh}}%
63.42 \def\tablename{\@ensure@R{\hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebhe}}%
63.43 \def\partname{\@ensure@R{\hebbet\heblamed\hehqof}}%
63.44 \def\enclname{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebtsadi\hebbet}}%
63.45 \def\ccname{\@ensure@R{\hebhe\hebayin\hebtav\hehqof\hebyod\
63.46 \hebfinalmem}}%
63.47 \def\headtoname{\@ensure@R{\hebalef\heblamed}}%
63.48 \def\pagename{\@ensure@R{\hebayin\hebmem\hebvav\hebdalet}}%
63.49 \def\psname{\@ensure@R{\hebnun.\hebbet.}}%
63.50 \def\seename{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebalef\hebhe}}%
63.51 \def\alsoname{\@ensure@R{\hebresh\hebalef\hebhe\hebgimel\
63.52 \hebmemesof}}%
63.53 \def\proofname{\@ensure@R{\hebhe\hebvav\hebkaf\hebbet\hebhe}}
63.54 \def\glossaryname{\@ensure@L{Glossary}}% <-- Needs translation
63.55 }

```

`\slidelabel` Here we fix the macro `slidelabel` of the seminar package. Note that this still won't work well enough when overlays will be involved

```

63.56 \ifclassloaded{seminar}{%
63.57 \def\slidelabel{\bf \if@r1R{\hebshin\hehqof\hebfinalpe} \theslide}%
63.58 \else\L{Slide \theslide}%
63.59 \fi}%
63.60 }{}

```

Here we provide an user with translation of Gregorian dates to Hebrew. In addition, the `hebc` package can be used to create Hebrew calendar dates.

`\hebmonth` The macro `\hebmonth{month}` produces month names in Hebrew.

```
63.61 \def\hebmonth#1{%
63.62 \ifcase#1\or \hebyod\hebnun\hebvav\hebalef\hebresh\or %
63.63 \hebpe\hebbet\hebresh\hebvav\hebalef\hebresh\or %
63.64 \hebmeme\hebresh\hebfinaltsadi\or %
63.65 \hebalef\hebpe\hebresh\hebyod\heblamed\or %
63.66 \hebmeme\hebalef\hebyod\or \hebyod\hebvav\hebnun\hebyod\or %
63.67 \hebyod\hebvav\heblamed\hebyod\or %
63.68 \hebalef\hebvav\hebgimel\hebvav\hebsamekh\hebtet\or %
63.69 \hebsamekh\hebpe\hebtet\hebmeme\hebbet\hebresh\or %
63.70 \hebalef\hebvav\hebkof\hebtet\hebvav\hebbet\hebresh\or %
63.71 \hebnun\hebvav\hebbet\hebmeme\hebbet\hebresh\or %
63.72 \hebdalet\hebtsadi\hebmeme\hebbet\hebresh\fi}
```

`\hebdate` The macro `\hebdate{day}{month}{year}` translates a given Gregorian date to Hebrew.

```
63.73 \def\hebdate#1#2#3{%
63.74 \beginR\beginL\number#1\endL\ \hebbet\hebmonth{#2}
63.75 \beginL\number#3\endL\endR}
```

`\hebd` The macro `\hebd` will replace `\today` command when in Hebrew mode.

```
63.76 \def\hebd{\hebdate{\day}{\month}{\year}}
```

`\datehebrew` The macro `\datehebrew` redefines the command `\today` to produce Gregorian dates in Hebrew. It uses the macro `\hebd`.

```
63.77 \def\datehebrew{\let\today=\hebd}
```

The macro `\extrashebrew` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Hebrew language. The macro `\noextrashebrew` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrashebrew`.

`\extrashebrew` We switch font encoding to Hebrew and direction to right-to-left. We cannot use the regular language switching commands (for example, `\sethebrew` and `\unsethebrew` or `\selectlanguage{hebrew}`), when in restricted horizontal mode, because it will result in *unbalanced* `\beginR` or `\beginL` primitives. Instead, in T<sub>E</sub>X's restricted horizontal mode, the `\L{latin text}` and `\R{hebrew text}`, or `\embox{latin text}` and `\hmbbox{hebrew text}` should be used.

Hence, we use `\beginR` and `\beginL` switching commands only when not in restricted horizontal mode.

```
63.78 \addto\extrashebrew{%
63.79 \tohebrew%
63.80 \ifhmode\ifinner\else\beginR\fi\fi}
```

`\noextrashebrew` The macro `\noextrashebrew` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrashebrew`. We switch back to the previous font encoding and restore left-to-right direction.

```
63.81 \addto\noextrashebrew{%
63.82 \fromhebrew%
63.83 \ifhmode\ifinner\else\beginL\fi\fi}
```

Generally, we can switch to- and from- Hebrew by means of standard babel-defined commands, for example,

```
\selectlanguage{hebrew}
```

or

```
\begin{otherlanguage}{hebrew}
some Hebrew text
\end{otherlanguage}
```

Now we define two additional commands that offer the possibility to switch to and from Hebrew language. These commands are backward compatible with the previous versions of `hebrew.sty`.

`\sethebrew` The command `\sethebrew` will switch from the current font encoding to the hebrew font encoding, and from the current direction of text to the right-to-left mode. The command `\unsethebrew` switches back.

Both commands use standard right-to-left switching macros `\setrlanguage{rtl language name}` and `\unsetrlanguage{rtl language name}`, that defined in the `rlbabel.def` file.

```
63.84 \def\sethebrew{\setrlanguage{hebrew}}
63.85 \def\unsethebrew{\unsetrlanguage{hebrew}}
```

`\hebrewtext` The following two commands are *obsolete* and work only in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 compatibility mode. They are synonyms of `\sethebrew` and `\unsethebrew` defined above.

```
63.86 \ifcompatibility
63.87 \let\hebrewtext=\sethebrew
63.88 \let\nohebrewtext=\unsethebrew
63.89 \fi
```

`\tohebrew` These two commands change only the current font encoding to- and from- Hebrew encoding. Their implementation uses `\@torl{language name}` and `\@fromrl` macros defined in `rlbabel.def` file. Both commands may be useful *only* for package and class writers, not for regular users.

```
63.90 \def\tohebrew{\@torl{hebrew}}%
63.91 \def\fromhebrew{\@fromrl}
```

`\@hebrew` Sometimes we need to preserve Hebrew mode without knowing in which environment we are located now. For these cases, the `\@hebrew{hebrew text}` macro will be useful. Not that this macro is similar to the `\@number` and `\@latin` macros defined in `rlbabel.def` file.

```
63.92 \def\@hebrew#1{\beginR{\@hebrew#1}\endR}
63.93 \def\@hebrew{\protect\@hebrew}
```

### 63.3.1 Hebrew numerals

We provide commands to print numbers in the traditional notation using Hebrew letters. We need commands that print a Hebrew number from a decimal input, as well as commands to print the value of a counter as a Hebrew number.

`\ifgim@apost` Hebrew numbers can be written in various styles: with or without apostrophes, and with the letters kaf, mem, nun, pe, tsadi as either final or initial forms when they are the last letters in the sequence. We provide two flags to set the style options.

```
63.94 \newif\ifgim@apost % whether we print apostrophes
63.95 \newif\ifgim@final % whether we use final or initial letters
```

`\hebrewnumeral` The commands that print a Hebrew number must specify the style locally: relying on a global style option could cause a counter to print in an inconsistent manner—for instance, page numbers might appear in different styles if the global style option changed mid-way through a document. The commands only allow three of the four possible flag combinations (I do not know of a use that requires the combination of final letters and no apostrophes –RA).

Each command sets the style flags and calls `\@hebrew@numeral`. Double braces are used in order to protect the values of `\@tempcnta` and `\@tempcntb`, which are changed by this call; they also keep the flag assignments local (this is not important because the global values are never used).

```
63.96 \newcommand*{\hebrewnumeral}[1] % no apostrophe, no final letters
63.97 {\@gim@finalfalse\@gim@apostfalse\@hebrew@numeral{#1}}
```



```

63.98 \newcommand*{\Hebrewnumeral}[1] % apostrophe, no final letters
63.99  {\@gim@finalfalse\@gim@aposttrue\@hebrew@numeral{#1}}
63.100 \newcommand*{\Hebrewnumeralfinal}[1] % apostrophe, final letters
63.101  {\@gim@finaltrue\@gim@aposttrue\@hebrew@numeral{#1}}

```

`\alph` Counter-printing commands are based on the above commands. The natural name for the counter-printing commands is `\alph`, because Hebrew numerals are the only way to represent numbers with Hebrew letters (kaf always means 20, never 11). Hebrew has no uppercase letters, hence no need for the familiar meaning of `\Alph`; we therefore define `\alph` to print counters as Hebrew numerals without apostrophes, and `\Alph` to print with apostrophes. A third form, `\Alphfinal`, is provided to print with apostrophes and final letters, as is required for Hebrew year designators. The commands `\alph` and `\Alph` are defined in `latex.ltx`, and we only need to redefine the internal commands `\@alph` and `\@Alph`; for `\Alphfinal` we need to provide both a wrapper and an internal command. The counter printing commands are made semi-robust: without the `\protect`, commands like `\theenumii` break (I'm not quite clear on why this happens, -RA); at the same time, we cannot make the commands too robust (e.g. with `\DeclareRobustCommand`) because this would enter the command name rather than its value into files like `.aux`, `.toc` etc. The old meanings of meaning of `\@alph` and `\@Alph` are saved upon entering Hebrew mode and restored upon exiting it.

```

63.102 \addto\extrashebrew{%
63.103   \let\saved@alph=\@alph%
63.104   \let\saved@Alph=\@Alph%
63.105   \renewcommand*{\@alph}[1]{\protect\hebrewnumeral{\number#1}}%
63.106   \renewcommand*{\@Alph}[1]{\protect\Hebrewnumeral{\number#1}}%
63.107   \def\Alphfinal#1{\expandafter\@Alphfinal\csname c#1\endcsname}%
63.108   \providecommand*{\@Alphfinal}[1]{\protect\Hebrewnumeralfinal{\number#1}}
63.109 \addto\noextrashebrew{%
63.110   \let\@alph=\saved@alph%
63.111   \let\@Alph=\saved@Alph}

```

Note that `\alph` (without apostrophes) is already the appropriate choice for the second-level enumerate label, and `\Alph` (with apostrophes) is an appropriate choice for appendix; however, the default L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X labels need to be redefined for appropriate cross-referencing, see below. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X default class files specify `\Alph` for the fourth-level enumerate level, this should probably be changed. Also, the way labels get flushed left by default looks inappropriate for Hebrew numerals, so we should redefine `\labelenumii` as well as `\labelenumiv` (presently not implemented).

`\theenumii` Cross-references to counter labels need to be printed according to the language environment in which a label was issued, not the environment in which it is called: `\theenumiv` for example, a label (1b) issued in a Latin environment should be referred to as (1b) in a Hebrew text, and label (2dalet) issued in a Hebrew environment should be referred to as (2dalet) in a Latin text. This was the unanimous opinion in a poll sent to the IvriT<sub>E</sub>X list. We therefore redefine `\theenumii` and `\theenumiv`, so that an explicit language instruction gets written to the `.aux` file.

```

63.112 \renewcommand{\theenumii}
63.113  {\if@rl\protect\hebrewnumeral{\number\c@enumii}%
63.114   \else\protect\L{\protect\@alph{\number\c@enumii}}\fi}
63.115 \renewcommand{\theenumiv}
63.116  {\if@rl\protect\Hebrewnumeral{\number\c@enumiv}%
63.117   \else\protect\L{\protect\@Alph{\number\c@enumiv}}\fi}

```

We also need to control for the font and direction in which a counter label is printed. Direction is straightforward: a Latin label like (1b) should be written left-to-right when called in a Hebrew text, and a Hebrew label like (2dalet) should be written right-to-left when called in a Latin text. The font question is more delicate, because we should decide whether the numerals should be typeset in

the font of the language environment in which the label was issued, or that of the environment in which it is called.

- A purely numeric label like (23) looks best if it is set in the font of the surrounding language.
- But a mixed alphanumeric label like (1b) looks weird if the ‘1’ is taken from the Hebrew font; likewise, (2dalet) looks weird if the ‘2’ is taken from a Latin font.
- Finally, mixing the two possibilities is worst, because a single Hebrew sentence referring to examples (1b) and (2) would take the ‘1’ from the Latin font and the ‘2’ from the Hebrew font, and this looks really awful. (It is also very hard to implement).

In light of the conflicting considerations it seems like there’s no perfect solution. I have chosen to implement the top option, where numerals are taken from the font of the surrounding language, because it seems to me that reference to purely numeric labels is the most common, so this gives a good solution to the majority of cases and a mediocre solution to the minority.

We redefine the `\label` command which writes to the `.aux` file. Depending on the language environment we issue appropriate `\beginR/L... \endR/L` commands to control the direction without affecting the font. Since these commands do not affect the value of `\if@rl`, we cannot use the macro `\@brackets` to determine the correct brackets to be used with `\p@enumiii`; instead, we let the language environment determine an explicit definition.

```

63.118 \def\label#1{\@bsphack
63.119   \if@rl
63.120     \def\p@enumiii{\p@enumii}\theenumii}%
63.121     \protected@write\@auxout{%
63.122       {\string\newlabel{#1}{\beginR\@currentlabel\endR}{\thepage}}}%
63.123   \else
63.124     \def\p@enumiii{\p@enumii}\theenumii}%
63.125     \protected@write\@auxout{%
63.126       {\string\newlabel{#1}{\beginL\@currentlabel\endL}{\thepage}}}%
63.127   \fi
63.128   \@esphack}

```

NOTE: it appears that the definition of `\label` is language-independent and thus belongs in `rlbabel.def`, but this is not the case. The decision to typeset label numerals in the font of the surrounding language is reasonable for Hebrew, because mixed-font (1b) and (2dalet) are somewhat acceptable. The same may not be acceptable for Arabic, whose numeral glyphs are radically different from those in the Latin fonts. The decision about the direction may also be different for Arabic, which is more right-to-left oriented than Hebrew (two examples: dates like 15/6/2003 are written left-to-right in Hebrew but right-to-left in Arabic; equations like  $1 + 2 = 3$  are written left-to-right in Hebrew but right-to-left in Arabic elementary school textbooks using Arabic numeral glyphs). My personal hunch is that a label like (1b) in an Arabic text would be typeset left-to-right if the ‘1’ is a Western glyph, but right-to-left if the ‘1’ is an Arabic glyph. But this is just a guess, I’d have to ask Arab typesetters to find the correct answer. –RA.

`\appendix` The following code provides for the proper printing of appendix numbers in tables of contents. Section and chapter headings are normally bilingual: regardless of the text language, the author supplies each section/chapter with two headings—one for the Hebrew table of contents and one for the Latin table of contents. It makes sense that the label should be a Latin letter in the Latin table of contents and a Hebrew letter in the Hebrew table of contents. The definition is similar to that of `\theenumii` and `\theenumiv` above, but additional `\protect` commands ensure that the entire condition is written the `.aux` file. The appendix number will therefore be typeset according to the environment in which it is used rather

than issued: a Hebrew number (with apostrophes) in a Hebrew environment and a Latin capital letter in a Latin environment (the command `\@@Alph` is set in `rlbabel.def` to hold the default meaning of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X [latin] `\@Alph`, regardless of the mode in which it is issued). The net result is that the second appendix will be marked with ‘B’ in the Latin table of contents and with ‘bet’ in the Hebrew table of contents; the mark in the main text will depend on the language of the appendix itself.

```

63.129 \ifclassloaded{letter}{}{%
63.130 \ifclassloaded{slides}{}{%
63.131 \let\@@appendix=\appendix%
63.132 \@ifclassloaded{article}{%
63.133 \renewcommand\appendix{\@@appendix%
63.134 \renewcommand\thesection
63.135 {\protect@if@rl\protect\Hebrewnumeral{\number\c@section}%
63.136 \protect\else\@@Alph\c@section\protect\fi}}}
63.137 {\renewcommand\appendix{\@@appendix%
63.138 \renewcommand\thechapter
63.139 {\protect@if@rl\protect\Hebrewnumeral{\number\c@chapter}%
63.140 \protect\else\@@Alph\c@chapter\protect\fi}}}}

```

QUESTION: is this also the appropriate way to refer to an appendix in the text, or should we retain the original label the same way we did with `enumerate` labels? ANOTHER QUESTION: are similar redefinitions needed for other counters that generate texts in bilingual lists like `.lof/.fol` and `.lot/.tol`? –RA.

`\@hebrew@numeral` The command `\@hebrew@numeral` prints a Hebrew number. The groups of thousands, millions, billions are separated by apostrophes and typeset without apostrophes or final letters; the remainder (under 1000) is typeset conventionally, with the selected styles for apostrophes and final letters. The function calls on `\gim@no@mil` to typeset each three-digit block. The algorithm is recursive, but the maximum recursion depth is 4 because T<sub>E</sub>X only allows numbers up to  $2^{31} - 1 = 2,147,483,647$ . The typesetting routine is wrapped in `\@hebrew` in order to ensure that numbers are always typeset in Hebrew mode.

Initialize: `\@tempcnta` holds the value, `\@tempcntb` is used for calculations.

```

63.141 \newcommand*{\@hebrew@numeral}[1]
63.142 {\@hebrew{\@tempcnta=#1\@tempcntb=#1\relax
63.143 \divide\@tempcntb by 1000
        If we're under 1000, call \gim@nomil
63.144 \ifnum\@tempcntb=0\gim@nomil\@tempcnta\relax
        If we're above 1000 then force no apostrophe and no final letter styles for the
        value above 1000, recur for the value above 1000, add an apostrophe, and call
        \gim@nomil for the remainder.
63.145 \else{\@gim@apostfalse\@gim@finalfalse\@hebrew@numeral\@tempcntb}'%
63.146 \multiply\@tempcntb by 1000\relax
63.147 \advance\@tempcnta by -\@tempcntb\relax
63.148 \gim@nomil\@tempcnta\relax
63.149 \fi
63.150 }}

```

NOTE: is it the case that 15,000 and 16,000 are written as yod-he and yod-vav, rather than tet-vav and tet-zayin? This vaguely rings a bell, but I’m not certain. If this is the case, then the current behavior is incorrect and should be changed. –RA.

`\gim@nomil` The command `\gim@nomil` typesets an integer between 0 and 999 (for 0 it typesets nothing). The code has been modified from the old `hebcals.sty` (appropriate credits—Boris Lavva and Michail Rozman ?). `\@tempcnta` holds the total value that remains to be typeset. At each stage we find the highest valued letter that is less than or equal to `\@tempcnta`, and call on `\gim@print` to subtract this value and print the letter.

Initialize: \@tempcnta holds the value, there is no previous letter.

```
63.151 \newcommand*{\gim@nomil}[1]{\@tempcnta=#1\@gim@prevfalse
Find the hundreds digit.
63.152 \@tempcntb=\@tempcnta\divide\@tempcntb by 100\relax % hundreds digit
63.153 \ifcase\@tempcntb % print nothing if no hundreds
63.154 \or\gim@print{100}{\hebqof}%
63.155 \or\gim@print{200}{\hebresh}%
63.156 \or\gim@print{300}{\hebshin}%
63.157 \or\gim@print{400}{\hebtav}%
63.158 \or\hebtav\@gim@prevtrue\gim@print{500}{\hebqof}%
63.159 \or\hebtav\@gim@prevtrue\gim@print{600}{\hebresh}%
63.160 \or\hebtav\@gim@prevtrue\gim@print{700}{\hebshin}%
63.161 \or\hebtav\@gim@prevtrue\gim@print{800}{\hebtav}%
63.162 \or\hebtav\@gim@prevtrue\hebtav\gim@print{900}{\hebqof}%
63.163 \fi
```

Find the tens digit. The numbers 15 and 16 are traditionally printed as tet-vav (9 + 6) and tet-zayin (9 + 7) to avoid spelling the Lord's name.

```
63.164 \@tempcntb=\@tempcnta\divide\@tempcntb by 10\relax % tens digit
63.165 \ifcase\@tempcntb % print nothing if no tens
63.166 \or % number between 10 and 19
63.167 \ifnum\@tempcnta = 16 \gim@print {9}{\hebtet}% tet-zayin
63.168 \else\ifnum\@tempcnta = 15 \gim@print {9}{\hebtet}% tet-vav
63.169 \else \gim@print{10}{\hebyod}%
63.170 \fi % \@tempcnta = 15
63.171 \fi % \@tempcnta = 16
```

Initial or final forms are selected according to the current style option; \gim@print will force a non-final letter in non-final position by means of a local style change.

```
63.172 \or\gim@print{20}{\if@gim@final\hebfinalkaf\else\hebqof\fi}%
63.173 \or\gim@print{30}{\heblamed}%
63.174 \or\gim@print{40}{\if@gim@final\hebfinalmem\else\hebmam\fi}%
63.175 \or\gim@print{50}{\if@gim@final\hebfinalnun\else\hebnun\fi}%
63.176 \or\gim@print{60}{\hebsamekh}%
63.177 \or\gim@print{70}{\hebayin}%
63.178 \or\gim@print{80}{\if@gim@final\hebfinalpe\else\hebppe\fi}%
63.179 \or\gim@print{90}{\if@gim@final\hebfinaltsadi\else\hebttsadi\fi}%
63.180 \fi
```

Print the ones digit.

```
63.181 \ifcase\@tempcnta % print nothing if no ones
63.182 \or\gim@print{1}{\hebalef}%
63.183 \or\gim@print{2}{\hebbet}%
63.184 \or\gim@print{3}{\hebgimel}%
63.185 \or\gim@print{4}{\hebdalet}%
63.186 \or\gim@print{5}{\hebhe}%
63.187 \or\gim@print{6}{\hebvav}%
63.188 \or\gim@print{7}{\hebzayin}%
63.189 \or\gim@print{8}{\hebbet}%
63.190 \or\gim@print{9}{\hebtet}%
63.191 \fi
63.192 }
```

\gim@print The actual printing routine typesets a digit with the appropriate apostrophes:  
 \if@gim@prev if a number sequence consists of a single letter then it is followed by a single apostrophe, and if it consists of more than one letter then a double apostrophe is inserted before the last letter. We typeset the letters one at a time, keeping a flag that tells us if any previous letters had been typeset.

```
63.193 \newif\if@gim@prev % flag if a previous letter has been typeset
```

For each letter, we first subtract its value from the total. Then,

- if the result is zero then this is the last letter; we check the flag to see if this is the only letter and print it with the appropriate apostrophe;

- if the result is not zero then there remain additional letters to be typeset; we print without an apostrophe and set the ‘previous letter’ flag.

`\@tempcnta` holds the total value that remains to be typeset. We first deduct the letter’s value from `\@tempcnta`, so `\@tempcnta` is zero if and only if this is the last letter.

```
63.194 \newcommand*{\gim@print}[2]{% #2 is a letter, #1 is its value.
63.195 \advance\@tempcnta by -#1\relax% deduct the value from the remainder
```

If this is the last letter, we print with the appropriate apostrophe (depending on the style option): if there is a preceding letter, print "x if the style calls for apostrophes, x if it doesn’t; otherwise, this is the only letter: print x’ if the style calls for apostrophes, x if it doesn’t.

```
63.196 \ifnum\@tempcnta=0% if this is the last letter
63.197 \if@gim@prev\if@gim@apost"\fi#2%
63.198 \else#2\if@gim@apost'\fi\fi%
```

If this is not the last letter: print a non-final form (by forcing a local style option) and set the ‘previous letter’ flag.

```
63.199 \else{\@gim@finalfalse#2}\@gim@prevtrue\fi}
```

`\hebr` The older Hebrew counter commands `\hebr` and `\gim` are retained in order to keep older documents from breaking. They are set to be equivalent to `\alph`, and their use is deprecated. Note that `\hebr` gives different results than it had in the past—it now typesets 11 as yod-alef rather than kaf.

```
63.200 \let\hebr=\alph
63.201 \let\gim=\alph
```

For backward compatibility with ‘older’ `hebrew.sty` packages, we define Hebrew equivalents of some useful L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands. Note, however, that 8-bit macros defined in Hebrew are no longer supported.

```
63.202 \def\hebcopy{\protect\R{\hebhe\hebayin\hebtav\hehqof}}
63.203 \def\hebincl{\protect\R{\hebresh\hebtasadi"\hebbet}}
63.204 \def\hebpagel{\protect\R{\hebayin\hebmemb\hebvav\hebdalet}}
63.205 \def\hebto{\protect\R{\hebayin\hebdalet}}
```

`\hadgesh` produce “poor man’s bold” (heavy printout), when used with normal font glyphs. It is advisable to use bold font (for example, *Dead Sea*) instead of this macro.

```
63.206 \def\hadgesh#1{\leavevmode\setbox0=\hbox{#1}%
63.207 \kern-.025em\copy0\kern-\wd0
63.208 \kern.05em\copy0\kern-\wd0
63.209 \kern-.025em\raise.0433em\box0 }
```

`\piska` and `\piskapiska` sometimes used in ‘older’ hebrew sources, and should not be used in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>.

```
63.210 \if@compatibility
63.211 \def\piska#1{\item{#1}\hangindent=-\hangindent}
63.212 \def\piskapiska#1{\itemitem{#1}\hangindent=-\hangindent}
63.213 \fi
```

The following commands are simply synonyms for the standard ones, provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>.

```
63.214 \let\makafgadol=\textendash
63.215 \let\makafanak=\textemdash
63.216 \let\geresh=\textquoteright
63.217 \let\opengeresh=\textquoteright
63.218 \let\closegeresh=\textquoteleft
63.219 \let\openquote=\textquotedblright
63.220 \let\closequote=\textquotedblleft
63.221 \let\leftquotation=\textquotedblright
63.222 \let\rightquotation=\textquotedblleft
```

We need to ensure that Hebrew is used as the default right-to-left language at `\begin{document}`. The mechanism of defining the `\@rllanguagename` is the same as in `babel`'s `\languagename`: the last right-to-left language in the `\usepackage{babel}` line is set as the default right-to-left language at document beginning.

For example, the following code:

```
\usepackage[russian,hebrew,arabic,greek,english]{babel}
```

will set the Arabic language as the default right-to-left language and the English language as the default language. As a result, the commands `\L{}` and `\embox{}` will use English and `\R{}` and `\hmbbox{}` will use Arabic by default. These defaults can be changed with the next `\sethebrew` or `\selectlanguage{language name}` command.

```
63.223 \AtBeginDocument{\def\@rllanguagename{hebrew}}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
63.224 \ldf@finish{hebrew}
```

```
63.225 \end{hebrew}
```

## 63.4 Right to left support

This file `rlbabel.def` defines necessary bidirectional macro support for  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ . It is designed for use not only with Hebrew, but with any Right-to-Left languages, supported by `babel`. The macros provided in this file are language and encoding independent.

Right-to-left languages will use  $\text{\TeX}$  extensions, namely  $\text{\TeX}$  primitives `\beginL`, `\endL` and `\beginR`, `\endR`, currently implemented only in  $\epsilon\text{-TeX}$  and in  $\text{\TeX--XeT}$ .

If  $\epsilon\text{-TeX}$  is used, we should switch it to the *enhanced* mode:

```
63.226 (*rightleft)
63.227 \ifx\TeXstate\undefined\else%
63.228   \TeXstate=1
63.229 \fi
```

Note, that  $\epsilon\text{-TeX}$ 's format file should be created for *extended* mode. Mode can be checked by running  $\epsilon\text{-TeX}$  on some  $\text{\TeX}$  file, for example:

```
This is e-TeX, Version 3.14159-1.1 (Web2c 7.0)
entering extended mode
```

The second line should be `entering extended mode`.

We check if user uses Right-to-Left enabled engine instead of regular Knuth's  $\text{\TeX}$ :

```
63.230 \ifx\beginL\undefined%
63.231   \newlinechar'\^^J
63.232   \typeout{\^^JTo avoid this error message,\^^J%
63.233     run TeX--XeT or e-TeX engine instead of regular TeX.\^^J}
63.234   \errmessage{Right-to-Left Support Error: use TeX--XeT or e-TeX
63.235     engine}%
63.236 \fi
```

### 63.4.1 Switching from LR to RL mode and back

`\@torl` and `\@fromrl` are called each time the horizontal direction changes. They do all that is necessary besides changing the direction. Currently their task is to change the encoding information and mode (condition `\if@rl`). They should not normally be called by users: user-level macros, such as `\sethebrew`

and `\unsethebrew`, as well as babel's `\selectlanguage` are defined in language-definition files and should be used to change default language (and direction).

Local direction changing commands (for small pieces of text): `\L{}`, `\R{}`, `\embox{}` and `\hmbbox{}` are defined below in this file in language-independent manner.

`\if@rl` `rltrue` means that the main mode is currently Right-to-Left.  
`rlfalse` means that the main mode is currently Left-to-Right.

```
63.237 \newif\if@rl
```

`\if@rlmain` This is the main direction of the document. Unlike `\if@rl` it is set once and never changes.

`rltrue` means that the document is Right-to-Left.  
`rlfalse` means that the document is Left-to-Right.

Practically `\if@rlmain` is set according to the value of `\if@rl` in the beginning of the run.

```
63.238 \AtBeginDocument{% Here we set the main document direction
63.239   \newif\if@rlmain%
63.240   \if@rl% e.g: if the options to babel were [english,hebrew]
63.241     \@rlmaintrue%
63.242   \else% e.g: if the options to babel were [hebrew,english]
63.243     \@rlmainfalse%
63.244   \fi%
63.245 }
```

`\@torl` Switches current direction to Right-to-Left: saves current Left-to-Right encoding in `\lr@encodingdefault`, sets required Right-to-Left language name in `\@rllanguagename` (similar to babel's `\languagename`) and changes direction.

The Right-to-Left language encoding should be defined in `.ldf` file as special macro created by concatenation of the language name and string `encoding`, for example, for Hebrew it will be `\hebrewencoding`.

```
63.246 \DeclareRobustCommand{\@torl}[1]{%
63.247   \if@rl\else%
63.248     \let\lr@encodingdefault=\encodingdefault%
63.249   \fi%
63.250   \def\@rllanguagename{#1}%
63.251   \def\encodingdefault{\csname#1encoding\endcsname}%
63.252   \fontencoding{\encodingdefault}%
63.253   \selectfont%
63.254   \@rltrue}
```

`\@fromrl` Opposite to `\@torl`, switches current direction to Left-to-Right: restores saved Left-to-Right encoding (`\lr@encodingdefault`) and changes direction.

```
63.255 \DeclareRobustCommand{\@fromrl}{%
63.256   \if@rl%
63.257     \let\encodingdefault=\lr@encodingdefault%
63.258   \fi%
63.259   \fontencoding{\encodingdefault}%
63.260   \selectfont%
63.261   \@rlfalse}
```

`\selectlanguage` This standard babel's macro should be redefined to support bidirectional tables. We divide `\selectlanguage` implementation to two parts, and the first part calls the second `\@@selectlanguage`.

```
63.262 \expandafter\def\csname selectlanguage \endcsname#1{%
63.263   \edef\languagename{%
63.264     \ifnum\escapechar=\expandafter'\string#1\@empty
63.265       \else \string#1\@empty\fi}%
63.266   \@@selectlanguage{\languagename}}
```

`\@@selectlanguage` This new internal macro redefines a final part of the standard babel's `\selectlanguage` implementation.

Standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X provides us with 3 tables: Table of Contents (`.toc`), List of Figures (`.lof`), and List of Tables (`.lot`). In multi-lingual texts mixing Left-to-Right languages with Right-to-Left ones, the use of various directions in one table results in very ugly output. Therefore, these 3 standard tables will be used now only for Left-to-Right languages, and we will add 3 Right-to-Left tables (their extensions are simply reversed ones): RL Table of Contents (`.cot`), RL List of Figures (`.fol`), and RL List of Tables (`.lof`).

```

63.267 \def\@@selectlanguage#1{%
63.268   \select@language{#1}%
63.269   \if@filesw
63.270     \protected@write\@auxout{}\string\select@language{#1}%
63.271     \if@rl%
63.272       \addtocontents{cot}{\xstring\select@language{#1}}%
63.273       \addtocontents{fol}{\xstring\select@language{#1}}%
63.274       \addtocontents{tol}{\xstring\select@language{#1}}%
63.275     \else%
63.276       \addtocontents{toc}{\xstring\select@language{#1}}%
63.277       \addtocontents{lof}{\xstring\select@language{#1}}%
63.278       \addtocontents{lot}{\xstring\select@language{#1}}%
63.279     \fi%
63.280 \fi}

```

`\setrlanguage` The `\setrlanguage` and `\unsetrlanguage` pair of macros is proved to very useful in bilingual texts, for example, in Hebrew-English texts. The language-specific commands, for example, `\sethebrew` and `\unsethebrew` use these macros as basis.

Implementation saves and restores other language in `\other@languagename` variable, and uses internal macro `\@@selectlanguage`, defined above, to switch between languages.

```

63.281 \let\other@languagename=\languagename
63.282 \DeclareRobustCommand{\setrlanguage}[1]{%
63.283   \if@rl\else%
63.284     \let\other@languagename=\languagename%
63.285   \fi%
63.286   \def\languagename{#1}%
63.287   \@@selectlanguage{\languagename}}
63.288 \DeclareRobustCommand{\unsetrlanguage}[1]{%
63.289   \if@rl%
63.290     \let\languagename=\other@languagename%
63.291   \fi
63.292   \@@selectlanguage{\languagename}}

```

`\L` Macros for changing direction, originally taken from TUGboat. Usage: `\L{Left to Right text}` and `\R{Right to Left text}`. Numbers should also be enclosed in `\L{}`, as in `\L{123}`.

Note, that these macros do not receive language name as parameter. Instead, the saved `\@rllanguagename` will be used. We assume that each Right-to-Left language defines `\tolanguagename` and `\fromlanguagename` macros in language definition file, for example, for Hebrew: `\tohebrew` and `\fromhebrew` macros in `hebrew.ldf` file.

The macros `\L` and `\R` include ‘protect’ to to make them robust and allow use, for example, in tables.

Due to the fact that some packages have different definitions for `\L` the macro `\HeblatexRedefineL` is provided to override them. This may be required with `hyperref`, for instance.

```

63.293 \let\next=\
63.294 \def\HeblatexRedefineL{%

```



```

63.295 \def\L{\protect\pL}%
63.296 }
63.297 \HeblatexRedefineL
63.298 \def\pL{\protect\afterassignment\moreL \let\next= }
63.299 \def\moreL{\bracetext \aftergroup\endL \beginL\csname
63.300 from\@rllanguagename\endcsname}

63.301 \def\R{\protect\pR}
63.302 \def\pR{\protect\afterassignment\moreR \let\next= }
63.303 \def\moreR{\bracetext \aftergroup\endR \beginR\csname
63.304 to\@rllanguagename\endcsname}
63.305 \def\bracetext{\ifcat\next{\else\ifcat\next}\fi
63.306 \errmessage{Missing left brace has been substituted}\fi \bgroup}
63.307 \everydisplay{\if@rl\aftergroup\beginR\fi }

```

`\@ensure@R` Two small internal macros, a-la `\ensuremath`

```

\@ensure@L63.308 \def\@ensure@R#1{\if@rl#1\else\R{#1}\fi}
63.309 \def\@ensure@L#1{\if@rl\L{#1}\else#1\fi}

```

Take care of Right-to-Left indentation in every paragraph. Originally, `\noindent` was redefined for right-to-left by Yaniv Bargury, then the implementation was rewritten by Alon Ziv using an idea by Chris Rowley: `\noindent` now works unmodified.

```

63.310 \def\rl@everypar{\if@rl{\setbox\z@\lastbox\beginR\usebox\z@}\fi}
63.311 \let\o@everypar=\everypar
63.312 \def\everypar#1{\o@everypar{\rl@everypar#1}}

```

`\hmbbox` Useful vbox commands. All text in math formulas is best enclosed in these: LR text in `\embox` and RL text in `\hmbbox`. `\mbox{}` is useless for both cases, since it typesets in Left-to-Right even for Right-to-Left languages (additions by Yaniv Bargury).

```

63.313 \newcommand{\hmbbox}[1]{\mbox{R{#1}}}
63.314 \newcommand{\embox}[1]{\mbox{L{#1}}}

```

`\@brackets` When in Right-to-Left mode, brackets should be swapped. This macro receives 3 parameters: left bracket, content, right bracket. Brackets can be square brackets, braces, or parentheses.

```

63.315 \def\@brackets#1#2#3{\protect\if@rl #3#2#1\protect\else
63.316 #1#2#3\protect\fi}

```

`\@number` `\@number` preserves numbers direction from Left to Right. `\@latin` in addition `\@latin` switches current encoding to the latin.

```

63.317 \def\@@number#1{\ifmmode\else\beginL\fi#1\ifmmode\else\endL\fi}
63.318 \def\@@latin#1{\@number{\@fromrl#1}}
63.319 \def\@number{\protect\@number}
63.320 \def\@latin{\protect\@latin}

```

### 63.4.2 Counters

To make counter references work in Right to Left text, we need to surround their original definitions with an `\@number{...}` or `\@latin{...}`. Note, that language-specific counters, such as `\hebr` or `\gim` are provided with language definition file.

We start with saving the original definitions:

```

63.321 \let\@@arabic=\@arabic
63.322 \let\@@roman=\@roman
63.323 \let\@@Roman=\@Roman
63.324 \let\@@alph=\@alph
63.325 \let\@@Alph=\@Alph

```

```

\@arabic Arabic and roman numbers should be from Left to Right. In addition, roman
\@roman numerals, both lower- and upper-case should be in latin encoding.
\@Roman63.326 \def\@arabic#1{\@number{\@arabic#1}}
63.327 \def\@roman#1{\@latin{\@roman#1}}
63.328 \def\@Roman#1{\@latin{\@Roman#1}}

\arabicnorl This macro preserves the original definition of \@arabic (overrides the overriding
of \@arabic)
63.329 \def\arabicnorl#1{\expandafter\@arabic\csname c@#1\endcsname}

\make@lr In Right to Left documents all counters defined in the standard document
classes article, report and book provided with LATEX 2ε, such as \thesection,
\thefigure, \theequation should be typed as numbers from left to right. To
ensure direction, we use the following \make@lr{counter} macro:
63.330 \def\make@lr#1{\begingroup
63.331 \toks@=\expandafter{#1}%
63.332 \edef\x{\endgroup
63.333 \def\noexpand#1{\noexpand\@number{\the\toks@}}}%
63.334 \x}

63.335 \ifclassloaded{letter}{-}{%
63.336 \@ifclassloaded{slides}{-}{%
63.337 \make@lr\thesection
63.338 \make@lr\thesubsection
63.339 \make@lr\thesubsubsection
63.340 \make@lr\theparagraph
63.341 \make@lr\thesubparagraph
63.342 \make@lr\thefigure
63.343 \make@lr\thetable
63.344 }
63.345 \make@lr\theequation
63.346 }

```

### 63.4.3 Preserving logos

Preserve T<sub>E</sub>X, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> logos.

```

\TeX
63.347 \let\@TeX\TeX
63.348 \def\TeX{\@latin{\@TeX}}

\LaTeX
63.349 \let\@LaTeX\LaTeX
63.350 \def\LaTeX{\@latin{\@LaTeX}}

\LaTeXe
63.351 \let\@LaTeXe\LaTeXe
63.352 \def\LaTeXe{\@latin{\@LaTeXe}}

```

### 63.4.4 List environments

List environments in Right-to-Left languages, are ticked and indented from the right instead of from the left. All the definitions that caused indentation are revised for Right-to-Left languages. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X keeps track on the indentation with the \leftmargin and \rightmargin values.

**list** Thus we need to override the definition of the \list macro: when in RTL mode, the right margins are the begining of the line.

```

63.353 \def\list#1#2{%
63.354 \ifnum \@listdepth >5\relax
63.355 \@toodeep

```

```

63.356 \else
63.357   \global\advance\@listdepth\@ne
63.358 \fi
63.359 \rightmargin\z@
63.360 \listparindent\z@
63.361 \itemindent\z@
63.362 \csname @list\romannumeral\the\@listdepth\endcsname
63.363 \def\@itemlabel{#1}%
63.364 \let\makelabel\@mklab
63.365 \@nmbrrlistfalse
63.366 #2\relax
63.367 \@trivlist
63.368 \parskip\parsep
63.369 \parindent\listparindent
63.370 \advance\linewidth -\rightmargin
63.371 \advance\linewidth -\leftmargin

```

The only change in the macro is the `\if@rl` case:

```

63.372 \if@rl
63.373   \advance\@totalleftmargin \rightmargin
63.374 \else
63.375   \advance\@totalleftmargin \leftmargin
63.376 \fi
63.377 \parshape \@ne \@totalleftmargin \linewidth
63.378 \ignorespaces}

```

`\labelenumii` The `\labelenumii` and `\p@enumiii` commands use *parentheses*. They are revised  
`\p@enumiii` to work Right-to-Left with the help of `\@brackets` macro defined above.

```

63.379 \def\labelenumii{\@brackets(\thenumii)}
63.380 \def\p@enumiii{\p@enumii\@brackets(\thenumii)}

```

### 63.4.5 Tables of moving stuff

Tables of moving arguments: table of contents (`toc`), list of figures (`lof`) and list of tables (`lot`) are handles here. These three default L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X tables will be used now exclusively for Left to Right stuff.

Three additional Right-to-Left tables: RL table of contents (`cot`), RL list of figures (`fol`), and RL list of tables (`tol`) are added. These three tables will be used exclusively for Right to Left stuff.

`\@tableofcontents` We define 3 new macros similar to the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X tables, but with one pa-  
`\@listoffigures` rameter — table file extension. These macros will help us to define our additional  
`\@listoftables` tables below.

```

63.381 \@ifclassloaded{letter}{}{% other
63.382 \@ifclassloaded{slides}{}{% other
63.383   \@ifclassloaded{article}{% article
63.384     \newcommand\@tableofcontents[1]{%
63.385       \section*\@contentsname\@mkboth%
63.386         {\MakeUppercase\@contentsname}%
63.387         {\MakeUppercase\@contentsname}}%
63.388       \@starttoc{#1}}
63.389   \newcommand\@listoffigures[1]{%
63.390     \section*\@listfigurename\@mkboth%
63.391       {\MakeUppercase\@listfigurename}%
63.392       {\MakeUppercase\@listfigurename}}%
63.393     \@starttoc{#1}}
63.394   \newcommand\@listoftables[1]{%
63.395     \section*\@listtablename\@mkboth%
63.396       {\MakeUppercase\@listtablename}%
63.397       {\MakeUppercase\@listtablename}}%
63.398     \@starttoc{#1}}}%
63.399   {% else report or book

```

```

63.400 \newcommand\@tableofcontents[1]{%
63.401 \@restonecolfalse\if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn%
63.402 \fi\chapter*{\contentsname\@mkboth%
63.403 {\MakeUppercase\contentsname}%
63.404 {\MakeUppercase\contentsname}}%
63.405 \@starttoc{#1}\if@restonecol\twocolumn\fi}
63.406 \newcommand\@listoffigures[1]{%
63.407 \@restonecolfalse\if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn%
63.408 \fi\chapter*{\listfigurename\@mkboth%
63.409 {\MakeUppercase\listfigurename}%
63.410 {\MakeUppercase\listfigurename}}%
63.411 \@starttoc{#1}\if@restonecol\twocolumn\fi}
63.412 \newcommand\@listoftables[1]{%
63.413 \if@twocolumn\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn\else\@restonecolfalse\fi%
63.414 \chapter*{\listtablename\@mkboth%
63.415 {\MakeUppercase\listtablename}%
63.416 {\MakeUppercase\listtablename}}%
63.417 \@starttoc{#1}\if@restonecol\twocolumn\fi}}%

```

`\lrrtableofcontents` Left-to-Right tables are called now `\lrrxxx` and defined with the aid of three macros `\lrrlistoffigures` defined above (extensions `toc`, `lof`, and `lot`).

```

\lrrlistoftables63.418 \newcommand\lrrtableofcontents{\@tableofcontents{toc}}%
63.419 \newcommand\lrrlistoffigures{\@listoffigures{lof}}%
63.420 \newcommand\lrrlistoftables{\@listoftables{lot}}%

```

`\lrrtableofcontents` Right-to-Left tables will be called `\lrrxxx` and defined with the aid of three macros `\lrrlistoffigures` defined above (extensions `cot`, `fol`, and `tol`).

```

\lrrlistoftables63.421 \newcommand\lrrtableofcontents{\@tableofcontents{cot}}%
63.422 \newcommand\lrrlistoffigures{\@listoffigures{fol}}%
63.423 \newcommand\lrrlistoftables{\@listoftables{tol}}%

```

`\tableofcontents` Let `xxx` be `\lrrxxx` if the current direction is Right-to-Left and `\lrrxxx` if it is Left-to-Right.

```

\listoftables63.424 \renewcommand\tableofcontents{\if@rl\lrrtableofcontents%
63.425 \else\lrrtableofcontents\fi}
63.426 \renewcommand\listoffigures{\if@rl\lrrlistoffigures%
63.427 \else\lrrlistoffigures\fi}
63.428 \renewcommand\listoftables{\if@rl\lrrlistoftables%
63.429 \else\lrrlistoftables\fi}}

```

`\@dottedtocline` The following makes problems when making a Right-to-Left tables, since it uses `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` which are both mode dependent.

```

63.430 \def\@dottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
63.431 \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth \else
63.432 \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
63.433 {\if@rl\rightskip\else\leftskip\fi #2\relax
63.434 \if@rl\leftskip\else\rightskip\fi \@tocrmarg \parfillskip
63.435 -\if@rl\leftskip\else\rightskip\fi
63.436 \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
63.437 \interlinepenalty\@M
63.438 \leavevmode
63.439 \@tempdima #3\relax
63.440 \advance\if@rl\rightskip\else\leftskip\fi \@tempdima
63.441 \null\nobreak\hskip -\if@rl\rightskip\else\leftskip\fi
63.442 {#4}\nobreak
63.443 \leaders\hbox{$\m@th
63.444 \mkern \dotsep mu\hbox{.}\mkern \dotsep
63.445 mu$}\hfill
63.446 \nobreak
63.447 \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor \beginL#5\endL}%
63.448 \par}%
63.449 \fi}

```

`\l@part` This standard macro was redefined for table of contents since it uses `\rightskip` which is mode dependent.

```

63.450 \ifclassloaded{letter}{}{% other
63.451 \ifclassloaded{slides}{}{% other
63.452 \renewcommand*\l@part[2]{%
63.453   \ifnum \c@tocdepth >-2\relax
63.454     \addpenalty{-\@highpenalty}%
63.455     \addvspace{2.25em \@plus\p@}%
63.456     \begingroup
63.457       \setlength\@tempdima{3em}%
63.458       \parindent \z@ \if@r1\leftskip\else\rightskip\fi \@pnumwidth
63.459       \parfillskip -\@pnumwidth
63.460       {\leavevmode
63.461         \large \bfseries #1\hfil \hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hss#2}}\par
63.462         \nobreak
63.463         \global\@nobreaktrue
63.464         \everypar{\global\@nobreakfalse\everypar{}}%
63.465       \endgroup
63.466     \fi}}

```

`\@part` Part is redefined to support new Right-to-Left table of contents (cot) as well as the Left-to-Right one (toc).

```

63.467 \ifclassloaded{article}{% article class
63.468   \def\@part[#1]#2{%
63.469     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
63.470       \refstepcounter{part}%
63.471       \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\thepart\hspace{1em}#1}%
63.472       \addcontentsline{cot}{part}{\thepart\hspace{1em}#1}%
63.473     \else
63.474       \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
63.475       \addcontentsline{cot}{part}{#1}%
63.476     \fi
63.477     {\parindent \z@ \raggedright
63.478       \interlinepenalty \@M
63.479       \normalfont
63.480       \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
63.481         \Large\bfseries \partname~\thepart
63.482         \par\nobreak
63.483       \fi
63.484       \huge \bfseries #2%
63.485       \markboth{}{\}\par}%
63.486     \nobreak
63.487     \vskip 3ex
63.488     \@afterheading}%
63.489 }{% report and book classes
63.490   \def\@part[#1]#2{%
63.491     \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
63.492       \refstepcounter{part}%
63.493       \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\thepart\hspace{1em}#1}%
63.494       \addcontentsline{cot}{part}{\thepart\hspace{1em}#1}%
63.495     \else
63.496       \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
63.497       \addcontentsline{cot}{part}{#1}%
63.498     \fi
63.499     \markboth{}{\}%
63.500     {\centering
63.501       \interlinepenalty \@M
63.502       \normalfont
63.503       \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
63.504         \huge\bfseries \partname~\thepart
63.505         \par
63.506         \vskip 20\p@

```

```

63.507     \fi
63.508     \Huge \bfseries #2\par}%
63.509     \@endpart}}

\@sect Section was redefined from the latex.ltx file. It is changed to support both
Left-to-Right (toc) and Right-to-Left (cot) table of contents simultaneously.

63.510 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
63.511   \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth
63.512     \let\@svsec\@empty
63.513   \else
63.514     \refstepcounter{#1}%
63.515     \protected@edef\@svsec{\@secntformat{#1}\relax}%
63.516   \fi
63.517   \@tempskipa #5\relax
63.518   \ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@
63.519     \begingroup
63.520       #6{%
63.521         \@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%
63.522         \interlinepenalty \M #8\@par}%
63.523     \endgroup
63.524     \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}%
63.525     \addcontentsline{toc}{#1}{%
63.526       \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth \else
63.527         \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
63.528       \fi
63.529       #7}%
63.530     \addcontentsline{cot}{#1}{%
63.531       \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth \else
63.532         \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
63.533       \fi
63.534       #7}%
63.535   \else
63.536     \def\@svsechd{%
63.537       #6{\hskip #3\relax
63.538         \@svsec #8}%
63.539       \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}%
63.540       \addcontentsline{toc}{#1}{%
63.541         \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth \else
63.542           \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
63.543         \fi
63.544         #7}%
63.545       \addcontentsline{cot}{#1}{%
63.546         \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth \else
63.547           \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
63.548         \fi
63.549         #7}}%
63.550   \fi
63.551   \@xsect{#5}}

```

`\@caption` Caption was redefined from the latex.ltx file. It is changed to support Left-to-Right list of figures and list of tables (lof and lot) as well as new Right-to-Left lists (fol and to1) simultaneously.

```

63.552 \long\def\@caption#1[#2]#3{%
63.553   \par
63.554   \addcontentsline{\csname ext@#1\endcsname}{#1}%
63.555     {\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
63.556     \ignorespaces #2}}%
63.557 \def\@figm{figure}
63.558 \ifx#1\@figm\addcontentsline{fol}{#1}%
63.559   {\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
63.560   \ignorespaces #2}}\fi%
63.561 \def\@tblnm{table}

```

```

63.562 \ifx#1\@tblnm\addcontentsline{tol}{#1}%
63.563   {\protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%
63.564   {\ignorespaces #2}}\fi%
63.565 \begingroup
63.566   \@parboxrestore
63.567   \if@minipage
63.568     \@setminipage
63.569   \fi
63.570   \normalsize
63.571   \@makecaption{\csname fnum#1\endcsname}{\ignorespaces #3}\par
63.572 \endgroup

```

`\l@chapter` This standard macro was redefined for table of contents since it uses `\rightskip` which is mode dependent.

```

63.573 \@ifclassloaded{letter}{-}{%
63.574 \@ifclassloaded{slides}{-}{%
63.575   \@ifclassloaded{article}{-}{%
63.576     \renewcommand*\l@chapter[2]{%
63.577       \ifnum \c@tocdepth >\m@ne
63.578         \addpenalty{-\@highpenalty}%
63.579         \vskip 1.0em \@plus\p@
63.580         \setlength\@tempdima{1.5em}%
63.581         \begingroup
63.582           \parindent \z@ \if@rl\leftskip\else\rightskip\fi \@pnumwidth
63.583           \parfillskip -\@pnumwidth
63.584           \leavevmode \bfseries
63.585           \advance\if@rl\rightskip\else\leftskip\fi\@tempdima
63.586           \hskip -\if@rl\rightskip\else\leftskip\fi
63.587           #1\nobreak\hfil \nobreak\hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hss#2}\par
63.588           \penalty\@highpenalty
63.589         \endgroup
63.590       \fi}}

```

`\l@section` The toc entry for section did not work in article style. Also it does not print dots, which is funny when most of your work is divided into sections.

`\l@subsection` It was revised to use `\@dottedtocline` as in `report.sty` (by Yaniv Bargury)  
`\l@subsubsection` and was updated later for all kinds of sections (by Boris Lavva).

```

\l@paragraph
\l@subparagraph63.591 \@ifclassloaded{article}{%
63.592 \renewcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
63.593 \renewcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}
63.594 \renewcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}
63.595 \renewcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}
63.596 \renewcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}

```

### 63.4.6 Two-column mode

This is the support of `twocolumn` option for the standard  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$  classes. The following code was originally borrowed from the Arab $\TeX$  package, file `latexext.sty`, copyright by Klaus Lagally, Institut fuer Informatik, Universitaet Stuttgart. It was updated for this package by Boris Lavva.

```

\@outputdblcol First column is \@leftcolumn will be shown at the right side, Second column is
\set@outputdblcol \@outputbox will be shown at the left side.
rl@outputdblcol \set@outputdblcol IS CURRENTLY DISABLED. TODO: REMOVE IT
[tzafir]
63.597 \let\@outputdblcol\@outputdblcol
63.598 %\def\set@outputdblcol{%
63.599 % \if@rl\renewcommand{\@outputdblcol}{\rl@outputdblcol}%
63.600 % \else\renewcommand{\@outputdblcol}{\@outputdblcol}\fi}
63.601 \renewcommand{\@outputdblcol}{%
63.602 \if@rlmain%

```

```

63.603 \rl@outputdblcol%
63.604 \else%
63.605 @@outputdblcol%
63.606 \fi%
63.607 }
63.608 \newcommand{\rl@outputdblcol}{%
63.609 \if@firstcolumn
63.610 \global \@firstcolumnfalse
63.611 \global \setbox\@leftcolumn \box\@outputbox
63.612 \else
63.613 \global \@firstcolumntrue
63.614 \setbox\@outputbox \vbox {\hb@xt@\textwidth {%
63.615 \hskip\columnwidth%
63.616 \hfil\vrule\@width\columnseprule\hfil
63.617 \hb@xt@\columnwidth {%
63.618 \box\@leftcolumn \hss}%
63.619 \hb@xt@\columnwidth {%
63.620 \hskip-\textwidth%
63.621 \box\@outputbox \hss}%
63.622 \hskip\columnsep%
63.623 \hskip\columnwidth}}%
63.624 \@combinedblfloats
63.625 \@outputpage
63.626 \begingroup
63.627 \@dblfloatplacement
63.628 \@startdblcolumn
63.629 \@whiles\if@fcolmade \fi
63.630 {\@outputpage
63.631 \@startdblcolumn}%
63.632 \endgroup
63.633 \fi}

```

### 63.4.7 Footnotes

`\footnoterule` The Right-to-Left footnote rule is simply reversed default Left-to-Right one. Footnotes can be used in RL or LR main modes, but changing mode while a footnote is pending is still unsolved.

```

63.634 \let\@@footnoterule=\footnoterule
63.635 \def\footnoterule{\if@rl\hb@xt@\hspace{\hss\vbox{\@@footnoterule}}%
63.636 \else\@@footnoterule\fi}

```

### 63.4.8 Headings and two-side support

When using `headings` or `myheadings` modes, we have to ensure that the language and direction of heading is the same as the whole chapter/part of the document. This is implementing by setting special variable `\headlanguage` when starting new chapter/part.

In addition, when selecting the `twoside` option (default in `book` document class), the LR and RL modes need to be set properly for things on the heading and footing. This is done here too.

```

ps@headings First, we will support the standard letter class:
ps@myheadings63.637 \@ifclassloaded{letter}{%
headeven63.638 \def\headodd{\protect\if@rl\beginR\fi\headtoname{}}
headodd63.639 \ignorespaces\toname
63.640 \hfil \@date
63.641 \hfil \pagename{} \thepage\protect\if@rl\endR\fi}
63.642 \if@twoside
63.643 \def\ps@headings{%
63.644 \let\@oddfoot\@empty\let\@evenfoot\@empty
63.645 \def\@oddhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headodd}

```



```

63.646         \let\@evenhead\@oddhead}
63.647 \else
63.648     \def\ps@headings{%
63.649         \let\@oddfoot\@empty
63.650         \def\@oddhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headodd}}
63.651 \fi
63.652 \def\headfirst{\protect\if@r1\beginR\fi\fromlocation \hfill %
63.653         \telephonenumber\protect\if@r1\endR\fi}
63.654 \def\ps@firstpage{%
63.655     \let\@oddhead\@empty
63.656     \def\@oddfoot{\raisebox{-45\p0}[\z0]{%
63.657         \hb@xt@\textwidth{\hspace*{100\p0}}%
63.658         \ifcase \@ptsize\relax
63.659             \normalsize
63.660         \or
63.661             \small
63.662         \or
63.663             \footnotesize
63.664         \fi
63.665         \select@language{\headlanguage}\headfirst}}\hss}}
63.666 %
63.667 \renewcommand{\opening}[1]{%
63.668     \let\headlanguage=\languagename%
63.669     \ifx\@empty\fromaddress%
63.670         \thispagestyle{firstpage}%
63.671         {\raggedleft\@date\par}%
63.672     \else % home address
63.673         \thispagestyle{empty}%
63.674         {\raggedleft
63.675         \if@r1\begin{tabular}{@{\beginR\csmame%
63.676             to\@rllanguagename\endcsmame}r{\endR}}\ignorespaces
63.677             \fromaddress \*[2\parskip]%
63.678             \@date \end{tabular}\par%
63.679         \else\begin{tabular}{1}\ignorespaces
63.680             \fromaddress \*[2\parskip]%
63.681             \@date \end{tabular}\par%
63.682         \fi}%
63.683     \fi
63.684     \vspace{2\parskip}%
63.685     {\raggedright \toname \ \ \toaddress \par}%
63.686     \vspace{2\parskip}%
63.687     #1\par\nobreak}
63.688 }

```

Then, the article, report and book document classes are supported. Note, that in one-sided mode `\markright` was changed to `\markboth`.

```

63.689 {% article, report, book
63.690     \def\headeven{\protect\if@r1\beginR\thepage\hfil\rightmark\endR
63.691         \protect\else\thepage\hfil{\slshape\leftmark}
63.692         \protect\fi}
63.693     \def\headodd{\protect\if@r1\beginR\leftmark\hfil\thepage\endR
63.694         \protect\else{\slshape\rightmark}\hfil\thepage
63.695         \protect\fi}
63.696     \@ifclassloaded{article}{% article
63.697         \if@twoside % two-sided
63.698             \def\ps@headings{%
63.699                 \let\@oddfoot\@empty\let\@evenfoot\@empty
63.700                 \def\@evenhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headeven}%
63.701                 \def\@oddhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headodd}%
63.702                 \let\@mkboth\markboth
63.703                 \def\sectionmark##1{%
63.704                     \markboth {\MakeUppercase{%
63.705                         \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\z0

```

```

63.706         \thesection\quad
63.707         \fi
63.708         ##1}}{}}%
63.709     \def\subsectionmark##1{%
63.710         \markright{%
63.711             \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\@ne
63.712                 \thesubsection\quad
63.713             \fi
63.714         ##1}}}}
63.715 \else         % one-sided
63.716 \def\ps@headings{%
63.717     \let\@oddfoot\@empty
63.718     \def\@oddhead{\headodd}%
63.719     \let\@mkboth\markboth
63.720     \def\sectionmark##1{%
63.721         \markboth{\MakeUppercase{%
63.722             \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
63.723                 \thesection\quad
63.724             \fi
63.725             ##1}}{\MakeUppercase{%
63.726                 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
63.727                     \thesection\quad
63.728                 \fi
63.729                 ##1}}}}
63.730 \fi
63.731 %
63.732 \def\ps@myheadings{%
63.733     \let\@oddfoot\@empty\let\@evenfoot\@empty
63.734     \def\@evenhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headeven}%
63.735     \def\@oddhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headodd}%
63.736     \let\@mkboth\@gobbletwo
63.737     \let\sectionmark\@gobble
63.738     \let\subsectionmark\@gobble
63.739 }}{% report and book
63.740 \if@twoside % two-sided
63.741     \def\ps@headings{%
63.742         \let\@oddfoot\@empty\let\@evenfoot\@empty
63.743         \def\@evenhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headeven}
63.744         \def\@oddhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headodd}
63.745         \let\@mkboth\markboth
63.746         \def\chaptermark##1{%
63.747             \markboth{\MakeUppercase{%
63.748                 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
63.749                     \@chapapp\ \thechapter. \ %
63.750                 \fi
63.751                 ##1}}{}}%
63.752         \def\sectionmark##1{%
63.753             \markright {\MakeUppercase{%
63.754                 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\z@
63.755                     \thesection. \ %
63.756                 \fi
63.757                 ##1}}}}
63.758 \else % one-sided
63.759     \def\ps@headings{%
63.760         \let\@oddfoot\@empty
63.761         \def\@oddhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headodd}
63.762         \let\@mkboth\markboth
63.763         \def\chaptermark##1{%
63.764             \markboth{\MakeUppercase{%
63.765                 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
63.766                     \@chapapp\ \thechapter. \ %
63.767                 \fi

```

```

63.768             ##1}}{\MakeUppercase{%
63.769             \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
63.770             \@chapapp\ \thechapter. \ %
63.771             \fi
63.772             ##1}}}}
63.773 \fi
63.774 \def\ps@myheadings{%
63.775 \let\@oddfoot\@empty\let\@evenfoot\@empty
63.776 \def\@evenhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headeven}%
63.777 \def\@oddhead{\select@language{\headlanguage}\headodd}%
63.778 \let\@mkboth\@gobbletwo
63.779 \let\chaptermark\@gobble
63.780 \let\sectionmark\@gobble
63.781 }}}

```

### 63.4.9 Postscript Problems

Any command that is implemented by PostScript directives, e.g. commands from the `ps-tricks` package, needs to be fixed, because the PostScript directives are being interpreted after the document has been converted by T<sub>E</sub>X to visual Hebrew (DVI, PostScript and PDF have visual Hebrew).

For instance: Suppose you wrote in your document:

```
\textcolor{cyan}{some ltr text}
```

This would be interpreted by T<sub>E</sub>X to something like:

```
[postscript:make color cyan]some LTR text[postscript:make color black]
```

However, with the bidirectionality support we get:

```
\textcolor{cyan}{\hebalef\hebbet}
```

Translated to:

```
[postscript:make color black]{bet}{alef}[postscript:make color cyan]
```

While we want:

```
[postscript:make color cyan]{bet}{alef}[postscript:make color black]
```

The following code will probably work at least with code that stays in the same

line:

```
@textcolor
```

```

63.782 \AtBeginDocument{%
63.783 %I assume that \textcolor is only defined by the package color
63.784 \ifx\@textcolor\undefined\else%
63.785 % If that macro was defined before the beginning of the document,
63.786 % that is: the package was loaded: redefine it with bidi support
63.787 \def\@textcolor#1#2#3{%
63.788 \if@rl%
63.789 \beginL\protect\leavevmode{\color#1{#2}\beginR#3\endR}\endL%
63.790 \else%
63.791 \protect\leavevmode{\color#1{#2}#3}%
63.792 \fi%
63.793 }%
63.794 \fi%
63.795 }
63.796 % \end{macrocode}
63.797 % \end{macro}
63.798 % \begin{macro}{\thetrueSlideCounter}
63.799 % This macro probably needs to be overridden for when using |prosper|,
63.800 % (waiting for feedback. Tzafir)
63.801 % \begin{macrocode}
63.802 \@ifclassloaded{prosper}{%
63.803 \def\thetrueSlideCounter{\arabicnorl{trueSlideCounter}}
63.804 }{}

```

### 63.4.10 Miscellaneous internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X macros

`\raggedright` `\raggedright` was changed from `latex.ltx` file to support Right-to-Left mode, `\raggedleft` because of the bug in its implementation.

```
63.805 \def\raggedright{%
63.806   \let\\\@centercr
63.807   \leftskip\z@skip\rightskip\@flushglue
63.808   \parindent\z@\parfillskip\z@skip}

Swap meanings of \raggedright and \raggedleft in Right-to-Left mode.

63.809 \let\@raggedleft=\raggedleft
63.810 \let\@raggedright=\raggedright
63.811 \renewcommand\raggedleft{\if@rl\@raggedright%
63.812                               \else\@raggedleft\fi}
63.813 \renewcommand\raggedright{\if@rl\@raggedleft%
63.814                               \else\@raggedright\fi}
```

`\author` `\author` is inserted with `tabular` environment, and will be used in restricted horizontal mode. Therefore we have to add explicit direction change command when in Right-to-Left mode.

```
63.815 \let\@author=\author
63.816 \renewcommand{\author}[1]{\@author{\if@rl\beginR #1\endR\else #1\fi}}
```

`\MakeUppercase` There are no uppercase and lowercase letters in most Right-to-Left languages, `\MakeLowercase` therefore we should redefine `\MakeUppercase` and `\MakeLowercase` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> commands.

```
63.817 \let\@MakeUppercase=\MakeUppercase
63.818 \def\MakeUppercase#1{\if@rl#1\else\@MakeUppercase{#1}\fi}
63.819 \let\@MakeLowercase=\MakeLowercase
63.820 \def\MakeLowercase#1{\if@rl#1\else\@MakeLowercase{#1}\fi}
```

`\underline` We should explicitly use `\L` and `\R` commands in `\underlined` text.

```
63.821 \let\@@underline=\underline
63.822 \def\underline#1{\@@underline{\if@rl\R{#1}\else #1\fi}}
```

`\undertext` was added for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 compatibility mode.

```
63.823 \ifcompatibility
63.824   \let\underline=\underline
63.825 \fi
```

`\@xnthm` The following has been inserted to correct the appearance of the number in `\@opargbegintheorem` `\newtheorem` to reorder theorem number components. A similar correction in the definition of `\@opargbegintheorem` was added too.

```
63.826 \def\@xnthm#1#2[#3]{%
63.827   \expandafter\@ifdefinable\csname #1\endcsname
63.828   {\@definecounter{#1}\@addtoreset{#1}{#3}%
63.829     \expandafter\xdef\csname the#1\endcsname{\noexpand\@number
63.830       {\expandafter\noexpand\csname the#3\endcsname \@thmcountersep
63.831         \@thmcounter{#1}}}%
63.832   \global\@namedef{#1}{\@thm{#1}{#2}}%
63.833   \global\@namedef{end#1}{\@endtheorem}}%
63.834 %
63.835 \def\@opargbegintheorem#1#2#3{%
63.836   \trivlist
63.837     \item[\hskip \labelsep{\bfseries #1\ #2\
63.838       \@brackets{#3}}]{\itshape}
```

`\@chapter` The following was added for pretty printing of the chapter numbers, for supporting `\@schapter` Right-to-Left tables (`cot`, `fol`, and `tol`), to save `\headlanguage` for use in running headers, and to start two-column mode depending on chapter's main language.

```
63.839 \ifclassloaded{article}{-%
```

```

63.840 % For pretty printing
63.841 \def\@chapapp{Chapter}
63.842 \def\@thechapter{\@arabic\c@chapter}
63.843 \def\chapter[#1]#2{%
63.844   \let\headlanguage=\language%
63.845   %\set@outputdblcol%
63.846   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
63.847     \refstepcounter{chapter}%
63.848     \typeout{\@chapapp\space\@thechapter.}%
63.849     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}%
63.850     {\protect\numberline{\thechapter}#1}
63.851     \addcontentsline{cot}{chapter}%
63.852     {\protect\numberline{\thechapter}#1}
63.853   \else
63.854     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
63.855     \addcontentsline{cot}{chapter}{#1}%
63.856   \fi
63.857   \chaptermark{#1}
63.858   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\addvspace{10\p@}}%
63.859   \addtocontents{fol}{\protect\addvspace{10\p@}}%
63.860   \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\addvspace{10\p@}}%
63.861   \addtocontents{tol}{\protect\addvspace{10\p@}}%
63.862   \if@twocolumn
63.863     \topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
63.864   \else
63.865     \@makechapterhead{#2}%
63.866     \@afterheading
63.867   \fi}
63.868 %
63.869 \def\@schapter#1{%
63.870   \let\headlanguage=\language%
63.871   %\set@outputdblcol%
63.872   \if@twocolumn
63.873     \topnewpage[\@makeschapterhead{#1}]%
63.874   \else
63.875     \@makeschapterhead{#1}%
63.876     \@afterheading
63.877   \fi}}

```

\appendix Changed mainly for pretty printing of appendix numbers, and to start two-column mode with the right language (if needed).

```

63.878 \@ifclassloaded{letter}{}{% other
63.879 \@ifclassloaded{slides}{}{% other
63.880 \@ifclassloaded{article}{% article
63.881   \renewcommand\appendix{\par
63.882     \setcounter{section}{0}%
63.883     \setcounter{subsection}{0}%
63.884     \renewcommand\thesection{\@Alph\c@section}}
63.885 }{% report and book
63.886   \renewcommand\appendix{\par
63.887     %\set@outputdblcol%
63.888     \setcounter{chapter}{0}%
63.889     \setcounter{section}{0}%
63.890     \renewcommand\@chapapp{\appendixname}%
63.891     % For pretty printing
63.892     \def\@chapapp{Appendix}%
63.893     \def\@thechapter{\@Alph\c@chapter}
63.894     \renewcommand\thechapter{\@Alph\c@chapter}}}}

```

### 63.4.11 Bibliography and citations

\cite Citations are produced by the macro \cite{*LABEL*}{*NOTE*}. Both the citation label and the note is typeset in the current direction. We have to use \brackets \lbibitem

macro in `\@cite` and `\@biblabel` macros. In addition, when using *alpha* or similar bibliography style, the `\@lbibitem` is used and have to be update to support bot Right-to-Left and Left-to-Right citations.

```
63.895 \def\@cite#1#2{\@brackets[#1\if@tempswa , #2\fi]}
63.896 \def\@biblabel#1{\@brackets[#1]}
63.897 \def\@lbibitem[#1]#2{\item[\@biblabel{#1}\hfill]\if@filesw
63.898     {\let\protect\noexpand
63.899     \immediate
63.900     \if@rl\write\@auxout{\string\bibcite{#2}{\R{#1}}}%
63.901     \else\write\@auxout{\string\bibcite{#2}{\L{#1}}}\fi%
63.902     }\fi\ignorespaces}
```

`thebibliography` Use `\rightmargin` instead of `\leftmargin` when in RL mode.

```
63.903 \@ifclassloaded{letter}{}{% other
63.904 \@ifclassloaded{slides}{}{% other
63.905 \@ifclassloaded{article}{%
63.906 \renewenvironment{thebibliography}[1]
63.907   {\section*{\refname\@mkboth%
63.908     {\MakeUppercase\refname}%
63.909     {\MakeUppercase\refname}}%
63.910   \list{\@biblabel{\@arabic\c@enumiv}}%
63.911   {\settowidth\labelwidth{\@biblabel{#1}}%
63.912     \if@rl\leftmargin\else\rightmargin\fi\labelwidth
63.913     \advance\if@rl\leftmargin\else\rightmargin\fi\labelsep
63.914     \@openbib@code
63.915     \usecounter{enumiv}%
63.916     \let\p@enumiv\@empty
63.917     \renewcommand\theenumiv{\@arabic\c@enumiv}}%
63.918   \sloppy
63.919   \clubpenalty4000
63.920   \@clubpenalty \clubpenalty
63.921   \widowpenalty4000%
63.922   \sfcode'\.\@m}
63.923   {\def\@noitemerr
63.924     {\@latex@warning{Empty 'thebibliography' environment}}%
63.925     \endlist}}%
63.926 {\renewenvironment{thebibliography}[1]{%
63.927   \chapter*{\bibname\@mkboth%
63.928     {\MakeUppercase\bibname}%
63.929     {\MakeUppercase\bibname}}%
63.930   \list{\@biblabel{\@arabic\c@enumiv}}%
63.931   {\settowidth\labelwidth{\@biblabel{#1}}%
63.932     \if@rl\leftmargin\else\rightmargin\fi\labelwidth
63.933     \advance\if@rl\leftmargin\else\rightmargin\fi\labelsep
63.934     \@openbib@code
63.935     \usecounter{enumiv}%
63.936     \let\p@enumiv\@empty
63.937     \renewcommand\theenumiv{\@arabic\c@enumiv}}%
63.938   \sloppy
63.939   \clubpenalty4000
63.940   \@clubpenalty \clubpenalty
63.941   \widowpenalty4000%
63.942   \sfcode'\.\@m}
63.943   {\def\@noitemerr
63.944     {\@latex@warning{Empty 'thebibliography' environment}}%
63.945     \endlist}}}}
```

`\@verbatim` All kinds of verbs (`\verb`, `\verb*`, `verbatim` and `verbatim*`) now can be used in Right-to-Left mode. Errors in latin mode solved too.

```
63.946 \def\@verbatim{%
63.947   \let\do\@makeother \dospecials%
63.948   \obeylines \verbatim@font \@noligs}
```

`\@makecaption` Captions are set always centered. This allows us to use bilingual captions, for example: `\caption{\R{RLtext}} \L{LRtext}`, which will be formatted as:

Right to left caption here (RLtext)  
Left to right caption here (LRtext)

See also `\bcaption` command below.

```
63.949 \long\def\@makecaption#1#2{%
63.950   \vskip\abovecaptionskip%
63.951   \begin{center}%
63.952     #1: #2%
63.953   \end{center} \par%
63.954   \vskip\belowcaptionskip}
```

#### 63.4.12 Additional bidirectional commands

- Section headings are typeset with the default global direction.
- Text in section headings in the reverse language *do not* have to be protected for the reflection command, as in: `\protect\L{Latin Text}`, because `\L` and `\R` are robust now.
- Table of contents, list of figures and list of tables should be typeset with the `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables` commands respectively.
- The above tables will be typeset in the main direction (and language) in effect where the above commands are placed.
- Only 2 tables of each kind are supported: one for Right-to-Left and another for Left-to-Right directions.

How to include line to both tables? One has to use bidirectional sectioning commands as following:

1. Use the `\bxxx` version of the sectioning commands in the text instead of the `\xxx` version (`xxx` is one of: `part`, `chapter`, `section`, `subsection`, `subsubsection`, `caption`).
2. Syntax of the `\bxxx` command is `\bxxx{RL text}{LR text}`. Both arguments are typeset in proper direction by default (no need to change direction for the text inside).
3. The section header inside the document will be typeset in the global direction in effect at the time. i.e. The `{RL text}` will be typeset if Right-to-Left mode is in effect and `{LR text}` otherwise.

`\bpart`

```
63.955 \newcommand{\bpart}[2]{\part{\protect\if@r1%
63.956   #1 \protect\else #2 \protect\fi}}
```

`\bchapter`

```
63.957 \newcommand{\bchapter}[2]{\chapter{\protect\if@r1%
63.958   #1 \protect\else #2 \protect\fi}}
```

`\bsection`

```
63.959 \newcommand{\bsection}[2]{\section{\protect\if@r1%
63.960   #1 \protect\else #2 \protect\fi}}
```

`\bsubsection`

```
63.961 \newcommand{\bsubsection}[2]{\subsection{\protect\if@r1%
63.962   #1 \protect\else #2 \protect\fi}}
```

`\bssubsubsection`

```
63.963 \newcommand{\bssubsubsection}[2]{\subsubsection\protect\if@rl%
63.964   #1 \protect\else #2 \protect\fi}}
```

`\bcaption`

```
63.965 \newcommand{\bcaption}[2]{%
63.966   \caption[\protect\if@rl \R{#1}\protect\else \L{#2}\protect\fi]{%
63.967     \if@rl\R{#1}\protect\ \L{#2}
63.968     \else\L{#2}\protect\ \R{#1}\fi}}
```

The following definition is a modified version of `\bchapter`, meant as a bilingual twin for `\chapter*` and `\section*` (added by Irina Abramovici).

`\bchapternn`

```
63.969 \newcommand{\bchapternn}[2]{\chapter*\protect\if@rl%
63.970   #1 \protect\else #2 \protect\fi}}
```

`\bsectionnn`

```
63.971 \newcommand{\bsectionnn}[2]{\section*\protect\if@rl%
63.972   #1 \protect\else #2 \protect\fi}}
```

Finally, at end of `babel` package, the `\headlanguage` and two-column mode will be initialized according to the current language.

```
63.973 \AtEndOfPackage{\rlAtEndOfPackage}
63.974 %
63.975 \def\rlAtEndOfPackage{%
63.976   \global\let\headlanguage=\language\set@outputdblcol%
63.977 }
63.978 </rightleft>
```

## 63.5 Hebrew calendar

The original version of the package `hebcald.sty`<sup>70</sup> for  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  and  $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}2.09$ , entitled “ $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  &  $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  macros for computing Hebrew date from Gregorian one” was created by Michail Rozman, `misha@iop.tartu.ew.su`<sup>71</sup>

Released: Tammuz 12, 5751–June 24, 1991  
Corrected: Shebat 10, 5752–January 15, 1992 by Rama Porrat  
Corrected: Adar II 5, 5752–March 10, 1992 by Misha  
Corrected: Tebeth, 5756–January 1996 Dan Haran  
(haran@math.tau.ac.il)

The package was adjusted for `babel` and  $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}2_{\epsilon}$  by Boris Lavva.

Changes to the printing routine (only) by Ron Artstein, June 1, 2003.

This package should be included *after* the `babel` with `hebrew` option, as following:

```
\documentclass[...]{...}
\usepackage[hebrew,...,other languages,...]{babel}
\usepackage{hebcald}
```

Two main user-level commands are provided by this package:

`\Hebrewtoday`

Computes today’s Hebrew date and prints it. If we are presently in Hebrew mode, the date will be printed in Hebrew, otherwise — in English (like Shebat 10, 5752).

`\Hebrewdate`

Computes the Hebrew date from the given Gregorian date and prints it. If we are presently in Hebrew mode, the date will be printed in Hebrew, otherwise — in English (like Shebat 10, 5752). An example of usage is shown below:

<sup>70</sup>The following description of `hebcald` package is based on the comments included with original source by the author, Michail Rozman.

<sup>71</sup>Please direct any comments, bug reports, questions, etc. about the package to this address.



```

\newcount\hd \newcount\hm \newcount\hy
\hd=10 \hm=3 \hy=1992
\Hebrewdate{\hd}{\hm}{\hy}

```

**full** The package option `full` sets the flag `\@full@hebrew@year`, which causes years from the current millenium to be printed with the thousands digit (he-tav-shin-samekh-gimel). Without this option, thousands are not printed for the current millenium. NOTE: should this be a command option rather than a package option? –RA.

### 63.5.1 Introduction

The Hebrew calendar is inherently complicated: it is lunisolar – each year starts close to the autumn equinox, but each month must strictly start at a new moon. Thus Hebrew calendar must be harmonized simultaneously with both lunar and solar events. In addition, for reasons of the religious practice, the year cannot start on Sunday, Wednesday or Friday.

For the full description of Hebrew calendar and for the list of references see:

Nachum Dershowitz and Edward M. Reingold, “*Calendarical Calculations*”, *Software–Pract.Exper.*, vol. 20 (9), pp.899–928 (September 1990).

C translation of LISP programs from the above article available from Mr. Wayne Geiser, `geiser%picstel@uunet.uu.net`.

The 4<sup>th</sup> distribution (July 1989) of `hdate/hcal` (Hebrew calendar programs similar to UNIX `date/cal`) by Mr. Amos Shapir, `amos@shum.huji.ac.il`, contains short and very clear description of algorithms.

### 63.5.2 Registers, Commands, Formatting Macros

The command `\Hebrewtoday` produces today’s date for Hebrew calendar. It is similar to the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> command `\today`. In addition three numerical registers `\Hebrewday`, `\Hebrewmonth` and `\Hebrewyear` are set. For setting this registers without producing of date string command `\Hebrewsetreg` can be used.

The command `\Hebrewdate{Gday}{Gmonth}{Gyear}` produces Hebrew calendar date corresponding to Gregorian date `Gday.Gmonth.Gyear`. Three numerical registers `\Hebrewday`, `\Hebrewmonth` and `\Hebrewyear` are set.

For converting arbitrary Gregorian date `Gday.Gmonth.Gyear` to Hebrew date `Hday.Hmonth.Hyear` without producing date string the command:

```
\HebrewFromGregorian{Gday}{Gmonth}{Gyear}{Hday}{Hmonth}{Hyear}
```

can be used.

```

63.979 (*calendar)
63.980 \newif\if@full@hebrew@year
63.981 \@full@hebrew@yearfalse
63.982 \DeclareOption{full}{\@full@hebrew@yeartrue}
63.983 \ProcessOptions
63.984 \newcount\Hebrewday \newcount\Hebrewmonth \newcount\Hebrewyear

```

**\Hebrewdate** Hebrew calendar date corresponding to Gregorian date `Gday.Gmonth.Gyear`. If Hebrew (right-to-left) fonts & macros are not loaded, we have to use English format.

```

63.985 \def\Hebrewdate#1#2#3{%
63.986   \HebrewFromGregorian{#1}{#2}{#3}
63.987   {\Hebrewday}{\Hebrewmonth}{\Hebrewyear}%
63.988   \ifundefined{if@rl}%
63.989     \FormatForEnglish{\Hebrewday}{\Hebrewmonth}{\Hebrewyear}%
63.990   \else%
63.991     \FormatDate{\Hebrewday}{\Hebrewmonth}{\Hebrewyear}%
63.992   \fi}

```

`\Hebrewtoday` Today's date in Hebrew calendar.

```
63.993 \def\Hebrewtoday{\Hebrewdate{\day}{\month}{\year}}
63.994 \let\hebrewtoday=\Hebrewtoday
```

`\Hebrewsetreg` Set registers: today's date in hebrew calendar.

```
63.995 \def\Hebrewsetreg{%
63.996     \HebrewFromGregorian{\day}{\month}{\year}
63.997     {\Hebrewday}{\Hebrewmonth}{\Hebrewyear}}
```

`\FormatDate` Prints a Hebrew calendar date `Hebrewday.Hebrewmonth.Hebrewyear`.

```
63.998 \def\FormatDate#1#2#3{%
63.999     \if@r1%
63.1000     \FormatForHebrew{#1}{#2}{#3}%
63.1001     \else%
63.1002     \FormatForEnglish{#1}{#2}{#3}
63.1003     \fi}
```

To prepare another language version of Hebrew calendar commands, one should change or add commands here.

We start with Hebrew language macros.

`\HebrewYearName` Prints Hebrew year as a Hebrew number. Disambiguates strings by adding lamed-pe-gimel to years of the first Jewish millenium and to years divisible by 1000. Suppresses the thousands digit in the current millenium unless the package option `full` is selected. NOTE: should this be provided as a command option rather than a package option? -RA.

```
63.1004 \def\HebrewYearName#1{%
63.1005     \@tempcnta=#1\divide\@tempcnta by 1000\multiply\@tempcnta by 1000
63.1006     \ifnum#1=\@tempcnta\relax % divisible by 1000: disambiguate
63.1007     \Hebrewnumeralfinal{#1}\ )\heblamed\hebpe"\hebgimel(%
63.1008     \else % not divisible by 1000
63.1009     \ifnum#1<1000\relax % first millennium: disambiguate
63.1010     \Hebrewnumeralfinal{#1}\ )\heblamed\hebpe"\hebgimel(%
63.1011     \else
63.1012     \ifnum#1<5000
63.1013     \Hebrewnumeralfinal{#1}%
63.1014     \else
63.1015     \ifnum#1<6000 % current millenium, print without thousands
63.1016     \@tempcnta=#1\relax
63.1017     \if@full@hebrew@year\else\advance\@tempcnta by -5000\fi
63.1018     \Hebrewnumeralfinal{\@tempcnta}%
63.1019     \else % #1>6000
63.1020     \Hebrewnumeralfinal{#1}%
63.1021     \fi
63.1022     \fi
63.1023     \fi
63.1024     \fi}}
```

`\HebrewMonthName` The macro `\HebrewMonthName{month}{year}` returns the name of month in the 'year'.

```
63.1025 \def\HebrewMonthName#1#2{%
63.1026     \ifnum #1 = 7 %
63.1027     \CheckLeapHebrewYear{#2}%
63.1028     \if@HebrewLeap \hebalef\hebdalet\hebresh\ \hebbet'%
63.1029     \else \hebalef\hebdalet\hebresh%
63.1030     \fi%
63.1031     \else%
63.1032     \ifcase#1%
63.1033     % nothing for 0
63.1034     \or\hebtav\hebshin\hebresh\hebyod%
63.1035     \or\hebbet\hebshin\hebvav\hebfinalnum%
63.1036     \or\hebkaf\hebsamekh\heblamed\hebvav%
```

```

63.1037      \or\hebtet\hebbet\hebtav%
63.1038      \or\hebshin\hebbet\hebtet%
63.1039      \or\hebalef\hebdalet\hebresh\ \hebalef'%
63.1040      \or\hebalef\hebdalet\hebresh\ \hebbet'%
63.1041      \or\hebnun\hebyod\hebsamekh\hebfinalnun%
63.1042      \or\hebalef\hebyod\hebyod\hebresh%
63.1043      \or\hebsamekh\hebyod\hebvav\hebfinalnun%
63.1044      \or\hebtav\hebmeme\hebvav\hebzayin%
63.1045      \or\hebalef\hebbet%
63.1046      \or\hebalef\heblamed\hebvav\heblamed%
63.1047      \fi%
63.1048      \fi}

```

`\HebrewDayName` Name of day in Hebrew letters (gimatria).

```
63.1049 \def\HebrewDayName#1{\Hebrewnumeral{#1}}
```

`\FormatForHebrew` The macro `\FormatForHebrew{hday}{hmonth}{hyear}` returns the formatted Hebrew date in Hebrew language.

```

63.1050 \def\FormatForHebrew#1#2#3{%
63.1051   \HebrewDayName{#1}\hebbet\HebrewMonthName{#2}{#3},~%
63.1052   \HebrewYearName{#3}}

```

We continue with two English language macros for Hebrew calendar.

`\HebrewMonthNameInEnglish` The macro `\HebrewMonthNameInEnglish{month}{year}` is similar to `\HebrewMonthName` described above. It returns the name of month in the Hebrew ‘year’ in English.

```

63.1053 \def\HebrewMonthNameInEnglish#1#2{%
63.1054   \ifnum #1 = 7%
63.1055     \CheckLeapHebrewYear{#2}%
63.1056     \if@HebrewLeap Adar II\else Adar\fi%
63.1057   \else%
63.1058     \ifcase #1%
63.1059       % nothing for 0
63.1060       \or Tishrei%
63.1061       \or Heshvan%
63.1062       \or Kislev%
63.1063       \or Tebeth%
63.1064       \or Shebat%
63.1065       \or Adar I%
63.1066       \or Adar II%
63.1067       \or Nisan%
63.1068       \or Iyar%
63.1069       \or Sivan%
63.1070       \or Tammuz%
63.1071       \or Av%
63.1072       \or Elul%
63.1073     \fi
63.1074   \fi}

```

`\FormatForEnglish` The macro `\FormatForEnglish{hday}{hmonth}{hyear}` is similar to `\FormatForHebrew` macro described above and returns the formatted Hebrew date in English.

```

63.1075 \def\FormatForEnglish#1#2#3{%
63.1076   \HebrewMonthNameInEnglish{#2}{#3} \number#1,\ \number#3}

```

### 63.5.3 Auxiliary Macros

```
63.1077 \newcount\@common
```

`\Remainder` `\Remainder{a}{b}{c}` calculates  $c = a \% b == a - b \times \frac{a}{b}$

```
63.1078 \def\Remainder#1#2#3{%
```

```

63.1079 #3 = #1% % c = a
63.1080 \divide #3 by #2% % c = a/b
63.1081 \multiply #3 by -#2% % c = -b(a/b)
63.1082 \advance #3 by #1}% % c = a - b(a/b)

```

```
63.1083 \newif\if@Divisible
```

`\CheckIfDivisible` `\CheckIfDivisible{a}{b}` sets `\@Divisibletrue` if  $a\%b == 0$

```

63.1084 \def\CheckIfDivisible#1#2{%
63.1085   {%
63.1086     \countdef\tmp = 0% \tmp == \count0 - temporary variable
63.1087     \Remainder{#1}{#2}{\tmp}%
63.1088     \ifnum \tmp = 0%
63.1089       \global\@Divisibletrue%
63.1090     \else%
63.1091       \global\@Divisiblefalse%
63.1092   \fi}}

```

`\ifundefined` From the `TEXbook`, ex. 7.7:

```
\ifundefined{command}<true text>\else<false text>\fi
```

```
63.1093 \def\ifundefined#1{\expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax}
```

### 63.5.4 Gregorian Part

```
63.1094 \newif\if@GregorianLeap
```

`\IfGregorianLeap` Conditional which is true if Gregorian ‘year’ is a leap year:  $((year\%4 == 0) \wedge (year\%100 \neq 0)) \vee (year\%400 == 0)$

```

63.1095 \def\IfGregorianLeap#1{%
63.1096   \CheckIfDivisible{#1}{4}%
63.1097   \if@Divisible%
63.1098     \CheckIfDivisible{#1}{100}%
63.1099     \if@Divisible%
63.1100       \CheckIfDivisible{#1}{400}%
63.1101       \if@Divisible%
63.1102         \@GregorianLeaptrue%
63.1103       \else%
63.1104         \@GregorianLeapfalse%
63.1105     \fi%
63.1106   \else%
63.1107     \@GregorianLeaptrue%
63.1108   \fi%
63.1109 \else%
63.1110   \@GregorianLeapfalse%
63.1111 \fi%
63.1112 \if@GregorianLeap}

```

`\GregorianDaysInPriorMonths` The macro `\GregorianDaysInPriorMonths{month}{year}{days}` calculates the number of days in months prior to ‘month’ in the ‘year’.

```

63.1113 \def\GregorianDaysInPriorMonths#1#2#3{%
63.1114   {%
63.1115     #3 = \ifcase #1%
63.1116       0 \or% % no month number 0
63.1117       0 \or%
63.1118       31 \or%
63.1119       59 \or%
63.1120       90 \or%
63.1121       120 \or%
63.1122       151 \or%
63.1123       181 \or%
63.1124       212 \or%

```

```

63.1125         243 \or%
63.1126         273 \or%
63.1127         304 \or%
63.1128         334%
63.1129         \fi%
63.1130         \IfGregorianLeap{#2}%
63.1131             \ifnum #1 > 2%           % if month after February
63.1132                 \advance #3 by 1% % add leap day
63.1133         \fi%
63.1134         \fi%
63.1135         \global\@common = #3}%
63.1136         #3 = \@common}

```

**\GregorianDaysInPriorYears** The macro `\GregorianDaysInPriorYears{year}{days}` calculates the number of days in years prior to the ‘year’.

```

63.1137 \def\GregorianDaysInPriorYears#1#2{%
63.1138     {%
63.1139         \countdef\tmpc = 4%           % \tmpc==\count4
63.1140         \countdef\tmpb = 2%           % \tmpb==\count2
63.1141         \tmpb = #1%                     %
63.1142         \advance \tmpb by -1%           %
63.1143         \tmpc = \tmpb%                   % \tmpc = \tmpb = year-1
63.1144         \multiply \tmpc by 365%         % Days in prior years =
63.1145         #2 = \tmpc%                     % = 365*(year-1) ...
63.1146         \tmpc = \tmpb%                   %
63.1147         \divide \tmpc by 4%             % \tmpc = (year-1)/4
63.1148         \advance #2 by \tmpc%           % ... plus Julian leap days ...
63.1149         \tmpc = \tmpb%                   %
63.1150         \divide \tmpc by 100%           % \tmpc = (year-1)/100
63.1151         \advance #2 by -\tmpc%           % ... minus century years ...
63.1152         \tmpc = \tmpb%                   %
63.1153         \divide \tmpc by 400%           % \tmpc = (year-1)/400
63.1154         \advance #2 by \tmpc%           % ... plus 4-century years.
63.1155         \global\@common = #2}%
63.1156         #2 = \@common}

```

**\AbsoluteFromGregorian** The macro `\AbsoluteFromGregorian{day}{month}{year}{absdate}` calculates the absolute date (days since 01.01.0001) from Gregorian date day.month.year.

```

63.1157 \def\AbsoluteFromGregorian#1#2#3#4{%
63.1158     {%
63.1159         \countdef\tmpd = 0%             % \tmpd==\count0
63.1160         #4 = #1%                         % days so far this month
63.1161         \GregorianDaysInPriorMonths{#2}{#3}{\tmpd}%
63.1162         \advance #4 by \tmpd%           % add days in prior months
63.1163         \GregorianDaysInPriorYears{#3}{\tmpd}%
63.1164         \advance #4 by \tmpd%           % add days in prior years
63.1165         \global\@common = #4}%
63.1166         #4 = \@common}

```

### 63.5.5 Hebrew Part

```
63.1167 \newif\if@HebrewLeap
```

**\CheckLeapHebrewYear** Set `\@HebrewLeaptrue` if Hebrew ‘year’ is a leap year, i.e. if  $(1 + 7 \times year) \% 19 < 7$  then *true* else *false*

```

63.1168 \def\CheckLeapHebrewYear#1{%
63.1169     {%
63.1170         \countdef\tmpa = 0%             % \tmpa==\count0
63.1171         \countdef\tmpb = 1%             % \tmpb==\count1
63.1172     %
63.1173         \tmpa = #1%
63.1174         \multiply \tmpa by 7%

```

```

63.1175     \advance \tmpa by 1%
63.1176     \Remainder{\tmpa}{19}{\tmpb}%
63.1177     \ifnum \tmpb < 7%           % \tmpb = (7*year+1)%19
63.1178         \global\@HebrewLeaptrue%
63.1179     \else%
63.1180         \global\@HebrewLeapfalse%
63.1181     \fi}}

```

**\HebrewElapsedMonths** The macro `\HebrewElapsedMonths{year}{months}` determines the number of months elapsed from the Sunday prior to the start of the Hebrew calendar to the mean conjunction of Tishri of Hebrew ‘year’.

```

63.1182 \def\HebrewElapsedMonths#1#2{%
63.1183     {%
63.1184         \countdef\tmpa = 0%           % \tmpa==\count0
63.1185         \countdef\tmpb = 1%           % \tmpb==\count1
63.1186         \countdef\tmpc = 2%           % \tmpc==\count2
63.1187 %
63.1188         \tmpa = #1%                   %
63.1189         \advance \tmpa by -1%          %
63.1190         #2 = \tmpa%                   % #2 = \tmpa = year-1
63.1191         \divide #2 by 19%              % Number of complete Meton cycles
63.1192         \multiply #2 by 235%           % #2 = 235*((year-1)/19)
63.1193 %
63.1194         \Remainder{\tmpa}{19}{\tmpb}% \tmpa = years%19-years this cycle
63.1195         \tmpc = \tmpb%                 %
63.1196         \multiply \tmpb by 12%         %
63.1197         \advance #2 by \tmpb%          % add regular months this cycle
63.1198 %
63.1199         \multiply \tmpc by 7%          %
63.1200         \advance \tmpc by 1%           %
63.1201         \divide \tmpc by 19%           % \tmpc = (1+7*((year-1)%19))/19 -
63.1202 %                                 % number of leap months this cycle
63.1203         \advance #2 by \tmpc%          % add leap months
63.1204 %
63.1205         \global\@common = #2}%
63.1206     #2 = \@common}

```

**\HebrewElapsedDays** The macro `\HebrewElapsedDays{year}{days}` determines the number of days elapsed from the Sunday prior to the start of the Hebrew calendar to the mean conjunction of Tishri of Hebrew ‘year’.

```

63.1207 \def\HebrewElapsedDays#1#2{%
63.1208     {%
63.1209         \countdef\tmpa = 0%           % \tmpa==\count0
63.1210         \countdef\tmpb = 1%           % \tmpb==\count1
63.1211         \countdef\tmpc = 2%           % \tmpc==\count2
63.1212 %
63.1213         \HebrewElapsedMonths{#1}{#2}%
63.1214         \tmpa = #2%                   %
63.1215         \multiply \tmpa by 13753%      %
63.1216         \advance \tmpa by 5604%        % \tmpa=MonthsElapsed*13758 + 5604
63.1217         \Remainder{\tmpa}{25920}{\tmpc}% \tmpc == ConjunctionParts
63.1218         \divide \tmpa by 25920%
63.1219 %
63.1220         \multiply #2 by 29%
63.1221         \advance #2 by 1%
63.1222         \advance #2 by \tmpa%          % #2 = 1 + MonthsElapsed*29 +
63.1223 %                                 %           PartsElapsed/25920
63.1224         \Remainder{#2}{7}{\tmpa}%    % \tmpa == DayOfWeek
63.1225         \ifnum \tmpc < 19440%
63.1226             \ifnum \tmpc < 9924%
63.1227                 \else%
63.1228                     \ifnum \tmpa = 2% % on Tuesday ...

```

```

63.1229         \CheckLeapHebrewYear{#1}% of a common year
63.1230         \if@HebrewLeap%
63.1231         \else%
63.1232             \advance #2 by 1%
63.1233         \fi%
63.1234     \fi%
63.1235 \fi%
63.1236 \ifnum \tmpc < 16789%
63.1237 \else%
63.1238     \ifnum \tmpa = 1% % New moon at 15 h. 589 p. or later
63.1239         \advance #1 by -1%
63.1240         \CheckLeapHebrewYear{#1}% at the end of leap year
63.1241         \if@HebrewLeap%
63.1242             \advance #2 by 1%
63.1243         \fi%
63.1244     \fi%
63.1245 \fi%
63.1246 \else%
63.1247     \advance #2 by 1% % new moon at or after midday
63.1248 \fi%
63.1249 %
63.1250 \Remainder{#2}{7}{\tmpa}% % \tmpa == DayOfWeek
63.1251 \ifnum \tmpa = 0% % if Sunday ...
63.1252     \advance #2 by 1%
63.1253 \else%
63.1254     \ifnum \tmpa = 3% % Wednesday ...
63.1255         \advance #2 by 1%
63.1256     \else%
63.1257         \ifnum \tmpa = 5% % or Friday
63.1258             \advance #2 by 1%
63.1259         \fi%
63.1260     \fi%
63.1261 \fi%
63.1262 \global\@common = #2}%
63.1263 #2 = \@common}

```

**\DaysInHebrewYear** The macro `\DaysInHebrewYear{year}{days}` calculates the number of days in Hebrew ‘year’.

```

63.1264 \def\DaysInHebrewYear#1#2{%
63.1265     {%
63.1266         \countdef\tmpe = 12% % \tmpe==\count12
63.1267 %
63.1268         \HebrewElapsedDays{#1}{\tmpe}%
63.1269         \advance #1 by 1%
63.1270         \HebrewElapsedDays{#1}{#2}%
63.1271         \advance #2 by -\tmpe%
63.1272         \global\@common = #2}%
63.1273 #2 = \@common}

```

**\HebrewDaysInPriorMonths** The macro `\HebrewDaysInPriorMonths{month}{year}{days}` calculates the number of days in months prior to ‘month’ in the ‘year’.

```

63.1274 \def\HebrewDaysInPriorMonths#1#2#3{%
63.1275     {%
63.1276         \countdef\tmpf= 14% % \tmpf==\count14
63.1277 %
63.1278         #3 = \ifcase #1% % Days in prior month of regular year
63.1279             0 \or% % no month number 0
63.1280             0 \or% % Tishri
63.1281             30 \or% % Heshvan
63.1282             59 \or% % Kislev
63.1283             89 \or% % Tebeth
63.1284             118 \or% % Shebat

```

```

63.1285         148 \or%           % Adar I
63.1286         148 \or%           % Adar II
63.1287         177 \or%           % Nisan
63.1288         207 \or%           % Iyar
63.1289         236 \or%           % Sivan
63.1290         266 \or%           % Tammuz
63.1291         295 \or%           % Av
63.1292         325 \or%           % Elul
63.1293         400%              % Dummy
63.1294         \fi%
63.1295         \CheckLeapHebrewYear{#2}%
63.1296         \if@HebrewLeap%      % in leap year
63.1297         \ifnum #1 > 6%       % if month after Adar I
63.1298         \advance #3 by 30%    % add 30 days
63.1299         \fi%
63.1300         \fi%
63.1301         \DaysInHebrewYear{#2}{\tmpf}%
63.1302         \ifnum #1 > 3%
63.1303         \ifnum \tmpf = 353%    %
63.1304         \advance #3 by -1%    %
63.1305         \fi%                 % Short Kislev
63.1306         \ifnum \tmpf = 383%    %
63.1307         \advance #3 by -1%    %
63.1308         \fi%                 %
63.1309         \fi%
63.1310 %
63.1311         \ifnum #1 > 2%
63.1312         \ifnum \tmpf = 355%    %
63.1313         \advance #3 by 1%    %
63.1314         \fi%                 % Long Heshvan
63.1315         \ifnum \tmpf = 385%    %
63.1316         \advance #3 by 1%    %
63.1317         \fi%                 %
63.1318         \fi%
63.1319         \global\@common = #3}%
63.1320         #3 = \@common}

```

**\AbsoluteFromHebrew** The macro `\AbsoluteFromHebrew{day}{month}{year}{absdate}` calculates the absolute date of Hebrew date day.month.year.

```

63.1321 \def\AbsoluteFromHebrew#1#2#3#4{%
63.1322   {%
63.1323     #4 = #1%
63.1324     \HebrewDaysInPriorMonths{#2}{#3}{#1}%
63.1325     \advance #4 by #1%           % Add days in prior months this year
63.1326     \HebrewElapsedDays{#3}{#1}%
63.1327     \advance #4 by #1%           % Add days in prior years
63.1328     \advance #4 by -1373429%    % Subtract days before Gregorian
63.1329     \global\@common = #4}%      % 01.01.0001
63.1330     #4 = \@common}

```

**\HebrewFromGregorian** The macro `\HebrewFromGregorian{Gday}{Gmonth}{Gyear}{Hday}{Hmonth}{Hyear}` evaluates Hebrew date Hday, Hmonth, Hyear from Gregorian date Gday, Gmonth, Gyear.

```

63.1331 \def\HebrewFromGregorian#1#2#3#4#5#6{%
63.1332   {%
63.1333     \countdef\tmpx= 17%          % \tmpx==\count17
63.1334     \countdef\tmpy= 18%          % \tmpy==\count18
63.1335     \countdef\tmpz= 19%          % \tmpz==\count19
63.1336 %
63.1337     #6 = #3%                      %
63.1338     \global\advance #6 by 3761%    % approximation from above
63.1339     \AbsoluteFromGregorian{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}%

```



```

63.1340      \tmpz = 1  \tmpy = 1%
63.1341      \AbsoluteFromHebrew{\tmpz}{\tmpy}{#6}{\tmpx}%
63.1342      \ifnum \tmpx > #4%           %
63.1343          \global\advance #6 by -1% Hyear = Gyear + 3760
63.1344          \AbsoluteFromHebrew{\tmpz}{\tmpy}{#6}{\tmpx}%
63.1345      \fi%                         %
63.1346      \advance #4 by -\tmpx%        % Days in this year
63.1347      \advance #4 by 1%           %
63.1348      #5 = #4%                     %
63.1349      \divide #5 by 30%           % Approximation for month from below
63.1350      \loop%                       % Search for month
63.1351          \HebrewDaysInPriorMonths{#5}{#6}{\tmpx}%
63.1352          \ifnum \tmpx < #4%
63.1353              \advance #5 by 1%
63.1354              \tmpy = \tmpx%
63.1355      \repeat%
63.1356      \global\advance #5 by -1%
63.1357      \global\advance #4 by -\tmpy}}
63.1358 </calendar>

```

## 64 Hebrew input encodings

Hebrew input encodings defined in file `hebinp.dtx`<sup>72</sup> should be used with `inputenc` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> package. This package allows the user to specify an input encoding from this file (for example, ISO Hebrew/Latin 8859-8, IBM Hebrew codepage 862 or MS Windows Hebrew codepage 1255) by saying:

```
\usepackage[encoding name]{inputenc}
```

The encoding can also be selected in the document with:

```
\inputencoding{encoding name}
```

The only practical use of this command within a document is when using text from several documents to build up a composite work such as a volume of journal articles. Therefore this command will be used only in vertical mode.

The encodings provided by this package are:

- `si960` 7-bit Hebrew encoding for the range 32–127. This encoding also known as “old-code” and defined by Israeli Standard SI-960.
- `8859-8` ISO 8859-8 Hebrew/Latin encoding commonly used in UNIX systems. This encoding also known as “new-code” and includes hebrew letters in positions starting from 224.
- `cp862` IBM 862 code page commonly used by DOS on IBM-compatible personal computers. This encoding also known as “pc-code” and includes hebrew letters in positions starting from 128.
- `cp1255` MS Windows 1255 (hebrew) code page which is similar to 8859-8. In addition to hebrew letters, this encoding contains also hebrew vowels and dots (nikud).

Each encoding has an associated `.def` file, for example `8859-8.def` which defines the behaviour of each input character, using the commands:

```

\DeclareInputText{slot}{text}
\DeclareInputMath{slot}{math}

```

<sup>72</sup>The files described in this section have version number v1.1b and were last revised on 2004/02/20.

This defines the input character *slot* to be the *text* material or *math* material respectively. For example, 8859-8.def defines slots "EA (letter hebrew) and "B5 ( $\mu$ ) by saying:

```
\DeclareInputText{224}{\hebrew}
\DeclareInputMath{181}{\mu}
```

Note that the *commands* should be robust, and should not be dependent on the output encoding. The same *slot* should not have both a text and a math declaration for it. (This restriction may be removed in future releases of inputenc).

The .def file may also define commands using the declarations:

`\providecommand` or `\ProvideTextCommandDefault`. For example, 8859-8.def defines:

```
\ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textonequarter}{\ensuremath{\frac{1}{4}}}
\DeclareInputText{188}{\textonequarter}
```

The use of the ‘provide’ forms here will ensure that a better definition will not be over-written; their use is recommended since, in general, the best definition depends on the fonts available.

See the documentation in `inputenc.dtx` for details of how to declare input definitions for various encodings.

## 64.1 Default definitions for characters

First, we insert a `\makeatletter` at the beginning of all .def files to use @ symbol in the macros’ names.

```
64.1 <-driver>\makeatletter
```

Some input characters map to internal functions which are not in either the T1 or OT1 font encoding. For this reason default definitions are provided in the encoding file: these will be used unless some other output encoding is used which supports those glyphs. In some cases this default definition has to be simply an error message.

Note that this works reasonably well only because the encoding files for both OT1 and T1 are loaded in the standard LaTeX format.

```
64.2 (*8859 - 8 | cp862 | cp1255)
64.3 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textdegree}{\ensuremath{\text{\char"00B0}}}
64.4 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textonehalf}{\ensuremath{\frac{1}{2}}}
64.5 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textonequarter}{\ensuremath{\frac{1}{4}}}
64.6 </8859 - 8 | cp862 | cp1255)
64.7 (*8859 - 8 | cp1255)
64.8 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textthreequarters}{\ensuremath{\frac{3}{4}}}
64.9 </8859 - 8 | cp1255)
64.10 (*cp862 | cp1255)
64.11 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textflorin}{\textit{f}}
64.12 </cp862 | cp1255)
64.13 (*cp862)
64.14 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textpeseta}{Pt}
64.15 </cp862)
```

The name `\textblacksquare` is derived from the AMS symbol name since Adobe seem not to want this symbol. The default definition, as a rule, makes no claim to being a good design.

```
64.16 (*cp862)
64.17 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textblacksquare}
64.18   {\vrule \@width .3em \@height .4em \@depth -.1em\relax}
64.19 </cp862)
```

Some commands can’t be faked, so we have them generate an error message.

```
64.20 (*8859 - 8 | cp862 | cp1255)
64.21 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textcent}
```

```

64.22   {\TextSymbolUnavailable\textcent}
64.23 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textyen}
64.24   {\TextSymbolUnavailable\textyen}
64.25 </8859 - 8 | cp862 | cp1255>
64.26 (*8859 - 8)
64.27 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textcurrency}
64.28   {\TextSymbolUnavailable\textcurrency}
64.29 </8859 - 8>
64.30 (*cp1255)
64.31 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\newsheqel}
64.32   {\TextSymbolUnavailable\newsheqel}
64.33 </cp1255>
64.34 (*8859 - 8 | cp1255)
64.35 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textbrokenbar}
64.36   {\TextSymbolUnavailable\textbrokenbar}
64.37 </8859 - 8 | cp1255>
64.38 (*cp1255)
64.39 \ProvideTextCommandDefault{\textperthousand}
64.40   {\TextSymbolUnavailable\textperthousand}
64.41 </cp1255>

```

Characters that are supposed to be used only in math will be defined by `\providecommand` because L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>ε</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> assumes that the font encoding for math fonts is static.

```

64.42 (*8859 - 8 | cp1255)
64.43 \providecommand{\mathonesuperior}{\textsup}
64.44 \providecommand{\maththreesuperior}{\textsup}
64.45 </8859 - 8 | cp1255>
64.46 (*8859 - 8 | cp862 | cp1255)
64.47 \providecommand{\mathtwosuperior}{\textsup}
64.48 </8859 - 8 | cp862 | cp1255>
64.49 (*cp862)
64.50 \providecommand{\mathordmasculine}{\textsup}
64.51 \providecommand{\mathordfeminine}{\textsup}
64.52 </cp862>

```

## 64.2 The SI-960 encoding

The SI-960 or “old-code” encoding only allows characters in the range 32–127, so we only need to provide an empty `si960.def` file.

## 64.3 The ISO 8859-8 encoding and the MS Windows cp1255 encoding

The `8859-8.def` encoding file defines the characters in the ISO 8859-8 encoding.

The MS Windows Hebrew character set incorporates the Hebrew letter repertoire of ISO 8859-8, and uses the same code points (starting from 224). It has also some important additions in the 128–159 and 190–224 ranges.

```

64.53 (*cp1255)
64.54 \DeclareInputText{130}{\quotesinglbase}
64.55 \DeclareInputText{131}{\textflorin}
64.56 \DeclareInputText{132}{\quotedblbase}
64.57 \DeclareInputText{133}{\dots}
64.58 \DeclareInputText{134}{\dag}
64.59 \DeclareInputText{135}{\ddag}
64.60 \DeclareInputText{136}{\textsup}
64.61 \DeclareInputText{137}{\textperthousand}
64.62 \DeclareInputText{139}{\guilsinglleft}
64.63 \DeclareInputText{145}{\textquoteleft}
64.64 \DeclareInputText{146}{\textquoteright}
64.65 \DeclareInputText{147}{\textquotedblleft}

```

64.66 `\DeclareInputText{148}{\textquotedblright}`  
64.67 `\DeclareInputText{149}{\textbullet}`  
64.68 `\DeclareInputText{150}{\textendash}`  
64.69 `\DeclareInputText{151}{\textemdash}`  
64.70 `\DeclareInputText{152}{\textasciitilde}`  
64.71 `\DeclareInputText{153}{\texttrademark}`  
64.72 `\DeclareInputText{155}{\guilsinglright}`  
64.73 `</cp1255>`  
64.74 `<*8859 - 8 | cp1255>`  
64.75 `\DeclareInputText{160}{\nobreakspace}`  
64.76 `\DeclareInputText{162}{\textcent}`  
64.77 `\DeclareInputText{163}{\pounds}`  
64.78 `<+8859 - 8>\DeclareInputText{164}{\textcurrency}`  
64.79 `<+cp1255>\DeclareInputText{164}{\newsheqel}`  
64.80 `\DeclareInputText{165}{\textyen}`  
64.81 `\DeclareInputText{166}{\textbrokenbar}`  
64.82 `\DeclareInputText{167}{\S}`  
64.83 `\DeclareInputText{168}{\textquoteright}`  
64.84 `\DeclareInputText{169}{\textcopyright}`  
64.85 `<+8859 - 8>\DeclareInputMath{170}{\times}`  
64.86 `\DeclareInputText{171}{\guillemotleft}`  
64.87 `\DeclareInputMath{172}{\lnot}`  
64.88 `\DeclareInputText{173}{\textasciitilde}`  
64.89 `\DeclareInputText{174}{\textregistered}`  
64.90 `\DeclareInputText{175}{\@tabacckludge={}}`  
64.91 `\DeclareInputText{176}{\textdegree}`  
64.92 `\DeclareInputMath{177}{\p}`  
64.93 `\DeclareInputMath{178}{\mathtwosuperior}`  
64.94 `\DeclareInputMath{179}{\maththreesuperior}`  
64.95 `\DeclareInputText{180}{\@tabacckludge'={}}`  
64.96 `\DeclareInputMath{181}{\mu}`  
64.97 `\DeclareInputText{182}{\P}`  
64.98 `\DeclareInputText{183}{\textperiodcentered}`  
64.99 `<+8859 - 8>\DeclareInputText{184}{\c }`   
64.100 `\DeclareInputMath{185}{\mathonesuperior}`  
64.101 `<+8859 - 8>\DeclareInputMath{186}{\div}`  
64.102 `\DeclareInputText{187}{\guillemotright}`  
64.103 `\DeclareInputText{188}{\textonequarter}`  
64.104 `\DeclareInputText{189}{\textonehalf}`  
64.105 `\DeclareInputText{190}{\textthreequarters}`  
64.106 `</8859 - 8 | cp1255>`

Hebrew vowels and dots (nikud) are included only to MS Windows cp1255 page and start from the position 192.

64.107 `<*cp1255>`  
64.108 `\DeclareInputText{192}{\hebsheva}`  
64.109 `\DeclareInputText{193}{\hebhatasegol}`  
64.110 `\DeclareInputText{194}{\hebhatapatah}`  
64.111 `\DeclareInputText{195}{\hebhataqamats}`  
64.112 `\DeclareInputText{196}{\hebhiriq}`  
64.113 `\DeclareInputText{197}{\hebtsere}`  
64.114 `\DeclareInputText{198}{\hebsegol}`  
64.115 `\DeclareInputText{199}{\hebpatatah}`  
64.116 `\DeclareInputText{200}{\hebqamats}`  
64.117 `\DeclareInputText{201}{\hebscholam}`  
64.118 `\DeclareInputText{203}{\hebqubuts}`  
64.119 `\DeclareInputText{204}{\hebdagesh}`  
64.120 `\DeclareInputText{205}{\hebmeteg}`  
64.121 `\DeclareInputText{206}{\hebmaqaf}`  
64.122 `\DeclareInputText{207}{\hebrafe}`  
64.123 `\DeclareInputText{208}{\hebpaseq}`  
64.124 `\DeclareInputText{209}{\hebshindot}`  
64.125 `\DeclareInputText{210}{\hebsindot}`

```

64.126 \DeclareInputText{211}{\hebsofpasuq}
64.127 \DeclareInputText{212}{\hebdoublevav}
64.128 \DeclareInputText{213}{\hebvavyod}
64.129 \DeclareInputText{214}{\hebdoubleyod}
64.130 </cp1255>

```

Hebrew letters start from the position 224 in both encodings.

```

64.131 <*8859 - 8 | cp1255>
64.132 \DeclareInputText{224}{\hebalef}
64.133 \DeclareInputText{225}{\hebbet}
64.134 \DeclareInputText{226}{\hebgimel}
64.135 \DeclareInputText{227}{\hebdalet}
64.136 \DeclareInputText{228}{\hebhe}
64.137 \DeclareInputText{229}{\hebvav}
64.138 \DeclareInputText{230}{\hebzayin}
64.139 \DeclareInputText{231}{\hebbet}
64.140 \DeclareInputText{232}{\hebtet}
64.141 \DeclareInputText{233}{\hebyod}
64.142 \DeclareInputText{234}{\hebfinalkaf}
64.143 \DeclareInputText{235}{\hebkaf}
64.144 \DeclareInputText{236}{\heblamed}
64.145 \DeclareInputText{237}{\hebfinalmem}
64.146 \DeclareInputText{238}{\hebmem}
64.147 \DeclareInputText{239}{\hebfinalnun}
64.148 \DeclareInputText{240}{\hebnnun}
64.149 \DeclareInputText{241}{\hebsamekh}
64.150 \DeclareInputText{242}{\hebayin}
64.151 \DeclareInputText{243}{\hebfinalpe}
64.152 \DeclareInputText{244}{\hebpe}
64.153 \DeclareInputText{245}{\hebfinaltsadi}
64.154 \DeclareInputText{246}{\hebtsadi}
64.155 \DeclareInputText{247}{\he bqof}
64.156 \DeclareInputText{248}{\hebresh}
64.157 \DeclareInputText{249}{\hebshin}
64.158 \DeclareInputText{250}{\hebtav}
64.159 </8859 - 8 | cp1255>

```

Special symbols which define the direction of symbols explicitly. Currently, they are not used in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```

64.160 <*cp1255>
64.161 \DeclareInputText{253}{\lefttorightmark}
64.162 \DeclareInputText{254}{\righttoleftmark}
64.163 </cp1255>

```

## 64.4 The IBM code page 862

The cp862.def encoding file defines the characters in the IBM codepage 862 encoding. The DOS graphics ‘letters’ and a few other positions are ignored (left undefined).

Hebrew letters start from the position 128.

```

64.164 <*cp862>
64.165 \DeclareInputText{128}{\hebalef}
64.166 \DeclareInputText{129}{\hebbet}
64.167 \DeclareInputText{130}{\hebgimel}
64.168 \DeclareInputText{131}{\hebdalet}
64.169 \DeclareInputText{132}{\hebhe}
64.170 \DeclareInputText{133}{\hebvav}
64.171 \DeclareInputText{134}{\hebzayin}
64.172 \DeclareInputText{135}{\hebbet}
64.173 \DeclareInputText{136}{\hebtet}
64.174 \DeclareInputText{137}{\hebyod}
64.175 \DeclareInputText{138}{\hebfinalkaf}
64.176 \DeclareInputText{139}{\hebkaf}

```

64.177 `\DeclareInputText{140}{\heblamed}`  
64.178 `\DeclareInputText{141}{\hebfinalmem}`  
64.179 `\DeclareInputText{142}{\hebmem}`  
64.180 `\DeclareInputText{143}{\hebfinalnun}`  
64.181 `\DeclareInputText{144}{\hebnnun}`  
64.182 `\DeclareInputText{145}{\hebsamekh}`  
64.183 `\DeclareInputText{146}{\hebayin}`  
64.184 `\DeclareInputText{147}{\hebfinalpe}`  
64.185 `\DeclareInputText{148}{\hebpe}`  
64.186 `\DeclareInputText{149}{\hebfinaltsadi}`  
64.187 `\DeclareInputText{150}{\hebtsadi}`  
64.188 `\DeclareInputText{151}{\hebqof}`  
64.189 `\DeclareInputText{152}{\hebresh}`  
64.190 `\DeclareInputText{153}{\hebshin}`  
64.191 `\DeclareInputText{154}{\hebtav}`  
  
64.192 `\DeclareInputText{155}{\textcent}`  
64.193 `\DeclareInputText{156}{\pounds}`  
64.194 `\DeclareInputText{157}{\textyen}`  
64.195 `\DeclareInputText{158}{\textpeseta}`  
64.196 `\DeclareInputText{159}{\textflorin}`  
64.197 `\DeclareInputText{160}{\@tabacckludge'a}`  
64.198 `\DeclareInputText{161}{\@tabacckludge'i}`  
64.199 `\DeclareInputText{162}{\@tabacckludge'o}`  
64.200 `\DeclareInputText{163}{\@tabacckludge'u}`  
64.201 `\DeclareInputText{164}{\~n}`  
64.202 `\DeclareInputText{165}{\~N}`  
64.203 `\DeclareInputMath{166}{\mathordfeminine}`  
64.204 `\DeclareInputMath{167}{\mathordmasculine}`  
64.205 `\DeclareInputText{168}{\textquestiondown}`  
64.206 `\DeclareInputMath{170}{\lnot}`  
64.207 `\DeclareInputText{171}{\textonehalf}`  
64.208 `\DeclareInputText{172}{\textonequarter}`  
64.209 `\DeclareInputText{173}{\texttexclamdown}`  
64.210 `\DeclareInputText{174}{\guillemotleft}`  
64.211 `\DeclareInputText{175}{\guillemotright}`  
  
64.212 `\DeclareInputMath{224}{\alpha}`  
64.213 `\DeclareInputText{225}{\ss}`  
64.214 `\DeclareInputMath{226}{\Gamma}`  
64.215 `\DeclareInputMath{227}{\pi}`  
64.216 `\DeclareInputMath{228}{\Sigma}`  
64.217 `\DeclareInputMath{229}{\sigma}`  
64.218 `\DeclareInputMath{230}{\mu}`  
64.219 `\DeclareInputMath{231}{\tau}`  
64.220 `\DeclareInputMath{232}{\Phi}`  
64.221 `\DeclareInputMath{233}{\Theta}`  
64.222 `\DeclareInputMath{234}{\Omega}`  
64.223 `\DeclareInputMath{235}{\delta}`  
64.224 `\DeclareInputMath{236}{\infty}`  
64.225 `\DeclareInputMath{237}{\phi}`  
64.226 `\DeclareInputMath{238}{\varepsilon}`  
64.227 `\DeclareInputMath{239}{\cap}`  
64.228 `\DeclareInputMath{240}{\equiv}`  
64.229 `\DeclareInputMath{241}{\pm}`  
64.230 `\DeclareInputMath{242}{\ge}`  
64.231 `\DeclareInputMath{243}{\le}`  
64.232 `\DeclareInputMath{246}{\div}`  
64.233 `\DeclareInputMath{247}{\approx}`  
64.234 `\DeclareInputText{248}{\textdegree}`  
64.235 `\DeclareInputText{249}{\textperiodcentered}`  
64.236 `\DeclareInputText{250}{\textbullet}`  
64.237 `\DeclareInputMath{251}{\surd}`  
64.238 `\DeclareInputMath{252}{\mathnssuperior}`

```

64.239 \DeclareInputMath{253}{\mathtwosuperior}
64.240 \DeclareInputText{254}{\textblacksquare}
64.241 \DeclareInputText{255}{\nobreakspace}
64.242 </cp862>

```

`\DisableNikud` A utility macro to ignore any nikud character that may appear in the input. This allows you to ignore cp1255 nikud characters that happened to appear in the input.

```

64.243 (*8859 – 8)
64.244 \newcommand{\DisableNikud}{%
64.245 \DeclareInputText{192}{}%
64.246 \DeclareInputText{193}{}%
64.247 \DeclareInputText{194}{}%
64.248 \DeclareInputText{195}{}%
64.249 \DeclareInputText{196}{}%
64.250 \DeclareInputText{197}{}%
64.251 \DeclareInputText{198}{}%
64.252 \DeclareInputText{199}{}%
64.253 \DeclareInputText{200}{}%
64.254 \DeclareInputText{201}{}%
64.255 \DeclareInputText{203}{}%
64.256 \DeclareInputText{204}{}%
64.257 \DeclareInputText{205}{}%
64.258 \DeclareInputText{206}{}%
64.259 \DeclareInputText{207}{}%
64.260 \DeclareInputText{208}{}%
64.261 \DeclareInputText{209}{}%
64.262 \DeclareInputText{210}{}%
64.263 \DeclareInputText{211}{}%
64.264 \DeclareInputText{212}{}%
64.265 \DeclareInputText{213}{}%
64.266 \DeclareInputText{214}{}%
64.267 }
64.268 </8859 – 8)

```

Finally, we reset the category code of the @ sign at the end of all .def files.

```

64.269 <-driver>\makeatother

```

## 65 Hebrew font encodings

Don't forget to update the docs...

### 65.1 THIS SECTION IS OUT OF DATE. UPDATE DOCS TO MATCH HE8 ENCODING

The file `hebrew.fdd`<sup>73</sup> contains the Local Hebrew Encoding (LHE) definition, the external font information needed to use the Hebrew 7-bit fonts (old code fonts) and `hebfont` package that provides Hebrew font switching commands.

Using this file as an input, `lheenc.def` encoding definition file, all .fd files (font definition files) and font switching package for available Hebrew fonts are generated. We chose to use 7-bit encoding as default font encoding, because:

1. There are many 7-bit encoded Hebrew fonts available, more then for any other encoding.
2. Available T<sub>E</sub>X Hebrew fonts do not include latin alphabet, and we can safely map Hebrew glyphs to the ASCII positions (0 – 127).

<sup>73</sup>The files described in this section have version number v1.2c and were last revised on 2005/05/20.

Current definition of the LHE encoding supports only Hebrew letters (`\hebaletf`–`\hebtaf`), but not Hebrew points, such as `\hebdagesh`, `\hebqamats`, `\hebpatah`, `\hebshindot`, etc. We are working now on such addition.

## 65.2 The DOCSTRIP modules

The following modules are used in the implementation to direct DOCSTRIP in generating external files:

<code>driver</code>	produce a documentation driver file
<code>HE8enc</code>	produce the encoding definition for CodePage 1255 (HE8)
<code>HE8cmr</code>	make Hebrew default font in HE8
<code>HE8cmss</code>	make Hebrew sans-serif font in HE8
<code>HE8cmtt</code>	make Hebrew typewriter font in HE8
<code>HE8OmegaHebrew</code>	Hebrew font from the Omega project (by ???)
<code>HE8aharoni</code>	Hebrew sans-serif font (Culmus)
<code>HE8david</code>	Hebrew serif font (Culmus)
<code>HE8drugulin</code>	Hebrew old serif font (Culmus)
<code>HE8ellinia</code>	Hebrew isans-serif font (Culmus)
<code>HE8frankruehl</code>	Hebrew serif font (Culmus)
<code>HE8KtavYad</code>	Hebrew handwriting font (Culmus)
<code>HE8MiriamMono</code>	Hebrew monospaced font
<code>HE8Nachlieli</code>	Hebrew sans-serif font (Culmus)
<code>HE8CourierShalom</code>	Hebrew Shalom (Courier) font (by IBM)
<code>HE8HelveticaNarkissTam</code>	Hebrew NarkisTam (Helvetica) (by Zvi Narkis)
<code>HE8TimesNarkissim</code>	Hebrew Narkissim (Times) (by Zvi Narkis)
<code>HE8mfdavid</code>	Hebrew David font (by ???)
<code>HE8mffrank</code>	Hebrew Frank-Ruehl font (by ??)
<code>HE8mffrankthick</code>	Hebrew Frank-Ruehl (thick) font (by ??)
<code>HE8mffrankthin</code>	Hebrew Frank-Ruehl (thin) font (by ??)
<code>HE8mfmiriam</code>	Hebrew Miriam font (by ???)
<code>HE8mfmiriamwide</code>	Hebrew Miriam (wide) font (by ???)
<code>HE8mfnarkistam</code>	Hebrew Narkis Tam font (by ???)
<code>LHEenc</code>	produce the encoding definition for Local Hebrew Encoding (LHE)
<code>LHEcmr</code>	make Hebrew default font in LHE
<code>LHEcmss</code>	make Hebrew sans-serif font in LHE
<code>LHEcmtt</code>	make Hebrew typewriter font in LHE
<code>LHEclas</code>	make Hebrew classic font (by Joel M. Hoffman) in LHE
<code>LHEshold</code>	make Hebrew shalom old font (by Jonathan Brecher) in LHE
<code>LHEshscr</code>	make Hebrew shalom script font (by Jonathan Brecher) in LHE
<code>LHEshstk</code>	make Hebrew shalom stick font (by Jonathan Brecher) in LHE
<code>LHEfr</code>	make Hebrew frank-ruehl font in LHE
<code>LHEcrml</code>	make Hebrew carmel font (by Dr. Samy Zafrany) in LHE
<code>LHEredis</code>	make Hebrew redis font (by Prof. Jacques J. Goldberg) in LHE
<code>nowarn</code>	option for font definition files, that used to produce “silent” font substitutions without giving warnings
<code>hefont</code>	create Hebrew font switching commands package

A typical DOCSTRIP command file would then have entries like:

```
\generateFile{lhecmr.fd}{t}{\from{hebrew.fdd}{LHEcmr,nowarn}}
```

## 65.3 The LHEencoding definition file

The Hebrew font encoding LHE is based upon the old-code encoding also known as the Israeli Standard SI-960. Many Hebrew T<sub>E</sub>X fonts from the Hebrew University



of Jerusalem are encoded in this encoding. It only uses the lower 128 positions of the font table. As local encoding its name start with the letter ‘L’.

First we define the Local Hebrew Encoding; specify a default for the font substitution process for the LHE encoding and supply a font to be used when all else fails.

```
65.1 (*LHEenc)
65.2 \DeclareFontEncoding{LHE}{-}{-}
65.3 \DeclareFontSubstitution{LHE}{cmr}{m}{n}
65.4 \DeclareErrorFont{LHE}{cmr}{m}{n}{10}
65.5 </LHEenc>
```

Then we define a few commands in the LHE encoding.

```
65.6 (*LHEenc)
65.7 \ProvideTextCommand{\textcopyright}{LHE}{\textcircled{\@latin{c}}}
65.8 \ProvideTextCommand{\textregistered}{LHE}{\textcircled{\scshape%
65.9 \@latin{r}}}
65.10 \ProvideTextCommand{\texttrademark}{LHE}{\textsuperscript{\@latin{TM}}}
65.11 </LHEenc>
```

Because not everyone can input Hebrew input text directly from the keyboard we need to define control sequences for all the Hebrew glyphs in the fonts. In addition, we want to support many input encodings for Hebrew and to keep the language definition file (`hebrew.ldf`) independent of the encoding. Therefore, we exploit the standard  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_\epsilon$  font encoding mechanism to define control sequences for all the Hebrew glyphs in the fonts in encoding-specific way. The language definition file uses only the control sequences and doesn’t need to check the current font or input encoding.

In the LHE encoding (7-bit encoding) all the Hebrew glyphs reside in the *lower* half of the font. Currently, only the Hebrew letters are supported. They use the same positions as the latin small letters in ASCII encoding and the position of ‘.

The symbol ‘ (glyph 96) is used by Hebrew letter *Alef*, so we need to define its `\lccode` to allow hyphenation. All other letters retain the same `\lccodes` as their latin counterparts.

```
65.12 <+LHEenc>\lccode‘ ‘=‘ ‘
```

Hebrew letters occupy the positions 96–122 in LHE encoding:

```
65.13 (*LHEenc)
65.14 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebalef}{LHE}{96}
65.15 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebbet}{LHE}{97}
65.16 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebgimel}{LHE}{98}
65.17 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebdalet}{LHE}{99}
65.18 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebhe}{LHE}{100}
65.19 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebvav}{LHE}{101}
65.20 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebzayin}{LHE}{102}
65.21 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebheth}{LHE}{103}
65.22 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebtet}{LHE}{104}
65.23 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebyod}{LHE}{105}
65.24 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinalkaf}{LHE}{106}
65.25 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebkap}{LHE}{107}
65.26 \DeclareTextSymbol{\heblamed}{LHE}{108}
65.27 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinalmem}{LHE}{109}
65.28 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebmeme}{LHE}{110}
65.29 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinalnun}{LHE}{111}
65.30 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebnun}{LHE}{112}
65.31 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebsamekh}{LHE}{113}
65.32 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebayin}{LHE}{114}
65.33 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinalpe}{LHE}{115}
65.34 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebpe}{LHE}{116}
65.35 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinaltsadi}{LHE}{117}
65.36 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebtsadi}{LHE}{118}
65.37 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebqof}{LHE}{119}
65.38 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebreish}{LHE}{120}
```

```

65.39 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebshin}{LHE}{121}
65.40 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebtav}{LHE}{122}
65.41 \LHEenc

```

Letter `\hebsin` is defined as a synonym of `\hebshin`:

```

65.42 (+LHEenc)\let\hebsin=\hebshin

```

## 65.4 The font definition files (in LHE encoding)

### 65.4.1 Hebrew default font

It uses *Jerusalem* font for regular font, *Old Jaffa* font for italic shape and small-caps, *Dead Sea* font for bold face, and *Tel-Aviv* for bold-italic

```

65.43 (*LHEcmr)
65.44 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{cmr}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.45 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmr}{m}{n}
65.46     {<-> jerus10 }{}
65.47 %%%%%%%%% Italicized shape
65.48 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmr}{m}{it}
65.49     {<-> oldjaf10 }{}
65.50 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmr}{m}{sl}
65.51     {<-> oldjaf10 }{}
65.52 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmr}{m}{sc}
65.53     {<-> oldjaf10 }{}
65.54 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended series
65.55 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmr}{bx}{n}
65.56     {<-> deads10 }{}
65.57 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmr}{b}{n}
65.58     {<-> deads10 }{}
65.59 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended (Italic) series
65.60 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmr}{bx}{sl}
65.61     {<-> telav10 }{}
65.62 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmr}{bx}{it}
65.63     {<-> telav10 }{}
65.64 \LHEcmr

```

### 65.4.2 Hebrew sans-serif font

We use *Tel Aviv* font for the Sans family. *Old Jaffa* font is used for italic shape and *Dead Sea* used for bold face.

```

65.65 (*LHEcmss)
65.66 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{cmss}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.67 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmss}{m}{n}
65.68     {<-> telav10 }{}
65.69 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.70 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmss}{m}{sc}
65.71 (-nowarn) {<->sub * cmss/m/n}{}
65.72 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * cmss/m/n}{}
65.73 %%%%%%%%% Italicized shape
65.74 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmss}{m}{it}
65.75     {<-> oldjaf10 }{}
65.76 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.77 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmss}{m}{sl}
65.78 (-nowarn) {<->sub * cmss/m/it}{}
65.79 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * cmss/m/it}{}
65.80 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended series
65.81 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmss}{bx}{n}
65.82     {<-> deads10 }{}
65.83 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.84 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmss}{b}{n}
65.85 (-nowarn) {<->sub * cmss/bx/n}{}
65.86 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * cmss/bx/n}{}

```

```

65.87 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.88 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmss}{bx}{sl}
65.89 <-nowarn> {<->sub * cmss/bx/n}{f}
65.90 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * cmss/bx/n}{f}
65.91 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.92 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmss}{bx}{it}
65.93 <-nowarn> {<->sub * cmss/bx/n}{f}
65.94 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * cmss/bx/n}{f}
65.95 </LHEcmss>

```

### 65.4.3 Hebrew typewriter font

We use *Tel Aviv* font as the typewriter font. *Old Jaffa* font is used for italic shape and *Dead Sea* used for bold face.

```

65.96 (*LHEcmtt)
65.97 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{cmtt}{\hyphenchar \font@m@ne}
65.98 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmtt}{m}{n}
65.99     {<-> telav10 }{f}
65.100 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.101 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmtt}{m}{sc}
65.102 <-nowarn> {<->sub * cmtt/m/n}{f}
65.103 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * cmtt/m/n}{f}
65.104 %%%%%%%%% Italicized shape
65.105 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmtt}{m}{it}
65.106     {<-> oldjaf10 }{f}
65.107 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.108 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmtt}{m}{sl}
65.109 <-nowarn> {<->sub * cmtt/m/it}{f}
65.110 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * cmtt/m/it}{f}
65.111 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended series
65.112 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmtt}{bx}{n}
65.113     {<-> deads10 }{f}
65.114 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.115 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{cmtt}{bx}{it}
65.116 <-nowarn> {<->sub * cmtt/bx/n}{f}
65.117 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * cmtt/bx/n}{f}
65.118 </LHEcmtt>

```

### 65.4.4 Hebrew classic font

*Hclassic* and *hcaption* fonts are distributed freely from CTAN sites and copyrighted by Joel M. Hoffman, of 19 Hillcrest Lane, Rye, NY 10580 USA, e-mail: 72700.402@compuserve.com.

Hclassic is a modernized Classical Hebrew font (in the same way that Knuth's *cmr* family is a modernized Roman font — but his fonts are much nicer). Hcaption is a slanted version of hclassic font. Both fonts contain all of the Hebrew consonants, the (rarely used) ligature *alef-lamed* and two versions of the letter *ayin* for use with and without vowels. Hclassic also contains all of the vowels found in Hebrew, a symbol for *meteg*, and dots for use as a *dagesh* and for differentiating *shin* and *sin* letters.

Currently, only the Hebrew consonants (*hebalef* – *hebtav*) from these fonts are supported by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>, however one can use vowels and dots directly with PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X macros. We are working on generic vowels and dots support for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>.

```

65.119 (*LHEclas)
65.120 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{clas}{f}
65.121 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{clas}{m}{n}
65.122     {<-> s * [0.83345] hclassic }{f}
65.123 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.124 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{clas}{m}{sc}
65.125 <-nowarn> {<->sub * clas/m/n}{f}

```

```

65.126 <+nowarn> {<->ssub * clas/m/n}{f}
65.127 %%%%%%%%% Slanted shape
65.128 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{clas}{m}{sl}
65.129 {<-> s * [0.69389] hcaption }{f}
65.130 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.131 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{clas}{m}{it}
65.132 <-nowarn> {<->sub * clas/m/sl}{f}
65.133 <+nowarn> {<->ssub * clas/m/sl}{f}
65.134 </LHEclas>

```

#### 65.4.5 Hebrew shalom fonts

All three shalom fonts (*ShalomScript10*, *ShalomStick10* and *ShalomOldStyle10*) have been created by Jonathan Brecher, of 9 Skyview Road, Lexington, MA 02173-1112 USA, e-mail: brecher@husc.harvard.edu.

All shalom fonts have been written in POSTSCRIPT via Fontographer on a Mac. The fonts have been converted to METAFONT by Rama Porrat (e-mail: rama@cc.huji.ac.il), using the utility typo, a font editor + converter between font formats (a commercial product). *ShalomScript10.mf* is the METAFONT equivalent of *ShalomScript.ps*, *ShalomStick10.mf* came from *ShalomStick.ps* and *ShalomOldStyle10.mf* originated in *ShalomOldStyle.ps*.

The fonts differ in the letters' style. *ShalomScript10* contains hand writing Hebrew letters; *ShalomStick10* contains sans-serif letters, and *ShalomOldStyle10* contains old style letters. All three fonts contain vowels and dots (nikud). While converting to METAFONT, letters and symbols within the fonts have been arranged so as to get a usable font for writing Hebrew documents in T<sub>E</sub>X or L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, with as well as without vowels.

Currently, only the Hebrew consonants (*hebalef* – *hebtav*) from these fonts are supported by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>, however one can use vowels and dots directly with PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X macros. We are working on generic vowels and dots support for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>.

```

65.135 (*LHEshold)
65.136 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{shold}{}
65.137 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{shold}{m}{n}
65.138 {<-> shold10 }{f}
65.139 </LHEshold>
65.140 (*LHEshscr)
65.141 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{shscr}{}
65.142 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{shscr}{m}{n}
65.143 {<-> shscr10 }{f}
65.144 </LHEshscr>
65.145 (*LHEshstk)
65.146 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{shstk}{}
65.147 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{shstk}{m}{n}
65.148 {<-> shstk10 }{f}
65.149 </LHEshstk>

```

#### 65.4.6 Hebrew frank-ruehl font

*Frank Ruehl* font was written in METAFONT and includes three shapes: regular, bold extanded and slanted.

```

65.150 (*LHEfr)
65.151 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{fr}{}
65.152 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{fr}{m}{n}
65.153 {<-> fr }{f}
65.154 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.155 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{fr}{m}{sc}
65.156 <-nowarn> {<->sub * fr/m/n}{f}
65.157 <+nowarn> {<->ssub * fr/m/n}{f}
65.158 %%%%%%%%% Slanted shape

```

```

65.159 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{fr}{m}{sl}
65.160     {<-> frsl }{}
65.161 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.162 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{fr}{m}{it}
65.163 (-nowarn) {<->sub * fr/m/sl}{}
65.164 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * fr/m/sl}{}
65.165 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended series
65.166 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{fr}{bx}{n}
65.167     {<-> frbx }{}
65.168 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.169 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{fr}{b}{n}
65.170 (-nowarn) {<->sub * fr/bx/n}{}
65.171 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * fr/bx/n}{}
65.172 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.173 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{fr}{bx}{sl}
65.174 (-nowarn) {<->sub * fr/bx/n}{}
65.175 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * fr/bx/n}{}
65.176 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.177 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{fr}{bx}{it}
65.178 (-nowarn) {<->sub * fr/bx/n}{}
65.179 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * fr/bx/n}{}
65.180 </LHEfr>

```

#### 65.4.7 Hebrew carmel font

*Carmel* font includes regular and slanted shapes. It was created by Dr. Samy Zafrany of the Technion, Haifa, Israel with the intention of making nice fonts for headers and emphasized text.

```

65.181 (*LHEcrml)
65.182 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{crml}{}
65.183 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{crml}{m}{n}
65.184     {<-> crml10 }{}
65.185 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.186 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{crml}{m}{sc}
65.187 (-nowarn) {<->sub * crml/m/n}{}
65.188 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * crml/m/n}{}
65.189 %%%%%%%%% Slanted shape
65.190 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{crml}{m}{sl}
65.191     {<-> crmls10 }{}
65.192 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.193 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{crml}{m}{it}
65.194 (-nowarn) {<->sub * crml/m/sl}{}
65.195 (+nowarn) {<->ssub * crml/m/sl}{}
65.196 </LHEcrml>

```

#### 65.4.8 Hebrew redis font

*Redis* font has been created by Prof. Jacques J. Goldberg of the Technion, Haifa, Israel. The font is available in regular, slanted and bold extended shapes. This font contains a full set of Hebrew letters in a “sans-serif vectorized” style, and selected punctuation.

```

65.197 (*LHEredis)
65.198 \DeclareFontFamily{LHE}{redis}{}
65.199 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{redis}{m}{n}{%
65.200     <5> <6> redis7
65.201     <7> <8> <9> <10> <12> gen * redis
65.202     <10.95> redis10
65.203     <14.4> redis12
65.204     <17.28> <20.74> <24.88> redis17}{}
65.205 %%%%%%%%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.206 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{redis}{m}{sc}

```

```

65.207 <-nowarn> {<->sub * redis/m/n}{-}
65.208 <+nowarn> {<->ssub * redis/m/n}{-}
65.209 %%% Slanted shape
65.210 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{redis}{m}{sl}{%
65.211 <5> <6> <7> rediss8
65.212 <8> <9> <10> <12> gen * rediss
65.213 <10.95> rediss10
65.214 <14.4> <17.28> <20.74> <24.88> rediss12}{-}
65.215 %%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.216 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{redis}{m}{it}
65.217 <-nowarn> {<->sub * redis/m/sl}{-}
65.218 <+nowarn> {<->ssub * redis/m/sl}{-}
65.219 %%% Bold extended series
65.220 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{redis}{bx}{n}{%
65.221 <5> <6> <7> <8> <9> <10> <10.95> <12>
65.222 <14.4> <17.28> <20.74> <24.88> redisb10}{-}
65.223 %%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.224 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{redis}{b}{n}
65.225 <-nowarn> {<->sub * redis/bx/n}{-}
65.226 <+nowarn> {<->ssub * redis/bx/n}{-}
65.227 %%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.228 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{redis}{bx}{sl}
65.229 <-nowarn> {<->sub * redis/bx/n}{-}
65.230 <+nowarn> {<->ssub * redis/bx/n}{-}
65.231 %%% Font/shape undefined, therefore substituted
65.232 \DeclareFontShape{LHE}{redis}{bx}{it}
65.233 <-nowarn> {<->sub * redis/bx/n}{-}
65.234 <+nowarn> {<->ssub * redis/bx/n}{-}
65.235 </LHEredis>

```

## 65.5 The HE8encoding definition file

The Hebrew font encoding HE8 is based upon an extension by Microsoft to the ISO-8859-8 standard. This is an 8bit encoding. The extensions include hebrew points (“Nikud”).

First we define the Codepage 1255; specify a default for the font substitution process for the HE8 encoding and supply a font to be used when all else fails.

```

65.236 (*HE8enc)
65.237 \DeclareFontEncoding{HE8}{-}
65.238 \DeclareFontSubstitution{HE8}{cmr}{m}{n}
65.239 \DeclareErrorFont{HE8}{cmr}{m}{n}{10}
65.240 </HE8enc>

```

Then we define a few commands in the HE8 encoding.

```

65.241 (*HE8enc)
65.242 \ProvideTextCommand{\textcopyright}{HE8}{\textcircled{\@latin{c}}}
65.243 \ProvideTextCommand{\textregistered}{HE8}{\textcircled{\scshape%
65.244 \@latin{r}}}
65.245 \ProvideTextCommand{\texttrademark}{HE8}{\textsuperscript{\@latin{TM}}}
65.246 </HE8enc>

```

### 65.5.1 CHECK HERE FOR HE8 UPDATES

Because not everyone can input Hebrew input text directly from the keyboard we need to define control sequences for all the Hebrew glyphs in the fonts. In addition, we want to support many input encodings for Hebrew and to keep the language definition file (`hebrew.ldf`) independent of the encoding. Therefore, we exploit the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> font encoding mechanism to define control sequences for all the Hebrew glyphs in the fonts in encoding-specific way. The language definition file uses only the control sequences and doesn’t need to check the current font or input encoding.

In the LHE encoding (7-bit encoding) all the Hebrew glyphs reside in the *lower* half of the font. Currently, only the Hebrew letters are supported. They use the same positions as the latin small letters in ASCII encoding and the position of ‘.

Some general symbols:

```
65.247 (*HE8enc)
65.248 \ProvideTextCommand{\textcopyright}{HE8}{\textcircled{\@latin{c}}}
65.249 \ProvideTextCommand{\textregistered}{HE8}{\textcircled{\scshape%
65.250 \@latin{r}}}}
65.251 \ProvideTextCommand{\texttrademark}{HE8}{\textsuperscript{\@latin{TM}}}
65.252 /HE8enc)
```

The hebrew points:

```
65.253 (*HE8enc)
65.254 \DeclareTextSymbol{\sheva}{HE8}{192}
65.255 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hatafsegol}{HE8}{193}
65.256 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hatafpatah}{HE8}{194}
65.257 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hatafqamats}{HE8}{195}
65.258 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hiriq}{HE8}{196}
65.259 \DeclareTextSymbol{\tsere}{HE8}{197}
65.260 \DeclareTextSymbol{\segol}{HE8}{198}
65.261 \DeclareTextSymbol{\patah}{HE8}{199}
65.262 \DeclareTextSymbol{\qamats}{HE8}{200}
65.263 \DeclareTextSymbol{\holam}{HE8}{201}
65.264 \DeclareTextSymbol{\qubuts}{HE8}{203}
65.265 \DeclareTextSymbol{\dagesh}{HE8}{204}
65.266 \DeclareTextSymbol{\meteg}{HE8}{205}
65.267 \DeclareTextSymbol{\maqaf}{HE8}{206}
65.268 \DeclareTextSymbol{\rafe}{HE8}{207}
65.269 \DeclareTextSymbol{\paseq}{HE8}{208}
65.270 \DeclareTextSymbol{\shindot}{HE8}{209}
65.271 \DeclareTextSymbol{\sindot}{HE8}{210}
65.272 \DeclareTextSymbol{\sofpasuq}{HE8}{211}
65.273 \DeclareTextSymbol{\doublevav}{HE8}{212}
65.274 \DeclareTextSymbol{\vavyod}{HE8}{213}
65.275 \DeclareTextSymbol{\doubleyod}{HE8}{214}
65.276 /HE8enc)
```

Hebrew letters occupy the positions 224–250 in HE8 encoding [WHAT ABOUT OTHER MARKS]:

```
65.277 (*HE8enc)
65.278 % \lccode‘‘‘ % probably not needed (Tzafrir)
65.279 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebalef}{HE8}{224}
65.280 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebbet}{HE8}{225}
65.281 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebgimel}{HE8}{226}
65.282 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebdalet}{HE8}{227}
65.283 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebhe}{HE8}{228}
65.284 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebvav}{HE8}{229}
65.285 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebzayin}{HE8}{230}
65.286 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebhet}{HE8}{231}
65.287 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebtet}{HE8}{232}
65.288 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebyod}{HE8}{233}
65.289 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinalkaf}{HE8}{234}
65.290 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebkafe}{HE8}{235}
65.291 \DeclareTextSymbol{\heblamed}{HE8}{236}
65.292 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinalmem}{HE8}{237}
65.293 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebmeme}{HE8}{238}
65.294 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinalnun}{HE8}{239}
65.295 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebnun}{HE8}{240}
65.296 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebsamekh}{HE8}{241}
65.297 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebayin}{HE8}{242}
65.298 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinalpe}{HE8}{243}
65.299 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebpe}{HE8}{244}
65.300 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebfinaltsadi}{HE8}{245}
```

```

65.301 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebtsadi}{HE8}{246}
65.302 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebqof}{HE8}{247}
65.303 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebresh}{HE8}{248}
65.304 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebshin}{HE8}{249}
65.305 \DeclareTextSymbol{\hebtav}{HE8}{250}
65.306 \end{HE8enc}

```

Letter `\hebsin` is defined as a synonym of `\hebshin`:

```

65.307 \end{HE8enc}\let\hebsin=\hebshin

```

## 65.6 The font definition files (in HE8 encoding)

### 65.6.1 Hebrew default font

It uses *OmegaHebrew* font for regular font, *Old Jaffa* font for italic shape and small-caps, *Dead Sea* font for bold face, and *Tel-Aviv* for bold-italic

```

65.308 (*HE8cmr)
65.309 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{cmr}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.310 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmr}{m}{n}
65.311     {<-> david }{}
65.312 %%%%%%%%% Italicized shape
65.313 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmr}{m}{it}
65.314     {<-> davidi }{}
65.315 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmr}{m}{sl}
65.316     {<-> davidi }{}
65.317 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmr}{m}{sc}
65.318     {<-> david }{}
65.319 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended series
65.320 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmr}{bx}{n}
65.321     {<-> davidb }{}
65.322 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmr}{b}{n}
65.323     {<-> davidb }{}
65.324 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended (Italic) series
65.325 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmr}{bx}{sl}
65.326     {<-> davidbi }{}
65.327 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmr}{bx}{it}
65.328     {<-> davidbi }{}
65.329 \end{HE8cmr}

```

### 65.6.2 Hebrew sans-serif font

Until we have a real sans-serif font in this distribution, this file will remain a copy of the roman fonts definitons above.

```

65.330 (*HE8cmss)
65.331 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{cmss}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.332 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmss}{m}{n}
65.333     {<-> nachlieli }{}
65.334 %%%%%%%%% Italicized shape
65.335 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmss}{m}{it}
65.336     {<-> nachlieli }{}
65.337 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmss}{m}{sl}
65.338     {<-> nachlieli }{}
65.339 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmss}{m}{sc}
65.340     {<-> nachlieli }{}
65.341 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended series
65.342 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmss}{bx}{n}
65.343     {<-> nachlieli }{}
65.344 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmss}{b}{n}
65.345     {<-> nachlieli }{}
65.346 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended (Italic) series
65.347 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmss}{bx}{sl}
65.348     {<-> nachlieli }{}

```



```

65.349 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmss}{bx}{it}
65.350     {<-> nachlieli }{}
65.351 </HE8cmss>

```

### 65.6.3 Hebrew typewriter font

Until we have a real sans-serif font in this distribution, this file will remain a copy of the roman fonts definitions above.

```

65.352 (*HE8cmtt)
65.353 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{cmtt}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.354 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmtt}{m}{n}
65.355     {<-> miriam }{}
65.356 %%%%%%%%% Italicized shape
65.357 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmtt}{m}{it}
65.358     {<-> miriam }{}
65.359 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmtt}{m}{sl}
65.360     {<-> miriam }{}
65.361 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmtt}{m}{sc}
65.362     {<-> miriam }{}
65.363 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended series
65.364 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmtt}{bx}{n}
65.365     {<-> miriam }{}
65.366 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmtt}{b}{n}
65.367     {<-> miriam }{}
65.368 %%%%%%%%% Bold extended (Italic) series
65.369 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmtt}{bx}{sl}
65.370     {<-> miriam }{}
65.371 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{cmtt}{bx}{it}
65.372     {<-> miriam }{}
65.373 </HE8cmtt>

```

### 65.6.4 8Bit OmegaHebrew font

*OmegaHebrew* is a serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS] [FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```

65.374 (*HE8OmegaHebrew)
65.375 \def\OmegaHebrewscale{0.9}
65.376 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{OmegaHebrew}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.377 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{OmegaHebrew}{m}{n}{<-> [\OmegaHebrewscale] OmegaHebrew }{}
65.378 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.379 </HE8OmegaHebrew>

```

### 65.6.5 8Bit Aharoni font

*Aharoni* is a serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS] [FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```

65.380 (*HE8aharoni)
65.381 \def\Aharoniscale{1.0}
65.382 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{aharoni}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.383 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{aharoni}{m}{n} {<-> [\Aharoniscale] aharoni}{}
65.384 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{aharoni}{m}{it} {<-> [\Aharoniscale] aharonii}{}
65.385 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{aharoni}{m}{sl} {<-> [\Aharoniscale] aharonii}{}
65.386 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{aharoni}{b}{n} {<-> [\Aharoniscale] aharonib}{}
65.387 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{aharoni}{bx}{n} {<-> [\Aharoniscale] aharonib}{}
65.388 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{aharoni}{bx}{it} {<-> [\Aharoniscale] aharonibi}{}
65.389
65.390 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.391 </HE8aharoni>

```

### 65.6.6 8Bit David font

*David* is a serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS]  
[FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```
65.392 (*HE8david)
65.393 \def\Davidscale{1.0}
65.394 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{david}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.395
65.396 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{david}{m}{n}    {<-> [\Davidscale] david}{-}
65.397 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{david}{m}{it}  {<-> [\Davidscale] davidi}{-}
65.398 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{david}{m}{sl}  {<-> [\Davidscale] davidi}{-}
65.399 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{david}{b}{n}   {<-> [\Davidscale] davidb}{-}
65.400 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{david}{b}{it}  {<-> [\Davidscale] davidb}{-}
65.401 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{david}{b}{sl}  {<-> [\Davidscale] davidb}{-}
65.402
65.403
65.404 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.405 </HE8david>
```

### 65.6.7 8Bit Drugulin font

*Drugulin* is a serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS]  
[FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```
65.406 (*HE8drugulin)
65.407 \def\Drugulinscale{1.0}
65.408 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{drugulin}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.409 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{drugulin}{m}{n}  {<-> [\Drugulinscale] drugulinb}{-}
65.410 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{drugulin}{m}{it} {<-> [\Drugulinscale] drugulinbi}{-}
65.411 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{drugulin}{m}{sl} {<-> [\Drugulinscale] drugulinbi}{-}
65.412 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{drugulin}{b}{n} {<-> [\Drugulinscale] drugulinb}{-}
65.413 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{drugulin}{b}{it} {<-> [\Drugulinscale] drugulinb}{-}
65.414 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{drugulin}{b}{sl} {<-> [\Drugulinscale] drugulinbi}{-}
65.415 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.416 </HE8drugulin>
```

### 65.6.8 8Bit Ellinia font

*Ellinia* is a sans-serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS]  
[FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```
65.417 (*HE8ellinia)
65.418 \def\Elliniascale{1.0}
65.419 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{ellinia}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.420 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{ellinia}{m}{n}   {<-> [\Elliniascale] ellinia}{-}
65.421 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{ellinia}{m}{it}  {<-> [\Elliniascale] elliniaai}{-}
65.422 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{ellinia}{m}{sl}  {<-> [\Elliniascale] elliniaai}{-}
65.423 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{ellinia}{b}{n}   {<-> [\Elliniascale] elliniab}{-}
65.424 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{ellinia}{b}{it}  {<-> [\Elliniascale] elliniab}{-}
65.425 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{ellinia}{b}{sl}  {<-> [\Elliniascale] elliniabi}{-}
65.426 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.427 </HE8ellinia>
```

### 65.6.9 8Bit FrankRuehl font

*FrankRuehl* is a serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS]  
[FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```
65.428 (*HE8frankruehl)
65.429 \def\FrankRuehlscale{1.0}
65.430 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{frank}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.431 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{frank}{m}{n}      {<-> [\FrankRuehlscale] frank}{-}
65.432 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{frank}{m}{it}   {<-> [\FrankRuehlscale] franki}{-}
65.433 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{frank}{m}{sl}   {<-> [\FrankRuehlscale] franki}{-}
```

```

65.434 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{frank}{b}{n}    {<-> [\FrankRuehlscale] frankb}{}
65.435 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{frank}{bx}{n}   {<-> [\FrankRuehlscale] frankb}{}
65.436 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{frank}{bx}{it}  {<-> [\FrankRuehlscale] frankbi}{}
65.437 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.438 </HE8frankuehl>

```

### 65.6.10 8Bit KtavYad font

*KtavYad* is a serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS] [FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```

65.439 (*HE8yad)
65.440 \def\KtavYadscale{1.0}
65.441 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{yad}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.442 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{yad}{m}{n}    {<-> [\KtavYadscale] yadi}{}
65.443 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{yad}{m}{it}   {<-> [\KtavYadscale] yadi}{}
65.444 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{yad}{m}{sl}   {<-> [\KtavYadscale] yadi}{}
65.445 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{yad}{b}{n}    {<-> [\KtavYadscale] yadbi}{}
65.446 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{yad}{bx}{n}   {<-> [\KtavYadscale] yadbi}{}
65.447 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{yad}{bx}{it}  {<-> [\KtavYadscale] yadbi}{}
65.448 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.449 </HE8yad>

```

### 65.6.11 8Bit MiriamMono font

*MiriamMono* is a serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS] [FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```

65.450 (*HE8miriam)
65.451 \def\MiriamMonoscale{1.0}
65.452 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{miriam}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.453 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{miriam}{m}{n}    {<-> [\MiriamMonoscale] miriam}{}
65.454 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{miriam}{m}{it}   {<-> [\MiriamMonoscale] miriami}{}
65.455 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{miriam}{m}{sl}   {<-> [\MiriamMonoscale] miriami}{}
65.456 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{miriam}{b}{n}    {<-> [\MiriamMonoscale] miriamb}{}
65.457 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{miriam}{bx}{n}   {<-> [\MiriamMonoscale] miriamb}{}
65.458 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{miriam}{bx}{it}  {<-> [\MiriamMonoscale] miriambi}{}
65.459
65.460 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.461 </HE8miriam>

```

### 65.6.12 8Bit Nachlieli font

*Nachlieli* is a serif hebrew font created by the omega project [FILL IN CREDITS] [FILL IN GENERAL SHAPE DESCRIPTION] shapes: [FILL IN]

```

65.462 (*HE8nachlieli)
65.463 \def\Nachlieliscale{1.0}
65.464 \DeclareFontFamily{HE8}{nachlieli}{\hyphenchar\font45}
65.465 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{nachlieli}{m}{n}    {<-> [\Nachlieliscale] nachlieli}{}
65.466 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{nachlieli}{m}{it}   {<-> [\Nachlieliscale] nachlielii}{}
65.467 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{nachlieli}{m}{sl}   {<-> [\Nachlieliscale] nachlielii}{}
65.468 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{nachlieli}{b}{n}    {<-> [\Nachlieliscale] nachlielib}{}
65.469 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{nachlieli}{bx}{n}   {<-> [\Nachlieliscale] nachlielib}{}
65.470 \DeclareFontShape{HE8}{nachlieli}{bx}{it}  {<-> [\Nachlieliscale] nachlielibi}{}
65.471 %\endinput % is it needed [tzafrir]
65.472 </HE8nachlieli>

```

### 65.6.13 Hebrew font switching commands

The `hebfont` package defines a number of high-level commands (all starting with `\text..` similar to the standard  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$  font-change commands, for example `\textbf`) that have one argument and typeset this argument in the requested

<i>Command</i>	<i>Corresponds to</i>	<i>Font family</i>
<code>\textjm{..}</code>	<code>\rmfamily</code>	Jerusalem font
<code>\textds{..}</code>	<code>\bfseries</code>	Dead Sea font
<code>\textoj{..}</code>	<code>\itshape</code>	Old Jaffa font
	<code>\slshape</code>	
	<code>\emph</code>	
<code>\textta{..}</code>	<code>\sffamily</code>	Tel-Aviv font
	<code>\ttfamily</code>	
<code>\textcrml{..}</code>	<code>\fontfamily{crml}</code>	Carmel fonts
<code>\textfr{..}</code>	<code>\fontfamily{fr}</code>	Frank-Ruehl fonts
<code>\textredis{..}</code>	<code>\fontfamily{redis}</code>	Redis fonts
<code>\textclas{..}</code>	<code>\fontfamily{redis}</code>	Classic fonts
<code>\textshold{..}</code>	<code>\fontfamily{shold}</code>	Shalom Old Style font
<code>\textshscr{..}</code>	<code>\fontfamily{shscr}</code>	Shalom Script font
<code>\textshstk{..}</code>	<code>\fontfamily{shstk}</code>	Shalom Stick font

Table 36: Hebrew font-change commands with arguments

The font change commands provided here all start with `\text..` to emphasize that they are for use in normal text and to be easily memorable.

way. These commands are defined for all available Hebrew fonts defined above and change only font parameters but not direction.

For example, to use Hebrew Classic font family, the following sequence of commands should be included in a  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  document:

```
\sethebrew
\textclas{Hebrew text printed with Classic fonts}
```

or to use Hebrew with Classic fonts locally:

```
\R{\textclas{Hebrew text printed with Classic fonts}}
```

We declare  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  font commands, e.g. `\textjm{...}` for all available fonts. Table 36 shows the meanings of all these new high-level commands.

`\textjm` Switches to *Jerusalem* font which is default regular Hebrew font (“roman” family). Commands `\textrm{...}` and old-style `\rm ...` will produce the same result.

```
65.473 (*hebfont)
65.474 \def\ivritex@tmp{HE8}
65.475 \ifx\ivritex@tmp\HeblatexEncoding %
65.476 % compatibility with hebfonts:
65.477 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textjm}{\rmfamily\selectfont}
65.478 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textds}{\bfseries\selectfont}
65.479 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textoj}{\itshape\selectfont}
65.480 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textta}{\sffamily\selectfont}
65.481
65.482 % an attempt to give some replacements to the original hebfonts:
65.483 %
65.484 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textcrml}{\fontfamily{david}\selectfont}
65.485 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textfr}{\fontfamily{frank}\selectfont}
65.486 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textredis}{\fontfamily{aharoni}\selectfont}
65.487 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textclas}{\fontfamily{drugulin}\selectfont}
65.488 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textshold}{\fontfamily{frank}\selectfont}
65.489 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textshscr}{\fontfamily{yad}\selectfont}
65.490 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textshstk}{\fontfamily{aharoni}\selectfont}
65.491 % note that redis is larger than shstk
```

```

65.492
65.493
65.494 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textaha}{\fontfamily{aharoni}\selectfont}
65.495 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textdav}{\fontfamily{david}\selectfont}
65.496 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textdru}{\fontfamily{drugulin}\selectfont}
65.497 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textel}{\fontfamily{ellinia}\selectfont}
65.498 % \textfr is already declared above
65.499 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textmir}{\fontfamily{miriam}\selectfont}
65.500 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textna}{\fontfamily{nachlieli}\selectfont}
65.501 % is this necessary:
65.502 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textyad}{\fontfamily{yad}\selectfont}
65.503
65.504 \else%
65.505 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textjm}{\rmfamily\selectfont}

```

`\textds` Switches to *Dead Sea* font which is default bold font in Hebrew. Commands `\textbf{...}` and old-style `{\bf ...}` will produce the same result.

```
65.506 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textds}{\bfseries\selectfont}
```

`\textoj` Switches to *Old Jaffa* font which is default italic font in Hebrew. Commands `\textit{...}`, `\textsl{...}`, `\emph{...}` and old-style `{\it ...}` or `{\em ...}` will produce the same result.

```
65.507 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textoj}{\itshape\selectfont}
```

`\textta` Switches to *Tel-Aviv* font which is default sans-serif font in Hebrew. Commands `\textsf{...}`, `\texttt{...}` and old-style `{\sf ...}` or `{\tt ...}` will produce the same result (because sans-serif is used as typewriter font when in Hebrew mode).

```
65.508 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textta}{\sffamily\selectfont}
```

`\textcrl` Switches to *Carmel* font. Regular and slanted variants of carmel font will be used..

```
65.509 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textcrl}{\fontfamily{crl}\selectfont}
```

`\textfr` Switches to *Frank-Ruehl* font family. Regular, bold and slanted frank ruehl fonts will be used.

```
65.510 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textfr}{\fontfamily{fr}\selectfont}
```

`\textredis` Switches to *Redis* font family. Regular, bold and slanted redis fonts of various sizes will be used.

```
65.511 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textredis}{\fontfamily{redis}\selectfont}
```

`\textclas` Switches to *Classic* font family. The normal font will be hclassic and slanted — hcaption.

```
65.512 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textclas}{\fontfamily{clas}\selectfont}
```

`\textshold` Switches to *Shalom Old Style* font.

```
65.513 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textshold}{\fontfamily{shold}\selectfont}
```

`\textshscr` Switches to *Shalom Script* font.

```
65.514 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textshscr}{\fontfamily{shscr}\selectfont}
```

`\textshstk` Switches to *Shalom Stick* font.

```
65.515 \DeclareTextFontCommand{\textshstk}{\fontfamily{shstk}\selectfont}
```

```
65.516 \fi
```

Finally, for backward compatibility with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X2.09, four old font commands, e.g. `{\jm ...}` are defined too (see Table 37).

```

65.517 \if@compatibility
65.518 \DeclareOldFontCommand{\jm}{\normalfont\rmfamily\selectfont}%
65.519 \{\@nomath\jm}

```

<i>Old font command</i>	<i>Font name</i>	<i>Comment</i>
<code>\jm ..}</code>	Jerusalem	default regular (roman) font
<code>\ds ..}</code>	Dead Sea	default bold font
<code>\oj ..}</code>	Old Jaffa	default italic and slanted font used also to emphasize text
<code>\ta ..}</code>	Tel-Aviv	default sans-serif and typewriter font

Table 37: Hebrew old font-change commands for compatibility mode

```

65.520 \DeclareOldFontCommand{\ds}{\normalfont\bfseries\selectfont}%
65.521         {\@nomath\ds}
65.522 \DeclareOldFontCommand{\oj}{\normalfont\itshape\selectfont}%
65.523         {\@nomath\oj}
65.524 \DeclareOldFontCommand{\ta}{\normalfont\sffamily\selectfont}%
65.525         {\@nomath\ta}
65.526 \fi
65.527 </hebfont>

```

## 66 Hebrew in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 compatibility mode

`\documentstyle` command in the preamble of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document indicates that it is a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 document, and should be processed in *compatibility mode*. In such documents, one of the following three Hebrew style options can be included:

1. `hebrew_newcode` indicates that document will use UNIX ISO 8859-8 or Windows cp1255 input encoding, i.e. *Alef* letter will be represented as 224.
2. `hebrew_p` indicates that document is encoded with IBM PC cp862 encoding, i.e. *Alef* letter will be represented as 128.
3. `hebrew_oldcode` indicates that document uses old 7-bit encoding, as defined in Israeli Standard 960, i.e. *Alef* is character number 96.

Note, that other hebrew-related styles, such as `hebcsl` can be included *after* the abovenamed Hebrew style option, for example:

```
\documentstyle[12pt,hebrew_p,hebcsl]{report}.
```

Any Hebrew document which compiled under L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 should compile under compatibility mode, unless it uses low-level commands such as `\tenrm`.

### 66.1 The DOCSTRIP modules

The following modules are used in the implementation to direct DOCSTRIP in generating the external files:

```

newcode  produce hebrew_newcode.sty
pccode   produce hebrew_p.sty
oldcode  produce hebrew_oldcode.sty

```

### 66.2 Obsolete style files

For each of the Hebrew L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2.09 Hebrew styles, we produce a file which uses correct input encoding and calls `babel` with Hebrew and English language options. This means that any styles which say `\input hebrew_newcode.sty` or `\documentstyle[...hebrew_newcode...]{...}` should still work.

```

66.1 (*newcode | pccode | oldcode)
66.2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}
66.3 </newcode | pccode | oldcode>

```

```
66.4 <*newcode>
66.5 \@obsoletefile{hebrew.sty}{hebrew_newcode.sty}
66.6 \RequirePackage[8859-8]{inputenc}
66.7 </newcode>
66.8 <*pccode>
66.9 \@obsoletefile{hebrew.sty}{hebrew_p.sty}
66.10 \RequirePackage[cp862]{inputenc}
66.11 </pccode>
66.12 <*oldcode>
66.13 \@obsoletefile{hebrew.sty}{hebrew_oldcode.sty}
66.14 \RequirePackage[si960]{inputenc}
66.15 </oldcode>

66.16 <*newcode | pccode | oldcode>
66.17 \RequirePackage[english,hebrew]{babel}
66.18 </newcode | pccode | oldcode>
```

## 67 The Bahasa Indonesian language

The file `bahasa.dtx`<sup>74</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Bahasa Indonesia / Bahasa Melayu language. Bahasa just means ‘language’ in Bahasa Indonesia / Bahasa Melayu. Since both national versions of the language use the same writing, although differing in pronunciation, this file can be used for both languages.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

67.1 `(*code)`

67.2 `\LdfInit\CurrentOption{date\CurrentOption}`

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `bahasa` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@bahasa` to see whether we have to do something here.

For both Bahasa Indonesia and Bahasa Malaysia the same set of hyphenation patterns can be used which are available in the file `inhyph.tex`. However it could be loaded using any of the possible Babel options for the Indonesian and Malaysian language. So first we try to find out whether this is the case.

```
67.3 \ifx\l@bahasa\@undefined
67.4   \ifx\l@bahasai\@undefined
67.5     \ifx\l@indon\@undefined
67.6       \ifx\l@indonesian\@undefined
67.7         \ifx\l@bahasam\@undefined
67.8           \ifx\l@malay\@undefined
67.9             \ifx\l@meyalu\@undefined
67.10              \nopatterns{Bahasa Indonesia}
67.11                \adddialect\l@bahasa0\relax
67.12              \else
67.13                \let\l@bahasa\l@meyalu
67.14              \fi
67.15            \else
67.16              \let\l@bahasa\l@malay
67.17            \fi
67.18          \else
67.19            \let\l@bahasa\l@bahasam
67.20          \fi
67.21        \else
67.22          \let\l@bahasa\l@indonesian
67.23        \fi
67.24      \else
67.25        \let\l@bahasa\l@indon
67.26      \fi
67.27    \else
67.28      \let\l@bahasa\l@bahasai
67.29    \fi
67.30 \fi
```

Now that we are sure the `\l@bahasa` has some valid definition we need to make sure that a name to access the hyphenation patterns, corresponding to the option used, is available.

```
67.31 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\let
67.32   \expandafter\csname
67.33   \expandafter l\expandafter @\CurrentOption\endcsname
67.34   \l@bahasa
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Bahasa language.

---

<sup>74</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0l and was last revised on 2008/03/15.



`\captionsbahasa` The macro `\captionsbahasa` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

```
67.35 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
67.36   \def\prefacename{Pendahuluan}%
67.37   \def\refname{Pustaka}%
67.38   \def\abstractname{Ringkasan}% (sometime it's called 'intisari'
67.39     % or 'ikhtisar')
67.40   \def\bibname{Bibliografi}%
67.41   \def\chaptername{Bab}%
67.42   \def\appendixname{Lampiran}%
67.43   \def\contentsname{Daftar Isi}%
67.44   \def\listfigurename{Daftar Gambar}%
67.45   \def\listtablename{Daftar Tabel}%
67.46   \def\indexname{Indeks}%
67.47   \def\figurename{Gambar}%
67.48   \def\tablename{Tabel}%
67.49   \def\partname{Bagian}%
67.50 % Subject: Subyek
67.51 % From: Dari
67.52   \def\enclname{Lampiran}%
67.53   \def\ccname{cc}%
67.54   \def\headtoname{Kepada}%
67.55   \def\pagename{Halaman}%
67.56 % Notes (Endnotes): Catatan
67.57   \def\seename{lihat}%
67.58   \def\alsoname{lihat juga}%
67.59   \def\proofname{Bukti}%
67.60   \def\glossaryname{Daftar Istilah}%
67.61 }
```

`\datebahasa` The macro `\datebahasa` redefines the command `\today` to produce Bahasa Indonesian dates.

```
67.62 \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
67.63   \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
67.64     Januari\or Pebruari\or Maret\or April\or Mei\or Juni\or
67.65     Juli\or Agustus\or September\or Oktober\or Nopember\or Desember\fi
67.66     \space \number\year}}
```

`\extrasbahasa` The macro `\extrasbahasa` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Bahasa language. The macro `\extrasbahasa` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasbahasa`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

`\noextrasbahasa`

```
67.67 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{}
67.68 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{}
```

`\bahasahyphenmins` The bahasa hyphenation patterns should be used with `\lefthyphenmin` set to 2 and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```
67.69 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}
```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```
67.70 \ldf@finish{\CurrentOption}
67.71 \code}
```

## 68 The Bahasa Malaysia language

The file `bahasam.dtx`<sup>75</sup> defines all the language definition macros for the Bahasa Malaysia language. Bahasa just means ‘language’ in Bahasa Malaysia. A number of terms differ from those used in bahasa indonesia.

For this language currently no special definitions are needed or available.

The macro `\LdfInit` takes care of preventing that this file is loaded more than once, checking the category code of the `@` sign, etc.

```
68.1 (*code)
68.2 \LdfInit\CurrentOption{date\CurrentOption}
```

When this file is read as an option, i.e. by the `\usepackage` command, `bahasa` could be an ‘unknown’ language in which case we have to make it known. So we check for the existence of `\l@bahasa` to see whether we have to do something here.

For both Bahasa Malaysia and Bahasa Indonesia the same set of hyphenation patterns can be used which are available in the file `inhyph.tex`. However it could be loaded using any of the possible Babel options for the Malaysian and Indonesian language. So first we try to find out whether this is the case.

```
68.3 \ifx\l@malay\@undefined
68.4   \ifx\l@meyalu\@undefined
68.5     \ifx\l@bhasam\@undefined
68.6       \ifx\l@bahasa\@undefined
68.7         \ifx\l@bahasai\@undefined
68.8           \ifx\l@indon\@undefined
68.9             \ifx\l@indonesian\@undefined
68.10              \nopatterns{Bahasa Malaysia}
68.11              \adddialect\l@malay0\relax
68.12            \else
68.13              \let\l@malay\l@indonesian
68.14            \fi
68.15          \else
68.16            \let\l@malay\l@indon
68.17          \fi
68.18        \else
68.19          \let\l@malay\l@bahasai
68.20        \fi
68.21      \else
68.22        \let\l@malay\l@bahasa
68.23      \fi
68.24    \else
68.25      \let\l@malay\l@bhasam
68.26    \fi
68.27  \else
68.28    \let\l@malay\l@meyalu
68.29  \fi
68.30 \fi
```

Now that we are sure the `\l@malay` has some valid definition we need to make sure that a name to access the hyphenation patterns, corresponding to the option used, is available.

```
68.31 \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\let
68.32   \expandafter\csname
68.33   \expandafter l\expandafter @\CurrentOption\endcsname
68.34   \l@malay
```

The next step consists of defining commands to switch to (and from) the Bahasa language.

`\captionsbhasam` The macro `\captionsbhasam` defines all strings used in the four standard documentclasses provided with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X.

---

<sup>75</sup>The file described in this section has version number v1.0k and was last revised on 2008/01/27.

```

68.35 \@namedef{captions\CurrentOption}{%
68.36   \def\prefacename{Prakata}%
68.37   \def\refname{Rujukan}%
68.38   \def\abstractname{Abstrak}% (sometime it's called 'intisari'
68.39                               % or 'ikhtisar')
68.40   \def\bibName{Bibliografi}%
68.41   \def\chaptername{Bab}%
68.42   \def\appendixname{Lampiran}%
68.43   \def\contentsname{Kandungan}%
68.44   \def\listfigurename{Senarai Gambar}%
68.45   \def\listtablename{Senarai Jadual}%
68.46   \def\indexname{Indeks}%
68.47   \def\figurename{Gambar}%
68.48   \def\tablename{Jadual}%
68.49   \def\partname{Bahagian}%
68.50 % Subject: Perkara
68.51 % From: Dari
68.52   \def\enclname{Lampiran}%
68.53   \def\ccname{sk}% (short form for 'Salinan Kepada')
68.54   \def\headtoname{Kepada}%
68.55   \def\pagename{Halaman}%
68.56 % Notes (Endnotes): Catatan
68.57   \def\seename{sila rujuk}%
68.58   \def\alsoname{rujuk juga}%
68.59   \def\proofname{Bukti}%
68.60   \def\glossaryname{Istilah}%
68.61 }

```

`\datebahasam` The macro `\datebahasam` redefines the command `\today` to produce Bahasa Malaysian dates.

```

68.62 \@namedef{date\CurrentOption}{%
68.63   \def\today{\number\day~\ifcase\month\or
68.64     Januari\or Februari\or Mac\or April\or Mei\or Jun\or
68.65     Julai\or Ogos\or September\or Oktober\or November\or Disember\fi
68.66     \space \number\year}}

```

`\extrasbahasam` The macro `\extrasbahasa` will perform all the extra definitions needed for the Bahasa language. The macro `\extrasbahasa` is used to cancel the actions of `\extrasbahasa`. For the moment these macros are empty but they are defined for compatibility with the other language definition files.

```

68.67 \@namedef{extras\CurrentOption}{}
68.68 \@namedef{noextras\CurrentOption}{}

```

`\bahasamhyphenmins` The bahasam hyphenation patterns should be used with `\lefthyphenmin` set to 2 and `\righthyphenmin` set to 2.

```

68.69 \providehyphenmins{\CurrentOption}{\tw@\tw@}

```

The macro `\ldf@finish` takes care of looking for a configuration file, setting the main language to be switched on at `\begin{document}` and resetting the category code of `@` to its original value.

```

68.70 \ldf@finish{\CurrentOption}
68.71 </code>

```

## 69 Not renaming hyphen.tex

As Don Knuth has declared that the filename `hyphen.tex` may only be used to designate *his* version of the american English hyphenation patterns, a new solution has to be found in order to be able to load hyphenation patterns for other languages in a plain-based T<sub>E</sub>X-format. When asked he responded:

That file name is "sacred", and if anybody changes it they will cause severe upward/downward compatibility headaches.

People can have a file `locallyhyphen.tex` or whatever they like, but they mustn't diddle with `hyphen.tex` (or `plain.tex` except to preload additional fonts).

The files `bplain.tex` and `blplain.tex` can be used as replacement wrappers around `plain.tex` and `lplain.tex` to achieve the desired effect, based on the `babel` package. If you load each of them with `iniTEX`, you will get a file called either `bplain.fmt` or `blplain.fmt`, which you can use as replacements for `plain.fmt` and `lplain.fmt`.

As these files are going to be read as the first thing `iniTEX` sees, we need to set some category codes just to be able to change the definition of `\input`

```
69.1 <*bplain | blplain>
69.2 \catcode'\{=1 % left brace is begin-group character
69.3 \catcode'\}=2 % right brace is end-group character
69.4 \catcode'\#=6 % hash mark is macro parameter character
```

Now let's see if a file called `hyphen.cfg` can be found somewhere on T<sub>E</sub>X's input path by trying to open it for reading...

```
69.5 \openin 0 hyphen.cfg
```

If the file wasn't found the following test turns out true.

```
69.6 \ifeof0
69.7 \else
```

When `hyphen.cfg` could be opened we make sure that *it* will be read instead of the file `hyphen.tex` which should (according to Don Knuth's ruling) contain the american English hyphenation patterns and nothing else.

We do this by first saving the original meaning of `\input` (and I use a one letter control sequence for that so as not to waste multi-letter control sequence on this in the format).

```
69.8 \let\a\input
```

Then `\input` is defined to forget about its argument and load `hyphen.cfg` instead.

```
69.9 \def\input #1 {%
69.10 \let\input\a
69.11 \a hyphen.cfg
```

Once that's done the original meaning of `\input` can be restored and the definition of `\a` can be forgotten.

```
69.12 \let\a\undefined
69.13 }
69.14 \fi
69.15 </bplain | blplain>
```

Now that we have made sure that `hyphen.cfg` will be loaded at the right moment it is time to load `plain.tex`.

```
69.16 <bplain>\a plain.tex
69.17 <blplain>\a lplain.tex
```

Finally we change the contents of `\fmtname` to indicate that this is *not* the plain format, but a format based on plain with the `babel` package preloaded.

```
69.18 <bplain>\def\fmtname{babel-plain}
69.19 <blplain>\def\fmtname{babel-lplain}
```

When you are using a different format, based on `plain.tex` you can make a copy of `blplain.tex`, rename it and replace `plain.tex` with the name of your format file.

## 70 Support for formats based on PLAIN $\TeX$

The following code duplicates or emulates parts of  $\LaTeX$  2 $\epsilon$  that are needed for `babel`.

```
70.1 (*code)
70.2 \ifx\adddialect\undefined
```

When `\adddialect` is still undefined we are making a format. In that case only the first part of this file is needed.

```
70.3 \def\@empty{}
```

We need to define `\loadlocalcfg` for plain users as the  $\LaTeX$  definition uses `\InputIfFileExists`.

```
70.4 \def\loadlocalcfg#1{%
70.5   \openin0#1.cfg
70.6   \ifeof0
70.7     \closein0
70.8   \else
70.9     \closein0
70.10    {\immediate\write16{*****}%
70.11     \immediate\write16{* Local config file #1.cfg used}%
70.12     \immediate\write16{*}%
70.13    }
70.14    \input #1.cfg\relax
70.15  \fi
```

We have to execute `\@endofldf` in this case

```
70.16   \@endofldf
70.17 }
```

We want to add a message to the message  $\LaTeX$  2.09 puts in the `\everyjob` register. This could be done by the following code:

```
\let\orgeveryjob\everyjob
\def\everyjob#1{%
  \orgeveryjob{#1}%
  \orgeveryjob\expandafter{\the\orgeveryjob\immediate\write16{%
    hyphenation patterns for \the\loaded@patterns loaded.}}%
  \let\everyjob\orgeveryjob\let\orgeveryjob\@undefined}
```

The code above redefines the control sequence `\everyjob` in order to be able to add something to the current contents of the register. This is necessary because the processing of hyphenation patterns happens long before  $\LaTeX$  fills the register.

There are some problems with this approach though.

- When someone wants to use several hyphenation patterns with  $\SL\TeX$  the above scheme won't work. The reason is that  $\SL\TeX$  overwrites the contents of the `\everyjob` register with its own message.
- Plain  $\TeX$  does not use the `\everyjob` register so the message would not be displayed.

To circumvent this a 'dirty trick' can be used. As this code is only processed when creating a new format file there is one command that is sure to be used, `\dump`. Therefore the original `\dump` is saved in `\org@dump` and a new definition is supplied.

```
70.18 \let\orig@dump=\dump
70.19 \def\dump{%
```

To make sure that  $\LaTeX$  2.09 executes the `\@begindocumenthook` we would want to alter `\begin{document}`, but as this done too often already, we add the new code at the front of `\@preamblecmds`. But we can only do that after it has been defined, so we add this piece of code to `\dump`.

```

70.20 \ifx\@ztryfc\@undefined
70.21 \else
70.22 \toks0=\expandafter{\@preamblecmds}
70.23 \edef\@preamblecmds{\noexpand\@begindocumenthook\the\toks0}
70.24 \def\@begindocumenthook{}
70.25 \fi

```

This new definition starts by adding an instruction to write a message on the terminal and in the transcript file to inform the user of the preloaded hyphenation patterns.

```

70.26 \everyjob\expandafter{\the\everyjob%
70.27 \immediate\write16{\the\toks8 loaded.}}%

```

Then everything is restored to the old situation and the format is dumped.

```

70.28 \let\dump\orig@dump\let\orig@dump\@undefined\dump}
70.29 \expandafter\endinput
70.30 \fi

```

The rest of this file is not processed by  $\text{\LaTeX}$  but during the normal document run. A number of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macro's that are needed later on.

```

70.31 \long\def\@firstofone#1{#1}
70.32 \long\def\@firstoftwo#1#2{#1}
70.33 \long\def\@secondoftwo#1#2{#2}
70.34 \def\@ifstar#1{\@ifnextchar *{\@firstoftwo{#1}}}
70.35 \def\@star@or@long#1{%
70.36 \@ifstar
70.37 {\let\l@ngrel@x\relax#1}%
70.38 {\let\l@ngrel@x\long#1}}
70.39 \let\l@ngrel@x\relax
70.40 \def\@car#1#2\@nil{#1}
70.41 \def\@cdr#1#2\@nil{#2}
70.42 \let\@typeset@protect\relax
70.43 \long\def\@gobble#1{}
70.44 \edef\@backslashchar{\expandafter\@gobble\string\}
70.45 \def\strip@prefix#1>{}
70.46 \def\g@addto@macro#1#2{#{%
70.47 \toks@\expandafter{#1#2}%
70.48 \xdef#1{\the\toks@}}
70.49 \def\@namedef#1{\expandafter\def\csname #1\endcsname}
70.50 \def\@ifundefined#1{}
70.51 \expandafter\ifx\csname#1\endcsname\relax
70.52 \expandafter\@firstoftwo
70.53 \else
70.54 \expandafter\@secondoftwo
70.55 \fi}

```

$\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  has the command  $\text{\@onlypreamble}$  which adds commands to a list of commands that are no longer needed after  $\text{\begin{document}}$ .

```

70.56 \ifx\@preamblecmds\@undefined
70.57 \def\@preamblecmds{}
70.58 \fi
70.59 \def\@onlypreamble#1{%
70.60 \expandafter\gdef\expandafter\@preamblecmds\expandafter{
70.61 \@preamblecmds\do#1}}
70.62 \@onlypreamble\@onlypreamble

```

Mimick  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's  $\text{\AtBeginDocument}$ ; for this to work the user needs to add  $\text{\begin{document}}$  to his file.

```

70.63 \def\begin{document}{%
70.64 \@begindocumenthook
70.65 \global\let\@begindocumenthook\@undefined
70.66 \def\do##1{\global\let ##1\@undefined}%
70.67 \@preamblecmds
70.68 \global\let\do\noexpand
70.69 }

```

```

70.70 \ifx\@begindocumenthook\@undefined
70.71   \def\@begindocumenthook{}
70.72 \fi
70.73 \@onlypreamble\@begindocumenthook
70.74 \def\AtBeginDocument{\g@addto@macro\@begindocumenthook}

```

We also have to mimick L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's \AtEndOfPackage. Our replacement macro is much simpler; it stores its argument in \@endofldf.

```

70.75 \def\AtEndOfPackage#1{\g@addto@macro\@endofldf{#1}}
70.76 \@onlypreamble\AtEndOfPackage
70.77 \def\@endofldf{}
70.78 \@onlypreamble\@endofldf

```

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X needs to be able to switch off writing to its auxiliary files; plain doesn't have them by default.

```

70.79 \ifx\if@filesw\@undefined
70.80   \expandafter\let\csname if@filesw\expandafter\endcsname
70.81     \csname iffalse\endcsname
70.82 \fi

```

Mimick L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's commands to define control sequences.

```

70.83 \def\newcommand{\@star@or@long\new@command}
70.84 \def\new@command#1{%
70.85   \@testopt{\@newcommand#1}0}
70.86 \def\@newcommand#1[#2]{%
70.87   \@ifnextchar [{\@xargdef#1[#2]}%
70.88     {\@argdef#1[#2]}}
70.89 \long\def\@argdef#1[#2]#3{%
70.90   \@yargdef#1\@ne{#2}{#3}}
70.91 \long\def\@xargdef#1[#2][#3]#4{%
70.92   \expandafter\def\expandafter#1\expandafter{%
70.93     \expandafter\@protected@testopt\expandafter #1%
70.94     \csname\string#1\expandafter\endcsname{#3}}%
70.95   \expandafter\@yargdef \csname\string#1\endcsname
70.96     \tw@{#2}{#4}}
70.97 \long\def\@yargdef#1#2#3{%
70.98   \@tempcnta#3\relax
70.99   \advance \@tempcnta \@ne
70.100  \let\@hash@\relax
70.101  \edef\reserved@a{\ifx#2\tw@ [\@hash@1]\fi}%
70.102  \@tempcntb #2%
70.103  \@whilenum \@tempcntb <\@tempcnta
70.104  \do{%
70.105    \edef\reserved@a{\reserved@a\@hash@\the\@tempcntb}%
70.106    \advance \@tempcntb \@ne}%
70.107  \let\@hash@##%
70.108  \l@ngrel@x\expandafter\def\expandafter#1\reserved@a}
70.109 \let\providecommand\newcommand

70.110 \def\DeclareRobustCommand{\@star@or@long\declare@robustcommand}
70.111 \def\declare@robustcommand#1{%
70.112   \edef\reserved@a{\string#1}%
70.113   \def\reserved@b{#1}%
70.114   \edef\reserved@b{\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning\reserved@b}%
70.115   \edef#1{%
70.116     \ifx\reserved@a\reserved@b
70.117       \noexpand\x@protect
70.118       \noexpand#1%
70.119     \fi
70.120     \noexpand\protect
70.121     \expandafter\noexpand\csname
70.122       \expandafter\@gobble\string#1 \endcsname
70.123   }%
70.124   \expandafter\new@command\csname

```

```

70.125     \expandafter\@gobble\string#1 \endcsname
70.126 }
70.127 \def\x@protect#1{%
70.128     \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect\else
70.129         \@x@protect#1%
70.130     \fi
70.131 }
70.132 \def\@x@protect#1\fi#2#3{%
70.133     \fi\protect#1%
70.134 }

```

The following little macro `\in@` is taken from `latex.ltx`; it checks whether its first argument is part of its second argument. It uses the boolean `\in@`; allocating a new boolean inside conditionally executed code is not possible, hence the construct with the temporary definition of `\bbl@tmpa`.

```

70.135 \def\bbl@tmpa{\csname newif\endcsname\ifin@}
70.136 \ifx\in@\@undefined
70.137     \def\in@#1#2{%
70.138         \def\in@@##1#1##2##3\in@@{%
70.139             \ifx\in@@##2\in@false\else\in@true\fi}%
70.140         \in@@#2#1\in@\in@@}
70.141 \else
70.142     \let\bbl@tmpa\@empty
70.143 \fi
70.144 \bbl@tmpa

```

$\LaTeX$  has a macro to check whether a certain package was loaded with specific options. The command has two extra arguments which are code to be executed in either the true or false case. This is used to detect whether the document needs one of the accents to be activated (`activegrave` and `activeacute`). For plain  $\TeX$  we assume that the user wants them to be active by default. Therefore the only thing we do is execute the third argument (the code for the true case).

```

70.145 \def\@ifpackagewith#1#2#3#4{%
70.146     #3}

```

The  $\LaTeX$  macro `\@ifl@aded` checks whether a file was loaded. This functionality is not needed for plain  $\TeX$  but we need the macro to be defined as a no-op.

```

70.147 \def\@ifl@aded#1#2#3#4{}

```

For the following code we need to make sure that the commands `\newcommand` and `\providecommand` exist with some sensible definition. They are not fully equivalent to their  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$  versions; just enough to make things work in plain  $\TeX$  environments.

```

70.148 \ifx\@tempcnta\@undefined
70.149     \csname newcount\endcsname\@tempcnta\relax
70.150 \fi
70.151 \ifx\@tempcntb\@undefined
70.152     \csname newcount\endcsname\@tempcntb\relax
70.153 \fi

```

To prevent wasting two counters in  $\LaTeX 2.09$  (because counters with the same name are allocated later by it) we reset the counter that holds the next free counter (`\count10`).

```

70.154 \ifx\bye\@undefined
70.155     \advance\count10 by -2\relax
70.156 \fi
70.157 \ifx\@ifnextchar\@undefined
70.158     \def\@ifnextchar#1#2#3{%
70.159         \let\reserved@d=#1%
70.160         \def\reserved@a{#2}\def\reserved@b{#3}%
70.161         \futurelet\@let@token\@ifnch}
70.162     \def\@ifnch{%
70.163         \ifx\@let@token\@sptoken

```



```

70.164 \let\reserved@c\@xifnch
70.165 \else
70.166 \ifx\@let@token\reserved@d
70.167 \let\reserved@c\reserved@a
70.168 \else
70.169 \let\reserved@c\reserved@b
70.170 \fi
70.171 \fi
70.172 \reserved@c}
70.173 \def\{\let\@sptoken= } \: % this makes \@sptoken a space token
70.174 \def\{\@xifnch} \expandafter\def\: {\futurelet\@let@token\@ifnch}
70.175 \fi
70.176 \def\@testopt#1#2{%
70.177 \@ifnextchar[#{#1}{#1[#2]}}
70.178 \def\@protected@testopt#1{%
70.179 \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
70.180 \expandafter\@testopt
70.181 \else
70.182 \@x@protect#1%
70.183 \fi}
70.184 \long\def\@whilenum#1\do #2{\ifnum #1\relax #2\relax\@iwhilenum{#1\relax
70.185 #2\relax}\fi}
70.186 \long\def\@iwhilenum#1{\ifnum #1\expandafter\@iwhilenum
70.187 \else\expandafter\@gobble\fi{#1}}

```

Code from ltoutenc.dtx, adapted for use in the plain T<sub>E</sub>X environment.

```

70.188 \def\DeclareTextCommand{%
70.189 \@dec@text@cmd\providecommand
70.190 }
70.191 \def\ProvideTextCommand{%
70.192 \@dec@text@cmd\providecommand
70.193 }
70.194 \def\DeclareTextSymbol#1#2#3{%
70.195 \@dec@text@cmd\chardef#1{#2}#3\relax
70.196 }
70.197 \def\@dec@text@cmd#1#2#3{%
70.198 \expandafter\def\expandafter#2%
70.199 \expandafter{%
70.200 \csname#3-cmd\expandafter\endcsname
70.201 \expandafter#2%
70.202 \csname#3\string#2\endcsname
70.203 }%
70.204 % \let\@ifdefinable\@rc@ifdefinable
70.205 \expandafter#1\csname#3\string#2\endcsname
70.206 }
70.207 \def\@current@cmd#1{%
70.208 \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect\else
70.209 \noexpand#1\expandafter\@gobble
70.210 \fi
70.211 }
70.212 \def\@changed@cmd#1#2{%
70.213 \ifx\protect\@typeset@protect
70.214 \expandafter\ifx\csname\cf@encoding\string#1\endcsname\relax
70.215 \expandafter\ifx\csname ?\string#1\endcsname\relax
70.216 \expandafter\def\csname ?\string#1\endcsname{%
70.217 \@changed@x@err{#1}%
70.218 }%
70.219 \fi
70.220 \global\expandafter\let
70.221 \csname\cf@encoding\string#1\expandafter\endcsname
70.222 \csname ?\string#1\endcsname
70.223 \fi
70.224 \csname\cf@encoding\string#1%

```

```

70.225     \expandafter\endcsname
70.226   \else
70.227     \noexpand#1%
70.228   \fi
70.229 }
70.230 \def\@changed@x@err#1{%
70.231   \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
70.232   \errmessage{Command \protect#1 undefined in encoding \cf@encoding}}%
70.233 \def\DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{%
70.234   \DeclareTextCommand#1?%
70.235 }
70.236 \def\ProvideTextCommandDefault#1{%
70.237   \ProvideTextCommand#1?%
70.238 }
70.239 \expandafter\let\csname OT1-cmd\endcsname\@current@cmd
70.240 \expandafter\let\csname?-cmd\endcsname\@changed@cmd
70.241 \def\DeclareTextAccent#1#2#3{%
70.242   \DeclareTextCommand#1{#2}[1]{\accent#3 ##1}
70.243 }
70.244 \def\DeclareTextCompositeCommand#1#2#3#4{%
70.245   \expandafter\let\expandafter\reserved@a\csname#2\string#1\endcsname
70.246   \edef\reserved@b{\string##1}%
70.247   \edef\reserved@c{%
70.248     \expandafter\@strip@args\meaning\reserved@a:-\@strip@args}%
70.249   \ifx\reserved@b\reserved@c
70.250     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\ifx
70.251       \expandafter\@car\reserved@a\relax\relax\@nil
70.252       \@text@composite
70.253     \else
70.254       \edef\reserved@b##1{%
70.255         \def\expandafter\noexpand
70.256           \csname#2\string#1\endcsname###1{%
70.257             \noexpand\@text@composite
70.258               \expandafter\noexpand\csname#2\string#1\endcsname
70.259               ###1\noexpand\@empty\noexpand\@text@composite
70.260               {##1}%
70.261             }%
70.262           }%
70.263       \expandafter\reserved@b\expandafter{\reserved@a{##1}}%
70.264     \fi
70.265     \expandafter\def\csname\expandafter\string\csname
70.266       #2\endcsname\string#1-\string#3\endcsname{#4}
70.267   \else
70.268     \errhelp{Your command will be ignored, type <return> to proceed}%
70.269     \errmessage{\string\DeclareTextCompositeCommand\space used on
70.270       inappropriate command \protect#1}
70.271   \fi
70.272 }
70.273 \def\@text@composite#1#2#3\@text@composite{%
70.274   \expandafter\@text@composite@x
70.275     \csname\string#1-\string#2\endcsname
70.276 }
70.277 \def\@text@composite@x#1#2{%
70.278   \ifx#1\relax
70.279     #2%
70.280   \else
70.281     #1%
70.282   \fi
70.283 }
70.284 %
70.285 \def\@strip@args#1:#2-#3\@strip@args{#2}
70.286 \def\DeclareTextComposite#1#2#3#4{%

```

```

70.287 \def\reserved@a{\DeclareTextCompositeCommand#1#2#3}%
70.288 \bgroup
70.289 \lccode'\@=#4%
70.290 \lowercase{%
70.291 \egroup
70.292 \reserved@a @%
70.293 }%
70.294 }
70.295 %
70.296 \def\UseTextSymbol#1#2{%
70.297 % \let\@curr@enc\cf@encoding
70.298 % \@use@text@encoding{#1}%
70.299 #2%
70.300 % \@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc
70.301 }
70.302 \def\UseTextAccent#1#2#3{%
70.303 % \let\@curr@enc\cf@encoding
70.304 % \@use@text@encoding{#1}%
70.305 % #2{\@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc\selectfont#3}%
70.306 % \@use@text@encoding\@curr@enc
70.307 }
70.308 \def\@use@text@encoding#1{%
70.309 % \edef\f@encoding{#1}%
70.310 % \xdef\font@name{%
70.311 % \csname\curr@fontshape/\f@size\endcsname
70.312 % }%
70.313 % \pickup@font
70.314 % \font@name
70.315 % \@@enc@update
70.316 }
70.317 \def\DeclareTextSymbolDefault#1#2{%
70.318 \DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{\UseTextSymbol{#2}#1}%
70.319 }
70.320 \def\DeclareTextAccentDefault#1#2{%
70.321 \DeclareTextCommandDefault#1{\UseTextAccent{#2}#1}%
70.322 }
70.323 \def\cf@encoding{OT1}

```

Currently we only use the  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  method for accents for those that are known to be made active in *some* language definition file.

```

70.324 \DeclareTextAccent{"}{OT1}{127}
70.325 \DeclareTextAccent{'}{OT1}{19}
70.326 \DeclareTextAccent{^}{OT1}{94}
70.327 \DeclareTextAccent{'}{OT1}{18}
70.328 \DeclareTextAccent{~}{OT1}{126}

```

The following control sequences are used in `babel.def` but are not defined for PLAIN  $\text{\TeX}$ .

```

70.329 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquotedblleft}{OT1}{92}
70.330 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquotedblright}{OT1}{'\'}
70.331 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquoteleft}{OT1}{'\'}
70.332 \DeclareTextSymbol{\textquoteright}{OT1}{'\'}
70.333 \DeclareTextSymbol{\i}{OT1}{16}
70.334 \DeclareTextSymbol{\ss}{OT1}{25}

```

For a couple of languages we need the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ -control sequence `\scriptsize` to be available. Because plain  $\text{\TeX}$  doesn't have such a sophisticated font mechanism as  $\text{\LaTeX}$  has, we just `\let` it to `\sevenrm`.

```

70.335 \ifx\scriptsize\undefined
70.336 \let\scriptsize\sevenrm
70.337 \fi
70.338 \endcode

```

# Index

Numbers written in *italic* refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in roman refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

<b>Symbols</b>		
\- . . . . .	<a href="#">20.123</a> , <a href="#">35.110</a> , <a href="#">37.144</a> , <a href="#">42.57</a> , <a href="#">45.92</a> , <a href="#">47.63</a>	
\@az . . . . .	<a href="#">48.493</a>	
\@az@string . . .	<a href="#">48.457</a>	
\@azc . . . . .	<a href="#">48.440</a>	
\@selectlanguage	<a href="#">63.267</a>	
\@vpageref . . .	<a href="#">12.1335</a>	
\@Alph . . . . .	<a href="#">63.102</a>	
\@Alph@bul . . .	<a href="#">58.254</a>	
\@Alphfinal . . .	<a href="#">63.102</a>	
\@Roman . . . . .	<a href="#">63.326</a>	
\@acute . . . . .	<a href="#">37.77</a>	
\@alph . . . . .	<a href="#">63.102</a>	
\@alph@bul . . .	<a href="#">58.273</a>	
\@arabic . . . . .	<a href="#">63.326</a>	
\@az . . . . .	<a href="#">48.377</a>	
\@azc . . . . .	<a href="#">48.439</a>	
\@azp . . . . .	<a href="#">48.423</a>	
\@azr . . . . .	<a href="#">48.410</a>	
\@begintheorem .	<a href="#">48.147</a>	
\@bibitem . . . .	<a href="#">12.1270</a>	
\@biblabel . . . .	<a href="#">63.895</a>	
\@brackets . . . .	<a href="#">63.315</a>	
\@caption . . . .	<a href="#">48.81</a> , <a href="#">63.552</a>	
\@chapter . . . .	<a href="#">48.212</a> , <a href="#">48.286</a> , <a href="#">63.839</a>	
\@cite . . . . .	<a href="#">63.895</a>	
\@citex . . . . .	<a href="#">12.1242</a>	
\@dottedtocline	<a href="#">63.430</a>	
\@ensure@L . . . .	<a href="#">63.308</a>	
\@ensure@R . . . .	<a href="#">63.308</a>	
\@fromrl . . . . .	<a href="#">63.255</a>	
\@grave . . . . .	<a href="#">37.77</a>	
\@hebrew . . . . .	<a href="#">63.92</a>	
\@hebrew@numeral	<a href="#">63.141</a>	
\@latin . . . . .	<a href="#">63.317</a>	
\@lbibitem . . . .	<a href="#">63.895</a>	
\@listoffigures	<a href="#">63.381</a>	
\@listoftables .	<a href="#">63.381</a>	
\@makecaption . . . .	<a href="#">48.69</a> , <a href="#">63.949</a>	
\@makechapterhead	<a href="#">48.235</a> , <a href="#">48.305</a>	
\@mkboth . . . . .	<a href="#">12.1286</a>	
\@newl@bel . . . .	<a href="#">12.1205</a>	
\@nolanerr . . . .	<a href="#">12.255</a>	
\@noopterr . . . .	<a href="#">12.255</a>	
\@nopatterns . . .	<a href="#">12.255</a>	
\@notshorthand .	<a href="#">12.644</a>	
\@number . . . . .	<a href="#">63.317</a>	
\@opargbegintheorem	<a href="#">48.147</a> , <a href="#">63.826</a>	
\@outputdblcol .	<a href="#">63.597</a>	
\@part . . . . .	<a href="#">48.192</a> , <a href="#">63.467</a>	
\@roman . . . . .	<a href="#">63.326</a>	
\@schapter . . . .	<a href="#">63.839</a>	
\@secntformat . .	<a href="#">48.96</a>	
\@sect . . . . .	<a href="#">48.99</a> , <a href="#">63.510</a>	
\@ssect . . . . .	<a href="#">48.133</a>	
\@tableofcontents	<a href="#">63.381</a>	
\@testdef . . . .	<a href="#">12.1218</a>	
\@textcolor . . . .	<a href="#">63.782</a>	
\@tilde . . . . .	<a href="#">40.52</a>	
\@torl . . . . .	<a href="#">63.246</a>	
\@trema . . . . .	<a href="#">20.102</a>	
\@umlaut . . . . .	<a href="#">37.77</a> , <a href="#">40.52</a>	
\@verbatim . . . .	<a href="#">63.946</a>	
\@xnthm . . . . .	<a href="#">63.826</a>	
		<b>B</b>
		\babel@beginsave <a href="#">12.793</a>
		\babel@save . . . .
		<a href="#">11</a> , <a href="#">12.796</a>
		\babel@savecnt . .
		<a href="#">12.793</a>
		\babel@savevariable
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">11</a> , <a href="#">12.805</a>
		\bahasahyphenmins
		<a href="#">67.69</a>
		\bahasamyphenmins
		<a href="#">68.69</a>
		\basquehyphenmins
		<a href="#">40.49</a>
		\bbl@activate <a href="#">11</a> , <a href="#">12.589</a>
		\bbl@add@list . .
		<a href="#">12.761</a>
		\bbl@add@special . .
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">11</a> , <a href="#">12.395</a>
		\bbl@afterelse . .
		<a href="#">12.416</a>
		\bbl@afterfi . . .
		<a href="#">12.416</a>
		\bbl@bibcite . . .
		<a href="#">12.1261</a>
		\bbl@cite@choice <a href="#">12.1263</a>
		\bbl@clear@ttribs <a href="#">12.782</a>
		\bbl@deactivate . . .
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">11</a> , <a href="#">12.595</a>
		\bbl@declare@ttribute
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">10</a> , <a href="#">12.743</a>
		\bbl@disc . . . . .
		<a href="#">12.842</a>
		\bbl@firstcs . . .
		<a href="#">12.601</a>
		\bbl@frenchindent .
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">30.441</a> , <a href="#">50.54</a> , <a href="#">54.58</a>
		\bbl@frenchlabelitems
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">30.382</a>
		\bbl@frenchspacing .
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">11</a> , <a href="#">12.810</a>
		\bbl@get@enc . . .
		<a href="#">12.349</a>
		\bbl@hyph@enc . .
		<a href="#">12.349</a>
		\bbl@ifattributeset
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">12.747</a>
		\bbl@ifknown@ttrib .
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">12.772</a>
		\bbl@language@stack
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">12.80</a>
		\bbl@main@language .
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">12.240</a>
		\bbl@nonfrenchindent
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">30.441</a> , <a href="#">50.54</a> , <a href="#">54.58</a>
		\bbl@nonfrenchlabelitems
		. . . . .
		<a href="#">30.382</a>



environments:		
hyphenrules	<a href="#">4</a> , <a href="#">12.173</a>	
otherlanguage	..	
.....	<a href="#">4</a> , <a href="#">12.134</a>	
otherlanguage*	..	
.....	<a href="#">4</a> , <a href="#">12.142</a>	
thebibliography	.....	<a href="#">63.903</a>
\Eob	.....	<a href="#">43.90</a> , <a href="#">53.51</a>
\eob	.....	<a href="#">43.90</a> , <a href="#">53.51</a>
\Esper	.....	<a href="#">18.53</a>
\esper	.....	<a href="#">18.53</a>
\estonianhyphenmins	.....	<a href="#">49.51</a>
\extrasafrikaans	.....	<a href="#">20.93</a>
\extrasalbanian	..	<a href="#">50.34</a>
\extrasaustralian	..	<a href="#">22.53</a>
\extrasbahasa	...	<a href="#">67.67</a>
\extrasbahasam	..	<a href="#">68.67</a>
\extrasbasque	...	<a href="#">40.36</a>
\extrasbreton	...	<a href="#">24.35</a>
\extrabulgarian	.....	<a href="#">58.181</a>
\extrascatalan	..	<a href="#">37.37</a>
\extrascroatian	..	<a href="#">51.34</a>
\extrasczech	....	<a href="#">52.35</a>
\extrasdanish	...	<a href="#">42.35</a>
\extrasdutch	....	<a href="#">20.93</a>
\extrasenglish	..	<a href="#">21.133</a>
\extrasesperanto	.....	<a href="#">18.35</a>
\extrasestonian	..	<a href="#">49.44</a>
\extrasfinnish	...	<a href="#">47.35</a>
\extrasfrench	...	<a href="#">30.48</a>
\extrasgerman	...	<a href="#">22.53</a>
\extragreek	....	<a href="#">28.80</a>
\extrashebrew	...	<a href="#">63.78</a>
\extrasicelandic	.....	<a href="#">43.18</a>
\extrasinterlingua	.....	<a href="#">19.36</a>
\extrasirish	....	<a href="#">26.38</a>
\extrasitalian	..	<a href="#">31.35</a>
\extraslang	.....	<a href="#">10</a>
\extralatin	....	<a href="#">32.49</a>
\extraslsorbian	..	<a href="#">60.59</a>
\extrasmagyar	...	<a href="#">48.59</a>
\extrasnaustralian	..	<a href="#">23.42</a>
\extrasngerman	..	<a href="#">23.42</a>
\extrasnorsk	....	<a href="#">44.66</a>
\extrasnynorsk	..	<a href="#">44.66</a>
\extraspolish	...	<a href="#">53.35</a>
\extraspportuges	..	<a href="#">35.97</a>
\extrasromanian	..	<a href="#">41.36</a>
\extrarussian	..	<a href="#">57.200</a>
\extrassamin	....	<a href="#">46.46</a>
\extrasscottish	..	<a href="#">27.37</a>
\extrasserbian	..	<a href="#">54.34</a>
\extrasslovak	...	<a href="#">55.35</a>
\extrasslovene	..	<a href="#">56.34</a>
\extrasswedish	..	<a href="#">45.43</a>
\extrasturkish	..	<a href="#">62.36</a>
\extrasukrainian	.....	<a href="#">59.177</a>
\extrasusorbian	..	<a href="#">61.51</a>
\extraswelsh	....	<a href="#">25.38</a>
		<b>F</b>
\FBtextellipsis	.....	<a href="#">30.501</a>
\FDP@thinspace	....	..... <a href="#">57.268</a> , <a href="#">59.247</a>
\FDPoff	..	<a href="#">57.272</a> , <a href="#">59.251</a>
\FDPon	...	<a href="#">57.272</a> , <a href="#">59.251</a>
\fg	.....	<a href="#">30.126</a>
\finishhyphenmins	.....	<a href="#">47.66</a>
\flq	.....	<a href="#">12.950</a>
\flqq	.....	<a href="#">12.960</a>
\fnum@figure	....	<a href="#">48.63</a>
\fnum@table	....	<a href="#">48.63</a>
\footnoterule	..	<a href="#">63.634</a>
\foreign@language	.....	<a href="#">12.157</a>
\FOREIGNLANGUAGE	.....	<a href="#">12.1364</a>
\foreignlanguage	..	..... <a href="#">4</a> , <a href="#">12.148</a>
\FormatDate	....	<a href="#">63.998</a>
\FormatForEnglish	..	..... <a href="#">63.1075</a>
\FormatForHebrew	.....	<a href="#">63.1050</a>
\fprimo)	....	<a href="#">30.181</a>
\frenchbsetup	..	<a href="#">30.518</a>
\fromhebrew	....	<a href="#">63.90</a>
\frq	.....	<a href="#">12.950</a>
\frqq	.....	<a href="#">12.960</a>
\full	.....	<a href="#">337</a>
		<b>G</b>
\gentilde	.....	<a href="#">49.52</a>
\gim	.....	<a href="#">63.200</a>
\gim@nomil	....	<a href="#">63.151</a>
\gim@print	....	<a href="#">63.193</a>
\glq	.....	<a href="#">12.926</a>
\glqq	.....	<a href="#">12.938</a>
\gr@c@greek	....	<a href="#">28.71</a>
\gr@iil@value	...	<a href="#">28.82</a>
\gr@month	.....	<a href="#">28.64</a>
\gr@num@i	....	<a href="#">28.139</a>
\gr@num@ii	....	<a href="#">28.139</a>
\gr@num@iii	....	<a href="#">28.139</a>
\gr@num@iv	....	<a href="#">28.148</a>
\gr@num@v	....	<a href="#">28.148</a>
\gr@num@vi	....	<a href="#">28.148</a>
\gradur	.....	<a href="#">43.193</a>
\greek@Alph	....	<a href="#">28.115</a>
\greek@alph	....	<a href="#">28.115</a>
\greek@amp	....	<a href="#">28.135</a>
\greek@Roman	....	<a href="#">28.125</a>
\greek@roman	....	<a href="#">28.125</a>
\greek@tilde	...	<a href="#">28.160</a>
\greekhyphenmins	.....	<a href="#">28.30</a>
\Greeknatural	.....	<a href="#">28.113</a> , <a href="#">97</a>
\greeknumeral	..	<a href="#">28.89</a> , <a href="#">97</a>
\greetext	..	<a href="#">28.24</a> , <a href="#">96</a>
\GregorianDaysInPriorMonths	.....	<a href="#">63.1113</a>
\GregorianDaysInPriorYears	.....	<a href="#">63.1137</a>
\grq	.....	<a href="#">12.926</a>
\grqq	.....	<a href="#">12.938</a>
\Grtoday	.....	<a href="#">28.76</a>
\guillemotleft	....	..... <a href="#">12.854</a> , <a href="#">30.128</a>
\guillemotright	....	..... <a href="#">12.854</a> , <a href="#">30.128</a>
\guilsinglleft	..	<a href="#">12.872</a>
\guilsinglright	..	<a href="#">12.872</a>
		<b>H</b>
\headeven	.....	<a href="#">63.637</a>
\headodd	.....	<a href="#">63.637</a>
\hebdate	.....	<a href="#">63.73</a>
\hebdays	.....	<a href="#">63.76</a>
\HeblatexRedefineL	.....	<a href="#">63.293</a>
\hebmonth	.....	<a href="#">63.61</a>
\hebr	.....	<a href="#">63.200</a>
\Hebrewdate	..	<a href="#">63.985</a> , <a href="#">336</a>
\HebrewDayName	..	<a href="#">63.1049</a>
\HebrewDaysInPriorMonths	.....	<a href="#">63.1274</a>
\HebrewElapsedDays	..	..... <a href="#">63.1207</a>
\HebrewElapsedMonths	.....	<a href="#">63.1182</a>
\hebrewencoding	..	<a href="#">63.7</a>
\HebrewFromGregorian	.....	<a href="#">63.1331</a>
\hebrewhyphenmins	.....	<a href="#">63.21</a>
\HebrewMonthName	.....	<a href="#">63.1025</a>
\HebrewMonthNameInEnglish	.....	<a href="#">63.1053</a>
\Hebrewnumeral	..	<a href="#">63.96</a>
\hebrewnumeral	..	<a href="#">63.96</a>
\Hebrewnumeralfinal	.....	<a href="#">63.96</a>
\Hebrewsetreg	..	<a href="#">63.995</a>
\hebrewtext	....	<a href="#">63.86</a>
\Hebrewtoday	.....	<a href="#">63.993</a> , <a href="#">336</a>
\HebrewYearName	.....	<a href="#">63.1004</a>
\hhline	.....	<a href="#">12.1349</a>
\hmbbox	.....	<a href="#">63.313</a>
\hodiau	.....	<a href="#">18.63</a>
\hodiaun	.....	<a href="#">18.63</a>
\hun@alph@lehgth	.....	<a href="#">48.453</a>
\hun@number@lehgth	.....	<a href="#">48.447</a>
\hun@tempadef	..	<a href="#">48.381</a>
\hunnewlabel	...	<a href="#">48.539</a>
hyphenrules (environ-	ment)	.. <a href="#">4</a> , <a href="#">12.173</a>
		<b>I</b>
\ieme	.....	<a href="#">30.170</a>
\if@gim@apost	....	<a href="#">63.94</a>
\if@gim@final	....	<a href="#">63.94</a>
\if@gim@prev	....	<a href="#">63.193</a>
\if@lrl	.....	<a href="#">63.237</a>
\if@lrlmain	....	<a href="#">63.238</a>
\if@safe@actives	.....	<a href="#">12.586</a>
\if@Two@E	.....	<a href="#">43.11</a>
\IfGregorianLeap	.....	<a href="#">63.1095</a>
\iflanguage	...	<a href="#">4</a> , <a href="#">12.60</a>
\ifLaTeXe	.....	<a href="#">30.2</a>





<b>Q</b>			
<code>\quotedblbase</code> ..	<a href="#">12.844</a>	<code>\spb</code> .....	<a href="#">53.63</a>
<code>\quotesinglbase</code>	<a href="#">12.849</a>	<code>\SS</code> .....	<a href="#">12.924</a>
<b>R</b>		<code>\StandardMathComma</code> .	<a href="#">30.240</a>
<code>\R</code> .....	<a href="#">63.293</a>	<code>\substitutefontfamily</code>	<a href="#">10</a> , <a href="#">11.106</a>
<code>\ra</code> .....	<a href="#">35.114</a>	<code>\swedishhyphenmins</code>	<a href="#">45.42</a>
<code>\raggedleft</code> ....	<a href="#">63.805</a>	<code>\system@group</code> ..	<a href="#">12.619</a>
<code>\raggedright</code> ...	<a href="#">63.805</a>	<code>\system@sh@:</code>	<a href="#">57.280</a> , <a href="#">59.259</a>
<code>\readconfigfile</code>	<a href="#">12.358</a>	<code>\system@sh@;</code>	<a href="#">57.280</a> , <a href="#">59.259</a>
<code>\Ref</code> .....	<a href="#">12.1335</a>	<code>\system@sh@?@</code> .....	<a href="#">57.280</a> , <a href="#">59.259</a>
<code>\ref</code> .....	<a href="#">12.1238</a>	<code>\system@sh@?@</code> .....	<a href="#">57.280</a> , <a href="#">59.259</a>
<code>\refstepcounter</code>	<a href="#">48.514</a>	<code>\system@sh@@</code> .....	<a href="#">57.280</a> , <a href="#">59.259</a>
<code>\Remainder</code> ....	<a href="#">63.1078</a>	<b>T</b>	
<code>\rl@outputdblcol</code>	<a href="#">63.597</a>	<code>\Tldqpos</code> .....	<a href="#">12.706</a>
<code>\rllistoffigures</code>	<a href="#">63.421</a>	<code>\T@unoCaporali</code> .	<a href="#">31.129</a>
<code>\rllistoftables</code>	<a href="#">63.421</a>	<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<a href="#">63.424</a>
<code>\rltableofcontents</code> .	<a href="#">63.421</a>	<code>\tala</code> .....	<a href="#">43.115</a>
<code>\ro</code> .....	<a href="#">35.114</a>	<code>\telepl</code> .....	<a href="#">53.87</a>
<code>\romandate</code> .....	<a href="#">32.48</a>	<code>\TeX</code> ....	<a href="#">12.1314</a> , <a href="#">63.347</a>
<code>\russian@sh@:</code> .	<a href="#">57.231</a>	<code>\textacute</code> .....	<a href="#">37.74</a>
<code>\russian@sh@;</code> .	<a href="#">57.231</a>	<code>\textclas</code> .....	<a href="#">65.512</a>
<code>\russian@sh@?@</code> .	<a href="#">57.231</a>	<code>\textcrml</code> .....	<a href="#">65.509</a>
<code>\russian@sh@@</code> ..	<a href="#">57.231</a>	<code>\textcyrillic</code>	<a href="#">57.115</a> , <a href="#">58.115</a> , <a href="#">59.115</a>
<b>S</b>		<code>\textds</code> .....	<a href="#">65.506</a>
<code>\saminhyphenmins</code> .	<a href="#">46.6</a>	<code>\textfr</code> .....	<a href="#">65.510</a>
<code>\save@sf@q</code> ..	<a href="#">11</a> , <a href="#">12.837</a>	<code>\textgrave</code> .....	<a href="#">37.74</a>
<code>\selectlanguage</code> ..	<a href="#">4</a> , <a href="#">12.70</a> , <a href="#">63.262</a>	<code>\textgreek</code> ...	<a href="#">28.27</a> , <a href="#">96</a>
<code>\set@hyphenmins</code>	<a href="#">12.192</a>	<code>\textjm</code> .....	<a href="#">65.473</a>
<code>\set@low@box</code> .	<a href="#">11</a> , <a href="#">12.834</a>	<code>\textlatin</code> .....	<a href="#">12.25</a> , <a href="#">57.115</a> , <a href="#">58.115</a> , <a href="#">59.115</a> , <a href="#">96</a>
<code>\set@outputdblcol</code>	<a href="#">63.597</a>	<code>\textoj</code> .....	<a href="#">65.507</a>
<code>\sethebrew</code> .....	<a href="#">63.84</a>	<code>\textol</code> .....	<a href="#">28.28</a> , <a href="#">96</a>
<code>\SetLatinLigatures</code>	<a href="#">32.61</a>	<code>\textormath</code> ....	<a href="#">12.613</a>
<code>\setrllanguage</code> .	<a href="#">63.281</a>	<code>\textpl</code> .....	<a href="#">53.78</a>
<code>\shorthandoff</code> .	<a href="#">5</a> , <a href="#">12.652</a>	<b>U</b>	
<code>\shorthandon</code> ..	<a href="#">5</a> , <a href="#">12.652</a>	<code>\ukrainian@sh@:</code>	<a href="#">59.210</a>
<code>\skb</code> .....	<a href="#">53.71</a>	<code>\ukrainian@sh@;</code>	<a href="#">59.210</a>
<code>\slidelabel</code> .....	<a href="#">63.56</a>	<code>\ukrainian@sh@?@</code>	<a href="#">59.210</a>
<code>\sob</code> .....	<a href="#">43.82</a> , <a href="#">53.43</a>	<code>\ukrainian@sh@@</code>	<a href="#">59.210</a>
		<code>\umlauthigh</code> ....	<a href="#">12.970</a>
		<code>\umlautlow</code> ....	<a href="#">12.970</a>
		<code>\underline</code> .....	<a href="#">63.821</a>
		<code>\unit</code> .....	<a href="#">31.84</a>
		<code>\unsethebrew</code> ....	<a href="#">63.84</a>
		<code>\unsetrllanguage</code>	<a href="#">63.281</a>
		<code>\up</code> .....	<a href="#">30.170</a> , <a href="#">37.194</a>
		<code>\upp</code> .....	<a href="#">43.155</a>
		<code>\upp@size</code> .....	<a href="#">43.155</a>
		<code>\user@group</code> ....	<a href="#">12.619</a>
		<code>\usesorthands</code> <a href="#">4</a> , <a href="#">12.622</a>	
		<b>V</b>	
		<code>\v</code> .....	<a href="#">52.39</a>
		<code>\verbatim@font</code> ....	<a href="#">57.202</a> , <a href="#">59.181</a>
		<code>\vrefpagenum</code> ...	<a href="#">12.1335</a>
		<b>W</b>	
		<code>\welshhyphenmins</code> .	<a href="#">25.6</a>



# Change History

albanian-1.0a	
General: Started first version of the file	244
albanian-1.0b	
General: A number of corrections in the translations from Adi Zaimi	244
albanian-1.0c	
General: Small documentation fix	244
babel 2.0a	
General: Added text about <code>german.sty</code>	1
babel 2.0b	
General: Changed order of code to prevent plain $\TeX$ from seeing all of it	1
babel 2.1	
General: Modified user interface, <code>\langTeX</code> no longer necessary	1
babel 2.1a	
General: Incorporated Nico's comments	1
babel 2.1b	
General: rename <code>\language</code> to <code>\current@language</code>	1
babel 2.1c	
General: abstract for report fixed, missing <code>}</code> , found by Nicolas Brouard	1
babel 2.1d	
General: Missing right brace in definition of abstract environment, found by Werenfried Spit	1
babel 2.1e	
General: Incorporated more comments from Nico	1
babel 2.2	
General: Renamed <code>\newlanguage</code> to <code>\addlanguage</code>	1
babel 2.2a	
General: Modified the documentation somewhat	1
babel 3.0	
General: Moved part of the code to <code>hyphen.doc</code> in preparation for $\TeX$ 3.0	1
babel 3.0a	
General: Updated comments in various places	1
<code>\iflanguage</code> : Added <code>\@bsphack</code> and <code>\@esphack</code>	19
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Added <code>\@bsphack</code> and <code>\@esphack</code>	21
Replaced <code>\gdef</code> with <code>\def</code>	22
babel 3.0b	
General: Removed some problems in change log	1
babel 3.0c	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> and <code>latexhax.sty</code> to <code>.com</code>	1
<code>\iflanguage</code> : Added comment character after <code>#2</code>	19
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Made <code>\selectlanguage</code> robust	20
babel 3.0d	
<code>\@noopterr</code> : Added a percent sign to remove unwanted white space	26
General: Removed use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	17
<code>\doc@style</code> : Removed use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	49
<code>\iflanguage</code> : Removed space hacks and use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	19
Removed superfluous <code>\expandafter</code>	19
<code>\process@language</code> : Added the collection of pattern names.	27
Reinserted <code>\expandafter</code>	27
Removed superfluous <code>\expandafter</code>	27
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Removed space hacks and use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	21
Removed superfluous <code>\expandafter</code>	21
babel 3.1	
General: Added the support for active characters and for extending a macro	1
Removed definition of <code>\if@restonecol</code>	49
Removed the need for <code>latexhax</code>	1
<code>\addto</code> : Added macro	43
<code>\readconfigfile</code> : Removed the extra <code>if</code> control sequence	30
Removed use of <code>\toks0</code>	29
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : <code>\originalTeX</code> should only be executed once	22

babel 3.2	
General: Some Changes by br	1
<code>\adddialect</code> : Added <code>\relax</code>	19
<code>\addlanguage</code> : Added a %, removed by	19
<code>\babel@beginsave</code> : Added macro	42
<code>\babel@save</code> : Added macro	42
<code>\babel@savecnt</code> : Added macro	42
<code>\babel@savevariable</code> : Added macro	43
<code>\bbl@add@special</code> : Added macro	30
<code>\bbl@remove@special</code> : Added macro	31
<code>\iflanguage</code> : Rephrased <code>\ifnum</code> test	19
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Modified to allow arguments that start with an escape character	20
babel 3.2a	
General: Fixups of the code and documentation	1
<code>\originalTeX</code> : Set <code>\originalTeX</code> to <code>\empty</code> , because it should be expandable.	26
<code>\readconfigfile</code> : Free macro space for <code>\process@language</code>	30
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Added <code>\relax</code> as first command to stop an expansion if <code>\protect</code> is empty	21
Added three <code>\expandafters</code> to save macro space for <code>\originalTeX</code>	22
Moved definition of <code>\originalTeX</code> before <code>\extras&lt;lang&gt;</code>	22
Set <code>\originalTeX</code> to <code>\empty</code> , because it should be expandable.	22
Simplified the modification to allow the use in a <code>\write</code> command	20
babel 3.2b	
<code>\allowhyphens</code> : Moved macro from language definition files	43
<code>\save@sf@q</code> : Moved macro from language definition files	44
<code>\set@low@box</code> : Moved macro from language definition files	44
babel 3.2c	
<code>\babel@save</code> : missing backslash led to errors when executing <code>\originalTeX</code>	42
babel 3.2d	
<code>\babel@save</code> : saving in <code>\babel@i</code> and restoring from <code>\@babel@i</code> doesn't work very well...	42
babel 3.2e	
General: Added slovak	62
babel 3.3	
General: <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	52
Added catalan and galician	62
Added turkish	62
Included driver file, and prepared for distribution	1
babel 3.4	
General: Added bahasa	62
Added language definition file for bahasa	1
Updated for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	1
<code>\addto</code> : Changed to use toks register	43
babel 3.4b	
General: Added a small driver to be able to process just this file	1
Use the ltxdoc class instead of article	61
babel 3.4c	
General: lhyphen.cfg has become lthyphen.cfg	13
babel 3.4e	
<code>\@nolanerr</code> : Use <code>\PackageError</code> in L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub> mode	26
<code>\@nopatterns</code> : Macro added	26
<code>\process@language</code> : Added code to detect assignments to left- and righthyphenmin in the patternfile.	28
<code>\ProvidesLanguage</code> : Redid the identification code, provided dummy definition of <code>\ProvidesFile</code> for plain T <sub>E</sub> X	12
babel 3.4g	
<code>\@testdef</code> : Moved the <code>\def</code> inside the macrocode environment	54
babel 3.5a	
<code>\@noopterr</code> : Added <code>\@activated</code> to log active characters	26
General: Added a system shorthand for the right quote	39
Added breton, irish, scottish	62

Changed extension of language definition files to <code>ldf</code> .....	13
Provided common code to handle the active double quote .....	1
Replaced 16 system shorthands to deal with hex numbers by one .....	39
<code>\bbl@activate</code> : Added macro .....	36
<code>\bbl@deactivate</code> : Added macro .....	36
<code>\bbl@main@language</code> : Macro added .....	25
<code>\bbl@pr@ms</code> : Added macro .....	39
<code>\bbl@set@language</code> : write the language change to the auxiliary files .....	21
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Added a check for right quote and adapt <code>\pr@ms</code> if necessary .....	32
Added macro .....	31
<code>\main@language</code> : Macro added .....	25
babel 3.5b	
General: Added <code>brazilian</code> as alternative for <code>brazil</code> .....	14
Added <code>lsorbian</code> , <code>usorbian</code> .....	62
Added the <code>estonian</code> option .....	14
<code>lthyphen.cfg</code> has become <code>hyphen.cfg</code> .....	13
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Renamed macro .....	31
<code>\pageref</code> : Made <code>\ref</code> and <code>\pageref</code> robust (PR1353) .....	55
<code>\process@language</code> : Added optional reading of file with hyphenation exceptions .....	28
<code>\process@line</code> : added macro .....	27
<code>\process@synonym</code> : added macro .....	27
<code>\readconfigfile</code> : Now add a <code>\space</code> and a <code>/</code> character .....	29
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Added an extra level of expansion to separate the switching mechanism from writing to aux files .....	20
Added default setting of <code>hyphenmin</code> parameters .....	22
Changed the name of the internal macro to <code>\selectlanguage</code> .....	20
Separated the setting of the <code>hyphenmin</code> values .....	22
Store the name of the current language in a control sequence instead of passing the whole macro construct to strip the escape character in the argument of <code>\selectlanguage</code> .....	20
babel 3.5c	
<code>\@noopterr</code> : Added missing closing brace .....	26
General: Changed the order of including the language files somewhat (PR1652) .....	62
corrected a few typos (PR1652) .....	1
Repaired a typo ( <code>itlaic</code> , PR1652) .....	44
babel 3.5d	
General: Added <code>british</code> as an alternative for <code>english</code> with a preference for <code>british</code> hyphenation .....	14
Added options to influence behaviour of active acute and grave accents ....	15
Load <code>french.ldf</code> when it is found instead of <code>frenchb.ldf</code> .....	14
Load language definition files <i>after</i> the check for the hyphenation patterns ..	13
Merged <code>glyphs.dtx</code> into this file .....	1
<code>\active@prefix</code> : <code>\@protected@cmd</code> has vanished from <code>ltoutenc.dtx</code> .....	36
<code>\declare@shorthand</code> : Make a ‘note’ when a shorthand with an argument is de- fined. ....	37
<code>\foreignlanguage</code> : Macro added .....	23
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Skip the language-level active char with argument if no shorthands with arguments were defined .....	34
Skip the user-level active char with argument if no shorthands with arguments were defined .....	34
<code>\loadlocalcfg</code> : Added macro .....	60
<code>\pageref</code> : use a different control sequence while making <code>\ref</code> and <code>\pageref</code> ro- bust .....	55
<code>otherlanguage</code> : environment added .....	22
babel 3.5e	
<code>otherlanguage</code> : changed name .....	22
babel 3.5f	
<code>\@bibitem</code> : Now use <code>\bbl@redefine</code> .....	56
<code>\@citex</code> : Now use <code>\bbl@redefine</code> .....	55

<code>\@testdef</code> : Complete rewrite of this macro as the same character ended up with different category codes in the labels that are being compared. Now use <code>\meaning</code> .....	54
Now use <code>\bbl@redefine</code> .....	54
Use <code>\strip@prefix</code> only on <code>\bbl@tempa</code> when it is not <code>\relax</code> .....	54
General: Added a system shorthand for the left quote .....	39
Added the <code>greek</code> option .....	14
No need to reset the category code of the tilde as <code>\initiate@active@char</code> now correctly deals with active characters .....	39
Now use the file <code>frenchb.ldf</code> from Daniel Flipo for french support .....	14
repaired a typo .....	1
replaced <code>\tmp</code> , <code>\bbl@tmp</code> and <code>\bbl@temp</code> with <code>\bbl@tempa</code> .....	1
<code>\aliasshorthand</code> : New command .....	37
<code>\bbl@disc</code> : Macro moved from language definition files .....	44
<code>\bbl@redefine</code> : Macro added .....	53
<code>\bbl@redefinero bust</code> : Define <code>\*foo</code> instead of <code>\foo</code> .....	53
Macro added .....	53
<code>\bbl@set@language</code> : Now also define <code>\language name</code> at this level .....	21
<code>\bbl@test@token</code> : macro added .....	32
<code>\biblecite</code> : Now use <code>\bbl@redefine</code> .....	55
<code>\DJ</code> : New definition of <code>\dj</code> , see PR 2058 .....	45
<code>\frq</code> : corrected spelling of <code>\quilsingl...</code> .....	47
now use <code>\textormath</code> in these definitions .....	47
<code>\frqq</code> : corrected spelling of <code>\quillemot...</code> .....	47
now use <code>\textormath</code> in these definitions .....	47
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Deal correctly with already active characters, provide top level expansion and define all lower level expansion macros outside of the <code>\else</code> branch. ....	32
restore the <code>\lccode</code> of the tie .....	33
Restore the category code of a shorthand char at end of package .....	33
store the <code>\lccode</code> of the tie before changing it .....	33
use <code>\peek@token</code> to check whether it is safe to proceed .....	34, 35
<code>\lower@umlaut</code> : Added a <code>\allowhyphens</code> .....	48
removed <code>\allowhyphens</code> .....	48
<code>\newlabel</code> : Now use <code>\bbl@redefine</code> .....	54
<code>\nocite</code> : Now use <code>\bbl@redefine</code> .....	55
<code>\pageref</code> : Now use <code>\bbl@redefinero bust</code> .....	55
redefine <code>\*ref</code> if it exists instead of <code>\ref</code> .....	55
redefine <code>\setref</code> instead of <code>\ref</code> and <code>\pageref</code> in $\LaTeX$ 2 $\epsilon$ . ....	55
Reverse the previous change as it inhibits the use of active characters in labels .....	55
<code>\peek@token</code> : macro added .....	31
<code>\process@language</code> : Use <code>\empty</code> instead of <code>\@empty</code> as the latter is unknown in plain .....	28
<code>\ProvidesLanguage</code> : Need to temporarily change the definition of <code>\ProvidesFile</code> for December 1995 release .....	12
Store version in <code>\fileversion</code> .....	12
<code>\readconfigfile</code> : Moved the fiddling with <code>\dump</code> to <code>bbplain.dtx</code> as it is no longer needed for $\LaTeX$ .....	30
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Added a missing percent character .....	20
Moved check for escape character one level down in the expansion .....	20
<code>otherlanguage*</code> : environment added .....	22
babel 3.5g	
General: Added definition of <code>\Babel</code> .....	62
Added <code>greek</code> .....	62
Added option <code>afrikaans</code> .....	13
Removed the use of <code>\patterns@loaded</code> altogether .....	27
replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> to be consistent with $\LaTeX$ .....	1
<code>\ifthenelse</code> : Redefinition of <code>\ifthenelse</code> added to circumvent problems with <code>\pageref</code> in the argument of <code>\isodd</code> .....	57
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Top level expansion of <code>\normal@char char</code> where <code>char</code> is already active, should be the expansion of the active character, not the active character itself as this causes an endless loop .....	32

\mfss@catcodes: Need to add the double quote and acute characters to \mfss@catcodes to prevent problems when reading in .fd files	59
\process@line: Simplified code, removing \bbl@eq@	27
\ProvidesLanguage: Save a few csnames; use \bbl@tempa instead of \ProvidesFile and store message in \toks8	12
babel 3.6a	
\@@vpageref: Redefinition of \@@vpageref added to circumvent problems with active : in the argument of \vref when varioref is used	58
General: Added welsh	62
Removed \babel@core@loaded, no longer needed with the advent of \LdfInit	17
\ldf@finish: Macro added	25
\ldf@quit: Macro added	25
\LdfInit: Macro added	24
\main@language: \main@language now also sets \language and \l@language for use by other packages in the preamble of a document	25
\selectlanguage: Check for the existence of \date... instead of \l@...	21
babel 3.6b	
\addto: Also check if control sequence expands to \relax	43
babel 3.6c	
General: When \LdfInit is undefined we need to load babel.def from babel.sty	13
\bbl@main@language: When hyphen.cfg is not loaded in the format \l@english might not be defined; assume english is language 0	26
babel 3.6d	
\foreign@language: Added \relax to prevent disappearance of the first token after this command.	23
New macro	23
set the language shorthands to ‘none’ before switching on the extras	23
\foreignlanguage: Introduced \foreign@language	23
\selectlanguage: set the language shorthands to ‘none’ before switching on the extras	22
otherlanguage*: Introduced \foreign@language	22
babel 3.6e	
General: Added option frenchb an alias for francais	14
Added options UKenglish and USenglish	15
babel 3.6f	
General: Added option KeepShorthandsActive	15
\bbl@redefine@long: Macro added	53
\ifthenelse: \ifthenelse needs to be long	58
\initiate@active@char: Made restoring of the category code of shorthand characters optional	33
babel 3.6h	
\readconfigfile: Added a couple of \expandafters to copy the contents of \toks8 into \everyjob instead of the reference	30
babel 3.6i	
\@newl@bel: Now redefine \@newl@bel instead of \@l@bibitem and \newlabel	54
\@testdef: \@safe@activesfalse is now part of the label definition	54
Make sure that shorthands don’t get expanded at the wrong moment.	54
General: Added basque	62
Added default option	15
Added the Basque option	14
Added the ukrainian option	15
Added the possibility to have a bblopts.cfg file with option declarations.	15
\bbl@afterfi: Made \bbl@afterelse and \bbl@afterfi \long	31
\bbl@test@token: renamed \bbl@token to \bbl@test@token to prevent a clash with ArabTeX	32
\declare@shorthand: Make it possible to distinguish the constructed control sequences for the case with argument	37
\ifthenelse: Now reset the @safe@actives switch inside the 2nd and 3rd arguments of \ifthenelse	58
\initiate@active@char: Make shorthands active during .aux file processing	33
Remove the use of \peek@token again	35

Remove the use of <code>\peek@token</code> again and make the <code>\...active@arg...</code> commands <code>\long</code> .....	34
<code>\latinencoding</code> : Macro added, moved from <code>.ldf</code> files .....	17
<code>\latintext</code> : Macro added, moved from <code>.ldf</code> files .....	17
<code>\markright</code> : Added redefinition of <code>\mark...</code> commands .....	56
<code>\peek@token</code> : Renamed <code>\test@token</code> to <code>\bbl@test@token</code> to prevent a clash with <code>ArabTeX</code> .....	31
<code>\system@group</code> : Have a user group called ‘user’ by default .....	37
<code>\textlatin</code> : Macro added, moved from <code>.ldf</code> files .....	17
babel 3.6k	
<code>\latinencoding</code> : Use T1 encoding when it is a known encoding .....	17
babel 3.6l	
General: Don’t load <code>babel.def</code> now, but rather define <code>\LdfInit</code> temporarily in order to load <code>babel.def</code> at the right time, preventing problems with the temporary definition of <code>\bbl@redefine</code> .....	13
babel 3.6m	
<code>\latinencoding</code> : Can’t use <code>\ifpackageloaded</code> need to parse <code>\@filelist</code> ...	17
babel 3.6n	
<code>\latinencoding</code> : Added a check for ‘manual’ selection of T1 encoding, without loading <code>fontenc</code> .....	17
moved checking for <code>fontenc</code> right to the top of <code>babel.sty</code> .....	17
babel 3.6o	
General: Moved the rest of the font encoding related definitions to their original place .....	17
babel 3.6p	
General: Added the <code>ngerman</code> and <code>naustrian</code> options .....	15
babel 3.6q	
<code>\latinencoding</code> : Better solution then parsing <code>\@filelist</code> , use <code>\@ifl@aded</code> ..	17
babel 3.6r	
General: We <b>do</b> need to load <code>babel.def</code> right now as <code>\ProvidesLanguage</code> needs to be defined before the <code>.ldf</code> files are read and the reason for for 3.6l has been removed .....	13
babel 3.6s	
<code>\bibcite</code> : Need to determine ‘online’ which definition of <code>\bibcite</code> is needed ..	55
babel 3.6u	
<code>\latinencoding</code> : Moved this code to <code>babel.def</code> .....	17
babel 3.6v	
<code>\bbl@bibcite</code> : Macro <code>\bbl@bibcite</code> added .....	56
<code>\bbl@cite@choice</code> : Macro <code>\bbl@cite@choice</code> added .....	56
<code>\bibcite</code> : Also check for <code>cite</code> it can’t handle <code>\@safe@activesfalse</code> in its second argument .....	55
babel 3.7a	
<code>\@newl@bel</code> : Call <code>\@safe@activestru</code> directly .....	54
<code>\@testdef</code> : Removed <code>\@safe@activesfalse</code> from the label definition .....	54
General: Added icelandic .....	62
Added the <code>hebrew</code> option .....	14
Added the <code>icelandic</code> option .....	14
Added the <code>polutonikogreek</code> option .....	14
No longer define the control sequence <code>\KeepShorthandsActive</code> .....	15
Now need packages <code>tlenc</code> and <code>supertabular</code> to be loaded; the documentation for icelandic needs its <code>.ldf</code> file to be present .....	61
<code>\allowhyphens</code> : Make <code>\allowhyphens</code> a no-op for T1 fontencoding .....	43
<code>\bbl@switch@sh</code> : Added command .....	38
<code>\foreignlanguage</code> : Added executing <code>\originalTeX</code> .....	23
<code>\grq</code> : Make the definition of <code>\grq</code> dependent on the font encoding .....	46
<code>\grqq</code> : Make the definition of <code>\grqq</code> dependent on the font encoding .....	46
<code>\iflanguage</code> : Now evaluate the <code>\ifnum</code> test <i>after</i> the <code>\fi</code> from the <code>\ifx</code> test and use <code>\@firstoftwo</code> and <code>\@secondoftwo</code> .....	19
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Commented out <code>peek@token</code> and <code>\test@token</code> as shorthands are made expandable again .....	31
Use <code>\@ifpackagewith</code> to determine whether shorthand characters need to remain active .....	33

<code>\LaTeX</code> : Make <code>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> and <code>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> logos encoding-independent	57
<code>\process@language</code> : Read pattern files in a group	28
<code>\ProvidesLanguage</code> : Added macro to prevent problems with unexpected <code>\ProvidesFile</code> in plain formats because of <code>babel</code> .	12
Removed superfluous braces	13
<code>\shorthandoff</code> : Added command	38
<code>\shorthandon</code> : Added command	38
babel 3.7b	
General: Added Latin	62
Added the <code>latin</code> option	14
<code>\iflanguage</code> : Slight enhancement: added braces around first argument of <code>\bbl@afterfi</code>	19
babel 3.7c	
General: Added an error message for when no language option was specified	16
Added hebrew and serbian	62
Added support for language attributes	40
Added ukrainian	62
define <code>\adddialect</code> before loading <code>plain.def</code> here	17
No longer us a redefinition of an internal macro, just check <code>\bbl@main@language</code> and load <code>babel.def</code>	16
Removed redefinition of <code>\@roman</code> and <code>\@Roman</code>	57
set the correct language attribute for polutoniko greek	14
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Only execute <code>\initiate@active@char</code> once for each character	32
<code>\markright</code> : Avoid expanding the arguments by storing them in token registers	56
Removed the use of <code>\head@lang</code> (PR 2990)	56
<code>\process@language</code> : Added the execution of the contents of <code>\toks@</code>	28
Also store <code>\languagename</code> for possible later use in <code>\process@synonym</code>	27
need to set <code>hyphenmin</code> values globally	28
Only set <code>hyphenmin</code> values when the pattern file changed them	28
Set <code>\lefthyphenmin</code> to <code>\m@ne</code> inside the group; explicitly set the <code>hyphenmin</code> parameters for language 0	28
<code>\process@line</code> : added an extra argument in order to prevent a trailing space from becoming part of the control sequence when defining a synonym (PR 2851)	27
<code>\process@synonym</code> : Now also store <code>hyphenmin</code> parameters for language synonyms	27
Use a token register to temporarily store a command to set <code>hyphenmin</code> parameters for the synonym which is defined <i>before</i> the first pattern file is processed	27
babel 3.7d	
General: Fixed a few typos in <code>\changes</code> entries which made typesetting the code impossible	1
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Make sure the active character doesn't get expanded more than once by the <code>\edef</code> by adding <code>\expandafter\strip@prefix\meaning</code>	32
babel 3.7e	
General: Added missing hebrew files	62
<code>\bbl@clear@ttribs</code> : When <code>\bbl@attributes</code> is undefined this should be a no-op	42
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : pass the argument on with braces in order to prevent it from breaking up	34, 35
previous change was rubbish; use <code>\let</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	32
<code>hyphenrules</code> : Added environment <code>hyphenrules</code>	23
babel 3.7f	
General: Added bulgarian	62
Added <code>samin</code>	62
Added the <code>bulgarian</code> option	14
Added the <code>samin</code> option	15
<code>\bbl@get@enc</code> : Added macro	29
<code>\bbl@ifattributeset</code> : macro added	41
<code>\bbl@prim@s</code> : Need to redefine <code>\prim@s</code> as well as plain <code>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> 's definition uses <code>\next</code>	39
<code>\bbl@set@language</code> : Macro <code>\bbl@set@language</code> introduced	21



<code>\ifthenelse</code> : <code>\pageref</code> needs to have its babel definition reinstated in the second and third arguments	58
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Added an extra shorthand combination on user level to catch an interfering <code>\protect</code>	35
Insert a check for math mode in the definition of <code>\normal@char</code>	33
Introduced an extra level of expansion in the definition of an active caret	33
Make an exception for the active caret which needs an extra level of expansion	34
remove the braces again	34, 35
The redefinition needs to take place one level higher, <code>\prim@s</code> needs to be redefined.	32
<code>\process@language</code> : Allow for the encoding to be used as part of the language name	28
<code>\providehyphenmins</code> : added macro	24
<code>\save@sf@q</code> : PR3119, don't start a paragraph in a local group	44
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Use <code>\aftergroup</code> to keep the language grouping correct in auxiliary files PR3091	20
babel 3.7g	
<code>\@citex</code> : The shorthands need to be deactivated for the second argument of <code>\@citex</code> only.	55
General: Added option <code>acadian</code>	13
Added option <code>canadian</code>	14
Added option <code>canadien</code>	14
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : use <code>\textormath</code> to get rid of the <code>\fi</code> (PR 3266)	33
babel 3.7h	
General: Added a number of missing comment characters which caused spurious white space	1
babel 3.7j	
General: <i>only</i> load <code>frenchb.1df</code>	14
<code>\bbl@pop@language</code> : Introduce the language stack mechanism	20
Now use the language stack mechanism	21
<code>\FOREIGNLANGUAGE</code> : Define <code>\FOREIGNLANGUAGE</code> unconditionally	59
<code>\substitutefontfamily</code> : create file with lowercase name	16
<code>\textlatin</code> : added <code>\leavevmode</code> to prevent a paragraph starting <i>inside</i> the group	17
<code>otherlanguage</code> : rely on <code>\selectlanguage</code> to keep track of the nesting	22
<code>\usesshorthands</code> : The change from 11/112001 was incomplete	37
When $\TeX$ has seen a character its category code is fixed; need to use a 'stand-in' for the call of <code>\bbl@activate</code>	37
babel 3.7k	
<code>\textlatin</code> : Use <code>\DeclareTextFontCommand</code>	17
babel 3.7m	
<code>\@mkboth</code> : added <code>\bbl@restore@actives</code> to the mark	57
<code>\@noopterr</code> : Macro added	26
General: Added the interlingua option	14
<code>\bbl@pop@language</code> : Removed the superfluous empty definition of <code>\bbl@pop@language</code>	21
<code>\bbl@restore@actives</code> : New macro added	36
<code>\markright</code> : added <code>\bbl@restore@actives</code> to the mark	56
<code>\selectlanguage</code> : Check for the existence of both <code>\l@...</code> and <code>\date...</code>	21
babel 3.7o	
<code>\active@prefix</code> : Added handling of the situation where <code>\protect</code> is set to <code>\@unexpandable@protect</code>	36
<code>\ldf@finish</code> : Also restore the category code of the equals sign	25
<code>\ldf@quit</code> : Also restore the category code of the equals sign	25
<code>\LdfInit</code> : make sure the equals sign has its default category code	24
<code>\vrefpagemum</code> : Added redefinition of <code>\vrefpagemum</code> which deals with ranges of pages	58
babel 3.8a	
General: Added interlingua	62
Also load package <code>url</code>	61
babel 3.8b	
<code>\bbl@sh@select</code> : Added command	35



<code>\declare@shorthand</code> : We need to support shorthands with and without argument in different groups; added the name of the group to the storage macro . . . . .	37
<code>\frq</code> : Made <code>\flq</code> and <code>\frq</code> fontencoding dependent . . . . .	47
<code>\frqq</code> : Made <code>\flqq</code> and <code>\frqq</code> fontencoding dependent . . . . .	47
<code>\grq</code> : Made <code>\glq</code> fontencoding dependent as well . . . . .	46
<code>\grqq</code> : Made <code>\grqq</code> fontencoding dependent as well . . . . .	46
<code>\hhline</code> : added <code>\string</code> to prevent unwanted expansion of the colon . . . . .	59
<code>\initiate@active@char</code> : Now use <code>\bbl@sh@select</code> . . . . .	34, 35
babel 3.8c	
<code>\mkboth</code> : No need to add <i>anything</i> to an empty mark, prevented this by checking the contents of the arguments . . . . .	57
General: Added option <code>australian</code> . . . . .	13
Added the <code>newzealand</code> option . . . . .	15
<code>\markright</code> : No need to add <i>anything</i> to an empty mark; prevented this by checking the contents of the argument . . . . .	56
babel 3.8e	
General: Many enhancements to the text by Andrew Young . . . . .	1
babel 3.8f	
<code>\mkboth</code> : Make the definition independent of the original definition; expand <code>\language</code> before passing it into the token registers . . . . .	57
<code>\markright</code> : Make the definition independent of the original definition; expand <code>\language</code> before passing it into the token registers . . . . .	56
babel 3.8g	
<code>\Ref</code> : We also need to adapt <code>\Ref</code> which needs to be able to uppercase the first letter of the expansion of <code>\ref</code> . . . . .	58
babel 3.8h	
General: added <code>malay</code> , <code>meyaluy</code> and <code>bahasam</code> for the Bahasa Malaysia support . . . . .	14
Added <code>albanian</code> and <code>bahasam</code> . . . . .	62
Added option <code>albanian</code> . . . . .	13
added synonyms <code>indonesian</code> , <code>indon</code> and <code>bahasai</code> for the original bahasa (indonesia) support . . . . .	14
babel 3.8j	
<code>\mkboth</code> : Added setting of <code>\mkboth</code> (PR 3826) . . . . .	57
<code>\bbl@switch@sh@on</code> : Added a group in order to protect the current lowercase code of the tilde (PR 3851) . . . . .	38
<code>\pdfstringdefDisableCommands</code> : Inform <code>hyperref</code> to use shorthands at system level (PR4006) . . . . .	59
<code>hyphenrules</code> : Also set the <code>hyphenmin</code> paramters to the correct value (PR3997) . . . . .	23
bahasa-0.9c	
General: Now use <code>\@patterns</code> to produce the warning . . . . .	368, 370
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code> . . . . .	368, 370
bahasa-1.0b	
<code>\captionsbahasa</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$ . . . . .	369
<code>\captionsbahasam</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$ . . . . .	370
bahasa-1.0d	
General: Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with $\LaTeX$ . . . . .	368, 370
<code>\captionsbahasa</code> : Replaced ‘Proof’ by ‘Bukti’ (PR2214) . . . . .	369
<code>\captionsbahasam</code> : Replaced ‘Proof’ by ‘Bukti’ (PR2214) . . . . .	370
bahasa-1.0e	
General: Moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning. . . . .	368, 370
Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up . . . . .	369, 371
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks . . . . .	368, 370
<code>\bahasahyphenmins</code> : use <code>\bahasahyphenmins</code> to store the correct values . . . . .	369
<code>\bahasamhyphenmins</code> : use <code>\bahasamhyphenmins</code> to store the correct values . . . . .	371
bahasa-1.0f	
<code>\datebahasa</code> : Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> . . . . .	369
<code>\datebahasam</code> : Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> . . . . .	371
bahasa-1.0g	
<code>\datebahasa</code> : Februari should be spelled as Pebruari . . . . .	369
<code>\datebahasam</code> : Februari should be spelled as Pebruari . . . . .	371

bahasa-1.0h	
<code>\bahasahyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	369
<code>\bahasamhyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	371
<code>\captionsbahasa</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	369
<code>\captionsbahasam</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	370
bahasa-1.0i	
<code>\captionsbahasa</code> : Inserted translation for Glossary	369
<code>\captionsbahasam</code> : Inserted translation for Glossary	370
bahasa-v1.0k	
General: Make it possible that this file is loaded by variuos options	368
bahasam-0.9f	
General: A number of changes to make this specific to Bahasa Mayasia	370
bahasam-1.0k	
<code>\captionsbahasam</code> : Inserted changes from Awangku Merali	370
<code>\datebahasam</code> : Februari restored to BM spelling; see Collins Kamus Dwibahasa 2005	371
bahasam-v1.0j	
General: Make it possible that this file is loaded by variuos options	370
bahasa 1.0f	
<code>\datebahasa</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code> to save memory	369
<code>\datebahasam</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code> to save memory	371
basque-1.0b	
General: Removed empty groups after guillemot characters	198
<code>\datebasque</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	197
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	197
basque-1.0c	
<code>\datebasque</code> : fixed typo in April's name	197
basque-1.0d	
<code>\noextrabasque</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Basque	197
basque-1.0e	
<code>\basquehyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	197
<code>\captionsbasque</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	196
basque-1.0f	
General: Changed url's for the patterns file	196
<code>\captionsbasque</code> : Added translation for Glossary	196
bbplain-0.1	
General: Added redefinition of <code>\dump</code> to add a message to <code>\everyjob</code>	373
bbplain-1.0c	
General: Add execution of <code>\@begindocumenthook</code> to <code>\@preamblecmds</code>	373
Added definition of <code>\loadlocalcfg</code>	373
Moved the <code>\dump</code> code here from <code>babel.dtx</code>	373
bbplain-1.0d	
General: Also reset category codes after loading the configuration file as <code>\AtEndOfPackage</code> is undefined in this case	373
bbplain-1.0e	
General: Added the <code>\newcommand</code> code	376
Provide a more complete emulation of <code>\DeclareRobustCommand</code> and <code>\newcommand</code>	375
bbplain-1.0f	
General: added <code>\@empty</code>	373
Added <code>\textquotedblright</code> and <code>\textquoteright</code>	379
Added definition of <code>\scriptsize</code>	379
Consistently use <code>\@undefined</code> instead of <code>\undefined</code>	373
Use <code>\toks8</code> instead of <code>\patterns@loaded</code>	374
bbplain-1.0g	
General: Added <code>\ss</code> and <code>\i</code>	379
bbplain-1.0h	
General: Only load the necessary parts into the format, let this file be read agian by <code>babel.def</code>	373
bbplain-1.0i	
General: <code>\document</code> is not a L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X2.09-only command; AMST <sub>E</sub> X defines it too; now use <code>\@ztryfc</code> to detect L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X2.09	373

bbplain-1.0j	
General: <code>\@begindocumenthook</code> might already be defined	375
Add the definition of <code>\@begindocumenthook</code> to the L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X2.09 format	373
bbplain-1.0k	
General: <code>\newcount</code> is an <code>\outer</code> command, can't use it inside an <code>\if</code> construct	376
missing <code>\@undefined</code> added	375
bbplain-1.0l	
General: Mixed up the definition of <code>\@tempcntb</code>	376
bbplain-1.0m	
General: Set <code>\if@filesw</code> to <code>\iffalse</code> only for plain T <sub>E</sub> X	375
bbplain-1.0n	
General: Added <code>\@secondoftwo</code>	374
Added the source for the format wrapper files	372
Repaired typo and added missing <code>\endcsname</code>	375
bbplain-1.0o	
General: Added definition of <code>\in@</code>	376
bbplain-1.0p	
General: Added <code>\@ifl@aded</code> as a no-op	376
bbplain-1.0q	
General: Added <code>\@ifundefined</code>	374
bbplain-1.0r	
General: Added <code>\textquotedblleft</code> and <code>\textquoteleft</code>	379
breton-1.0	
General: First release	87
breton-1.0b	
<code>\captionstreton</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	87
<code>\noextrastreton</code> : Use the new mechanism for dealing with active chars	88
breton-1.0c	
General: Postpone the <code>\DeclareTextCompositeCommands</code> untill <code>\AtBeginDocument</code>	89
breton-1.0e	
General: Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	89
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	87
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	87
breton-1.0f	
<code>\datebreton</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	87
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	87
breton-1.0g	
<code>\noextrastreton</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Breton	88
breton-1.0h	
<code>\captionstreton</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	87
bulgarian-0.99	
General: This is a prerelease version of this file. Features needing further testing are removed.	277
bulgarian-1.0b	
<code>\extrastrebulgarian</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	284
bulgarian-1.0c	
General: Added missing closing brace	279
<code>\dq</code> : repaired typo	283
bulgarian-1.0d	
General: Change definition of <code>\th</code> only for this language	286
bulgarian-1.0e	
<code>\cdash</code> : Two occurrences of <code>\emp</code> were changed into <code>tab</code> followed by <code>emp</code>	284
catalan-1.1	
<code>\captionscatalan</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	171
catalan-2.0	
General: Removed code to load <code>latexhax.com</code>	170
<code>\captionscatalan</code> : Added some names	171
<code>\extrascatalan</code> : Macro completely rewritten	171
<code>\noextrascatalan</code> : Macro completely rewritten	171

catalan-2.0b	
General: Incorporated the changes from <code>spanish.sty</code>	170
catalan-2.1	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>Ε</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	170
catalan-2.1d	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	171
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of	
<code>babel.def</code>	170
<code>\captionscatalan</code> : Added a few missing translations	171
<code>\textacute</code> : Renamed from <code>\acute</code> as that is a <code>\mathaccent</code>	172
catalan-2.2a	
General: All the code to deal with active characters is now in <code>babel.def</code>	173
<code>\extrascatalan</code> : Handling of active characters completely rewritten	171
<code>\noextrascatalan</code> : All the code for handling active characters is now moved to	
<code>babel.def</code>	172
catalan-2.2b	
General: Changed mathmode definition of acute shorthands to expand to a single	
prime followed by the next character in the input	174
Made the activation of the grave and acute accents optional	170
<code>\captionscatalan</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>Ε</sub> X	171
<code>\datecatalan</code> : Month names in lowercase	171
<code>\Lgem</code> : Added support for typing the catalan “ <i>ela geminada</i> ” with the macros	
<code>\lgem</code> and <code>\Lgem</code>	175
<code>\noextrascatalan</code> : Make activating the accent characters optional	172
<code>\up</code> : Added definition of macro <code>\up</code> , which can be used to type ordinals	176
catalan-2.2c	
General: Added ’ as an extra shorthand, removed ’n as a shorthand	174
Added shorthands for guillemets	174
cedile now produced by double quote shorthand	174
Removed the use of the tilde for catalan	170
catalan-2.2d	
<code>\captionscatalan</code> : added translation of Proof	171
Translations revised	171
catalan-2.2e	
General: Added “ as an extra shorthand	174
Added vertical bar as argument to active acute	174
<code>\L.L</code> : Added redefinition of <code>\l</code> and <code>\L</code>	175
<code>\noextrascatalan</code> : Need to split up the <code>\@ifpackagewith</code> statements	172
Now give the apostrophe a lowercase code	171
<code>\up</code> : Now use <code>\textsuperscript</code> and make <code>\up</code> robust	176
catalan-2.2f	
General: Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for	
consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>Ε</sub> X	170
<code>\Lgem</code> : Added a check for math mode as the use of <code>\lgem</code> and <code>\Lgem</code> in math	
mode is not sensible.	175
catalan-2.2g	
General: Moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	170
Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	176
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	170
catalan-2.2h	
<code>\noextrascatalan</code> : Added some comment signs to prevent unwanted spaces in	
the output	172
catalan-2.2i	
General: Removed empty groups after guillemot characters	174
<code>\datecatalan</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	171
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	171
catalan-2.2k	
General: A wrong <code>\changes</code> entry made typesetting impossible	170
catalan-2.2l	
<code>\noextrascatalan</code> : Don’t forget do deactivate the shorthands	172
Make sure that the grave accent has catcode 12 <i>before</i> it is made <code>\active</code>	172

catalan-2.2m	
\captionscatalan: Added \glossaryname	171
catalan-2.2n	
\catalanhyphenmins: Set the hyphenation parameters both to two as required by cahyph.tex	171
catalan-2.2o	
\l.L: Postpone the redefinition of \l and \L until begin document to prevent overwriting by fontenc	175
catalan-2.2p	
\captionscatalan: Inserted translation for Glossary	171
changes-1.0f	
General: The hyphen char needs to appear at the beginning of the line as well.	198
croatian-1.0a	
General: Renamed babel.sty in babel.com	247
croatian-1.0b	
General: Removed use of \@ifundefined	247
croatian-1.0c	
General: Removed some typos	247
croatian-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	247
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	247
\captionscroatian: Added \seename, \alsoname and \prefacename	247
croatian-1.2	
\captionscroatian: \headpagename should be \pagename	247
croatian-1.3	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	247
croatian-1.3d	
\captionscroatian: Added a few translations	247
croatian-1.3e	
\captionscroatian: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	247
croatian-1.3f	
\captionscroatian: Added translation of Proof	247
\datecroatian: in croatian language, the genitive for the name of the month has to be used	247
croatian-1.3g	
General: Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up	248
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks	247
Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consis- tency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning.	247
croatian-1.3h	
\datecroatian: sije{c}nja should be seij{v}{c}nja and there should be a period after the year	247
croatian-1.3i	
\captionscroatian: Replaced some of the translations with ‘better’ words	247
\datecroatian: use \def instead of \edef	247
Use \edef to define \today to save memory	247
croatian-1.3j	
\datecroatian: changed \od into \or	247
croatian-1.3k	
\captionscroatian: Added \glossaryname	247
croatian-1.3l	
\captionscroatian: Inserted translation for Glossary	247
czech-1.0a	
General: Renamed babel.sty in babel.com	249
czech-1.0b	
General: Removed use of \@ifundefined	249
czech-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	249
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	249
\captionsczech: Added \seename, \alsoname and \prefacename	249
czech-1.1a	
\noextrasczech: Removed typo, \q was restored twice, once too many.	250

czech-1.2	
General: Included some features from Kasal's czech.sty	249
czech-1.3	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	249
czech-1.3d	
General: Now use \@nopatterns to produce the warning	249
Removed the use of \filedate and moved identification after the loading of babel.def	249
czech-1.3e	
\noextrasczech: now use \bbl@frenchspacing and \bbl@nonfrenchspacing	250
Use L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X's \v and \r accent commands	250
czech-1.3f	
\captionsczech: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	249
czech-1.3g	
\captionsczech: Fixed two errors and provided translation for 'proof'	249
czech-1.3h	
General: Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up	250
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks	249
Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning.	249
czech-1.3i	
\dateczech: use \def instead of \edef	249
Use \edef to define \today to save memory	249
czech-1.3j	
\captionsczech: Added \glossaryname	249
czech-1.3k	
\captionsczech: Added translation for Glossary	249
danish-1.0a	
General: Renamed babel.sty in babel.com	201
danish-1.0b	
General: Removed use of \@ifundefined	201
danish-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	201
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	201
\captionsdanish: Added \seename, \alsoname and \prefacename	201
danish-1.2	
\captionsdanish: \headpagename should be \pagename	201
danish-1.2b	
\captionsdanish: Added a few translations	201
danish-1.3	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	201
danish-1.3a	
\datedanish: Added '.' to definition of \today	202
danish-1.3c	
\captionsdanish: Included some revisions from Peter Busk Larsen	201
danish-1.3f	
General: Now use \@nopatterns to produce the warning	201
Removed the use of \filedate and moved identification after the loading of babel.def	201
danish-1.3g	
General: Added the active double quote character as suggested by Peter Busk Laursen	201
danish-1.3h	
\captionsdanish: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	201
\extrasdanish: Added \bbl@frenchspacing	202
\noextrasdanish: Added \bbl@nonfrenchspacing	202
danish-1.3i	
\captionsdanish: Added translation of 'Proof'	201
danish-1.3j	
General: Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up	203
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks	201

Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	201
<code>\extrasdanish</code> : Added definition of <code>"~</code> and <code>"=</code>	202
Changed definition of <code>"'</code> to print <code>“</code> instead of <code>”</code>	202
danish-1.3k	
<code>\datedanish</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	202
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	202
<code>\extrasdanish</code> : Removed empty groups after double quote and guillemot characters	202
danish-1.3m	
<code>\extrasdanish</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Danish	202
danish-1.3n	
<code>\captionsdanish</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	201
danish-1.3o	
<code>\captionsdanish</code> : Added translation of ‘Glossary’	201
danish-1.3p	
<code>\englishhyphenmins</code> : Added default for setting of hyphenmin parameters	201
danish-1.3q	
<code>\-</code> : Added redefinition of <code>\-</code> from <code>dutch.1df</code>	202
<code>\englishhyphenmins</code> : Set <code>lefthyphenmin</code> to two	201
<code>\extrasdanish</code> : Added definition of <code>"/</code> from <code>dutch.1df</code>	202
dutch-2.0a	
General: Added checking of format	71
dutch-2.0b	
General: Added <code>extrasdutch</code>	71
dutch-2.0c	
General: Added <code>grqq</code> macros	71
dutch-2.1	
General: reflect change to version 2.1 in <code>babel</code> and changes in <code>german v2.3</code>	71
dutch-2.1a	
General: Incorporated Nico’s comments	71
dutch-2.1b	
General: Incorporated more comments by Nico	71
dutch-2.1c	
General: Fixed some typos	71
dutch-2.2	
General: Fixed problem with the use of <code>"</code> in moving arguments while <code>"</code> is active	71
dutch-2.3	
<code>\@trema</code> : <code>\dieresis</code> instead of <code>\accent127</code>	74
General: <code>\dieresis</code> instead of <code>\accent127</code>	74
When using PostScript fonts with the Adobe font-encoding, the dieresis-accent is located elsewhere, modified code	71
<code>\noextrasafrikaans</code> : Added <code>\dieresis</code>	73
dutch-2.3a	
General: Modified the documentation somewhat	71
dutch-3.0	
General: Modified for <code>babel 3.0</code>	71
Now use <code>\adddialect</code> if language undefined	71
dutch-3.0a	
General: Removed some problems in change log	71
dutch-3.0b	
<code>\extrasafrikaans</code> : added some comment chars to prevent white space	73
<code>\noextrasafrikaans</code> : added some comment chars to prevent white space	73
dutch-3.1	
General: Removed bug found by van der Meer	71
dutch-3.1a	
<code>\captionsdutch</code> : <code>\pagename</code> should be <code>\headpagename</code>	72
Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	72
<code>\datedutch</code> : Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	72
<code>\extrasafrikaans</code> : Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	73
<code>\noextrasafrikaans</code> : Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	73

dutch-3.2	
General: added case for "y and "Y	74
\extrasafrikaans: Save all redefined macros	73
\noextrasafrikaans: Try to restore everything to its former state	73
dutch-3.2a	
General: Added reset of catcode of @ before \endinput.	71
Renamed babel.sty in babel.com	71
dutch-3.2b	
General: removed typo (allowhpyhens)	74
dutch-3.2c	
General: Removed code to load latexhax.com	71
removed use of \@ifundefined	71
dutch-3.3	
General: Rewritten parts of the code to use the new features of babel version 3.1	71
\extrasafrikaans: Macro complete rewritten	73
\noextrasafrikaans: Macro complete rewritten	73
dutch-3.3a	
\@trema: renamed \@umlaut to \@trema	74
General: Added \save@sf@q macro from germanb and rewrote all quote macros to use it	73
Moved code to the beginning of the file and added \selectlanguage call	71
\captionsdutch: added \seename and \alsoname	72
dutch-3.3b	
General: Added warning, if no dutch patterns loaded	71
\captionsdutch: added \prefacename	72
\extrasafrikaans: modified handling of \dospecials and \@sanitize	73
\noextrasafrikaans: modified handling of \dospecials and \@sanitize	73
dutch-3.4b	
General: moved definition of \allowhyphens, \set@low@box and \save@sf@q to babel.com	73
dutch-3.5	
\captionsdutch: \headpagename should be \pagename	72
dutch-3.6	
General: Update or LaTeX2e	71
dutch-3.6c	
General: Now use \@nopatterns to produce the warning	71
Removed the use of \filedate, moved identification after the loading of babel.def	71
dutch-3.7a	
General: Moved identification code to the top of the file	71
Moved the definition of \ij and \IJ to glyphs.def	74
moved the definition of the double quote character at the baseline to glyphs.def	73
Now use \Declaredq@dutch to define the functions of the active double quote	74
Removed \dlqq, \@dlqq, \drqq, \@drqq and \dieresis	73
Rewrote the code with respect to the active double quote character	71
The support macros for the active double quote have been moved to babel.def	74
Use \ddot instead of \@MATHUMLAUT	74
Use more general mechanism of \declare@shorthand	74
\afrikaanshyphenmins: use \dutchhyphenmins to store the correct values	73
\IJ: Changed the kerning in the faked ij to match the dc-version of it	45
dutch-3.7b	
General: Added "" shorthand	74
dutch-3.7c	
\captionsdutch: We need the " to be active while defining \captionsdutch	72
dutch-3.7d	
\captionsdutch: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	72
dutch-3.7f	
General: Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	71
dutch-3.8a	
General: Merged in the definitions for ‘afrikaans’	71



Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	74
this needs a more complicated check as ‘afrikaans’ may or may not have its own hyphenation patterns	71
<code>\noextrasafrikaans</code> : Made all definitions dependant on <code>\CurrentOption</code>	73
dutch-3.8b	
<code>\captionsdutch</code> : Use <code>Bew"ys</code> instead of <code>Bewijs</code>	72
dutch-3.8c	
General: Added the <code>"~</code> shorthand	74
dutch-3.8e	
General: Added a shorthand with the slash character	74
Forgot to replace ‘german’ by ‘dutch’ when copying definition for <code>"~</code>	74
Removed empty groups after double quote characters	74
<code>\dateafrikaans</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	73
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	73
<code>\datedutch</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	72
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	72
dutch-3.8h	
<code>\afrikaanshyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	73
<code>\captionsdutch</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	72
dutch-3.8i	
<code>\-</code> : <code>\-</code> should use <code>\bbl@allowhyphens</code>	74
General: <code>"/</code> should use <code>\bbl@allowhyphens</code>	74
english-2.0a	
General: Added checking of format	75
english-2.1	
General: Reflect changes in babel 2.1	75
english-2.1a	
General: Incorporated Nico’s comments	75
english-2.1b	
General: merged <code>USenglish.sty</code> into this file	75
english-2.1c	
General: fixed typo in definition for american language found by Werenfried Spit ( <code>nspit@fys.ruu.nl</code> )	75
english-2.1d	
General: Fixed some typos	75
english-3.0	
General: Modified for babel 3.0	75
Now use <code>\adddialect</code> for american	76
Now use <code>\adddialect</code> if language undefined	75
english-3.0a	
General: Removed bug found by van der Meer	75
english-3.0b	
General: Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	76
<code>\captionseenglish</code> : <code>\pagename</code> should be <code>\headpagename</code>	76
Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	76
<code>\dateamerican</code> : Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	78
<code>\dateenglish</code> : Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	77
english-3.0c	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> in <code>babel.com</code>	75
english-3.0d	
General: removed use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	75
english-3.1	
General: Rewrote parts of the code to use the new features of babel version 3.1	75
english-3.1a	
<code>\captionseenglish</code> : added <code>\seenname</code> and <code>\alsoname</code>	76
english-3.1b	
<code>\captionseenglish</code> : added <code>\prefacename</code>	76
english-3.2	
<code>\captionseenglish</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	76
english-3.3	
General: Update or $\LaTeX 2\epsilon$	75

english-3.3c	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	75
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved the identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	75
english-3.3d	
General: Only define <code>american</code> as a dialect when no separate patterns have been loaded	76
english-3.3e	
<code>\captionseenglish</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$	76
english-3.3g	
General: Allow <code>british</code> as the name of the UK patterns	75
Allow <code>USenglish</code> as the name of the american patterns	76
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with $\LaTeX$	75
<code>\captionseenglish</code> : Construct control sequence on the fly	76
<code>\dateenglish</code> : Construct control sequence on the fly	77
<code>\noextraseenglish</code> : Construct control sequences on the fly	78
english-3.3h	
General: Moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	75
Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	78
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	75
english-3.3i	
<code>\dateamerican</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	78
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	78
<code>\dateenglish</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	77
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	77
english-3.3j	
General: Also allow american english hyphenation patterns to be used for ‘english’	75
Ensure that <code>\l@USenglish</code> is always defined	76
<code>\captionseenglish</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	76
<code>\dateenglish</code> : Make sure that the value of <code>\today</code> is correct for both options ‘american’ and ‘USenglish’	77
english-3.3k	
General: Added support for canadian	75, 76
english-3.3l	
General: Added missing backslash	76
english-3.3m	
<code>\englishhyphenmins</code> : Added default for setting of <code>hyphenmin</code> parameters	76
english-3.3n	
General: Added support for australian and newzealand	75, 76
<code>\dateaustralian</code> : Add australian date	77
<code>\dateenglish</code> : Added support for ‘Australian’ and ‘Newzealand’	77
english-3.3o	
General: Make sure that british patterns are used if they were loaded	75
<code>\dateenglish</code> : Explicitly choose the UK form of date	77
esperanto0-1.4o	
<code>\noextrasesperanto</code> : Moved the check for math to <code>babel.def</code>	67
esperanto-1.0a	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> in <code>babel.com</code>	66
esperanto-1.0b	
General: Removed use of <code>\makeatletter</code>	66
esperanto-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	66
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	66
<code>\captionseesperanto</code> : Added <code>\seename</code> , <code>\alsoname</code> and <code>\prefacename</code>	66
esperanto-1.2	
General: Included code from <code>esperant.sty</code>	66
esperanto-1.3	
<code>\captionseesperanto</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	66
Repaired a number of mistakes, indicated by D. Ederveen	66
<code>\dateesperanto</code> : Removed the capitals from <code>\today</code>	67

esperanto-1.4a	
General: Updated for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub> . . . . .	66
\captionesperanto: added missing closing brace . . . . .	66
esperanto-1.4d	
General: Removed the use of \filedate, moved Identification after loading of babel.def . . . . .	66
Use \nopatterns for the warning . . . . .	66
esperanto-1.4e	
General: Moved identification code to the top of the file . . . . .	66
esperanto-1.4f	
General: Corrected typos (PR1652) . . . . .	66
esperanto-1.4g	
\captionesperanto: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X . . . . .	66
esperanto-1.4h	
General: Added a few shorthands . . . . .	67
esperanto-1.4i	
General: Moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning. . . . .	66
Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up . . . . .	68
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks . . . . .	66
Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consis- tency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X . . . . .	66
\captionesperanto: Replaced ‘Proof’ by ‘Pruvo’ PR 2207 . . . . .	66
esperanto-1.4j	
General: fixed typo in table caption (funtion instead of function) . . . . .	66
esperanto-1.4k	
\dateesperanto: Removed Rthe use of \edef again . . . . .	67
Use \edef to define \today to save memory . . . . .	67
esperanto-1.4l	
General: Added a shorthand definition on system level . . . . .	67
esperanto-1.4n	
\noextrasesperanto: Added a check for math mode to the definition of the short- hand character . . . . .	67
esperanto-1.4p	
\captionesperanto: Added \glossaryname . . . . .	66
esperanto-1.4q	
\captionesperanto: Added translation for Glossary . . . . .	66
\esper: Removed the extra level of expansion for more than five items, as was done in L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X . . . . .	67
esperanto-1.4t	
\esper: Added the missing ‘r’ in these macros . . . . .	67
estonian-1.0b	
General: corrected typos . . . . .	240
estonian-1.0c	
\captionsestonian: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X . . . . .	241
estonian-1.0d	
General: The second argument was missing in the definition of some of the double- quote shorthands . . . . .	242
\captionsestonian: Added translation of ‘Proof’ . . . . .	241
\noextrasestonian: Removed the code that changes category, lower case, uper case and space factor codes . . . . .	241
estonian-1.0e	
General: Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up . . . . .	243
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks . . . . .	240
Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consis- tency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X, moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning. . . . .	240
estonian-1.0f	
General: Removed empty groups after double quote and guillemot characters . . . . .	243
\dateestonian: use \def instead of \edef . . . . .	241
Use \edef to define \today to save memory . . . . .	241
estonian-1.0g	
General: use \bbl@t@one instead of \bbl@next . . . . .	242

estonian-1.0h	
\captionsestonian: Added \glossaryname	241
\estonianhyphenmins: Now use \providehyphenmins to provide a default value	242
finnish-1.0a	
General: Renamed babel.sty in babel.com	222
finnish-1.0b	
General: Removed use of \@ifundefined	222
finnish-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	222
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	222
\captionsestonian: \headpagename should be \pagename	222
Added \seename, \alsoname and \prefacename	222
finnish-1.1.2	
\captionsestonian: Added translations	222
finnish-1.2	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	222
finnish-1.3c	
General: Now use \@nopatterns to produce the warning	222
Removed the use of \filedate and moved identification after the loading of	
babel.def	222
finnish-1.3d	
General: Removed a few references to babel.com	222
finnish-1.3e	
\datefinnish: Added a ‘.’ after the number of the day	223
finnish-1.3f	
\finishhyphenmins: use \finnishhyphenmins to store the correct values	224
\noextrasestonian: Added the setting of \frenchspacing	223
Added the setting of more hyphenation parameters, according to PR1027	223
finnish-1.3g	
\:-: Added change of \-	224
\captionsestonian: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	222
\noextrasestonian: Added the active double quote	223
finnish-1.3h	
\captionsestonian: Added finnish word for ‘Proof’	222
finnish-1.3i	
General: Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up	224
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks	222
Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning.	222
finnish-1.3k	
\datefinnish: use \def instead of \edef	223
Use \edef to define \today to save memory	223
\noextrasestonian: Removed empty groups after double quote and guillemot characters	223
finnish-1.3m	
\noextrasestonian: Added mising closing brace	223
finnish-1.3n	
\:-: \allowhyphens should have been \bbl@allowhyphens	224
\captionsestonian: Added \glossaryname	222
\finishhyphenmins: Now use \providehyphenmins to provide a default value	224
\noextrasestonian: Deactive shorthands outside of Finnish	223
finnish-1.3o	
\captionsestonian: Provided translation for Glossary	222
finnish-1.3p	
\noextrasestonian: “= should also use \bbl@allowhyphens	224
finnish-1.3q	
General: Small documentation fix	222
frenchb-2.0	
General: \nombre requires now numprint.sty.	115
Opt.	121
Added warning for OT1 encoding.	128

AtBeginDocument, save again the definitions of the ‘list’ and ‘itemize’ environments and the values of labelitems. As of frenchb v.1.6, ‘ORI’ values were set when reading frenchb.lfd, later changes were ignored. . . . .	128
Footnotes are now printed by default ‘à la française’ for the whole document.	120
New command <code>\frenchbsetup</code> added for global customisation. . . . .	123
<code>\bsc</code> : <code>\hbox</code> dropped, replaced by . . . . .	114
<code>\captionfrench</code> : ‘Fig.’ changed to ‘Figure’ and ‘Tab.’ to ‘Table’. . . . .	116
Set <code>\CaptionSeparator</code> in <code>\extrasfrench</code> now instead of <code>\captionfrench</code> because it has to be reset when leaving French. . . . .	116
<code>\FBtextellipsis</code> : Added special case for LY1 encoding, see bug report from Bruno Voisin (2004/05/18). . . . .	122
frenchb-2.0b	
General: Just do nothing (except warning) when the bigfoot package is loaded.	120
frenchb-2.0c	
General: <code>\ThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers</code> added for compatibility with frenchb-1.x.	116
No need to define here numprint’s command <code>\npstylefrench</code> , it will be redefined ‘AtBeginDocument’ by <code>\FBprocess@options</code> . . . . .	116
Option <code>ThinSpaceInFrenchNumbers</code> added. . . . .	123
frenchb-2.0d	
General: Options <code>og</code> and <code>fg</code> changed: limit the definition to French so that quote characters can be used in German. . . . .	123
frenchb-2.0e	
General: New option: <code>StandardLists</code> . . . . .	123
galician 4.3	
General: <code>\dots</code> is removed and instead <code>\dots</code> and <code>\dots</code> are changed, by redefining <code>\ldotc</code> , <code>\dotc</code> and <code>\textellipsis</code> or <code>\dots</code> . . . . .	182
<code>\sin</code> , <code>\arcsin</code> and <code>\sinh</code> are set to produce the same as <code>\sen</code> , <code>\arcsen</code> and <code>\senh</code> . . . . .	184
Added <code>\msc</code> . . . . .	181
<code>cosc</code> and <code>senh</code> moved from <code>\galicianoperators</code> to the main group . . . . .	184
Removed the shorthand for ç. It existed in medieval galician-portuguese, but that does not seem a reason to be included here. . . . .	179
Removed the shorthands "er and "ER, they don’t exist in galician. . . . .	188
Removed the Spanish et sign. . . . .	179
Set the default to <code>\unspacedoperators</code> . . . . .	184
Set the default to <code>do</code> . . . . .	180
german-2.6l	
General: Making <code>germanb</code> behave like <code>german</code> needs som more work besides defining <code>\CurrentOption</code> . . . . .	79
germanb-1.0a	
General: Incorporated Nico’s comments . . . . .	79
germanb-1.0b	
General: fixed typo in definition for austrian language found by Werenfried Spit <code>nspit@fys.ruu.nl</code> . . . . .	79
germanb-1.0c	
General: Fixed some typos . . . . .	79
germanb-1.1	
General: When using PostScript fonts with the Adobe fontencding, the dieresis-accent is located elsewhere, modified code . . . . .	79
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : Added <code>\dieresis</code> . . . . .	81
germanb-1.1a	
General: Modified the documentation somewhat . . . . .	79
germanb-2.0	
General: Modified for babel 3.0 . . . . .	79
Now use <code>\adddialect</code> for austrian . . . . .	80
Now use <code>\adddialect</code> if language undefined . . . . .	80
germanb-2.0a	
General: Removed some problems in change log . . . . .	79
germanb-2.0b	
<code>\extrasaustrian</code> : added some comment chars to prevent white space . . . . .	81
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : added some comment chars to prevent white space . . . . .	81

germanb-2.1	
General: Removed bug found by van der Meer	79
germanb-2.2	
General: Removed global assignments, brought uptodate with <code>german.tex</code> v2.3d	79
<code>\captionsaustrian</code> : <code>\pagename</code> should be <code>\headpagename</code>	80
Removed <code>\global</code> definitions	80
<code>\extrasaustrian</code> : Save all redefined macros	81
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : Try to restore everything to its former state	81
germanb-2.2a	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> in <code>babel.com</code>	79
germanb-2.2d	
General: Removed use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	80
germanb-2.3	
General: Rewritten parts of the code to use the new features of babel version 3.1	79
germanb-2.3e	
General: Added <code>\save@sf@q</code> macro and rewrote all quote macros to use it	81
Added warning, if no german patterns loaded	80
Brought up-to-date with <code>german.tex</code> v2.3e (plus some bug fixes) [br]	79
<code>\captionsaustrian</code> : Added <code>\prefacename</code> , <code>\seename</code> and <code>\alsoname</code>	80
<code>\dategerman</code> : Added <code>\month@german</code>	80
germanb-2.3h	
General: moved definition of <code>\allowhyphens</code> , <code>\set@low@box</code> and <code>\save@sf@q</code> to <code>babel.com</code>	81
germanb-2.4	
<code>\captionsaustrian</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	80
germanb-2.5	
General: Update or $\LaTeX 2\epsilon$	79
germanb-2.5c	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	80
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved the identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	79
germanb-2.6a	
General: <code>\umlautlow</code> and <code>\umlauthigh</code> moved to <code>glyphs.dtx</code> , as well as <code>\newumlaut</code> (now <code>\lower@umlaut</code> )	81
Moved all quotation characters to <code>glyphs.dtx</code>	81
Moved the identification to the top of the file	79
Rewrote the code that handles the active double quote character	79
Use <code>\ddot</code> instead of <code>\@MATHUMLAUT</code>	81
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : All the code to handle the active double quote has been moved to <code>babel.def</code>	81
Removed <code>\3</code> as it is no longer in <code>german.ldf</code>	81
use <code>\germanhyphenmins</code> to store the correct values	81
germanb-2.6b	
<code>\captionsaustrian</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$	80
germanb-2.6c	
General: added the <code>\allowhyphens</code>	81
Moved <code>\german@dq@disc</code> to <code>babel.def</code> , calling it <code>\bbl@disc</code>	81
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : Use decimal number instead of hat-notation as the hat may be activated	81
germanb-2.6d	
General: Moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	79
Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	82
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	80
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with $\LaTeX$	79
<code>\captionsaustrian</code> : Construct control sequence on the fly	80
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : Construct control sequence <code>\extrasgerman</code> or <code>\extrasaustrian</code> on the fly	81
germanb-2.6f	
General: Copied the coding for "f from <code>german.dtx</code> version 2.5d	82
use <code>\SS</code> instead of <code>SS</code> , removed braces after <code>\ss</code>	82
<code>\ck</code> : Now use <code>\shorthandon</code> and <code>\shorthandoff</code>	82

<code>\dateaustrian</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code> .....	81
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory .....	81
<code>\dategerman</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code> .....	80
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory .....	80
germanb-2.6i	
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of German .....	81
germanb-2.6j	
<code>\captionsaustrian</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code> .....	80
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value .....	81
germanb-2.6k	
<code>\noextrasaustrian</code> : Turn frenchspacing on, as in <code>german.sty</code> .....	81
greek-1.0b	
General: Moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning .....	96
Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up .....	103
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks .....	97
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X .....	96
<code>\textgreek</code> : Added a level of braces to keep encoding change local .....	98
greek-1.0c	
<code>\greek@tilde</code> : Added command .....	101
greek-1.1	
<code>\Grtoday</code> : Added macro <code>\Grtoday</code> .....	99
greek-1.1a	
<code>\dategreek</code> : Fixed typo, <code>Oktwbr'iou</code> instead of <code>Oktobr'iou</code> .....	99
<code>\greek@Alph</code> : removed two superfluous <code>@</code> 's which made <code>\@alph</code> undefined ..	100
greek-1.1b	
<code>\noextragreek</code> : Added setting of <code>\uccodes</code> (after <code>kdgreek.sty</code> ) .....	102
Added shorthand for <code>\char255</code> .....	102
Made tilde expand to a tilde with <code>\catcode 12</code> .....	102
greek-1.1c	
General: Added a couple of symbols, needed for <code>\greeknumeral</code> .....	102
<code>\noextragreek</code> : fixed two typos .....	102
greek-1.1d	
<code>\dategreek</code> : Macro <code>\gr@month</code> now produces the name of the month .....	99
greek-1.1e	
General: Added caption name for proof .....	98
Most symbols are removed and are now defined in package <code>grsymb</code> .....	102
<code>\gr@month</code> : Macro added .....	99
<code>\noextragreek</code> : Added lowercase code for <code>v</code> .....	102
Added uppercase code for special letter “v”. Uppercase code for accents is now <code>9f</code> , instead of <code>ff</code> .....	102
Shorthand is changed. Active character is now <code>\char159</code> .....	102
greek-1.2	
General: Added caption names for <code>\polutonikogreek</code> .....	98
Classical Greek is now a dialect .....	96
<code>\gr@c@greek</code> : Added macro <code>\datepolutonikogreek</code> .....	99
Added macro <code>\gr@cl@month</code> .....	99
<code>\noextragreek</code> : Added lowercase codes for “modern” greek .....	102
Added uppercase codes for “modern” Greek. The old codes are now for “Polutoniko” Greek .....	102
Definitions for “modern” Greek are now the definitions of “Polutoniko” Greek .....	102
greek-1.2a	
General: filename <code>lgrenc.def</code> now lowercase .....	97
<code>\dategreek</code> : Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> .....	99
<code>\noextragreek</code> : Need shorthand to exist for “monotoniko” Greek, not “polutoniko” Greek .....	102
greek-1.2b	
General: Classical Greek is now called “Polutoniko” Greek. The previous name was at least misleading .....	96
<code>\dategreek</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code> .....	99
<code>\gr@num@iii</code> : No longer use <code>\</code> in the expansion of the <code>\gr@num@x</code> macros as they need to be expandable .....	101

greek-1.2c	
General: Package grsymb has been eliminated because the CB fonts v2.0 do not include certain symbols and so the remaining symbol definitions have been moved here	102
This version conforms to version 2.0 of the CB fonts and consequently we added a few new symbol-producing commands	96
greek-1.2e	
<code>\greek@Roman</code> : Moved redefinition of <code>\@roman</code> back to the language specific file	100
greek-1.2f	
<code>\ltx&amp;</code> : Now switch the definition of <code>\&amp;</code> from <code>\extragreek</code>	101
greek-1.3a	
General: polutoniko is now an attribute to Greek, no longer a ‘dialect’	96
<code>\gr@c@greek</code> : removed macro <code>\datepolutonikogreek</code>	99
greek-1.3b	
<code>\greeknumeral</code> : Added <code>\expandafter</code> and <code>\number</code> (PR3000) in order to make a counter an acceptable argument	100
greek-1.3c	
<code>\ltx&amp;</code> : Added a missing opening brace	101
greek-1.3d	
General: Fixed typo, <code>bl’epe ep’ishc</code> instead of <code>bl’pe ep’ishc</code>	98
<code>\greek@Roman</code> : <code>\@roman</code> and <code>\@Roman</code> need to be added to <code>\extraspolutonikogreek</code>	100
greek-1.3e	
<code>\greek@Roman</code> : <code>\@roman</code> and <code>\@Roman</code> need <i>not</i> be in <code>\extraspolutonikogreek</code> when they are already in <code>\extragreek</code>	100
<code>\noextragreek</code> : <code>\extragreek</code> and <code>\extraspolutonikogreek</code> should be complementary	102
greek-1.3f	
General: Added some code to make older documents work	97
greek-1.3g	
General: <code>\noextraspolutonikogreek</code> was missing	97
greek-1.3h	
<code>\captionsgreek</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	98
<code>\greekhyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	98
greek-1.3i	
<code>\captionsgreek</code> : The final sigma in all names appears as ‘s’ instead of ‘c’.	98
<code>\noextragreek</code> : uc code of ‘v’ is switched to V so that mixed text appears correctly in headers.	102
greek-1.3j	
<code>\noextragreek</code> : Because other languages might make the caret active, we can’t use the double caret notation here	102
Use the tilde as an alias for character 159	102
greek-1.3k	
<code>\greek@tilde</code> : Make sure the character “ is not active during the definition of <code>\greek@tilde</code>	101
<code>\textgreek</code> : Added <code>\leavevmode</code> as was done with <code>\latintext</code>	98
greek-1.3l	
General: Commented these lines out as this change has made it into L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X itself.	103
heb209 1.0a	
General: Initial version. Provides <code>hebrew_newcode</code> , <code>hebrew_oldcode</code> and <code>hebrew_p</code> style files for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2.09 (by Boris Lavva)	366
hebfdd-1.0a	
General: Initial version. Supports only 7-bit LHE font encoding and all available Hebrew T <sub>E</sub> X fonts (by Boris Lavva)	351
hebfdd-1.0b	
General: fixed <code>lhecmr.fd</code> to use <code>oldjaf10</code> for a slanted font available Hebrew T <sub>E</sub> X fonts (by Tzafirir Cohen)	351
hebfdd-1.1a	
General: Adding 8-bit HE8 fonts. Note that most of them cannot be distributed with <code>hebl<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X</code> (by Tzafirir Cohen)	351



hebfd-1.2a	General: Adding configurations for the Culmus fonts, currently 0.90 (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	351
hebfd-1.2b	General: Reinstated the test whether LHE or HE8 is to be used . . . . .	351
hebinp 1.0a	General: Initial version. Provides 8859-8, cp862, cp1255, and old 7-bit input encodings (by Boris Lavva) . . . . .	345
hebinp 1.1	General: Renamed hebrew letters: <code>\alef</code> to <code>\hebalef</code> etc. (by Tzafrir Cohen)	345
hebinp 1.1a	General: Renamed CP1255 nikud <code>\patah</code> to <code>\hebpatah</code> etc. Added the macro <code>\DisableNikud</code> - may not be a good idea (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	345
hebrew-1.2c	General: Typo's in the docstrip guards made HE8nachlieli.fd unusable . . . . .	351
hebrew-2.0b	<code>\captionshbrew</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code> . . . . .	310
hebrew-2.3h	<code>\hebrewencoding</code> : Make LHE the default encoding for compatibility reasons	309
hebrew 0.1	General: Preliminary L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X Hebrew option (by Sergio Fogel) . . . . .	308
hebrew 0.2	General: Corrections and additions (by Rama Porrat) . . . . .	308
hebrew 0.6	General: Additions (by Yael Dubinsky) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.2	General: Bilingual tables, penalties, documentation and more changes (by Yaniv Bargury) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.30	General: Font selection, various (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.31	General: Bug fixes (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.32	General: Made font-change command for numbers ' <code>\protect</code> 'ed (by Alon Ziv)	308
hebrew 1.33	General: Made <code>\refstepcounter</code> work using <code>\@ltor</code> (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.34	General: Moved font loading to another file. Added <code>\mainsec</code> . Made all text strings be produced by control codes (similar to L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X2.09 Mar '92). Fixed <code>\noindent</code> (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.35	General: Moved the texts to a file selected by the current encoding (by Alon Ziv)	308
hebrew 1.36	General: Use T <sub>E</sub> X tricks to redefine <code>\theXXXX</code> without keeping old definitions. Use only <code>\@eng</code> for direction/font change (removed <code>\@ltor</code> ). Switched from use of <code>\mainsec</code> to code taken from <code>babel</code> system (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.37	General: Use <code>\add@around</code> in defining font size commands. Small bug fixes (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.38	General: <code>\everypar</code> changed so that <code>\noindent</code> works unmodified (by Alon Ziv, thanks to Chris Rowley) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.39	General: Redefined primitive sectioning commands. Changed <code>\include</code> so it finds <code>.h</code> , <code>.xet</code> , and <code>.ltx</code> files (no extension needed). Reinstated use of <code>\@ltor</code> (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.40	General: Added the <code>\@brackets</code> hack (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 1.41	General: Reworked towards using NFSS2. Changed some macro names to be more logical: renamed <code>\@ltor</code> to <code>\@number</code> , <code>\@eng</code> to <code>\@latin</code> , and (in <code>hebrew.ldf</code> ) <code>\@heb</code> to <code>\@hebrew</code> (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308

hebrew 1.42	
General: Made list environments work better. Fixed thebibliography environment (by Alon Ziv) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.0a	
General: Completely rewritten for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub> and babel support. Various input and font encodings (with NFSS2) are supported too. The original <code>hebrew.sty</code> is divided to a number of packages and definition files for better readability and extensibility. Added some user- and code-level documentation inside the <code>.dtx</code> and <code>.fdd</code> files, and L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X-driven installation with <code>hebrew.ins</code> (by Boris Lavva) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.0b	
<code>\hebrewhyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	310
hebrew 2.1	
General: corrections from Sivan Toledo: sender name in letter, and section name in headings. (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.2	
General: renamed hebrew letters to heb* (e.g.: alef renamed to hebalef) (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.3	
General: added several <code>\@ifclassloaded{slides}</code> to allow the use of the slides class. (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.3a	
General: The documentation should now be built fine (broken since at least 2.1, and probably 2.0) (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.3b	
General: minor clean-ups. The documentation builds now with no warnings. Also removed <code>\R</code> from the caption macro (added in 2.1) Added internal <code>\@ensure@L</code> and <code>\@ensure@R</code> (Is there a real need for them? Maybe should they be exposed?) (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.3c	
General: a temporary fix to the <code>\gim</code> macro. Should be replaced by stuff from <code>hebcad</code> . (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.3d	
General: Initial support for the prosper class. Added <code>\arabicnor1</code> . (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.3e	
General: Removing <code>hebtech</code> from this distribution (not relevant to babel), added <code>\HeblatexEncoding</code> . some docs cleanup (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
hebrew 2.3f	
General: redefined <code>\list</code> instead of redefining every environment that uses it. some pcolor handling, removed <code>HeblatexEncoding</code> (don't use 2.3e) (by Tzafrir Cohen) . . . . .	308
icelandic-1.1	
General: Added definitions for old icelandic. . . . .	207
icelandic-1.1a	
General: Added definitions for formatting numbers in Icelandic and some extra utilities. . . . .	208
icelandic-1.1b	
General: Added references to various publications used . . . . .	208
icelandic-1.1c	
General: Removed code already present in <code>babel.def</code> . . . . .	204
<code>\dateicelandic</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code> . . . . .	206
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory . . . . .	206
icelandic-1.1e	
<code>\noextrasicelandic</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Icelandic . . . . .	206
icelandic-1.1f	
<code>\captionsicelandic</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code> . . . . .	206
<code>\noextrasicelandic</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	206
icelandic-1.1g	
<code>\captionsicelandic</code> : Added translation for Glossary . . . . .	206
Only use 7-bit ASCII characters in order to keep the texts input encoding independant . . . . .	206

irish-1.0b	
General: Corrected typo (PR1652) . . . . .	92
irish-1.0c	
\captionsirish: Added \proofname for AMS- $\LaTeX$ . . . . .	92
irish-1.0e	
General: Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up . . . . .	93
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks . . . . .	92
Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consistency with $\LaTeX$ , moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning. . . . .	92
irish-1.0f	
\captionsirish: Added missing translations provided in PR 2719 . . . . .	92
\dateirish: use \def instead of \edef . . . . .	92
Use \edef to define \today to save memory . . . . .	92
\irishhyphenmins: Added definition of \hyphenmins . . . . .	92
irish-1.0h	
\captionsirish: Added \glossaryname . . . . .	92
\irishhyphenmins: Now use \providehyphenmins to provide a default value . . . . .	92
italian-0.99	
General: First version, from english.doc . . . . .	130
italian-1.0	
General: Modified for babel 3.0 . . . . .	130
Now use \adddialect if language undefined . . . . .	131
italian-1.0a	
General: removed typo . . . . .	130
italian-1.0b	
General: Removed bug found by van der Meer . . . . .	130
italian-1.0c	
\captionssitalian: \pagename should be \headpagename . . . . .	131
Removed \global definitions . . . . .	131
\dateitalian: Removed \global definitions . . . . .	132
italian-1.0d	
\captionssitalian: ‘contiene’ substituted by ‘Allegati’ as suggested by Marco Bozzo (BOZZO@CERNVM). . . . .	131
italian-1.0e	
General: Renamed babel.sty in babel.com . . . . .	130
italian-1.0h	
General: Removed use of \@ifundefined . . . . .	131
italian-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded. . . . .	131
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a . . . . .	130
\captionssitalian: \headpagename should be \pagename . . . . .	131
Added \seename, \alsoname and \prefacename . . . . .	131
italian-1.2	
General: Update for LaTeX $\epsilon$ . . . . .	130
italian-1.2b	
\captionssitalian: Changed some of the words following suggestions from Claudio Beccari . . . . .	131
\italianhyphenmins: Added setting of left and righthyphenmin according to Claudio Beccari’s suggestion . . . . .	132
\noextrasitalian: Added setting of club- and widowpenalty . . . . .	132
Added setting of finallyphendemerits . . . . .	132
italian-1.2e	
General: Now use \@nopatterns to produce the warning . . . . .	131
Removed the use of \filedate and moved identification after the loading of babel.def . . . . .	130
italian-1.2f	
General: Updated for babel 3.5 . . . . .	130
italian-1.2g	
\captionssitalian: Added \proofname for AMS- $\LaTeX$ . . . . .	131
italian-1.2h	
\captionssitalian: Added translation of ‘Proof’ . . . . .	131
\noextrasitalian: Now give the apostrophe a lowercase code . . . . .	132

italian-1.2i	
General: Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	138
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	131
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	130
italian-1.2j	
General: Added braces around second arg of <code>\LdfInit</code>	131
italian-1.2l	
General: Added <code>\unit</code> , <code>\ap</code> , and <code>\ped</code> macros	130
Added useful macros for fulfilling ISO 31/XI regulations	134
<code>\noextrasitalian</code> : Changed example “ <code>begl’italiani</code> ” (obsolete spelling) with another, “ <code>nell’altezza</code> ”, that behaves the same way	132
italian-1.2m	
General: Added support for etymological hyphenation	130
Support for etymological hyphenation	132
<code>\italianhyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	132
italian-1.2n	
General: Added several commands for the caporali double quotes and for simplifying the accented vowel input	130
Completely modified etymological hyphenation facility	130
Completely new etymological hyphenation facility	133
italian-1.2o	
General: Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	130
italian-1.2p	
General: Removed redefinition of <code>\add@acc</code> since its functionality has been introduced into the kernel of L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2001/06/01	130, 135
italian-1.2q	
General: Added test for avoiding conflict with package <code>units.sty</code> ; adjusted caporali functionality, since the previous one did not work with the standard (although obsolete) <code>slides</code> class file	130
Redefined the caporali machinery so as to avoid incompatibilities with the <code>slides</code> class, as there are no Cyrillic slides fonts as there are for Latin script	136
<code>\ped</code> : Added testing for avoiding conflicts with the <code>units.sty</code> package	135
italian-1.2r	
<code>\it@cwmm</code> : Added <code>\nobreak</code> to <code>\it@cwmm</code> and corrected <code>\it@next</code>	133
italian-1.2s	
General: Corrected email of CB	130
italian-1.2t	
<code>\noextrasitalian</code> : Added <code>\@clubpenalty</code> to the italian specific settings, otherwise any sectioning command restores it to the default value valid for english and most other languages	132
latin-0.99	
General: Added shortcuts for breve, macron, and etymological hyphenation (CB)	139
First version, from <code>italian.dtx</code> (CB)	139
latin-1.2	
General: Added suggestions from Krzysztof Konrad Żelechowski (CB)	139
latin-2.0	
General: Completely new etymological hyphenation (CB)	139
latin-2.0a	
General: Revised by JB	139
<code>\latinhyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	141
latin-2.0b	
General: Simplified shortcuts for etymological hyphenation; modified breve and macro shortcuts; language attribute <code>medieval</code> declared	139
latin-2.0c	
General: Restored caret and equals sign category codes before exiting	139
latin-2.0d	
General: Restored caret and equals sign category codes before exiting	139
latin-2.0e	
General: Introduced the language attribute ‘ <code>withprosodicmarks</code> ’; modified use of breve and macron shortcuts in order to avoid possible conflicts with other packages	139

latin-2.0f	
\datelatin: Added a comment character to prevent unwanted space	141
latin-2.0g	
General: Added a \nobreak	145
\LatinMarksOff: Added two commands	144
\ProsodicMarks: changed \allowhyphens to \bbl@allowhyphens	143
latin-2.0h	
\LatinMarksOff: Added missing backslash	144
Removed the setting of \LatinMarksOff from \extraslatin	144
latin-2.0i	
General: Corrected the \@clubpenalty problem	139
latin-2.0j	
General: Added a missing comment char and a missing closing brace	139
latin-2.0k	
General: Save current category codes of equals sign and caret in order to restore them later	143
\LatinMarksOff: Set the \LatinMarks... commands equal to the \ProsodicMarks... commands for compatibility	144
\ProsodicMarks: Restore category codes rather than return them to their T <sub>E</sub> X default values. <i>And</i> do that outside of the command definition	144
Use \active instead of 13	143
lsorbian-0.1	
General: First version	300
lsorbian-1.0b	
\captionlsorbian: Added \proofname for AMS- $\LaTeX$	300
lsorbian-1.0d	
General: Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up	301
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks	300
Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consistency with $\LaTeX$ , moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning.	300
lsorbian-1.0e	
\newdatelsorbian: use \def instead of \edef	300
Use \edef to define \today to save memory	300
lsorbian-1.0f	
\captionlsorbian: Added \glossaryname	300
lsorbian-1.0g	
General: Make this work for more than one option name	301
Make this work for more than one option name.	301
This file can be loaded under more than one name.	300
\captionlsorbian: Make this work for more than one option name.	300
\newdatelsorbian: Make this work for more than one option name.	300
\olddatelsorbian: Make this work for more than one option name.	301
magyar-1.0a	
General: Renamed babel.sty in babel.com	225
magyar-1.0b	
General: Removed use of \@ifundefined	226
magyar-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	226
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	225
\captionsmagyar: \headpagename should be \pagename	226
Added \seename, \alsoname and \prefacename	226
magyar-1.1c	
\captionsmagyar: Added translations, fixed typos	226
\ondatemagyar: The date number should not be followed by a dot.	227
magyar-1.1d	
General: Further spelling corrections	225
\datemagyar: Rewritten to produce the correct date format	227
\ondatemagyar: Renamed from \datemagyar; no longer redefines \today.	227
magyar-1.1e	
General: Still more spelling corrections	225
magyar-1.2	
General: Update for $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$	225

magyar-1.3c	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	226
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	225
magyar-1.3e	
<code>\captionsmagyar</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$	226
magyar-1.3f	
<code>\captionsmagyar</code> : translated Proof and replaced some translations	226
magyar-1.3g	
General: Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with $\LaTeX$	225
magyar-1.3h	
General: Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	239
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	226
magyar-1.4a	
General: order inverting in headings/titles/captions; definite article handling; active char for special hyphenation	225
<code>\captionsmagyar</code> : the initial letter of <i>fejezet</i> , <i>táblázat</i> , <i>rész</i> , <i>lásd</i> changed to lowercase	226
<code>\datemagyar</code> : Use <code>\number\day</code> instead of <code>\ifcase</code> construct	227
magyar-1.4b	
<code>\captionsmagyar</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	227
magyar-1.4c	
General: Make sure that the grave accent has catcode 12 <i>before</i> it is made <code>\active</code>	239
magyar-1.4d	
General: Corrected checksum	225
The <code>\else</code> clause got outside of the <code>\if</code> statement, breaking the Hungarian support	226
magyar-1.4f	
<code>\hun@tempadef</code> : Added <code>\def\safe@activesfalse</code> as a fix for PR3426	234
magyar-1.4g	
General: Further change to make it work when neither <code>\l@magyar</code> nor <code>\l@hugarian</code> are defined	226
magyar-1.4h	
<code>\captionsmagyar</code> : Inserted translation for Glossary	227
magyar-1.4i	
<code>\fnun@table</code> : Use <code>\nobreakspace</code> instead of tilde	228
magyar-1.4j	
General: Added missing comment characters in the redefinitions of <code>\ps@headings</code> to prevent spurious spaces	225
ngermanb-2.6f	
General: Renamed from <code>germanb.ldf</code> ; language names changed from <code>german</code> and <code>austrian</code> to <code>ngerman</code> and <code>naustrian</code> .	84
ngermanb-2.6j	
<code>\noextrasnaustrian</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of German	85
ngermanb-2.6k	
<code>\captionснаustrian</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	84
<code>\noextrasnaustrian</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	85
ngermanb-2.6m	
<code>\noextrasnaustrian</code> : Turn frenchspacing on, as in <code>german.sty</code>	85
norks-2.0h	
<code>\captionsnynorsk</code> : Changed <code>\ccname</code> and <code>\alsoname</code>	213
norsk-1.0a	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> in <code>babel.com</code>	212
norsk-1.0c	
General: Removed use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	212
norsk-1.1a	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	212
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	212
<code>\captionsnorsk</code> : Added <code>\seename</code> , <code>\alsoname</code> and <code>\prefacename</code>	213
<code>\captionsnynorsk</code> : Added <code>\seename</code> , <code>\alsoname</code> and <code>\prefacename</code>	213

norsk-1.1b	
\captionnorsk: \headpagename should be \pagename	213
\captionnynorsk: \headpagename should be \pagename	213
norsk-1.1c	
General: Added a couple of translations (from Per Norman Oma, TeX@itk.unit.no)	212
norsk-1.2a	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	212
norsk-1.2d	
General: Now use \@nopatterns to produce the warning	212
Removed the use of \filedate and moved identification after the loading of	
babel.def	212
norsk-1.2f	
\captionnorsk: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X	213
\norskhyphenmins: Added setting of hyphenmin parameters	212
norsk-1.2g	
\captionnorsk: Replaced ‘Proof’ by its translation	213
\captionnynorsk: Replaced ‘Proof’ by its translation	213
norsk-1.2h	
General: Moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning.	212
Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up	215
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks	212
Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X	212
norsk-1.2i	
\datenorsk: use \def instead of \edef	213
Use \edef to define \today to save memory	213
norsk-2.0a	
General: Describe the use of double quote as active character	212
Made double quote character active	214
\norskhyphenmins: Changed setting of hyphenmin parameters to 2 2	212
norsk-2.0b	
General: added the french double quotes	215
Copied the coding for "f from germanb.dtx version 2.6g	215
norsk-2.0c	
General: Deactivate shorthands outside of Norsk	214
norsk-2.0d	
General: Shorthands are the same for both spelling variants, no need to use	
\CurrentOption	214
Use \bbl@allowhyphens in "-	215
norsk-2.0e	
\captionnorsk: Added \glossaryname	213
\captionnynorsk: Added \glossaryname	213
\norskhyphenmins: Now use \providehyphenmins to provide a default value	212
norsk-2.0g	
\captionnorsk: Replaced ‘Glossary’ by its translation	213
\captionnynorsk: Replaced ‘Glossary’ by its translation	213
polish-1.0a	
\textpl: Initially execute ‘textpl	253
polish-1.1c	
General: Now use \@nopatterns to produce the warning	251
Removed the use of \filedate and moved identification after the loading of	
babel.def	251
polish-1.1d	
General: The dqmacro for C used \’c	254
polish-1.2a	
General: Don’t modify \rm and friends for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub> , take \selectfont instead	254
polish-1.2b	
\captionpolish: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>ε</sub> X	251
polish-1.2d	
General: Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up	255
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks	251

Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with $\LaTeX$ , moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	251
<code>\Eob</code> : Use the constructed version of the characters only in OT1; use proper characters in T1.	253
<code>\skb</code> : <code>\skb</code> is meant to be used in horizontal mode; so leave vertical mode if necessary	253
<code>\sob</code> : This macro is meant to be used in horizontal mode; so leave vertical mode if necessary	252
<code>\spb</code> : <code>\spb</code> is meant to be used in horizontal mode; so leave vertical mode if necessary	253
polish-1.2e	
General: Removed empty groups after double quote and guillemot characters	255
polish-1.2f	
<code>\captionspolish</code> : Added translation for Proof and changed translation of Contents	251
<code>\datepolish</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	252
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	252
<code>\mdqoff</code> : Now use <code>\shorthandon</code> and <code>\shorthandoff</code>	255
polish-1.2h	
<code>\noextraspolish</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Polish	252
polish-1.2i	
<code>\captionspolish</code> : <code>\bibname</code> and <code>\refname</code> were swapped	251
Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	251
<code>\datepolish</code> : A missing comment character caused an unwanted space character in the output	252
polish-1.2j	
<code>\polishzx</code> : Added support for two notationstyles for kropka and accented z	254
polish-1.2k	
<code>\polishzx</code> : Fixed a typo	255
polish-1.2l	
General: Changed closing quote	255
portuges-1.0a	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> in <code>babel.com</code>	146
portuges-1.0b	
General: Removed use of <code>cs@ifundefined</code>	146
portuges-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	146
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	146
<code>\captionsportuges</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	147
Added <code>\seename</code> , <code>\alsoname</code> and <code>\prefacename</code>	147
portuges-1.2	
General: Update for $\LaTeX 2_\epsilon$	146
portuges-1.2d	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	146
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	146
portuges-1.2e	
<code>\captionsportuges</code> : Added a few missing translations	147
portuges-1.2g	
General: Enhanced support for brasilian	146
<code>\captionsbrazil</code> : The captions for brasilian and portuguese are different now	148
<code>\extraspportuges</code> : Added the definition of some " shorthands	148
<code>\ord</code> : Added macro	149
<code>\orda</code> : Added macro	149
<code>\portugeshyphenmins</code> : Added setting of hyphenmin values	148
<code>\ra</code> : Added macro	149
<code>\ro</code> : Added macro	149
portuges-1.2h	
<code>\captionsportuges</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$	147
portuges-1.2i	
<code>\captionsbrazil</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$	148
<code>\captionsportuges</code> : Substituted 'Prova' for 'Proof'	147



portuges-1.2j	
General: Moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	146
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	146
Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	149
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	146
portuges-1.2k	
<code>\datebrazil</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	148
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	148
<code>\dateportuges</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	147
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	147
<code>\noextrasportuges</code> : Removed empty groups after guillemot characters	149
portuges-1.2m	
<code>\captionsbrazil</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	148
<code>\captionsportuges</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	147
<code>\noextrasportuges</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Basque	148
<code>\portugeshyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	148
portuges-1.2n	
<code>\datebrazil</code> : Removed spurious space after dezembro	148
<code>\dateportuges</code> : Removed spurious space after Dezembro	147
portuges-1.2o	
<code>\portugeshyphenmins</code> : Set <code>\righthyphenmin</code> to 3 if not provided by the pattern file.	148
portuges-1.2p	
<code>\captionsportuges</code> : Substituted ‘Glossário’ for ‘Glossary’	147
portuges-1.2q	
<code>\captionsbrazil</code> : Substituted ‘Glossário’ for ‘Glossary’	148
romanian-1.0a	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> in <code>babel.com</code>	199
romanian-1.0b	
General: Removed use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	199
romanian-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	199
Brought up-to-date with <code>babel 3.2a</code>	199
<code>\captionsromanian</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	199
Added <code>\seename</code> , <code>\alsoname</code> and <code>\prefacename</code>	199
Translation errors found by Robert Juhasz fixed	199
<code>\dateromanian</code> : Translation errors found by Robert Juhasz fixed	199
romanian-1.2	
General: Update for <code>LaTeX2e</code>	199
romanian-1.2d	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	199
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	199
romanian-1.2e	
General: Updated for <code>babel release 3.5</code>	199
romanian-1.2f	
<code>\captionsromanian</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	199
romanian-1.2g	
<code>\captionsromanian</code> : Added translation of ‘Proof’	199
romanian-1.2h	
General: Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	200
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	199
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	199
romanian-1.2i	
<code>\dateromanian</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	199
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	199
romanian-1.2k	
<code>\captionsromanian</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	199
romanian-1.2l	
<code>\captionsromanian</code> : Added translation for Glossary	199

russianb-1.1a	
<code>\extrasrussian</code> : Use <code>\ddot</code> instead of <code>\@MATHUMLAUT</code> . . . . .	273
use <code>\russianhyphenmins</code> to store the correct values . . . . .	275
Use the new mechanism for dealing with active characters . . . . .	271
<code>\russian@sh@?@</code> : Use new <code>\DefineActiveNoArg</code> . . . . .	272
Use the more general mechanism of <code>\declare@shorthand</code> . . . . .	272
<code>\system@sh@;@</code> : Added system level shorthands . . . . .	273
russianb-1.1b	
<code>\extrasrussian</code> : Added switch to LWN encoding . . . . .	270
<code>\russian@sh@?@</code> : Updated to reflect the latest french definitions . . . . .	272
<code>\verbatim@font</code> : Added changing of <code>\verbatim@font</code> . . . . .	270
russianb-1.1c	
General: Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	265
russianb-1.1d	
General: Moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning. . . . .	265
Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up . . . . .	276
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks . . . . .	265
russianb-1.1e	
General: Added closing brace to second argument of <code>\LdfInit</code> . . . . .	265
russianb-1.1f	
General: Added definitions of Cyrillic emdash stuff and thinspace . . . . .	265
<code>\extrasrussian</code> : Add commands for switch on/off doublequote activeness. Borrowed from german. . . . .	274
Add macro for thinspace between initials . . . . .	274
Added a hook to insert space or not before ‘double punctuation’ (from frenchb). . . . .	271, 272
Rearranging of cyrillic emdash stuff . . . . .	274
<code>\FDPoff</code> : One more chance to avoid spaces before double punctuation . . . . .	273
<code>\russian@sh@?@</code> : changed to kern.lem (space bit thinner) . . . . .	272
Added a hook to insert space or not before ‘double punctuation’ (from frenchb). . . . .	272
russianb-1.1k	
General: replaced all <code>\penalty\@M</code> with <code>\nobreak</code> . . . . .	265
russianb-1.1l	
General: Made not using inputenc a warning instead of an error . . . . .	268
russianb-1.1m	
<code>\captionssrussian</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code> . . . . .	270
<code>\extrasrussian</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value . . . . .	275
russianb-1.1n	
General: As this code generates a textfont 7 error it is commented out for now. . . . .	268
russianb-1.1o	
<code>\latintext</code> : <code>\latintext</code> is already defined by the core of <code>babel</code> . . . . .	268
<code>\textlatin</code> : <code>\textlatin</code> already defined by the core of <code>babel</code> . . . . .	269
russianb-1.1q	
General: Change definition of <code>\th</code> only for this language . . . . .	276
russianb-1.1r	
<code>\extrasrussian</code> : Removed the commanet character before the next code line, see R3669 . . . . .	274
samin-1.0b	
<code>\captionssamin</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code> . . . . .	220
<code>\saminhyphenmins</code> : use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> . . . . .	220
samin-1.0c	
<code>\captionssamin</code> : Provided the translation for glossary . . . . .	220
scottish-1.0b	
General: Corrected typos (PR1652) . . . . .	94
scottish-1.0c	
<code>\captionsscottish</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	94
scottish-1.0d	
General: Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up . . . . .	95
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks . . . . .	94

Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	94
scottish-1.0e	
<code>\datescottish</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	94
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	94
scottish-1.0g	
<code>\captionsscottish</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	94
serbian-1.0b	
General: Added suggestions for shorthands and so on from Jankovic Slobodan	256
<code>\noextrasserbian</code> : Introduced the active "	257
serbian-1.0c	
<code>\noextrasserbian</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Serbian	257
serbian-1.0d	
<code>\captionsserbian</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	256
<code>\noextrasserbian</code> : Changed definition of "-" to be the same as for other languages	257
slovak-1.0	
General: First version	259
slovak-1.2	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	259
slovak-1.2b	
<code>\noextrasslovak</code> : Added setting of left- and righthypenmin	261
slovak-1.2d	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	260
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	259
slovak-1.2e	
<code>\noextrasslovak</code> : Now use <code>\slovakhyphenmins</code>	261
Use L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X's <code>\v</code> accent command	261
slovak-1.2g	
<code>\captionsslovak</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	260
slovak-1.2i	
General: Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	262
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	259
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	259
slovak-1.2j	
<code>\dateslovak</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	260
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	260
slovak-1.2k	
<code>\captionsslovak</code> : Repaired a few spelling mistakes	260
<code>\dateslovak</code> : Repaired a spelling mistake	260
slovak-1.2l	
<code>\captionsslovak</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	260
<code>\noextrasslovak</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value	261
slovak-1.3a	
General: Added contributed shorthand definitions	259
<code>\noextrasslovak</code> : Make three characters available for shorthands	260
slovene-1.0a	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> in <code>babel.com</code>	263
slovene-1.0b	
General: Removed use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	263
slovene-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	263
Brought up-to-date with <code>babel 3.2a</code>	263
<code>\captionsslovene</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	263
Added <code>\seename</code> , <code>\alsoname</code> and <code>\prefacename</code>	263
slovene-1.2	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	263
slovene-1.2b	
<code>\captionsslovene</code> : Added extra translations from Josef Leydold, <code>leydold@statix2.wu-wien.ac.at</code>	263

slovene-1.2d	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	263
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	263
slovene-1.2f	
<code>\noextrasslovene</code> : Introduced the active "	264
slovene-1.2g	
<code>\captionsslovene</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$	263
slovene-1.2h	
<code>\captionsslovene</code> : Added translation of ‘Proof’	263
slovene-1.2i	
General: Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	264
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	263
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with $\LaTeX$ , moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	263
Replaced ‘Slovanian’ with correct ‘Slovenian’	263
<code>\noextrasslovene</code> : removed shorthand for "L as it is not needed for slovenian	264
slovene-1.2j	
<code>\dateslovene</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	264
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	264
<code>\noextrasslovene</code> : Removed empty groups after double quote and guillemot characters	264
slovene-1.2l	
<code>\noextrasslovene</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Slovene	264
slovene-1.2m	
<code>\captionsslovene</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	263
spanish 5.0a	
General: Reimplemented in full, which some parts rewritten from scratch. Added the es- mechanism and the mexico option. Many bug fixes.	154
swedish-1.0a	
General: Renamed <code>babel.sty</code> in <code>babel.com</code>	216
swedish-1.0b	
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : added definition for <code>\enclname</code>	216
made definition of <code>\refname</code> pluralis	216
removed type in definition of <code>\contentsname</code>	216
swedish-1.0c	
General: Removed use of <code>\@ifundefined</code>	216
swedish-1.1	
General: Added a warning when no hyphenation patterns were loaded.	216
Brought up-to-date with babel 3.2a	216
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	216
Added <code>\seename</code> , <code>\alsoname</code> and <code>\prefacename</code>	216
swedish-1.1b	
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : Added translations	216
swedish-1.2	
General: Update for $\LaTeX$ 2e	216
swedish-1.3d	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	216
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	216
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : Changed <code>\aa</code> to <code>\csname aa\endcsname</code> , to make <code>\uppercase</code> do the right thing	216
swedish-1.3e	
General: Update for release 3.5	216
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : Changed <code>\alsoname</code> from ‘se också’	217
<code>\extrasswedish</code> : Added <code>\bbl@frenchspacing</code>	217
<code>\noextrasswedish</code> : Added <code>\bbl@nonfrenchspacing</code>	217
<code>\swedishhyphenmins</code> : use <code>\swedishhyphenmins</code> to store the correct values	217
swedish-1.3f	
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS- $\LaTeX$	216
swedish-1.3g	
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : Replaced ‘Proof’ by its translation	217

swedish-2.0	
General: Introduced active double quote	216
<code>\noextrasswedish</code> : Added active double quote character	218
swedish-2.1	
General: Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	219
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	216
Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	216
swedish-2.2	
<code>\dateswedish</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	217
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	217
swedish-2.2b	
<code>\noextrasswedish</code> : Deactivate shorthands outside of Swedish	218
swedish-2.3a	
General: added <code>\allowhyphens</code>	218
changed definition of <code>"=, \- and "</code>	218
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : Added full stop after “Bil”	217
<code>\datesdmy</code> : Command added	217
<code>\datesymd</code> : Command added	217
swedish-2.3b	
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	217
swedish-2.3c	
<code>\captionsswedish</code> : Provided translation for Glossary	217
swedish-2.3d	
General: Fixed a <code>\changes</code> entry	216
turkish-1.1	
<code>\captionsturkish</code> : <code>\headpagename</code> should be <code>\pagename</code>	305
turkish-1.2	
General: Update for L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub>ε</sub>	305
turkish-1.2b	
<code>\captionsturkish</code> : Added braces behind <code>\i</code> in strings	305
<code>\dateturkish</code> : Added braces behind <code>\i</code> in strings	305
turkish-1.2c	
General: Now use <code>\@nopatterns</code> to produce the warning	305
Removed the use of <code>\filedate</code> and moved identification after the loading of <code>babel.def</code>	305
turkish-1.2d	
<code>\dateturkish</code> : removed extra closing brace, <code>\mont</code> should be <code>\month</code>	305
<code>\turkish@sh@:</code> : Added missing <code>\def</code>	306
turkish-1.2e	
<code>\extrasturkish</code> : Completely rewrote macro	306
<code>\noextrasturkish</code> : now use <code>\bbl@frenchspacing</code> and <code>\bbl@nonfrenchspacing</code>	306
<code>\turkish@sh@:</code> : Use the new mechanism of <code>\declare@shorthand</code>	306
turkish-1.2f	
<code>\captionsturkish</code> : Added <code>\proofname</code> for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	305
turkish-1.2h	
General: Replaced <code>\undefined</code> with <code>\@undefined</code> and <code>\empty</code> with <code>\@empty</code> for consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	305
turkish-1.2i	
General: Moved the definition of <code>\atcatcode</code> right to the beginning.	305
Now use <code>\ldf@finish</code> to wrap up	307
Now use <code>\LdfInit</code> to perform initial checks	305
turkish-1.2j	
<code>\captionsturkish</code> : Added and modified translations	305
<code>\dateturkish</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code>	305
Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory	305
turkish-1.2k	
<code>\captionsturkish</code> : Incorporated some more corrections	305
turkish-1.2l	
<code>\dateturkish</code> : removed dot from the date format	305
turkish-1.2m	
<code>\captionsturkish</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code>	305

ukraineb-1.1d	
\captionukrainian: replace \CYRUKRI with \CYRII in \authorname	292
ukraineb-1.1e	
General: replaced all \penalty\@M with \nobreak	288
ukraineb-1.1f	
General: Made not using inputenc a warning instead of an error	291
ukraineb-1.1g	
\captionukrainian: Added \glossaryname	292
\extrasukrainian: Now use \providehyphenmins to provide a default value	297
ukraineb-1.1h	
\captionukrainian: Added translation for ‘Glossary’	292
ukraineb-1.1i	
General: As this code generates a textfont 7 error it is commented out for now.	291
ukraineb-1.1j	
\latintext: \latintext is already defined by the core of babel	291
\textlatin: \latintext is already defined by the core of babel	292
ukraineb-1.1k	
General: Change definition of \th only for this language	299
usorbian-0.1	
General: First version	302
usorbian-0.1b	
General: Made it possible to run through L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X; added \MF and removed extra	
\endmacro	302
usorbian-0.1c	
\captionusorbian: Removed two typos (Kapitel and Dodatki)	302
usorbian-1.0a	
General: Removed stuff that has been moved to babel.def	303
usorbian-1.0b	
\captionusorbian: Added \proofname for AMS-L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	302
usorbian-1.0c	
General: Now use \bbl@disc	304
usorbian-1.0d	
General: Replaced \undefined with \@undefined and \empty with \@empty for	
consistency with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	302
usorbian-1.0e	
General: Moved the definition of \atcatcode right to the beginning.	302
Now use \ldf@finish to wrap up	304
Now use \LdfInit to perform initial checks	302
usorbian-1.0f	
General: Removed empty groups after double quote and guillemot characters	304
usorbian-1.0g	
\ck: Now use \shorthandon and \shorthandoff	304
\newdateusorbian: use \def instead of \edef	302
Use \edef to define \today to save memory	302
\olddateusorbian: use \def instead of \edef	303
Use \edef to define \today to save memory	303
usorbian-1.0h	
\extrausorbian: Deactivate shorthands outside of Upper Sorbian	303
usorbian-1.0i	
\captionusorbian: Added \glossaryname	302
\extrausorbian: Now use \providehyphenmins to provide a default value	303
usorbian-1.0j	
General: Check for the option lowersorbian	302
Make this work for more than one option name	303, 304
This file can be loaded under more than one name.	302
\captionusorbian: Make this work for more than one option name	302
\extrausorbian: Make this work for more than one option name	303
\newdateusorbian: Make this work for more than one option name	302
\olddateusorbian: Make this work for more than one option name	303
usorbian-1.0k	
\extrausorbian: Make sure the caret has the right \catcdoe	303

v3.8a		
	<code>\lower@umlaut</code> : Use <code>\leavevmode\bgroup</code> to prevent problems when this command occurs in vertical mode. . . . .	48
	<code>\umlauthigh</code> : Use <code>\leavevmode\bgroup</code> to prevent problems when this command occurs in vertical mode. . . . .	47
v3.8d		
	<code>\@notshorthand</code> : Error message added . . . . .	38
welsh-1.0b		
	<code>\datewelsh</code> : use <code>\def</code> instead of <code>\edef</code> . . . . .	90
	Use <code>\edef</code> to define <code>\today</code> to save memory . . . . .	90
welsh-1.0c		
	<code>\captionswelsh</code> : Added <code>\glossaryname</code> . . . . .	90
	<code>\welshhyphenmins</code> : Now use <code>\providehyphenmins</code> to provide a default value . . . . .	90
welsh-1.0d		
	<code>\captionswelsh</code> : Provided the translation for Glossary . . . . .	90
	<code>\datewelsh</code> : removed ‘a viz’ from the definition of <code>\today</code> . . . . .	90